Second year Latin

James Bradstreet Greenough, Benjamin Leonard D'Ooge, Moses Grant Daniell
SECOND YEAR LATIN

PART I
MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS OF EASY LATIN

PART II
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

EDITED BY
JAMES B. GREENOUGH
BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE AND M. GRANT DANIELL

GINN & COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
PREFACE.

This book is intended to follow any First Latin Book. It is adapted to the wants of those pupils who have some little knowledge of inflexions and of the easiest constructions, and embraces some ninety pages of easy Latin, followed by selections from Cæsar's Gallic War (about equivalent in amount to the first four books), making along with the beginner's book a sufficient course in Latin for two years. It is hoped that thus a somewhat freer and wider course may be found for young students than the unvaried reading of Cæsar's Commentaries, and a more interesting one as well. About ten pages of easy poetry have been included in the selections, with a hope of giving a slight hint at the poetic literature of the Romans. This may be read in course or may be left until near the close of the second year. Much of the material of Part I is modern Latin, prepared for such uses by modern scholars. Due credit is given to these in the proper place.

Among the shorter selections are extracts from Pliny the Younger, Cicero, Valerius Maximus, and other ancient writers. To these are added three stories from Erasmus, who may almost be regarded for our purpose as a classic author, but who from his position between ancient and modern life fails nowadays to receive the attention he deserves.

In the pages devoted to biography and mythology the "Story of Ulysses" from Ritchie's Fabula Faciles has been included. This, though modern Latin, has been given a peculiar aroma by a clever imitation of Cæsar's style, so that it is a most valuable
Preface.

preliminary to the study of that writer. Two lives are given from the famous modern classic *Viri Romae*, those of Caius Marius and Julius Cæsar, reading peculiarly appropriate as introductory to the Commentaries. These are followed by the "Life of Hannibal," from Nepos.

It seemed wise to give a varied course of reading from Cæsar rather than the first four books. Parts of these books are unusually difficult, and parts are lacking in interest. By making selections from the seven books, both of these obstacles to successful work have in large measure been overcome. All the features that have proved so attractive and helpful in the *New Caesar* have been retained in this volume.

In the explanatory notes on Part I we have varied from the conventional methods in a direction suggested by experience. The attempt has been made to follow the methods of personal *viva voce* instruction, and to take the point of view of the pupil rather than that of the instructor, so as to teach him to read the Latin as if he wanted to read it, rather than to make it a vehicle for learning other things not then felt to be necessary. We have therefore constantly endeavored to answer the question what the words or constructions meant rather than why they were so. It is hoped that the book will be found a practical and practicable one in actual use. The views of the editors in regard to reading have been repeated in so many forms that we deem it unnecessary to give them anew. The directions in our *Caesar* are reprinted in this book.

A considerable number of oral exercises for turning English into Latin in the form of question and answer, and some exercises for oral and written translation, all founded on the miscellaneous matter, have been inserted, so that the writing and speaking of Latin may go on along with the efforts to read.

August, 1899.

J. B. G.
B. L. D.
M. G. D.
# CONTENTS

**List of Maps and Illustrations** ix

## PART I.

### I. Stories, Fables, and Letters:

1. A Letter. *Meurer* 1
2. Cock-fighting. *Meurer* 2
3. Gladiators. *Meurer* 2
4. The Horse and the Ass. *Perthes* 3
5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides. *Perthes* 3
6. The Roman Dinner. *Meurer* 4
8. The Wolf and the Dog. *Old Fable* 5
9. The Lion and the Mouse. *Old Fable* 6
10. The Dancing Horses. *Perthes* 6
15. The Fox and the Monkey. *Perthes* 9
17. The Husbandman and his Sons. *Old Fable* 11
19. The Death of Pompey. *Caesar* 12
22. An Epitome of Roman History. *Perthes* 17
23. The Omen of the Puppy. *Cicero (adapted)* 18
25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. *Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoevel* 19
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### II. Biography and Mythology:

2. The Story of Ulysses. *Ritchie* 40
3. Life of Caius Marius. *Viri Romae* 55
4. Life of Caius Julius Caesar. *Viri Romae* 63
5. Life of Hannibal. *Nepos* 75

### III. Poetical Selections:

1. The Stag. *Phaedrus* 86
2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together. *Ovid* 86
3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron. *Corpus Inscriptionum Latina-
   rum* 87
4. Dæmones’s Dream. *Plautus* 87
5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow. *Catullus* 88
6. How to Train Children. *Terence* 88
7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse. *Horace* 89
8. The Enchantress Circe. *Virgil* 90
10. The Shortness of Life. *Horace* 91
12. Live while you Live. *Horace* 92

### PART II.

#### Introduction:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV. The Britons</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. The Germans</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Campaigns in Gaul</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Directions for Reading</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Selections from Cæsar's Gallic War:

- General Description of Gaul, I. 1          | 143  |
- The Belgian Confederacy, II.                | 144  |
- The Campaign against the Veneti, III. 7-16  | 174  |
- The First Invasion of Germany, IV. 1-19     | 183  |
- The Second Invasion of Germany, VI. 9-29    | 196  |
- The First Invasion of Britain, IV. 20-36    | 209  |
- The Second Invasion of Britain, V. 1-23     | 221  |
- General Uprising of Gaul, VII. 1-15         | 238  |
- The Siege of Avaricum, VII. 16-30           | 248  |
- The Siege of Alesia, VII. 68-90             | 260  |

## Notes                                    | 279  |

## Groups of Related Words                   | 459  |

## Latin Composition                         | 469  |

## Vocabulary

---

**Note:** The modern authors mentioned in the foregoing list are Meurer (*Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta*), Perthes (*Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta, also für Quinta*), Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel (*Übungsbuch für den grammatischen Unterricht im Lateinischen, für Sexta*), and Ritchie (*Fabulae Faciles*).
# List of Maps and Illustrations

## Abbreviations

- **Babelon.** — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.
- **Baumeister.** — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1855-8.
- **Bertrand and Perrot.** — Revue archéologique, 3e Série, Tome X.
- **Cohén.** — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.
- **Fleury.** — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-8.
- **Froehner.** — La Colonne trajane d'après le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861-2, reproduite en phototypographie par Gustave Arosa. 1872.
- **Grasset.** — Costumes de Guerre de l'âge du bronze et de l'ère gauloise. 1886.
- **Guhl and Kohner.** — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.
- **Head.** — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.
- **Jeuffrain.** — Essai d'Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.
- **von Kampen.** — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulæ. 1879.
- **Lindenschmidt.** — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.
- **Oehler.** — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.

## Fig.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Map of the Roman Empire</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>View of Naples and Vesuvius. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Gladiators. <em>Baumeister</em></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Coin of Bruttium, showing Castor and Pollux. <em>Head</em></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Coin of Augustus. <em>Head</em></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Personification of the River Tiber (showing also Romulus and Remus with the wolf). In the Louvre, Paris. Brunn, <em>Denkmäler Griechischer und Römischer Sculptur</em></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Pompey. Ancient statue. Visconti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Niobe. Bust from the statue of Niobe and her children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Cæsæus on the funeral pile. Baumeister</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Coin of Aemilius. Obverse: veiled head of woman with diadem. Reverse: captives (prob. Perses and his sons) opposite a figure erecting a trophy. TER, i.e. having thrice enjoyed a triumph. Cohen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>A Roman maiden. Ancient statue. Photograph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>A triumphal chariot. From photograph of the walls of the capitol at Rome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Peristyle of a Pompeian house. Photograph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>A record of Cyrus the Great. British Museum. Photograph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Tomb of Cyrus the Great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Head of a Cyclops. From a gem in the British Museum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copied from Butcher and Lang's Odyssey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Ulysses under the ram. Winckelmann, Monumenti Antichi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Opening the wind bag. Winckelmann, Monumenti Antichi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Ulysses at the house of Circe. Baumeister</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Map of Italia Superior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Map of Italia Inferior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>between 55 and 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Gaius Marius. From a coin. Visconti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Soldiers with packs. &quot;Marius's Mules.&quot; Froehner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>L. Cornelius Sulla. Bust in the Vatican at Rome. Uncertain. Bernoulli, Römische Ikonographie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Coin of Sulla. Obverse: head of Diana Tifatina. FAVSTVS (name of Sulla's son). Reverse: L. Sulla seated; Bocchus, king of Mauretania, delivers to him Jugurtha as a captive; FELIX (surname assumed by Sulla). Visconti.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Soldiers making camp. Froehner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Map of Rome.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the Louvre, Paris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>A civic crown. From a coin. Cohen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Maps and Illustrations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Coins of Pompey and his son. (1) Obverse: head of Sextus Pompey. Reverse: heads of Sextus Pompey and Pompey the Great. (2) Allegorical head of Africa. Cohen</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Mark Antony. Ancient statue. Visconti</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. Cohen</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Scipio Africanus. Ancient statue. Photograph</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Coin of Antiochus the Great. Obverse: head of Antiochus with diadem. Reverse: Apollo seated on the omphalos, a bow in his left hand, an arrow in his right. Head</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Map of Gaul</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 57</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Writing materials: atramentarium (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); dipltycha (folding tablet), stilus, and erasing knife. Wall painting. Overbeck's Pompeii</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the Arc de Triomphe at Orange. Grasset</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. Fleury</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Slinger (funditor), Dict. des Antiquités</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Berry au Bac. Photograph</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Battle on the Aisne. Oechler</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Vinea or Testudo. Oechler</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Hautmont. Photograph</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Defeat of the Nervii. Oechler</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Lituus</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Tuba</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Centurio. Grave relief. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Aquilifer. Grave relief. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Citadel of Namur. Photograph</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Siege works. von Göler, Caesars Gallischer Krieg</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Galley. From the Prænesta relief. Baumeister</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Maps and Illustrations.

63. Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. Oehler .......... 179
65. Soldiers .......... 182
67. Scenery on the Meuse. Photograph .......... 184
68. Campaign map of B.C. 55, 54, 53 .......... 184
70. Bridge .......... 195
72. Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris?); human eye in profile, supposed to symbolize the sun. Fleury .......... 202
73. Map of the campaigns in Britain .......... 208
75. Catapulta. Modern restoration .......... 213
76. Anchor and tackle. Arc de Triomphe at Orange. Schreiber .......... 216
77. Soldiers foraging. Froehner .......... 218
79. Testudo. Froehner .......... 227
80. Soldiers building camp, with guards. Froehner .......... 229
81. Signa Militaria .......... 233
82. Roman transports. Froehner .......... 236
85. Helmets. Schreiber .......... 238
86. Campaign map of B.C. 52 .......... 238
88. Siege of Avaricum. von Kampen .......... 246
89. View of siege works. von Kampen .......... 250
90. Plan of siege works. von Kampen .......... 251
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Gallic wall. Model in the Museum of St. Germain, slightly restored from existing remains at Murcens.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Scorpio. Modern restoration</td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Ballista. Modern restoration</td>
<td></td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Alise-St-Reine (Alesia). Photograph</td>
<td></td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Siege of Alesia. Oehler</td>
<td></td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Statue of Vercingetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III.</td>
<td>Designed by Bartholdi. Photograph</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Archer. Gravestone. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td></td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Youth reading</td>
<td></td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>Olla fictilis. Richard's Dictionary</td>
<td></td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>The Tullianum. Richard's Dictionary</td>
<td></td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>Signifer. Gravestone. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td></td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>Amphora. Baumeister</td>
<td></td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's model in the Museum of St. Germain.</td>
<td></td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Fleury</td>
<td></td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>Gallic remains. Grasset</td>
<td></td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>Castra Romana. Rheinhard</td>
<td></td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>General view of siege operations. Rheinhard</td>
<td></td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>Vexillum</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>Scutum. Rheinhard</td>
<td></td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Scutum. Rheinhard</td>
<td></td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Wall and ditch. Oehler</td>
<td></td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). Schreiber</td>
<td></td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>Roman javelins. Oehler</td>
<td></td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119.</td>
<td>Roman swords. Oehler</td>
<td></td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>Aquila</td>
<td></td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIG.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Artist</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Caliga.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.</td>
<td>Oppugnatio. Modern design</td>
<td>438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius.</td>
<td>Froehner</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
<td>447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
<td>447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>Lilium.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Stimulus.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART I.

I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.

Fig. 3.—View of Naples and Vesuvius.

1. A Letter.

2. Cock-fighting.

Athēniēnsēs pública gallōrum certāmina quondam insti-
tuērunt. Causa autem haec fuit. Bellō Persicō Themis-
toclēs cum exercitū iter in hostīs faciēbat, cum duōs gallōs
vidit in viā dimicantis. /Tum militēs ad spectāculum con-
vocāvit et hanc orātōnem habuit : "Hi galli nōn prō patriā
dimicant, nōn prō deis, nōn prō glōriā, nōn prō libertātē,
nōn prō liberis; dē nūlā ré dimicant nisi dē victōriā."
Hāc orātiōne animōs militūm excitāvit, nec hostēs eōrum:
impetum sustinērē poterant. Quā dē causā Athēniēnsēs
Themistoclīs cōnsiliō certāmina gallōrum instituērunt.


Rōmānī è spectāculis gladiātorīis māgnam voluptātem
capiēbant. Quā in ré cernēbatur nōn tam bellicōsum
populi Rōmānī ingenium quàm prāva volgi indolēs. Primō

**Fig. 4. — Gladiators.**

Pūgnae gladiātoriae inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur,
posteā ei qui magistrātum petēbant spectāculīs hūiusmodi
plēbis suffrāgia quae rēbant. Hōc cōnsiliō māgnās gladiā-

Cf. ¹ cōnsiliō, p. 1, l. 2. — ² spectāculum, l. 4.
7 tōrum familiās alēban. Jūlius Caesar trecenta vigintī paria
simul in harēnam misit. Barbarī captivi et servi gregi adscri-
bēbantur gladiātōrum, multi etiam aliī ultrō nōmina profite-
bantur. Varia erant eōrum arma; alius scūtum gladiumque,
alis clipeum sicānque, rēte et tridentem alius habēbat. Nōn nūlli divitiās hōc tam atrōci quaestūr consēcuti sunt,
permulti miserē periērunt. Caesarem spectāculis praesi-
ydentem salūtābant gladiātōres his verbī: "Avē, Caesar,
īmoritūri tē salūtant."

4. The Horse and the Ass.

Agitābat quidam equum et asinum onustōs sarcini. Asin
nus onere pressus rogāvit equum ut aliquā oneris parte sē
levāret. Sed ille precēs comitis repudiāvit. Paulō post
asinus languōre consūmtus in viā conruit et efflagit ani
nam. Agitātor igitur omnibus quās asinus portāverat sar
cinis atque insuper pelle ei dētrāctā equum onerāvit. Tum ille dēplōrāns fortūnam suam, "Quam stultē," inquit, "con
tempsi comitis precēs anam si illī obtemperāvissem, parvu
lum habērem onus, nunc gravissimum portō coāctus."

Old Fable.

5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.

Simōnidēs, ēgregius Graecōrum poēta, cēnābat aliuaqandō Cranōne in Thessaliā apud Scopam, fortūpātum hominem et
nōbilem, qui paulō ante in pugilum certāmine māgnam vic
tōriam reportāverat. Cantāvit poēta summō convivārum
gaudiō praeclārum carmen in laudem victōris et piō animō
etiam Castorem et Pollūcem, inlūstris Graecōrum hērōēs et certāminum patrōnōs, ut auctōrēs illius victōriae celebrāvit.
Invidiā commōtus carmen improbāvit Scopās et sordidē


6. The Roman Dinner.


Cf. 1 obtemperāvissem, p. 3, l. 17.—2 convivārum, 3, 23.—8 cēnā-bat, 3, 20.—4 convivis, l. 9.
7. Augustus and the Veteran.

Imperātor Augustus saepe per urbem pedibus ibat summāque cōmitāte adeuntis excipiēbat. Convēnit eum forte miles veterānus qui, quod in iūs vocātus erat, auxilium ab Imperātōre petīvit. Statim Augustus ūnum ē comitibus ēlēgit patrōnum, eumque militem comitāri iussit. Tum 5 veterānus exclamāvit: "At nōn ego bellō Actiacō vicārium quaesivi, sed ipse prō tē pūgnāvi," simulque dētēxit cicātricēs. Ėrubuit Augustus et ipse patrōnus pauperis veterānī factus est.

8. The Wolf and the Dog.


vici circumdari solet.\textsuperscript{1} Tum lupus, "Valē,\textsuperscript{2}" inquit, "amice! nihil moror felicitātem servitūte emptam."\textsuperscript{3} \textit{Old Fable.}\n
\textsection{9. The Lion and the Mouse.}

Circum leōnem dormientem músculi petulantēs cursābant. Quibus cum unus per čásum dormientis caput offendisset, \textsuperscript{5} e somnō excitātus\textsuperscript{6} est leō eumque comprehendit. Iam dévorātūrus erat běstiolam, miserābiliter tamen ērantī benignē vitam condōnāvit. Paulō\textsuperscript{4} post cum per silvās nōn satis cautē praedam vestigāret, in vēnātorīs laqueōs incidit leō. Frūstrā studēns sē liberāre furībundus rugiēbat. Procul eum audīvit músculus celeriterque adventāvit. Iam cum inrētitum eum spectāvisset,\textsuperscript{6} cui ipse vitam libertātemque dēbēret, grātō animō\textsuperscript{6} ad laqueōs adrēpsit eōsque conrōsit. Ita leō omni periculō est liberātus praeclārumque\textsuperscript{7} misericordiae suae praemium\textsuperscript{8} reportāvit.\textsuperscript{9} \textit{Old Fable.}\n
\textsection{10. The Dancing Horses.}

In Ītaliā prope sinum Tarentīnum inter aliās Graecās urbē sitā\textsuperscript{10} erat Sybaris, cūius incolae divitiis\textsuperscript{11} et lūxuriā fērē\textsuperscript{12}
superābant Corinthios. Artem bellicam contemnēbant, contrā summō cum studiō omnibus lūdicris vacābant. Lepidē igitur etiam equōs ita instituerant ut inter epulās ad tibiārum numerum saltārent. Sciēbant id Crotōniātae finitimi. Itaque cum aliquando bellum gererent cum illis, in aciem nōn tubās et tubicinēs sed tibiās et tibicinēs sēcum dūxērunt. Proeli initiō quam diū ēminus pūgnābātur, silēbant illi; ubi vērō ad ferrum et manūs rēs est adducta, subitō cantāvērunt numerōs ad saltandum aptōs. Vix autem hōs audiverant equi Sybarītārum, cum, tamquam mediis in conviviis essent, saltāre coepe runt et dominis strāgem concitāvērunt tristi ssimam.

11. Augustus and the Raven.


deret. At ille auditā vōce, "Iam satis," inquit, "domi habeō tālium salūtātorum." Tum corvus tristem domini sui voltum animadvertēns crocitat: "Oleum et operam perdidi." Quae rēs risum excussit Augustō tantamque praeuit laetitiam ut statim tanti emeret avem quanti etiam tum ēmerat nūllum.


Ad rīvum eundem lūpus et āgnus vēnerant
Sitī compūlsi: sūperiōr stābat lūpus
Longēque inferior āgnus. Tūm faucē improbā
Latrō incitātus iūrgi causam īntulīt.

"Cūr," inquit, "tūrbulētam fēcestī mihi
Aquām bibenti?" Lānigēr contrā timēns:
"Qui pōssum, quaēsō, fācere quōd quererīs, lupē?
Ā tē dēcūrrit ād mēs haustūs liquōr."
Repūlsus ille vēritātis vīribūs,

"Ante hōs sex mēnsis māle," ait, "dīxistī mihi."
Respondit āgnus: "Équidem nātus nōn erām."
"Pater, hērcle, tūus ibī," inquit, "māledixisti mihi."
Atque īta coṇrēptum lācerat īnīstā necē.

Stories, Fables, and Letters.

Haec prōpter fīlōs scīpīta est hōminēs fābulā
Qui fīctis cāsūs īnnocēntis ëpprimūnt.  

PHAEDRUS.

14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.


15. The Fox and the Monkey.


"dicēbat pater absconditum esse thēsaurum." Iam cupidē illūc penetrābat simia, sed subitō¹ in vēnātōris laqueōs incidit. Frūstrā cum implōrāvisset amici auxilium, sērō sēnsit cōnsilium et temperantiam régi magis opus esse quam artem saltandi. Volpēs autem, convocātis bēstiis omnibus, trepidantem in laqueis ostendēns³ simiam, "Habētis iam," inquit, "saltantem vestrum rēgem."" Old Fable.


Resarciēbat pauper quidam faber nāvem in fluviō ad an-coram dēligātam. Inter opus excidit ei secūris et in aquam dēmersa est. Tum ille in nāvi sedēns cum flētū et lūctū iactūram déplōrābat.⁴ Quās miserābilis vocēs cum audīret deus fluvi, ēmersit et quid rei esset interrogāvit.⁵ "Ēheu," respondit faber, "secūris mea incautō⁶ mihi excidit in profundum neque habeō quō emam⁷ alteram." Immersit sē deus et paulō post revertit dextrā gerēns secūrim, nōn eam tamen quam āmiserat faber, sed auream, et num haec esset ea quam

Cf. ¹ subito, p. 7, l. 8. — ² vēnātōris laqueōs incidit, 6, 8. — ³ ostendo-ret, 9, 10. — ⁴ déplōrāns, 3, 16. — ⁵ interrogat, 9, 19. — ⁶ opposite, cautē, 6, 8. — ⁷ emeret, 8, 5.
Stories, Fables, and Letters.


15

17. The Husbandman and his Sons.

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi adpropinquāre sentiret, filiōs convocāvit, quōs, ut fieri solet, interdum discordāre sciēbat, et fascem virgulārum adferri iubet. Quibus adlātīs filiōs hortābātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulis singulās virgās, eis que celeriter frāctis, docuit illōs quam firma rēs esset concordia quamque imbēcillīs discordia.


Dēmosthenēs, clārus ille ōrātor, cum aliquandō in causā capitāli quendam dēfenderet atque iūdicēs vidēret parum attentōs, “Paulisiper,” inquit, “auris mihi praeβēte rem narrātūrō novam atque auditū iucundam.” Ad quae verba cum illi iam auris adrēxisse, “Adulēscēns,” inquit, “qui-

dam asinum\(^1\) condūxerat, quō Athenis Megaram veherētur. Media fērē\(^2\) viā cum aestus meridiānus ingravēsceret neque arborēs\(^8\) aut tēcta umbram praebērent, asinum ille sustinuit et dēpositis clitellis ita in eis consēdit ut animālis umbrā 5 obtegerētur. Id vērō agāsō vetābat, asinum clāmāns locātum esse, nōn umbram asīnī. Alter ē contrāriō contendēbat, quoniam umbra sēparāri nōn possit ab asinō, necessāriō eam ūnā\(^4\) cum asinō esse locātam. Atque ea rīxa adeō inter eōs exārsit ut etiam pūgnis certārent. Tandem in iūs\(^6\) am-10 bulant.\(^6\) Hāctenus ēnārrātā historiolā, ubi iūdicēs diligentem vidit auscultantis, repente Dēmosthenēs ē suggestū dēscendit. Tum revocātus a iūdicibus rogātusque\(^7\) ut reliquam fābulam pergeret ēnārrāre, “Quid!” inquit, “dē asīnī umbrā libet audire, causam hominīs dē vitā periclitantis nōn audiētis?”

19. The Death of Pompey.

15 Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae\(^8\) Syriae cōnsiliō et aeris māgnō pondere ad militārem ūsum in nāvis impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātīs, Pēlusium pervēnin.\(^9\) Ibi cāsū\(^10\) rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetātē, māgnis cōpiis cum sorōre Cleopātrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus
20 per suōs propinquōs atque amicōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopātrae nōn longō spatiō ab ēius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius misit, ut prō hospitiō atque amicitī patris Alexandriā recipērētur atque illius opibus in calamītāte tegerētur. Sed qui ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō légāti-
25 ōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortāri ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent, nēve ēius fortūnam dēspicerent. Hīs tunc cōgnitis rēbus, amici rēgis, qui propter aetātem ēius in prōcurrātione erant rēgni,

Cf. \(^1\) asinum, p. 3, 1. 10. \(^2\) fērē, 1, 7. \(^3\) arborēs, 1, 6. \(^4\) ūnā, 4, 11. \(^6\) iūs, 5, 3. \(^6\) ambulō, 1, 5. \(^7\) rogāvit, 3, 11. \(^8\) adeuntīs, 5, 2. \(^9\) pervenīamus, 9, 24. \(^10\) cāsum, 6, 4.
Fig. 9. — Cnæbus Pompeius Magnus.
sive timōre adductī nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive déspectā ēius fortūnā, eis qui erant ab eo missī palam liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad régem venire iussērunt; ipsi, clam cōnsiliō initō, Achillan, praefectum 5 régium, singulāri hominem audāciā, et L. Septīmium, tri-
būnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt. Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus nāviculam parvulam cōnscen-
dit cum paucis suis, et ibi ab Achillā et Septimio interficitur.

Caesar: Bell. Civ. iii, 103.

20. Niobe and her Children.

Niobē Tantāli, Phrygiae rēgis, filia et Amphionis, rēgis 10 Thēbānōrum, uxor erat. Erat autem fēmina et pulcherrima et superbissima, nōn sōlum propter genus et formam mari-
tique potentiam sed etiam propter māgnum liberōrum numu-
erum. Septem enim filii erant septemque filiae. Superbia autem ei tristitiaae acerbissimae causa liberisque causa per-

Cf. 1 occupāvit, p. 7, l. 15.— 2 opp. palam. — 3 parvulum, 3, 17.— 4 opp. multīs. — 5 liberis, 2, 7.

21. Cρoėsus, King of Lydia.


2. Croesus, cum hōc respōnsum comperisset, victoriām certam spērābat et cōpiis suis Cýri rēgnōm intrāvit. Is autem


Cum māgna cōpia lignōrum adportāta esset et Croesus vinctus mortem exspectāret, māgna vōce clāmāvit: “Ō Solōn, Solōn, Solōn!” Cýrus autem, cum hōc audīvīsset,

scīre dēsiderāvit quid illis verbīs significāret. Tum Croesus nārrāvit quid Solōn Athēniēnsis dē fortūnā hūmānā docuisset.

His verbīs Cýrus ita commōtus et perturbātus est ut Croesum liberāret et rogāret ut suus amīcus esset. Itaque Croesus in societāte rēgis mānsit et eī saepe cōnsiliis suis prōfuit. Cýrus autem ante mortem filium monuīt ut hanc Croesī senis amīcitiam cōnservāret.

22. An Epitome of Roman History.

Primus urbis Rōmae annus fuit ante Christum nātum septingentēsimus quinquagēsimus tertius. Regēbant civitātem initiō régēs per annōs fērē ducentōs quinquāgintā, quam aetātem quasi infantiam nōminēs populi Rōmāni. Annō quingentēsimō nōnō, postquam dētrūsus est ex rēgnō Tarquinius Superbus, créati sunt duo annui cōnsulēs, ut, si ūnus malus esset, alter eum habēns potestātem similem coercēret. Quem mōrem observāvērunt Rōmāni quinque fērē saecula. Hoc tantum temporis spatium si divisēris in duās partis aequālis, habēbis iam populi Rōmāni adulēscēntiam et aetātem mediam, quārum utraque annōrum numerō exaequāt infantiam. Neque enim errāvērunt viri docti, qui tamquam per lūdīcrum ad calculōs revocantēs Rōmānōrum memoriam tria statuērunt ducentōrum quinquāgintā fērē annōrum spatia. Nam redāctās habuērunt Rōmāni sub potestātem suam Italiae gentis ante Christum nātum mediō saeculō tertīō, et ubi annō ducentēsimō sexāgēsimō quartō bellum indixērunt Poenis, prōpāgāre coeṣpērunt imperi terminōs super mare quod vocāmus medium. Iūre igitur eō temporis mōmentō statuimus novae aetātis initium. Finitum autem est primum illud bellum Pūnicum annō ducentēsimō quadrāgēsimō prīmō. Bellō Pūnicō secundō bellāvērunt Rōmāni cum Hannibalē ab annō ducentēsimō duodēvīcē-simō usque ad ēius saeculī ultīmum; bellō Pūnicō tertīō finītō dēlēvērunt ā Carthāginem aemulam annō centēsimō quadrāgēsimō sextō, quō annō etiam Corinthiīs diruta est. Ē proxīmō saeculō memoriae mandātum est necātum C. Iūlium Caesarem annō quadrāgēsimō quartō, institūtum do-minātum ab Octāviānō Augustō annō trīcēsimō prīmō.

Cf. 1 mōrēs, p. 4. 1. 10.— 2 spatium, 4. 16.— 3 tamquam, 7. 10.— 4 fērē, 1. 7.— 6 iūs, 5. 3.— 6 dēlēbit, 15. 26.— 7 instituērunt, 2. 1.
23. The Omen of the Puppy.

L. Aemilius Paulus èius qui ad Cannàs cecidit filius erat. Cònsul sortitus est Macedoniam pròvinciam, in quà Persès, Philippi filius, paterni in Ròmanòs odi hérès, bellum reno- vàverat. Cum adversus Persèn prefectùrus esset et domum suam ad vesperum rediret, filiolum suam Tertiam, quae tunc erat admodum parva, òsculàns animadvertit tristiculam.


CICERO (adapted).


Scipiò Aemiliànus, cum in Hispànià sub Lúcullò duce militàret atque Intercatia, prævalidum oppidum, circumse- dèrètur, primus moenia èius cònsendit; neque erat in eò exercitù quisquam, aut nòbilitàte aut animi indole aut futùris àctis, cuius magis salùti parci et cònsuli débèret. Sed tunc clàrissimus quisque iuvenum prò amplificandà et tuendà patrià plùrimum labòris àc periculi sustinèbat, déforme sibi

Cf. hérès, p. 15, l. 11.— animadvertit, 5, 14.— perierunt, 3, 7.— mortuorum, 2, 14.— pergeret, 12, 13.— cònsendit, 14, 7.— in- dolès, 2, 13.— dèbèret, 6, 12.— clàrus, 11, 23.— periculò, 6, 13.
existimāns quōs dignitāte praestāret ab his virtūte superāri. Ideōque Aemiliānus hanc militiam, aliis propter difficultātem vitantibus, sibi dépoposcit. Valerius Maximus.

25. The Battle of Thermopylæ.


2. Quattuor diēs Xerxēs cum multis suis milibus hominum exspectāvit; quintō diē, cum Leōnidās cōpiās nōn abdūxisset, proelium commisit. Sed māgnus numerus Persārum aut volnerātus aut interfectus a Graecis cecidit; reliqui fugērunt. Tum decem milia élēctorum militum, quibus nōmen Immortālēs erat, ā rēge in angustiās coniecta sunt. Sed etiam hi cessērunt. Cum rēx iam dē victoriā désperāret, prōdītor inventus est. Ephiāltēs enim, qui Persārum pecūniā corruptus erat, Persis mónstrāvit quā via trānsitum efficerent

et ab alterō latere impetum\(^1\) in Graecōs facerent. Cum Leōnidās hūius rei nūntium accēpisset, māgnam partem exercitus remisit. Ipse cum exiguis cōpiis mānsit.\(^2\) Accēperat enim hōc ōrāculum: “Aut dēlēbitur\(^3\) Sparta aut rēx interficiētur.” Trecenti igitur\(^4\) illi Lacedaemonii et septingenti Thespiēnsēs Persārum impetum sustinuērunt; animis ferōcissimis contrā eōs cucurrērunt et, cum diū pūgnāvissent multōsque hostis interfēcissent, omnēs cecidērunt.


Tristissimus\(^5\) haec tibi scribō, Fundānī nostri filiā minōre dēfunctā, quā puellā nihil umquam fēstivius, amābilius, nec modo longiore vītā sed prope immortālitāte dignius vidi.

Nōndum annōs quattuordecim implēverat,\(^6\) et iam illī anīlis prūdentia, mātrōnālis gravitās erat, et tamen suāvitās puel-

Cf. \(^1\) impetum, p. 2, l. 9. — \(^2\) mānsit, 16, 12. — \(^3\) dēlēbit, 15, 26. — \(^4\) igitur, 3, 14. — \(^5\) tristissimam, 4, 8. — \(^6\) implent, 1, 3.
lāris cum virgināli verēcundia. Ut illa patris cervicibus inhaerēbat! Ut nōs amīcōs paternōs et amanter et modestē complēctēbātur! Ut nūtricēs, ut pedagogōgōs, ut praecceptōrēs prō suō quemque officiō diligentēbat! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter lēctītābat! Ut parēc custōditēque lūdēbat! Quā illa temperantia, quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicis obsequēbātur, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē déstitūtām corporis viribus vigōre animī sustinēbat. Dūrāvit hic illī usque ad extrēmum nec aut spatiō valētūdinis aut metū mortis infrāctūs est, quō plūris graviōresque nōbis causās relinqueret et désiderī et dolūris. O triste plānē acerbumque fūnus! O morte ipsā mortis tempus indignius! Iam dēstināta erat ēgregiō iuveni, iam elēctus nūptiārum diēs, iam nōs vocāti. Quod gaudium quō maerōre mūtātum est! Nōn possim exprimere verbīs quantum animō volnūs accēperim, cum audīvi Fundānum ipsum praecipientem, quod in vestīs, margarīta, gemmās fuerat ērogātūrus, hōc in tūs et unguentā et odōrēs impenderētūr.

Pliny: Epist. v, 16.

27. Aemilius Paulus and his Sons.

Aemilius Paulus, nunc fēlicissimi nunc miserrimi patris clārissimae repraesentātiō, ex quattuor filiis formae insignis, ēgregiae indolis, duōs iūre adoptiōnis in Cornēliam Fabiamque gentem trānslātōs sibi ipsi dēnegāvit; duōs ei fortūna abstulit. Quōrum alter triumphum patris fūnere suō quarum ante diem praecessit, alter in triumphāli currū cōn spectum post diem tertium exspirāvit. Itaque qui ad dōnandōs usque liberōs abundāverat in orbitāte subitō dēstitūtus est. Quem cāsum quō rōbore animī sustinuerit, ōratiōne quam

dē rebus à sē gestis apud populum habuit hanc adiciendō clausulum nūlli ambiguum reliquit: "Cum in māximō prō- ventū fēlicitātīs nōstra, Quiritēs, timērem nē quid mali fortūna mōlirētur, lovem optimum māximum Iūnōnemque rēginam et Minervam precātus sum ut, si quid adversi populō Rōmānō imminēret, tōtum in meam domum conver- terētur. Quāpropter bene habet; adnuendo enim vōtis meis id ēgērunt ut vōs potius meō cāsū doleātīs quam ego vestrō ingemiserem."

Valerius Maximus.

28. Androclus and the Lion.

The Gentle Lion.


The Cause Explained.


Imperātor, qui hāc rē mirābili mōtus erat, Androclō nōn sōlum libertātem sed etiam leōnem dōnāvit.

29. Two Letters of Cicero to his Wife.

1. Tullius Terentiae Suæ S.

S. V. B. E. E. V. Valētūdinem tuam velim cūrēs diligen-tissimē. Nam mihi et scriptum et nūntiātum est tē in febrīm subitō incidisse. Quod celeriter mē fēcisti dē Caesaris


2. Tullius S. D. Terentiae Suæ.

In Tusculanum nos venturós putamus aut Nönis aut postridié. Ibi ut sint omnia parata. Plūrés enim fortasse nóbiscum erunt, et ut arbitror diūtius ibi commorábimur.\textsuperscript{2} Lābrum si in balneō nōn est, ut sit; item cētera quae sunt ad victum et valētūdinem\textsuperscript{3} necessāria. Valè. Kal. Octōbr. dé Venusinō.

30. A Roman Ultimatum.

Gālius Popilius à senātū lēgātus\textsuperscript{4} ad Antiochum missus, ut 10 bellō sē quō Ptolemaeum lacesēbat abstinēret, cum ad eum vēnísset atque is prōmptō animō et amicissimō voltū\textsuperscript{5} dexterram ei porrēxisset, invicem illi suam porsigere nōluit, sed tabellās senātūs cōnsultum continentis trādidit. Quās ut lēgit Antiochus, dixit sē cum amicis conlocūtūrum.\textsuperscript{6} Indignatus Popilius quod aliquam moram interposuisset, virgā\textsuperscript{7} solum quō insētēbat dēnotavit et, “Prius,” inquit, “quam hoc circulō excēdās, dā responsūm quod senātui referam.” Nōn lēgātum locūtum, sed ipsam cūriam ante oculōs positam\textsuperscript{8} créderēs; continuō enim rēx adfirmāvit fore nē amplius 20 dē sē Ptolemaeus quererētur, ac tum dēmum Popilius manum ēius tamquam soci adprehendit. Quam efficāx est animi sermōnisque absīsa gravitās! Eōdem mōmentō\textsuperscript{9} Syriae rēgnum\textsuperscript{10} terruit,\textsuperscript{11} Aegypti tēxit.\textsuperscript{12} Valerius Maximus.

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} opus, p. 10, 1. 4. — \textsuperscript{2} moror, 6, 2. — \textsuperscript{3} valētūdinem, 24, 23. — \textsuperscript{4} lēgātūs, 15, 24. — \textsuperscript{5} voltūm, 8, 3. — \textsuperscript{6} conloquī, 12, 25. — \textsuperscript{7} virgās, 11, 20. — \textsuperscript{8} pōnerent, 19, 15. — \textsuperscript{9} mōmentō, 17, 20. — \textsuperscript{10} rēgnum, 9, 17. — \textsuperscript{11} terrēbantur, 15, 22. — \textsuperscript{12} tegent, 19, 18.
31. The Haunted House.

Erat Athēnis spatiōsa et capāx domus, sed infāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium noctis sonus ferri\textsuperscript{1} et, si attenderēs ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum longius primō,\textsuperscript{2} deinde ē proximō reddēbātur.\textsuperscript{3} Mox\textsuperscript{4} adpārēbat idōlon, senex māciē et squālōre cōnfectus,\textsuperscript{5} prōmissā barbā, horrenti capillō; crūribus com-

![Fig. 15.—Peristyle of a Pompian House.](image)

pedēs, manibus catēnās gerēbat\textsuperscript{6} quatiēbatque. Inde inhabitantibus tristēs diraeque noctēs per metum vigilābantur; vigiliam morbus et crēscente formidine mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū\textsuperscript{7} quoque, quamquam abscesserat imāgō, memoria imāginis oculis inerrābat, longiorque causīs timōris timor erat. Déserta inde et damnāta\textsuperscript{8} sólitudine domus tōtaque

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} ferrum, p. 7, l. 8. — \textsuperscript{2} primō, 2, 13. — \textsuperscript{8} reddiēdiētī, 8, 10. — \textsuperscript{4} mōx, 1, 10. — \textsuperscript{6} cōnfectō, 12, 24. — \textsuperscript{6} gerēns, 10, 15. — \textsuperscript{7} interdiū, 5, 17. — \textsuperscript{8} damnātus est, 16, 4.
Stories, Fables, and Letters.

illī mónstrō relicita; prōscīrbēbātur tamen seu quis emere 1 seu quis condūcere 2 ignārus tanti mali vellet. Venit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, legit titulum, auditōque pretiō, quia suspecta vilitās, percontātus, omnia docētur 3 ac nihilō minus, immō tantō magis, condūcit.

Ubi coepit advesparāscere, iubet sternī sibi primā domūs parte, poscit pugillāris, stilum, lūmen; suōs omnis in inte- riōra dimittit, ipse ad scribendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns auditā simulācra et inānis sibi metūs fingeret. Initīō, quāle ubique, silentium noctis, dein concuti 10 ferrum, vincula movēri; ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum, sed affirmāre animum auribusque praeundere; tum crēbrēscere fragor, 4 adventāre, 5 et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā limen audiri; respicit, videt āgnōscitque 6 nārrātam sibi effigiem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō 7 similis vocanti. Hic 15 contrā ut paulum exspectāret manū significat rūrusque cēris et stilō incumbi; illa scribentis capiti catēnis insonābat. Respicit rūrus idem quod prius innuentem, nec morātus 8 tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa lentō gradū quasi gravls vinculis. Postquam dēflēxit in āream domūs, repente 9 20 dilapsa dēserit comitem; désertus herbās et folia concerpta signum locō pōnit. Posterō diē adit magistratūs, monet ut illum locum essidi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserita catēnis et implicita, quae corpus aevō terrāque putrefactum nūda et exēsa relierat vinculis; conlēcta publicē sepeliuntur. 25 Domus posteā rite conditis mānibus caruit.

Pliny: Epist. vil, 27.

32 An Eclipse Foretold.

Castris permūnitis, C. Sulpicius Gallus, tribūnus militum secundae legiōnis, qui praetor superiōre annō fuerat, cōnsulis

Second Year Latin.

permissū ad contiōnem militibus vocātis, prōnūntiāvit nocte proximā, nē quis id prō portentō acciperet, ab hōrā secundā āque\(^1\) ad quartam hōram noctis lūnam dēfectūram esse. Id, quia nātūrali ārdine statīs temporibus fiat,\(^2\) et scirī ante et 5 praedīci posse. Itaque quem ad modum, quia certī sōlis lūnaeque et ortūs et occāsūs sint, nunc plēnō orbe, nunc senēscēntem exiguō\(^8\) cornū fulgēre lūnam nōn mīrārentur,\(^4\) ita nē obscurāri quidem, cum condātur umbrā terrae, trahere in prōdigium dēbēre.\(^3\) Nocte quam pridiē nōnās Septembris 10 insecūta est diēs, ēditā hōrā cum lūna dēfēcisset, Rōmānīs militibus Gallī sapientia prope divīna vidēri; Macedonas ut triste prōdigium, occāsum régni pernicieōque\(^6\) gentis portendēns, mōvit, nec aliter vātēs. Clāmor ululātusque in castrīs Macedōnum fuit, dōnec lūna in suam lūcem ēmer- 15 sit.\(^7\)

Livy, 44, 37.

33. Anthony and the Usurer.

Antōnius sacrificus invitārat ēnum atque alterum bellum homunculum forte obviōs in viā. Cum redisset\(^8\) domum, repperit culinam frigidam, nec erat nummus in loculis,— quod illī nēquāquam erat insolēns. Hic opus\(^9\) erat celeri 20 cōnsiliō. Subdūxit sē tacītus, et ingressus\(^10\) culinam faenerā- tōris quicum illī erat familiāritās, quod frequenter ageret cum illō, digressā famulā subdūxit ēnum ex öllis aēneiēs ūnā\(^11\) cum carnibus iam coctīs, āc veste\(^12\) tēctam\(^13\) dēferēbat domum; dat coquae; iubet prōtinus effundi carnīs et iūs ēn aliam 25 ēllum fictīlem, simulque faenerātōris ēllum défricāri dōnec\(^14\) nītēret. Eō factō mittit puerum ad faenerātōrem qui dēpo- sitō pignore drachmās duās ā faenerātōre sūmat mútuō, sed accipiat chirographum quod testārētur tālem\(^15\) ēllum missam

ad ipsum. Faenerător nōn āgnōscēns 1 ōllam, utpote dēfric-tam āc nitentem, recipit pignus, dat chirographum, et numerat 2 pecūniam; eā pecūniā puer emit 3 vinum. Ita prōspectum est convivīō.


ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulosum.

34. A Practical Joke.

Quidam nōmine Maccus cum vēnisset in civitātem quae dicitur Leydis, āc vellet, novus hospes, 11 innōtēscēre iocō 25 quōpiam (nam is erat homini mōs) ingressus 12 est officinam calceāri; salūtāt. Ille cupiēns extrūdere mercis suās rogat

numquid vellet. Maccō coniciénte 1 oculōs in ocreās ibi
pēnsilis, rogat sūtor num vellet ocreās. Adnuente 2 Maccō
quærīt aptās 3 tibiīs illius; inventās alacritē prōtulit, et ut
solent, īndūcīt illi. Ubi iam Maccus esset ēleganter ocreā-
tus, "Quam bellē, 4" inquit, "congrueret hīs ocreis pār
calceōrum duplicātis soleis!" Rogātus an et calceōs vellet,
adnuit. Reperti 5 sunt et additi pedibus. Maccus laudābat
ocreās, laudābat calceōs. Calceārius tacitē 6 gaudēns suc-
cinēbat illī laudantī, spērāns 7 pretium aequīs posteāquam
emptōri tantopere placēret merx. Et iam erat nōn nūlla
contrācta familiāritās. Hic Maccus, "Dic mihi," inquit,
"bonā fidē, numquamme ūsū vēnit tibi ut quem sic ocreis
et calceis ad cursum armāssēs, quem ad modum nunc
armāsti mē, abierit nōn numerātō 8 pretiō?" "Numquam,"
ait ille. "Atqui sī forte, 9" inquit, "veniat ūsū, quid tū tum
facerēs?" "Cōnsequerēr, 10" inquit calceārius, "fugientem.
Tum Maccus: "Sēriōne ista dicis an iōcō?" "Plānē sēriō,"
inquit alter, "iōquor; et sēriō facerēm." "Experiar," ait
Maccus. "Ēn prō calceis praecurrō, tū cursū sequere."
Simulque cum dictō 11 coniēcit sē in pedēs.
Calceārius ē vestigiō 12 consecūtus est, quantum poterat
clāmitās: "Tenēte fūrem! Tenēte fūrem!" Ad hanc vōcem
cum civēs undique prōsiluissent ex aedibus, hōc commentō
cohibuit illōs Maccus nē quis manum iniceret. Ridēns āc
voltū 18 placidō, "Nē quis," inquit, "remorētur cursum nos-
trum; certāmen est dē cúpā cerevisiae." Itaque iam omnēs
praebēre 14 sēsē certāminis spectātorēs. Suspicābantur autem
calceārium dolō 16 clāmōrem eum fingere, 16 ut hāc occāsiōne
anteverteret. Tandem calceārius cursū victus, südāns et

— 4 bellē, 9, 14. — 5 repperit, 28, 18. — 6 tacitē, 28, 20. — 7 spērābat,
11 dictō, 18, 10. — 12 vestīgia, 5, 18. — 13 voltū, 25, 12. — 14 praebuit, 8,
anheslus domum reedit. Maccus tulit brabem. Postea aactio furti intentata est, sed magis pericitatus est actor quam reus. Nam Maccus gravabat illum aetione calumniarum, et intendebat legem Rhemiam, quae dictat ut qui crimen intenderit quod probare non possit poenam ferat quam laturus erat reus, si convictus fuisset. Negabat se contractasse rem alienam invito dominis, sed ultrum deferente, nec ullam preti mentionem intercessisse. Se provocasse calcearium ad certamen cursus; illum accipisse conditionem, nec habere quod queratur, cum esset cursu superatus. Quae 10 aetio non multum aberat ab umbra asini.

ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulosum.

35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor.

Sacrificus quidam recerperat mediocrem summam pecuniae, sed argenteae. Id impostor quidam animadverterat. Adit sacrificum, qui gestabat in zonam crumenam nummis turgidam; salutat civiliter; narrat sibi datum negotium a suis ut vici sui parochi mercaretur novum pallium sacrum, quae summa vestis est sacerdoci rem divinam peragenti. Rogat hac in re commodaret sibi tantillum operae ut secum iret ad eos qui vendum huius modi pallia, quod videlicet ex modo corporis ipsius sumeret maius aut minus; nam sibi videri statum in ipsius cum parochi magnitudine vehementer congruere. Hoc officium, cum leve videre tur, facile pollicitus est sacrificus. Adeunt aedis cuiusdam. Preratum est pallium, sacrificus induit, venderit ad firmat mira congruere.

Impostor, cum nunc a fronte nunc a tergo contemplatus esset sacrificum, satis probavit pallium; sed causatus est a

fronte brevius quam pār esset. Ibi vēnditor, nē nōn prō-
cēderet contrāctus, negat id esse palli vitium, sed crumēnam
turgidam efficere ut eā partē offenderet brevitās. Quid
multa? Sacrificus dēpōnit crumēnam; dēnuō contemplan-
tur. Ibi impostor āversō sacrificō crumēnam adripit āc
sēmet in pedēs conicit. Sacerdōs cursū insequitur, ut erat
palliātus, et sacrificum vēnditor. Sacrificus clāmat, “Tenēte
fürem!” vēnditor clāmat, “Tenēte sacrificum!” impostor
clāmat, “Cohibēte sacrificum furentem!” et crēditum est
cum vidērent illum sic ōrnātum in pūblicō currere. Itaque
dum alter alteri in morā est, impostor effugit.

ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulorum.

Cf. ¹ brevē, p. 15, l. 20. — ² dēpositō, 28, 26. — ³ coniēcit, 30, 20. —
fürem, 30, 22. — ⁶ cohībuit, 30, 24.
II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

CYRUS, KING OF PERSIA.

[Modern. See Table of Contents.]

His Parentage.


Cf. ¹ ōráculum, p. 15, l. 24. — ² concessum esset, 19, 10. — ³ mandātum est, necātum, 17, 27. — ⁴ misericordiae, 6, 13. — ⁵ aetātem, 17, 4. — ⁶ mônstrāns, 9, 27.
Fig. 16.—A Record of Cyrus the Great.
His Early Years.


Plan to make him King.

3. Cum Astyagēs senex¹² esset dūrus et crūdēlis, Cýrus autem adulēscēns et Mēdis et Persis grātissimus, Harpagus brevi tempore effēcit ut etiam Mēdi novum rēgem dēsiderā- rent.¹³ Cýrum autem dē libertāte Persārum admonsuit et saepe

adhortātus est ut avum ē rēgnō éiceret idque ipse occu-
pāret. Cōnsiliō Harpagi Cýrus pāruit et ita ēgit. Omnis
nōbilis Persās convocāvit et eis epistulam mónstrāvit." Ḥāc epistulā," inquit, "avus meas vōbis imperat ut mihi
5 in omnibus rēbus oboediātis." Cum haec verba locūtus
esset, eis labōrēs molestissimōs mandāvit. Sed post finitōs
labōrēs cum omnēs exhausti essent et sortem suam miserā-
rentur, Cýrus in sequentem diem eōs ad cēnam opulentis-
simam et ad lūdōs laetōs invitāvit. Tum eōs interrogāvit
10 num in locō labōrum gravissimōrum primī diēi gaudia
secundī diēi sibi ēlígerent. Respondērunt omnēs: "Illis
gaudiis semper dēlectēmur." Tum ille, "Hōc," inquit,
"hābēbitis, si cōnsilia mea secūti eritis et imperiō Mēdōrum
vōs liberāveritis. Adgredimini" igitur, Persae, Astyagem et
15 profitēmini libertātem vestram." Māgnō clāmōre Persae
Cýri verba probāverunt et cum Astyage bellum prō libertāte
gerere cōnstituērunt.

He Conquers Astyages.

4. Astyagēs cum dē tumultū Persārum comperisset, Cý-
rum ad sē vocāvit. Is autem respondit: "Breviōre tempore
20 apud tē erō quam ipse optāveris." Māgnā igitur celeritāte
Astyagēs omnis Mēdōs armāvit, eisque eundem Harpagum
praefēcit quem ōlim odiō acerbissimō incenderat. Is autem
per nūntium Cýrum hortātus est nē Mēdōrum cópiās timē-
ret, cum ipse omnis rēs ad illius victōriam necessāriās pró-
25 vidisset. Itaque cum proelium committerētur, nōn nūlli
Mēdōrum pūgnāverunt, multi autem aut fūgērunt aut Har-
pagum secūtī sunt, qui cum Cýrō sē coniūnxit. Astyagēs,
cum hōc comperisset, ipse cum fidēllissimis Mēdis qui ex

Cyrus, King of Persia.


The Capture of Babylon.

5. Erat autem Babylon urbīs opulentissima et potentissima ad Euphrātem flūmen sita. Ante mūrōs Cýrus Babylonīōs primō impētū fugāvit. Sed cum urbem obsidēre incēpisset, propter cōpiam cibōrum quam incolae prōvidērunt et propter ingentis mūrōs ea rēs māgnās habuit difficūltātēs. Itaque dolum adhibuit. Fossam enim ab eō locō ubi flūmen ad urbem accēdēbat hōris noctūnis, nē Babylonīi sentient, ad eam partem dūxit ubi flūmen ex urbe veniēbat. Ita effēcit ut, cum fossa complēta esset, aqua in flūmine ipsō deesset et locō vacuō militibus via in urbem parārētur. Ita militēs in urbem nocte ingressi et mūrōrum portārumque potiti sunt. Tanta autem urbs erat ut, cum iam partēs mūris propinquae ā Cýri militibus expūgnātae essent, ei qui in mediā urbe habitābant dē illā rē nūntium nōndum accēpissent. Cum hūius tantae urbis potitus esset, Cýrus etiam prōvinciās rēgni Babylonīcī brevi tempore expūgnāvit. Iūdæōs autem,

Second Year Latin.

qui a regibus Babyloniorum capti et ex patria abducti erant, in patriam remisit eisque concessit ut templum restituerent.

War with the Barbarians.


Death of Cyrus.

7. Tum hunc nuntium Tomyris ad Cyrum misit: "Moneo tē, rex crudelissime, ut mihi filium remittas et exercitum abducas. Nisi id feceris, calamitatem meam ulciscar et


Fig. 17.—Tomb of Cyrus the Great.
THE STORY OF ULYSSES.

[Ritchie: Fabulae Faciles.]

Homeward Bound.


The Lotus Eaters.

2. Postquam tamen paucā miliaria passuum à lītore Trōiae progressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre possēt, sed aliae aliās in partis disicereōntur. Nāvis autem quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur vi tempestātis ad meridiem dēlāta decimō diē ad lītus Libyae adpulsa est. Ancoris iactīs Ulixēs cōnstituit nōn nūllum ē socīs in terram expōnere, qui aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra ēius regiōnis cōgnōscerent. Hi igitur ē


The Lotus Eaters (continued).

3. At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vespérum exspectāsset, veritus nē sociī suī in periculō versārentur, nōn nūllōs ē reliquis misit, ut quae causa esset morae cōgnōscerent. Hi igitur in terram expositi ad vicum qui nōn longē āfuit sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vinō ēbriōs reppe rērunt. Tum ubi causam veniendi docuērunt, eis persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum ad nāvem redirent. Illī tamen resistere āc manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, nūntiī rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. Hīs rébus cōgnitī Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus qui in nāvī relictī sunt ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus ut sponte suā redirent, manibus eōrum post terga vinctīs, invitōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam celerrīmē ē portū solvit.

The One-eyed Giant.

4. Postridiē ēius diēi postquam tōtam noctem rémis contenderant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem adpulērunt. Tum, quod nātūram ēius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duo-

Cf. 1 incolae, p. 37, l. 17. 2 victum, 25, 8. 3 omnīnō, 4, 15. 4 mānsit, 24, 10. 5 cibīs, 38, 21. 6 vespérum, 18, 5. 7 verērētur, 38, 11. 8 cōgnōserent, 40, 23. 9 reppe rēsset, 39, 10. 10 docuīt, 11, 21. 11 nūntium, 20, 2. 12 frūstrā, 6, 9. 13 vinctus, 16, 6. 14 tollēre, 27, 11. 15 solvērunt, 40, 7. 16 postridiē, 25, 5. 17 adpulsa est, 40, 21.
decim ē sociis in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā litore prōgressī ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitāri sēnsērunt; ēius enim introitum arte et manibus mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, ētsi intellegēbant se nōn sine periculō id factūros, antrum intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingenti-

FIG. 18.—HEAD OF A CYCLOPS.

bus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur quis eam sēdem inco- leret, sonitum terribilem audīvērunt, et oculis ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vidērunt, humānā quidem speciē et fīgūrā, sed ingenti māgnitūdine corpōris. Cum autem animadvertissent gigantem ūnum tantum oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclō-pibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

Cf. 1 permūnitīs, p. 27, l. 27.— 2 mōx, 1, 10.— 3 conditīs, 27, 26.— 4 speciēm, 38, 17.
The Giant's Supper.

5. Cyclōpes autem pāstōrēs erant quidam, qui insulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeus fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpes erant, officinam suam habēbat.

Graeci igitur, simul æc mōnstrum vidērunt, terrōre paene examināti in interiōrem partem spēluncae refugiērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem, ita enim gigās appellātus est, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum saxō ingenti portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediō antrō accendit. Hoc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat et, cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antri cēlāri, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōres an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōres esse neque praedandi causā vēnisse; sed ē Trōiā redeuntis vi tempestātum ē rectō cursū dépulsōs esse; ōrāvit etiam ut sibi sine iniūriā abire licēret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi esset nāvis quā vectī essent; Ulixēs autem, cum bene intellegēret sibi máximē praecavendum esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpis coniectam et omnīnō perfrāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respondō duo ē sociis manū conripuit, et membris eōrum divolis carnem dēvorāre coepit.

No Way of Escape.

6. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terrōr occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed omni spē salūtis dépōsitā mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dépulsā est, humi prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vidisset

Cf. 1 pāstōrī, p. 33, l. 15.— 2 faber, 10, 8.— 3 officinam, 29, 26.— 4 spēluncam, 24, 3.— 5 cēlāvit, 4, 3.— 6 saxum, 15, 9.— 7 latrō, 8, 9.— 8 ōrantī, 6, 6.— 9 vehēbātur, 40, 19.— 10 coniecta sunt, 19, 25.— 11 dēvorātūras erat, 6, 5.— 12 dépulsāntur, 2, 14.— 13 dépōsitō, 28, 26.— 14 dépulsōs esse, l. 15.
Ulixēs, tantam occāsionem rei bene gerendae nōn omittendam arbitrātus,1 in eō erat ut pectus mōnstrī gladiō 2 trānsfigeret. Cum tamen nihil temerē agendum existimāret,3 cōnstituit explōrāre, antequam hōc faceret, quā ratione ex antrō évādere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstructus erat, nihil sibi prōfutūrum4 intellēxit si Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat ūius sāxi māgnitudō ut nē5 ā decem quidem6 hominibus āmovēri posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc dēstitit cōnātū et ad sociōs rediit; quī, cum intellēxisser quō in locō rēs essent, nullā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coeōperunt. Ille tamen nē animōs démitterent6 vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam anteā ē multis et māgnis periculis évāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrimine dīi auxilium ad- lātūri7 essent.

A Plan for Vengeance.

7. Ortā lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit; conreptis8 enim duōbus ē reliquis viris, carnem9 eōrum sīne morā dēvōrāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore10 suō ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum vidērent Graeci, māgnam in spem vēnērunt sē post paulum évāsūrōs. Mōx tamen ab hāc spē repulsi sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Reliqui omni spē salūtis dēpositā11 lāmentis lacrimisque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, qui, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir māgni fuit cōnsili, etsi bene intellegēbat rem in discrimine esse, nōndum12 omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem postquam diū tōtō animō cōgītāvit, hōc cēpit cōnsilium. Ė lignis13 quae in antrō reposita sunt pāulum māgnum dēlēgit,

quem summā cum diligentia praeacūtum fēcit; tum post-
quam sociis quid fieri vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

A Glass too Much.

8. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem
modō quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ütrem vīni prōmpsit, quem
forte, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit, sēcum
adtulerat, et, postquam māgnam crātēram vinō replēvit,
gigantem ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, qui num-
quam anteā vinum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit;
quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et
tertium crātēram replēri iusserit. Tum, cum quaesivisset
quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem
appellāri. Quod cum audivisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est:
"Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam; tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictis cībō vinōque gravātus recu-
buit et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum
Ulixēs sociis convocātis, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petti-
mus facultātem; proinde nē tantam occasiōnem rei bene
gerndae omitāmus."

Nobody.

9. Hāc orātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pāulum igni
calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmi dum dormit flagrante lignō
trānsfōdit; quō factō omnēs in diversās spēluncae partis
sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,
ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per
spēluncam errat Ulixī manum incere cōnābātur; cum tamen
iam omninō caecus esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit.
Interea reliqui Cyclōpes clāmōre auditō undique ad spēlun-
cam convénerunt, et ad introitum\textsuperscript{1} adstantês quid Polyphèmus ageret quaesivérunt, et quam ob causam tantum clámôrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sè graviter volneratúm esse et māgnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen ceterí quaesivissent quis 5 ei vim intulisset, respondit ille Nêminem id fécisse. Quibus auditís únus è Cyclôpibus, “At si nêmô,” inquit, “tē vol-
nerâvit, haud dubium est quin cônsiliô deôrum, quibus resi-
stere nec possúmus nec volumus, hóc suppliciô adficiâris.”
His dictis abierunt Cyclôpes eum in insâniam incidisse\textsuperscript{3}
10 arbitrâti.

The Flight.

10. At Polyphèmus, ubi sociós suós abiisse sēnsit,\textsuperscript{8} furōre atque àmentiā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit;

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{ulysses_under_ram.png}
\caption{Ulysses under the Ram.}
\end{figure}

tandem cum portam invénisset, saxum quō obstructa erat àmôvit, ut pecus\textsuperscript{4} ad agrōs exíret. Tum ipse in introitus sēdit\textsuperscript{15} et, ut quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, terrum ēius manibus

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} introitum, p 42, l. 3. — \textsuperscript{2} incidit, 6, 8. — \textsuperscript{8} sēnsit, 10, 4. — \textsuperscript{4} pecora, 43, 8.
tractābat, nē viri inter ovis exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hoc iniit cōnśilium; bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōni. Primum tris quās vidit pinguissīmas ex ovibus délēgit; quās cum inter sē vīminibus cōnexissent, unum sociōrum ventribus eārum ita subjēcit ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovis hominem sēcum ferentis ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergis eārum imposuit, ovis praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs, ubi rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse vidit, omnis suōs sociōs ex őrdine eōdem modō ēmisit; quō factō ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

Out of Danger.


Second Year Latin.

The Country of the Winds.

12. Pauca milia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad
insulae quandam, nōmine Aeoliam, nāvem adpulit.1 Haec
patria erat Ventōrum.

"Hic vāstō rēx Aēolus āntrō
Lūctantēs ventōs tempōstātēisque sonōrās
Imperīō premit âc vincīlēs et càrcere frēnāt."

Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitiō 2 accēpit atque eis persuāsit ut
ad recuperandās viris pāucōs diēs in eā regiōne commorāren-
tur.3 Septimō diē, cum sociiē laborībus sē recēpissent,
Ulixēs, nē anni tempore ā nāvīgātiōne exclūderētur, sibi
sine morā proficiscendum statuit.4 Tum Aēolus, qui bene
sciēbat eum māximē cupidum esse patriae videndae, Ulixī-
am profectūrō māgnīm dedit saccum ē coriō cōnfectum, in
quō ventōs omnis praetēr ūnum inclūserat. Zephyrum tan-
tum praetermiserat, quod illum ventum ad Ithacam nāvi-
gandō idōneum5 esse sciēbat. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter6
accēpit et grātīs prō tantō beneficiō relātis saccum ad mālum
ligāvit. Tum omnibus ad profectionem7 parātīs merīdīānō
ferē tempore ē portū solvīt.8

The Winds Let Loose.

13. Novem diēs ventō secundissimō cursum tenuērunt,
iamque in conspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs
lassitūdine cōnfectus, ipse enim manū suā gubernābat, ad
quiētem capiēndum recubuīt.9 Aūt socii, qui iamdūdum mirā-
bantur quid in illō saccō inclusum esset, cum vidērēnt ducem
somnō oppressum esse, tantam occāsionem10 nōn omitendum
arbitrātī sunt; crēdēbant enim aurum et argēntum ibi célāri.11

Cf. 1 adpulsa est, p. 40, l. 21. — 2 hospitiō, 12, 22. — 3 morātus, 27,
7 profectionem, 40, 5. — 8 solvērunt, 40, 7. — 9 recubuīt, 45, 15. — 10 oc-
cāsionem, 44, 1. — 11 célāre, 43, 7.
Itaque spē lucrī adductī saccum sine morā solvērunt; quō factō ventī,

"Velut ágmine fáctō,
Quā data pórta, ruúnt et térrās tūrbine pérfiant."

Extemplō tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut illi cursum 5 tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant pro-
fecti referrentur.¹ Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus, quō in locō rēs

Fig. 20.—Opening the Wind Bag.

esset statim intellēxit. Saccum solūtum, Ithacam post ter-
gum relictam, vidit. Tum vērō máximē indignātiōne exārsit² sociōsque obiurgābat, quod cupiditāte pecūniae adducti spem 10 patriae videndae prōiēcissent.

Cf. ¹ referam, p. 25, l. 18.—² exārsit, 12, 9.
Drawing Lots.

14 Brevi intermissō spatiō Graeci insulae cuidam adpro-pinquāvērunt, quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ibi cum nāvem adpulisset, Ulixēs in terram frumentandi causā ēgre-diendum esse statuit; cōgnōverat enim frumentum quod in nāvi habērent iam dēficere. Sociis igitur ad sē convocātis, quō in locō rēs esset et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs in memoriā tenērent quam crudēli morte occubuisserent ei qui nūper in patriam Cyclōpum ēgressi essent, nēmō reper-tus est qui hōc negotium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita essent, rēs ad contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem Ulixēs cōnsēnsū omnium sociōs in duās partis divisit, quārum alteri Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alteri ipse praecesset. Tum hi duo inter sē sortiti sunt, uter in terram ēgredērētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochō sorte ēvēnit ut cum duōbus et viginti sociis rem susciperet.

The House of the Enchantress.

15. His rēbus ita cōnstitūtis, ei qui sorte ducti erant in interiōrem partem insulae profecti sunt. Tantus tamen timor animōs eōrum occupāverat ut nihil dubitārent quin morti obviam irent. Vix quidem poterant ei qui in nāvi relictī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdebant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam iterum visūrōs. Illī autem aliquantulum itineris prōgressi ad villam quandam pervēnērunt summā māgnificentia aedificā-tam; cūius ad .fromStringtium cum adiissent, carmen dulcissimum audīvērunt. Tanta autem fuit ēius vocis dulcēdō ut nūllo modō retinēri possent quin iānuam pulsārent. Hōc factō ipsa Circē forās exiit et summā cum benignitāte omnīs in

hospitium invitāvit. Eurylochus insidiās comparāri suspicātus fortis exspectāre cōnstituit, at reliqui rei novitāte adductī intrāvērunt. Convivium māgnificum invēnērunt omnibus rēbus instrūctum, et iüssū dominae libentissimē accubuērunt. At Circē vinum quod servi adposuērunt medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illi bibissent, gravi sopōre subitō oppressi sunt.

Men Changed to Pigs.

16. Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capiā eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversi sunt. Interea Eurylochus ignārus quid in aedibus agerētur, ad ostium sedēbat; postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum anxiō animō et sollicitō exspectāverat, sōlus ad nāvem regredi cōnstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, anxietāte āc timōre ita perturbātus fuit ut quae vidisset vix lūcidē nārāre posset. At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in periculō versāri, et, gladiō conreptō, Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad istam domum mōnstrāret. Ille tamen multis cum lacrimis Ulixem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē in tantum periculum sē committeret: 'Si quid gravius eī accidisset, omnium salūtem in summō discrimine futūram.' Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invitum sēcum adductūrum; ei licēre, si māllet, in nāvi manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum. Hōc cum māgnā voce dixisset, e nāvi dēsiluit et ūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.

The Counter Charm.

17. Aliquantum itineris progressus ad villam māgnificam pervēnit, quam cum oculis perlūstrāsset, statim intrāre sta-


speciē in porcōs conversi. Num vis ipse in eandem calamitātem venire? ” Ulixēs simul āc vōcem audīvit, deum Mercurium āgnōvit; nūllis tamen precibus ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterēri potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam ei dedit, quam contrā carmina maximē valère dicēbat. “Hanc cape,” inquit, “et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, tū strictō gladiō impetum in eam vidē ut faciās.” His dictis Mercurius

“Mōrtālis visūs mediō sermōne relīquit,
Et procūl in tenuem ēx oculīs evānuit auram.”

The Story of Ulysses.

The Enchantress Foiled.

18. Brevi intermissō spatiō, Ulixēs ad omnia pericula sub-eunda parātus ostium pulsāvit et foribus patefactis ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque anteā facta sunt. Cēnam1 māgnificē instrūctam2 vidit et accumbere iūssus est. Mox, ubi famēs3 cibō dépulsa est, 5 Circē pōculum aureum vinō replētum4 Ulixī dedit. Ille, etsi suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum exhausit. Quō factō Circē, postquam caput ēius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs ēius anteā in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō5 aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta 10 enim vis6 erat ēius herbae quam dederat Mercurius ut neque venēnum neque verba quidquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, sicut iusserat Mercurius, gladiō strictō7 impetum in eam fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre, multis cum lacrimis eum obsecreāre 15 coepit nē vitam adimeret.

Pigs Changed to Men.

19. Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit8 ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūce-ret, certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercurīō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse; nisi id factum esset, ostendit sē débutās9 poenās sūmptrūm.9 At Circē his rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs ēius sē prōiēcit10 et multis cum lacrimis iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāvit sē quae ille imperāsset omnia factūram. Tum porcōs in atrium11 immitti iussit. Illi datō sīgnō inruērunt et, cum ducem suum āgnōvisserunt,12 māgnō dolore adfecti sunt, 25 quod nūllō modō potuērunt eum dē rēbus suis certiōrem

facere. Circē tamen unguentō † quōdam corpora eōrum unxit; quō factō omnēs post breve tempus in speciem hūmānam redditī ‡ sunt. Māgnō cum gaudīō Ulixēs amicōs āgnōvit et nūntium ad litus misit, qui reliquis Graecis sociōs receptōs 5 esse diceret. Illi autem his rēbus cōgnitis statim ad domum Circaeam sē contulērunt †; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs universi laetitiae † se dēdīrunt.

AFLOAT AGAIN.


LIFE OF CAIUS MARIUS. (B.C. 157-86.)

[LHOMOND: VIRI ROMAE.]

FIG. 24.—CAIUS MARIUS.

With Scipio in Spain.

1. C. Marius, humilī locō nātus,¹ militiae tīrōcinium in Hispāniā duce Scipiōne posuit. Erat imprīmis Scipiãoī cārus ob singulārem virtūtem et impigram ad pericula et labōrēs alacritātem. Scipiō, cum inspicere voluisset quem ad modum ab ūnōquōque equī cūrārentur, Marī equum valĭdum et bene cūrātum invēnit; quam diligentiam imperātor plūrimum laudāvit.² Cum aliquandō³ inter cēnam Scipionem quidam interrogāsset, si quid illī accidisset, quemnam rēs pūblica aequē māgnum habitūra esset imperātōrem, Scipiō percussō lēniter Marī umerō “Fortasse⁴ hunc,” inquit. Quō ¹⁰ dictō excitātus Marius dignōs⁵ rēbus quās posteā gessit spirītūs concēpit.


55
Conquers Jugurtha.

2. Q. Metellum in Numidiam contrā Iugurtham missum, cūius légātus\(^1\) erat, cum ab eō Rōmam missus esset, apud populum Rōmānum criminātus est bellum dúcere: 'Sī sē cōnsulem fēcissent, brevi tempore aut vivum aut mortuum Iugurtham sē in potestātem populi Rōmānī redāctūrum.'\(^2\) Itaque creātus est cōnsul et in Metellī locum suffectus. Bellum ab illō prōsperē coeptum cōnfecit.\(^3\) Iugurtha ad Gaetūlōs perīgerat eōrumque rēgem Bocchum adversus Rōmānōs concitāverat. Marius Gaetūlōs et Bocchum ad-gressus fūdit; castellum in excelsā ripā positum, ubi rēgii thēsaurī\(^4\) erant, nōn sine multō labōre expūgnāvit.\(^5\) Bocchus bellō défessus légātōs ad Marium misit pācem ārantis.\(^6\) Sulla quaestor ā Mariō ad rēgem remissus Bocchō persuāsit ut Iugurtham Rōmānīs trāderet. Iugurtha igitur vinctus\(^7\) ad Marium dēductus est; quem Marius triumphāns ante currum ēgit\(^8\) et in carcerem caenōsum inclusit. Quō cum Iugurtha dētractā\(^9\) veste ingrederētur, ōs ridentis in modum didūxisse et stupēns simīlisque désipienti exclāmāsse fertur: "Prō! quam frigidum est vestrum balneum!" Paucīs diēbus post in carcere necātus\(^11\) est.

Defeats the Teutones.

3. Marius post bellum Numidicum iterum\(^12\) cōnsul creātus bellumque ei contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs dēcrētum est. Hi novī hostēs, ab extrēmis Germānīae finibus profugi, novās sēdēs quaerēbant, exclūsique Gallīā et Hispānīā cum in Ítaliān remigrārent, ā Rōmānīs ut aliquid sibi terrae darent petiērunt.\(^13\) Repulsi, quod nequiverant precipus, armīs petere

Cf. \(^1\) légātōs, p. 15, 1. 24. — \(^2\) redāctūs, 17, 15. — \(^3\) cōnfectō, 12, 24. — \(^4\) thēsauriūs, 9, 20. — \(^5\) expūgnāvit, 37, 8. — \(^6\) ōrantī, 6, 6. — \(^7\) vinc-tus, 16, 6. — \(^8\) ēgit, 47, 7. — \(^9\) dētractā, 3, 15. — \(^10\) balneō, 25, 7. — \(^11\) necāret, 33, 14. — \(^12\) iterum, 38, 3. — \(^13\) petēbant, 2, 15.

Goes against the Cimbri.


The Cimbri Destroyed. Bravery of their Women.

5. His rébus auditis Cimbri égregiuntur castris et cum paucis suórum ad vallum Rómanum adequitâns Boiorix,

Cimbrórum dux, Marium ad púgnam pròvocat et diem púgnae à Rómanórum imperátóre petit. Proximum dedit cósul. Marius cum aciem ita instituisset ut pulvis in oculós et óra hostium ferrétur, incrédibili stráge prôstrātā est

illa Cimbrōrum multitūdō; caesa¹ trāduntur centum octō-
gintā hominum milia. Nec minor cum uxōribus pūgna
quam cum viris fuit, cum obiectis undique plaustris dēsū-
per, quasi ē turribus, lanceis contisque pūgnārent. Victae
tamen cum missā ad Marium lēgātiōne libertātem nōn im-
petrassent,² suffōcātis ēlisisque infantibus suis aut mūtuis
concidērunt volneribus aut vinculō³ ē crūnibus suis factō ab
arboribus peppedērunt. Canēs⁴ quoque dēfendēre Cimbris
caesis eōrum domōs. Marius prō duōbus triumphis, qui
offerēbantur, ūnō contentus fuit. Primōrēs civitātis, qui ei
aliquamdiū ut novō homini ad tantōs honōrēs ēvēctō
invide-rant, ŝōns multōm ab eō rem pūlicam fatēbantur. In ipsā
aciē Marius duās Cameritium cohortis, mirā virtūte vim
Cimbrōrum sustinentis, contrā lēgem civitātē dōnāverat.
Quod quidem factum et vērē et ēgregiē posteā excūsāvit, 15
dicēns inter armōrum strepitum ⁵ verba sē iūris civilis exau-
dire nōn potuisse.

Civili War. Marius Takes Flight.

6. Illā tempestāte primum Rōmae bellum civile commōtum
est. Causam bellō dedit Gāius Marius. Cum enim Sulla
cōnsul contrā Mithradātem, rēgem Pontī, missus fuisset, 20
Sulpicius, tribūnus plēbis, lēgēm ad populum tulit, ut Sullae
imperium abrogārētur, C. Mariō bellum dēcernerētur Mithra-
dāticum. Quā rē Sulla commōtus cum exercitū ad urbem
vēnit, eam armis occupāvit, Sulpicium interfēcit, Marium
fugāvit.⁶ Marius hostis persequentis fugiēns aliquamdiū in
destī pecūniam palūde dēlītuit. Sed paulō post repertus⁷ extrāctusque, ut
erat, nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum⁸ lōrō,
Minturnās raptūs et in custōdiam coniectus est. Missus est
ad eum occidendum servus pūlicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem

Cf.¹ caesa, p. 57, l. 11. —² impetrātō, 54, 12. —³ vinculōrum, 26, 3.
—⁴ canem, 5, 10. —⁶ strepitus, 26, 3. —⁶ fugātus, 37, 1. —⁷ repertus,
50, 8. —⁸ collō, 5, 15.
Marius voltūs auctōritāte dēterruit. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vidisset, "Tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occidere?" Quō auditō attonitus ille ác tremēns abiectō ferrō fūgit, Marium sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab eis qui prius eum occidere voluerant ē carcere ēmissus est.

Marius "Sitting on the Ruins of Carthage."

7. Acceptā nāviculā in Āfricam trāiēcit et in agrum Carthaginīnensem pervēnit. Ibi cum in locīs sōlitāriis sedēret, vēnit ad eum lictor Sextili praetōris, qui tum Āfricam obtinēbat. Ab hōc, quem numquam laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis tamen aliquod officium ēsperābat; at lictor dēcēdere ēum prōvinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet; torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit tandem ecquid renūntiāri praetōri vellet. Cui Marius: "Abī," inquit, "nūntiā vidisse tē Ğāium Marium in Carthaginīs ruinīs sedentem." Duōbus clārissimis exemplīs dē incōn-

Life of Caius Marius.

stantiā rērum hūmānārum et ad urbem fatēbat, cum et urbis maximae excidium et viri dis simi vacum ante oculōs poneret.

Returns and Slaughters of Enemies. At length Falls Sick and Dies.

8. Profectō ad bellum Mithridatem Sullā, Marius revocātus a Cinnā, Italiaem redit, eteratus magis cægit amitāte quam dominō. Cum exercitū Romam ingressus eam caedibus et rapinis vastāvit; omnis adversae factionis nōbilis variis suppliciōrum generibus ad fecit; quinque dīes conti-

nuōs totidemque noctis illa scelerum omnium durāvit licentia. Hoc tempore admiranda sunt populi Rōmāni abstinentia fuit. Cum enim Marius occisōrum domōs multitudini diripieendās obiēcisset, inveniri potuit nēmō qui civili lūctū praedam peteret; quae quidem tam misericors continentia plēbis tacita quaedam crūdēlium victorūm vituperātiō fuit. Tandem Marius seniō et labōribus confectus in morbum incidit et ingenti omnium laetitiā vitam finivit. Cūius virī si exāminentur cum virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce perniciōsior fuerit; namque quam rem públicam armātus servāvit eam primō togātus omni genere fraudis, postrēmō armis hostiliter evertit.

Personal Characteristics of Marius.

9. Erat Marius dūrior\(^1\) ad hūmānitātīs studia et ingeniōrum artium contemptor. Cum aedem Honōris de manū hostium vōvisset, sprētā\(^2\) peregrinōrum marmorum nōbiās articicumque\(^3\) Graecōrum arte, eam volgāri lapide per 5 cem Rōmānūm cūrāvit\(^4\) aedificandam. Et Graecās litem dēspiciēbat, quod doctōribus suis parum\(^5\) ad virtūtem pisset. At idem fortis, validus\(^6\), adversus dolōrem cōnfissiōnus. Cum ei varicēs in crūre secārentur, vetuit\(^7\) sē adligāre. Ācrem tamen fuisse dolōris morsum ipse ostendit; in medicō alterum crūs postulantī nōluit praebēre,\(^8\) quod mūrerem esse remedi quam morbi dolōrem iūdicāret.


Fig. 29. — Soldiers Making Camp.
LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR. (B.C. 100–44.)

[Lhomond: Viri Romae.]

Early Life.

1. C. Iulius Caesar, nōbilissimâ Iuliōrum genitus familiâ, annum agēns sextum et decimum pateram amīsit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, dūxit uxōrem; cūius pater cum esset Sulla inimicissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere ut eam repudiae 1; neque id potuit efficere. Quārē Caesar bonīs spoliātus cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mutātā veste 2 nocte urbe ēlapsus 3 est et, quamquam tunc quartānae morbō laborābat, prope per singulās noctis latebrās commūtāre coēgēbātur 4; et comprehēnsum a Sulla libertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur vix datā pecūniā ēvāsit. 5 Postrēmō per propinquōs et adfinīs suōs veniam impetrāvit. 6 Satis cōnstat Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amicissimīs et ērnāttissimīs virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāsset 7 atque illi pertināciter contenterent, expūgnātum tandem prōclamāsse ‘vincerent, dummodo scirent eum quem incolum tantopere 8 cuperent aliquando 15 optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitīo futūrum; nam Caesari multōs Mariōs inesse.’

Captured by Pirates.

2. Stipendia prima in Asia fēcit. In expūgnātiōne Mitylēnārum corōnā civicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sulla Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōnīō Molōni, tunc clārissimō dicendi magistrō, operam 9 daret. Hūc dum trāicit,

Cf. 1 repudiāvit, p. 3, l. 12.— 2 vēstīa, 21, 17.— 3 morbum, 61, 15.— 4 cōactus, 3, 13.— 5 ēvādēre, 44, 5.— 6 impetrātō, 54, 12.— 7 dēnegāvit, 21, 23.— 8 tantopere, 30, 10.— 9 operam, 1, 10.
ā praedūnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrā-gintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit ut pirātis pariter terrōri venerātiōnique esset. Comitēs¹ interim servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās quibus redimerētur dimi-sit. Viginti talenta pirātae postulāverant²; ille quīnquāgintā ⁵
datūrum sē spopondit. Quibus numerātīs cum exposītus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Milētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit³ ibique contrāctā classe invectus in eum locum in quō ipsī praedūnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit,⁴ partem mersit, aliquot nāvis cēpit pirātāsque in potestātem redāctōs⁵ ¹⁰
eō supplicīo quod illis saepe minātus inter iocum⁶ erat adfēcit crucīque suffixīt.

Caesar as Questor in Spain.

3. Quaestōrī ulterior HISPĀNIA obvēnit. Quō prefectus
cum Alpis trānsīret et ad cōnspectum pauperis cūiusdam
vici⁷ comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent num illic etiam ¹⁵
esset ambitiōnī locus, sēriō dixit Caesar mālle sē ibi primum
esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnīs avidus ā primā

⁴¹, ¹¹.
aetāte\(^1\) rēgnum concupiscēbat semperque in ōre habēbat hōs Euripidis, Graeci poētae, versūs:

"Nam si violándum est īūs, rēgnāndi grātiā
Violándum est, āliis rēbus piētātēm colās."

5 Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, anim-adversā\(^2\) apud Herculīs templum māgni Alexandrī imāgine ingemuit et quasi pertaesus ignāviam suam, quod nihildum ā sē memorābile\(^3\) āctum esset in ēa aetāte quā iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem continuō efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam primum māiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs\(^4\) in urbe.

Cæsar as Aēdile and as Consul.

4. Aedilis praeter Comitium āc Forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque\(^5\) et cum conlēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēditī\(^6\); quō factum est ut commūniōm quoque impēnsārum sōlus grātiam\(^7\) caperet. His autem rēbus patrimōniōm effūdīt\(^8\) tantumque cōnflāvit aes aliēnum ut ipse diceret sibi opus esse miliēns sēstertiūm ut habēret nihil.

Cōnsul deinde cum M. Bibulō creiātus societātem cum Gnaeo Pompeiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxīt Cæsar, nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā quod dissplicuisset ūlli ex tribus. Deinde lēgēm tulit\(^9\) ut ager Campānus plēbī dividerētur. Cui lēgi cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. Bibulus conlēga in Forum vēnīt ut lēgi obsisteret, sed tanta in eum commōta est sēditiō ut in caput ēius cophīnus stercore plēnus effunderētur fascēsque\(^10\) ei frangerentur\(^11\) atque adeō ipse armis Forō expellerētur. Quā rē cum Bibulus per reliquum anni tempus domō abditus cūriā\(^12\) abstinēret, ūnus

ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē públicā ad arbitrium ad-
ministrābat, ut nōn nūlli urbānōrum, si quid testandi grātiā
sīgnārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs
1 erat, "Cōnsulibus Caesare
et Bibulō" āctum scriberent, sed "Iūliō et Caesare," ūnum
cōnsulem nōmine et cōgnōmine prō duōbus appellantēs.

Caesar in Gaul, Germany, and Britain.

5. Fūctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit.
Gessit autem novem annis quibus in imperiō fuit haec ferē:
Galliam in prōvinciae formam redēgit; Germānōs, qui trāns
Rhēnum incolunt, primus Rōmānōrum ponte fabricātō ad-
gressus máximis adfēcit clādibus.4 Adgressus est Britannōs,
ignōtōs antēa, superātīisque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit.
Hic cum multa Rōmānōrum militum insignia nārrantur,
tum illud ēgregium5 ipsius Caesaris, quod, nūtante in fugam
exercitu, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō,6 in prīmam volitāns
aciem proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proelīō legiōnis aquili-
ferum, ineundae7 fugae causā iam conversum, faucibus com-
prehēnsum in contrāriam partem dētrāxit dextramque ad
hostem tendēns, "Quōrsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illic sunt
cum quibus dīmicāmus."8 Quā adhortātiōne omnium legiō-
num trepidātiōnem corrēxit, vincique parātās vincere docuit.

Cf.1 mōrēs, p. 4, l. 10. — 2 ferē, 1, 7. — 3 redāctōs, 65, 10. — 4 clāde,
37, 1. — 5 ēgregiō, 21, 14. — 6 scūtum, 3, 4. — 7 initō, 14, 4. — 8 dīmicā-
vit, 16, 1.
Second Year Latin.

Caesar Crosses the Rubicon and Drives Pompey from Italy.


Crosses over to Epirus in Pursuit of Pompey.

7. Qui cum inde in Īpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus à Brundisiō Dyrrhachium inter oppositās classis 5 gravissimā hieme trānsmisit; cōpiisque quās subsequi iussērat diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eās arcessendās frūstrā misisset,

Life of Caius Julius Caesar.

mirae audaciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns castris noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit, obvolūtō capite nē āgnōserētū et, quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dirigī nāvigium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, “Quid timēs?” inquit, “Cæsarem vehis!” Neque prius gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus est quam paene obrutus esset fluctibus. 5

Defeats Pompey at Pharsalia, Pharmaces in Pontus, and Scipio in Africa.

8. Deinde Caesar in Ėpīrum profectus Pompēium Phāsālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occasum cōgnōvit, Ptolemaēō régī, Pompēī interfectorī, ā quō sibi quoque insidiās tendi vidēret, bellum intulit; quō victō in Pontum trānsīt Pharmacemque, Mithradātīs filium, rebellantem et multiplici successū praeferōcem intrā quintum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōris ūnā prōflīgāvit acie more fulminis quod ūnō ēodemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē praedicātiō est Cæsaris, ante victum hostem esse quam visum. Ponticō posteā triumphō trium verborum praetulit titulum: “Vēni, vidi, vici.” Deinde Scipīōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, reliquiās Pompēīānārum partium in Āfricā refoventis, dēvicit. 20

Conquers the Son of Pompey in Spain.

9. Victōrem Āfricānī bellī Gāium Cæsarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēnse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgni filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns āc terribile cōnflāverat, undique ad eum auxiliis paternī nōminus māgnūdinem sequentium ex tōtō orbe cōnfluentibus. Sua Cæsarem in Hispāniām comitiātā fortūna est; sed nūllum umquam atrōcius periculōsius-

que ab eō initium proelium, adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte, dēscenderef equō cōnsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāset exitum, dēnūntiāret militibus vestigiō sē nōn recessūrum; proinde vidērent quem et quō locō imperatōrem désertūrī essent. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Cn. Pompēius victus et interēmptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus qui contrā sē arma tulerant ignōvit, et quinquiēns triumphāvit.

Caesar as a Statesman and Reformer.

10. Bellis civilibus cōnfectis conversus iam ad ōrdinandum rei públicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad currsum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quinque diērum esset et intercalāriō mēnse sublātō unus diēs quartō quoque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērisimē dixit. Repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō movit. Peregrinārum mercium portūria instituit; lēgem praecipuē sūmpluāriām exercuit. Dē ōrnandā instruendāque urbe, item dē tuendō ampliandōque imperiō plūra ac māiōra in diēs dēstinābat; imprīmis iūs civile ad certum modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum cōpiā optima quaēque et necessāria in paucissimōs cōnferre libros; bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās quās máximās posset públicāre; siccāre Pomptinās palūdēs; viam mūnire à Mari Superō per Apennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim ὑσκε; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum effūderant, coērcērē; mox Parthīs bellum inferre per Armeniam.

Is Made Perpetual Dictator.

11. Haec et alia agentem et meditāntem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuo creātus agere insolentius coepit;

senātum ad sē venientem sedēns¹ excēpit et quendam ut adsurgeret momentem irātō voltū respēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes² et tunc cōnsulātūs conlēga, capiti ēius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstris diadēma, ĭnsigne régium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēn-

sus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius viris, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Îdibus Mārtiis in senātū cōnfodere.

Hist Assassination.

12. Plūrima indicia futūri periculi obtulerant ⁵ dǐi immor-
tālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō visū, ut Îdibus Mā-
tiis domī subsisteret ārābat, et Spūrinna harasspex praedixerat⁴ ut proximōs diēs trigintā quasi fātālis cavēret, quōrum ulti-
mus⁶ erat Îdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae,

"Ecquid scis," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?" et is, "Ecquid scis illās nōndum praeterisse?" Atque cum Cae-
sar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsidentem coniūrāti speciē
offici circumstetērunt ilderique ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus,
propius accessit renuentique ab utrōque umerō togam adpre-
hendit. Deinde clāmantem "Ista quidem vis est," Casca,
ūnus ē coniūrātis, adversum volnerat paulum înfrā iugulum.
Caesar Cascae braccium adreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātus-
que prōsilire aliō volnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadver-
tit undique sē strictis pugiōnibus peti, togā caput obvolvit et ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōnfossus est. Cum Mārcum
Brūtum, quem fili īocō habēbat, in sē inruentem vidisset,
dixisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mi fili!"

His Views of Death. Fate of his Murderers.

13. Illud inter omnis fērē cōnsstitit tālem ei mortem
paene ex sententiā obtigisse. Nam et quondam cum apud
Xenophōntem lēgisset Cýrum ultimā valētūdine mandāsse
quaedam de funere suō, aspernātus tam lentum mortis genus,
subitam sibi celeremque optāverat, et pridiē quam occiderētur
in sermōne nātō super cēnam quīsnam esset finis vitae com-
modissimus, repentinum inopinātumque praetulerat. Percus-
sōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam amplius supervīxit
neque suā morte dēfūnctus est. Damnāti omnēs alius aliō
cāsū periērunt, pars naufragīo, pars prōeliō; nōn nūlli sēmet
eōdem illō pugiōne quō Caesarem violāverant interēmērunt.

Treatment of his Enemies.

25 14. Quō rārior in rēgibus et principibus virīs moderātiō,
hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā civili

Cf. 1 ecquid, p. 60, 1. 14. 2 praeterīre, 47, 9. 8 officiō, 12, 25. 4 utraque, 17, 11. 5 vim, 46, 5. 6 conātus est, 37, 5. strictō, 52.
13. 8 obvolūtō, 69, 2. 9 inruerunt, 53, 24. 10 cōnstat, 40, 2. 11 ob-
tigit, 9, 18. 12 valētūdinem, 21, 7. 13 lentō, 27, 19. 14 dēfūnctā,
68, 1. 16 perīt, 18, 8. 16 interēmptus est, 70, 7.

Personal Appearance and Habits.

15. Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō plēniōre, nigris vegetisque oculis, capite calvō; quam calvītī dēfōrmītātem, quod saepe obtrectātorum iocis obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam īūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vini parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimici quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad īvertendam rem pūblicam sōbrīum accessisse. Armōrum et equitandi perītissimus, labōris utrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus antebiat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdībili celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praeveniēret; neque eum morā- bantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innixus inflātis ūtribus trāciēbat.

Fig. 36. — Hannibal.
LIFE OF HANNIBAL. (B.C. 247-183.)

[Hepos: Lives.]

His Extraordinary Military Ability.

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthaginienae. Sì vèrum
est, quod nèmò dubitat, ut populus Römæns omnis gentis
virtùte superàrit, nòn est inftiandum Hannibalem tantò
praestitisse cèteròs ² imperatòrës prùdentìa quantò populus
Römæns antécédat fortitùdine cùnciòs ³ nàtiòñës. Nam quo-
tiènscumque cum eo congressus ⁴ est in Ìtalìa, semper dis-
cessit superior. Quòd nisi domì civium suòrum invidia ⁵
dèbilitàtus esset, Römàns vidètur superàre potuisse. Sed
multòrum obtrectàtiò dèvicit ⁶ ùnius virtùtem.

Hatred of the Romans Inspired by his Father.

Hic autem velut héréditâté relictum odium ⁷ paternum ¹⁰
ergà Römàns sic cònservàvit ut prius animam ⁸ quam id
dèposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et aliè-
nàrum opum indígëret, numquam dèstiterit animò bellàre ⁹
cum Römàns.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absèns hostem red-
didit ¹⁰ Römàns, omnium eis temporibus potentissimus réx
Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantà cupiditâté incendit bellandi
ut úsque à rubrò marì arma cònâtus ¹¹ sit inferre Ìtalìae.
Ad quem cum légàti vèniissent Römàni, qui dè éius volun-
tàtëe explòrârent darentque operam ¹² cònsiliis clandestinis ¹³ ut 20

Cf. ¹ superàbant, p. 7, 1. ¹ — ² cèteròs, 19, 11. — ³ cùnciòs, 9, 15. —
⁴ congressus est, 37, 1. — ⁵ invidia, 3, 27. — ⁶ dèvicit, 69, 20. — ⁷ odi,
— ¹¹ cònâtus, 72, 8. — ¹² operam, 63, 21. — ¹³ clandestinis, 9, 25.

75
Hannibalem in suspicioinem régi adducérent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque anteā sentire, neque id frustrá fécissent, idque Hannibal comperisset 1 sèque ab interiöribus consiliis ségregari vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad régem 5 eique cum multa dé fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemo- rāsset, hoc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mé utpote 8 nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor profisciscēns Carthāgine, Iovi optimō máximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divina rēs dum conficiēbātur, quae- 10 sivit à mé vellemne sēcum in castra profisci. Id cum libenter 4 accēpissem atque ab eō petere coeipīsem nē dubi- tāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'śi mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul 6 mé ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remotīs tenentem īūrāre 15 iūssit numquam mé in amicitiā cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patri datum ūsse ad hanc aetātem 6 ita con- servāvi ut nēmini dubium esse dēbeat 7 quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānis cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris si mé cēlāris 8; cum quidem 20 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frustrāberis si nōn mé in eō princi- pem posueris."

Service in Spain. Takes Saguntum. Then Leads his Army into Italy.

3. Hác igitur 9 quā diximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cūius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, 10 equitātui omni praeuit. Hoc quoque interfecit 25 exercitus summam imperi ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dullūm pūblicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal, minor quinque et viginti annis nātus 11 imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnis gentis Hispāniae bellō subēgit, 12 Saguntum,

foederātām civitātem, vi expūgnāvit, tris exercitūs māximōs comparāvit.  
Ex his ünum in Āfricam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Ítalian sēcum dūxit. Saltum 2 Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcit cum omnibus incolis 8 cōnfluxit; nēminem nisi victum 5 dīmisit.  
Ad Alpis posteaquam vēnit, quae Ítalian ab Gallīā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum prae-
ter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantis prohibēre trānsitū con-
cidit, loca patefēcit, 5 itinera mūniit, 6 effēcit ut eā elephantus 10 ĵornātus ire posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ítalianque pervēnit.

Debattles the Romans in Three Battles.

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipio nē cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eōdem Clastidī apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde aēc fugātum 7 dīmittit. Ter-
tiō idem Scipiō cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiām

adversus eum vēnit. Cum eis manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōsligāvit. 8 Inde per Ligurēs Apenninum trānsiit petēns Etrūriām. Hōc itinere adeō gravi morbō 9 addiscitur oculōrum sūt postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valē-
tūdine 10 cum etiamtum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C.


Recalled to Africa, he is Defeated at Zama by P. Scipio.

6. Hinc invictus patriam défénsum revocátus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipiónem, filium éius Scipiónis quem ipse primó apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertió apud Trebiam fugárat. Cum hóc exhaustis iam patriae facultátibus cupivit impraesentiárum bellum compónere, quó valentior posteá

congrederétur. In conloquium convénit; condicionés nón convénérunt. Post id factum paucis diébus apud Zamat cum eódem conflíxit; pulsus (incrédibile dictú) biduó et duábus noctibus Hadrüméthum pervénit, quod abest ab Zamat circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hác fugá Numidae, qui simul cum eó ex acié exesserant, insidiáti sunt ei; quós nón solum effügit, sed etiam ipsós oppressit. Hadrüméthi

Cf. 1 revocantés, p. 17, l. 13.—2 facultátem, 24, 6.—3 congressus est, 37, 1.—4 conflíxit, 77, 5.—5 oppressi sunt, 51, 7.
reliquös ē fugā conlégit; novis délēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit.

Peace between Rōme and Carthage. Hannibal Flees to Antiochus in Syria.

7. Cum in adparandō áccerriē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānis composuerunt. Ille nihilō 5 sēcius exercitu posteā praefuit résque in Āfricā gessit, itemque Māgō frāter ēius ūque ad P. Sulpiciun C. Aurēlium consulēs. His enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, qui senātui populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā 1 aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs 3 eōrum Fregellis essent captiviē redderentur. His ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: 'mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs quō locō rogārent futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūius operā sus- 15 ceptum 8 bellum foret, 4 inimicissimum nōmini Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō 6 apud exercitum habērent itemque frā- trem ēius Māgōnem.' Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs co- gnitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō 20 secundō et vicēsimō; ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sic Car- thāgine quotannis annui bīni rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū pari diligentia sē Hannibal praebuit 6 āc fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novis vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex foedere penderētur, sed 25 etiam superesset 7 quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōnsulibus, Rōmā lēgāti Carthāgīnem vēnē- runt. Hōs Hannibal ratus 8 sui exposcendi grātiā missōs, priusquam eis senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in

Syriam ad Antiochum profugit. Hāc rē palam factā Poeni nāvis duās quae eum comprehenderent, si possent cōnsequī, misērunt; bona ēius públicārunt, domum ā fundāmentis disiecērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

Aids Antiochus against the Romans.

8. At Hannibal annō tertió postquam domō profugērat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minució cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeōrum, si forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque inducerentur, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliam proficisce-

rētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resci vērunt, Māgōnem ēadem quā frātrem absentem adfēcērunt poena. Illī dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent nāvis ēc vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque alii naufragiō, alii ā servulis ipsius interfecēt eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliis ēius pārēre voluisset quam in susciendō instituerat, proprius Tiberi quam Thermopylis dē summā imperi dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stultē cōnāri vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iūssus 20

erat in Asiam dúcere, eisque adversus Rhodiórum classem
in Pamphylió mari cônflixit.\(^1\) Quò cum multitúdine adversáriórum sui superárentur, ipse quò cornú rem gessit fuit superior.

**Proceeds to Crete. Eludes the Avarice of the Cretans.**


**Goes to Prusias, King of Bithynia.**

10. Sic cōnservātis suis rēbus Poenus, inlūsis Crētēnsi-
bus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit\(^7\) quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidērat domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conci-
liābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiuγēbat bellicōsās\(^8\) nātiōnēs. Dissi-
25 dēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et mari et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimi.\(^9\) Sed utrobiqve Eumenēs

\(^1\) cônflixit, p. 77, l. 5. — \(^2\) verēretur, 38, 11. — \(^3\) accidit, 47, 7. — \(^4\) contulērant, 54, 6. — \(^5\) tālium, 8, 2. — \(^6\) aēneis, 28, 22. — \(^7\) ēgērunt, 23, 8. — \(^8\) bellicōsum, 2, 12. — \(^9\) oppressit, 79, 12.
plus valébat propert Römānōrum societātem; quem si remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fure arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant dēcrētūri. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentis vivās conligī eāsque in vāsā fictilia cōnici. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classiāriōs convocat eisque praecepit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habeant sē defendere. Id illōs faciē serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūturōs. Rēx autem in quā nāvi veherētur ut scirent sē factūrum; quem si aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eis pollicētur praemiō fore.

Assists Prūsias in his War with Eumenēs, King of Pergamus.


rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petit; quam consecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō litorē erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnēae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in 5 eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō risum pūgnantibus concitārunt neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem nāvis suās opplētās cōnspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, 10 puppis vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis pari prūdentia pepulit adversāriōs.

The Romans Demand Hannibal from Prusias. He Takes Poison and Dies.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgāti 15 Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quintium Flāmininum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō dē Flāmininus senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōnscripti, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs 20 in Bithyniām misērunt, in eis Flāmininum, qui ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. His Prūsiae negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent quod adversus iūs hospiti esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inven 25 tūrōs. Hannibal enim únō locō sē tenēbat in castellō quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū

veniēret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgāti Rōmānōrum vēnissent āc multitudine domum ēius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciens Hannibali dixit plūris praeter consuētūdinem armātōs adpaṛēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnis foris aedifici circumiret āc properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāset omnisque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē peti neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendum. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimiteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

The Date of his Death. His Writings.


III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

1. The Stag.

Ad fóntem cérvus, cúm bibísset, réstitít,
et ín liquóre vídit éffigiém suám.
Ibi dúm rámósá mífán laúdat córnuá,
crúrumque númiam ténuitátém vituperát,
vénántum súbitó vócibus contérritus,
per cámpum fúgere coépit, ét cursú levi
canés élúsit. Sílva tum éxcépt ferúm,
in quá reténtís împedïtus córnibus,
lacerári coépit mórsibus saevís canúm.

Tunc móríens vócem hanc édidísse dícitúr:
‘Ó me infélícem! quí núnc démum intéllegó,
úfília mihi quam fúerint quaé dëspéxerám,
et quaé laudáram quántum lúctús hábuerínt.’

PHÆDRUS.

2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together.

Dó nec erís félíx, múltós numerábis amícós:
Témpora sí fuerínt núbila, sólus erís.
Ádspícis, út veniánt ad cándida técta colúmbae,
Accipiát núllás sórdida túrris avís?
Hórrea fórmicaé tendúnt ad inánia númquam.
Núllus ad ámbissás íbit amícus opés.

Útque comés radiós per sólis eúntibus úmbra est,
Cúm latet híc pressús núbibus, ñlla fugít,
Móbile síc sequitúr fortúnae lúmina vôlgus:
Quaé simul ñductá nábe tegúntur, abít.

OVID: Trist., I, ix, 5-14.

86
3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron.

Hospes, quod dico paulum est, adsta ac perlegi.
Hic est sepulcrum hau pulchrum pulchrae feminae:
nomen parentis nominarunt Claudia;
suum maritum corde dixit suo:
natios duos creavit: hunc alterum
in terrae linquit, alium sub terrae locat.
Sermonem lepidum tum autem incessus commodum
donum servavit, lannam fecit. Dixi, ab.

Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum.

4. Daemones's Dream.

Miris modis di ludos faciunt hominibus:
nex dormientis quidem sinunt quiescere.
Velut ego hac nocte quaee procissit proxumam
mirum atque inscitum somniavi somniwm.
Ad hirundinum nidum visast simia
ascensionem ut faceret admoliri;
neque eas eripere quibat unde. Postibi
videtur ad mel simia adgredi,
rogare scallas ut darem utendas sibi.
Ego ad hoc exemplum simiae respondeo,
natas ex Phlemeiataque ex Pragni esse hirundines.
Ago cum illa, nesquid nocat meis populribus.
Atque illa simiio iam fieri ferocior,
videtur utro mihi malum munitiri.
In ius vocat med. Ibi ego nescio quod modi
iratus videor medium adripere simiam;
concludo in vindex bestiam nequissumam.
Nunc quam ad rem dicam hoc attinere somniwm,
umquam hodie quivi ad coniecturam evaderi.

Plautus: Rudens, III, i, 1-20.
5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow.

Lūgētē, ὴ Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
Et quantūmst hominūm venūstiorum.
Pāsser mōrtuus ēst meāe puellae,
Pāsser, dēliciāe meāe puellae,
Quēm plūs filā oculīs suīs amābat:
Nām mellītus erāt suāmque nōrat
İpsa tām bene quām puellā matrem,
Nēc sēsē ā gremio filiūs movēbat,
Sēd circūmsiliēns modo hūc modo filūc
Ad sōlām dominam úsque pīpiābat.
Quī nunc īt per ītēr tenēbricōsum
İlūc ūnde negānt redīre quēmquam.
Āt vōbīs male sīt, malaē tenēbrae
Ōrcī, quae ēomnia bēlla dēvorātis:
Tām bellūm mihi pāsserem ābstūlfstis.
Ō factūm male! iō misēlle pāsser!
Tūā nunc operā meāe puellae
Flēndō túrgidulfī rubēnt ocēlli.

Catullus: 3.

6. How to Train Children.

Et ērrat lōŋgē meā quidēm sententīā,
Qui īmpērium crēdat grāvius ēsse aut stābiliūs,
Vi quōd fit, quam ēllud quōd amicītiā adiūngitūr.
Mea sīc est rātīō et sīc animūm ēndūcō meūm:
Malō coāctus quī suum ēfficiūm facīt,
Dum id rēscītum fri crēdit, tāntispēr pavēt:
Si spērat fōre clam, rūrsūm ad īngeniūm redīt.
Ille quēm beneficiō adiūngās ēx animō facīt,
Studet pār referre, praēsēns ābsēnsque ēdem erīt.
Hōc pātriumst, pōtius cōnsuēfācere filiūm
Suā spōnte rēctē fācere quam āliēnō metū.
Hoc pater ac dominus interest: hoc qui nequit,
Fateatur nescire imperare liberis.

**Terence: Adelphi, I, 65-77.**

7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse.

Ólim

rústicus urbánüm mūrém mūs paúpere fértur
áccēpsse cavó, veterém vetus hóstes amīcum,
ásper et áttentús quaesítis, út tamen ártum
sólveret hóstifís animúm. Quid múltā? neque ĩlle
sépositī cicerís nec lóngae invídīt avēnae,
áridum et ōre feréns acínūm sémēsaque lárdi
frústa dedít, cupiēns variā fastīdia cēnā
víncre tángentís maie sínula dénte supérbō;
cúm pater ĵpse domús paleā porrēctus in hórna
ēsset adór loliúmque, dapīs melīóra relīnquēns.
Tándem urbānus ad húnc: "Quid té iuvat," inquit, "amīce,
praēruptī nemorīs patientem vívere dúrsō?
Vis ĵv hominēs urbémque ferīs praepōnere sīlvis?
Cárpe viám, mihi crēde, comès, terréstria quàndō
mórtālis animās vivūnt sortīta, neque ūlla est
aūt māgnō aūt parvō lēťī fuga: quō, bone, cīrčā,
dūm licet, ĵn rébus iūcūndīs víve beātus,
vīve memōr quam sīs aevī brevis."
Haec ubi dīcta
āgrestēm pepulēre, domō levis exsīlit; índē
āmbō propositūm peragūnt iter, úrbis avēntēs
moēnia nocturnī subrēpere. Iāmque tenēbat
nōx mediūm caelī spatium, cum pōnit utérque
īn locuplēte domō vestīgia, rūbrō ubi cóccō
tīnctā supér lectōs candēret vēstīs ebūrnōs,
mūltaque dé māgnā superēssent fērcula cēnā,
quaé procūl exstrēctīs ineránt hestērna canīstrīs.
Ērgō, ubi pūrōreā porrēctum in vēste locāvit
ágrestém, velutī succīnctus cūrsitāt hōspes
continuātque dapēs, nec nōn vernīliter īpsis
fūngitur officīs, praelāmbēns ōmne quod ādīert.
Īlē cubāns gaudēt mūtātā sorē bonīsque
5 rébus agīt laetūm convīvam, cūm subītō ĩngēns
vālvārum strepitus lectīs excūssit utrūmque.
Cūrrere pēr tōtūm pavidī conclāve, magīsque
exānimēs trepidāre, simūl domus āltā Molōssis
pērsōnūit cañībūs. Tum rūsticus "Hauūd mihi vītā
10 ēst opus hāc," ait, "ēt valeās; mē sīlva cavūsque
tūtus ab īnsidī̄s tenuī sōlābitūr ērvō."

HORACE: Sat., II, vi, 79-117.

8. The Enchantress Circe.

Proxīma Cīrcaeae rīdūntur lītora térrae,
dīves ināccēssōs ubi Sōlis fīlia lūcōs
ādsiduō resonāt cantū tectīsque supērbis
15 ūrit odōrātām noctūrna in lūmina cēdrum,
ārgūtō tenuīs percūrrēns pectīne tēlās.
Hīnc exauādirī gemītūs irāeque leōnum
vīncīa recūsantūm ēt sērä sub nōcte rudēntum,
saētīgerīque suēs atqūe īn praeasēpibus ērsi
20 saēvīre āc formaē māgnōrum ululāre lupōrum,
quōs homīnum ēx faciē dea saēva poēntībus hērbis
īnduerāt Cīrce īn votūs āc térga ferārum.


Quām bene Sāturnō vivēbant rēge priūsquam
Tēllūs īn longās ēst patefācta viās!
25 Nōndum caēruleās pinūs contēmpserat ūndās
Ēffūsūm ventīs praēbuerātque sinūm;
Nēc vagus ignōtīs repetēns compēndia térris
Poetical Selections.

Présserat externá nátita mérce ratém.
Íllō nón validús subiit iuga témpore taúrus,
Nón domitó frēnsōs õre momórdit equus;
Nón domus ùlla forís habuit, nón fíxus in ágris,
Quí regerét certís finibus árva, lapís.
Ípsae mélla dabánt quercús, utrōque ferábant
Óbvia sécúrs úbera láctis ovés.
Nón aciés, nón ñra fuít, nón bélia, nec énsem
Ímmiti saevús dúxerat árte fabér.
Núnc ìove súb dominó caedés et vólnera sémper,
Núnc mare, núnc lêti mílle repénte viaé.

TIBULLUS: I, iii, 35–50.

10. The Shortness of Life.

Eheú fugácês, Póstume, Póstumé,
lábúntur ánni, néc pietás morám
rūgís et Ínsantí sénéctae
ádferet ñdomitaéque mórti;
nón sí trecénis quóquot eúnt diés,
amíce, plácês ñnlacrimábilém
Plútôna taúris, quí ter ámbulum
Géryonén Tityónque trísti
compészct úndá, scílicit ómnibús,
quícúmque térrae múneré věscimúr,
ënávígándá, síve régēs
síve inópés erímús colóni.

Frûstrá cruentó Márte carébimús
frãctísque raúci flúctibus Hádriaé,
frûstrá per autumnós nocéntem
córporibús metuémus Aústrum.
Second Year Latin.

Viséndus áter flúmine lánguidó
Cócýtos érráns ét Danaí genús
ínfáme dámnátúisque lóngi
Sísyphus Aéolidés labóris.

5 Linquénda téllús ét domus ét placéns
uxór, neque hárum quás colís árborút
té praéter ínvisás cupréssós
úlla brevém dominún sequétur.

Absúmet hérês Caécuba dígniór
serváta céntum clávibus ét meró
tinguét pavímentútum supérbó,
póntificúm potióre cénis.

Horace: Od., II, xiv.


Beátus ñile qui procúl negociós,
ut prísca géns mortálíúm,
patérna rúra bóbus exercét suís,
solútus ómini faénoré,
neque excitátur clássicó milés trucí,
neque hórret frátúm maré,
forúmque vitat ét supérbæ civiúm
potentiórum líníná.


12. Live while you Live.

Aequám meméntō rébus in árdúís
serváre méntem, nón secús ín bonís
ab insólénti témpérátam
laetitiá, moritūre Délli,
Poetical Selections.

seu maéstus ómni témporte víxerís,
seu tē īn remótō grámine pér diēs
fēstōs reclínātūm beāris
interiōre notā Falērni.

Quō pīnus íngēns álbaque pópulūs
umbrām hōspitālem cōnsociāre amānt
rāmīs? Quid óbliquō labōrat
lýmpha fugāx trepidāre rīvō?

Hūc vína et únguenta ét nimium brevīs
flōrés amoēnae fērre iūbé rosaē,
dum rés et aētās ét sorōrum
fīla triūm patiuúntur átra.

Cēdēs coēemptis sāltibus ét domō
villāque flāvus quām Tiberīs lavīt,
cēdēs, et ëxstrūctīs in āltum
dīvitīs potiētur hērēs.

Divēsne prīscō nātus ab Ínachō
nil ūnterēst an paūper et ìnfinmā
dē génte sūb divō morēris,
victīma nfl miserāntis Òrcī.

Omnēs eōdem cōgimur, ómniūm
versātur úrna sērius òciūs
sors éxitūra et nōs in aēternum
éxsiliūm ìmpositūra cúmbae.

Horace: Od., II, iii.
PART II.

SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S GALIC WAR
Fig. 40. — Gaius Iulius Caesar.
INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever." — Shakespeare.

"The greatest name in history." — Merivale.

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

The Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and
steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth—most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering—consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.
Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as Optimates; those opposed to them as Populares. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established régime there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. Cæsar's Earlier Career.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village, Than be second in Rome." — Longfellow.

Caius Julius Cæsar (Gaius Iulius Caesar) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Aeneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the Populares under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and
proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the Populares; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the Optimates, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, “Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses.”

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course
of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it—as he remarked with grim humor—worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.
Introduction.

In B.C. 63 he was elected pontifex maximus against the strong opposition of the Optimates. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, — Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, — what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to
restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the
Leges Juliae, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of
justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do
in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of
the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger
field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his
surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came
to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of
the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the prov-
inces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a
most hazardous post and doubtless many of the Optimates thought
that they were well rid of him.

III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." — Cæsar.

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the govern-
ment of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to
remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The
bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia,
Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul.
He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home
in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon
were trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most
potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are
qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military
history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he
leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among
the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest
of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versa-
tility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the
right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. ' Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar,—namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time
—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. CÆSAR'S LATER CAREER.

"The foremost man of all this world." —Shakespeare.
"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal." —Lucan.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate
resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the Optimates, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar’s march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the Optimates there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar’s power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: “The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy.” Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: “He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general.” Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in
The Life of Caius Julius Caesar.

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Caesar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent Optimates had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Caesar's eternal praise. In a letter he says: "I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy."

Caesar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Caesar's part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey's officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Caesar's 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Caesar viewed the slain he said sadly: "They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Caesar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army."

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Caesar's favor. When Caesar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey's head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: "Veni, vidi, vici."

By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Caesar now returned to Rome, where he was made imperator — possessing the entire imperium, or military dominion of Rome, not
of a single colony or province—merely—and perpetual dictator (*dictator perpetuo*), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar’s rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey’s statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all
died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."—Shakespeare.

"Great Julius, whom all the world admires."—Milton.

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 40) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 31). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 60) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare’s “Julius Cæsar.”

Introduction.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care
and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbear-
ance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited
in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in
the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and
favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and
Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical
and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their fore-
fathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do
not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men,
and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme
power.

VI. CÆSAR'S LITERARY WORK.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and
massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects.
He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language,
astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries
on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete
form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written.
Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world
for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government.
He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and master-
ful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself per-
suaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness,
and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of
them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they
are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament
stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the lan-
guage is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist
needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of
each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is
crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good
English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works
he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and
impairment that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He
betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first
person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is
narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Caesar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity.
They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes,
as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others
know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and
rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of
the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most
of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of
modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Caesar gives us
such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their
present political and social peculiarities.

VII. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CAESAR'S LIFE.

B.C. 100 Born, July 12th.
" 83 Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.
" 80-78 Serves with the Army in Asia.
" 76-75 Studies Oratory at Rhodes.
" 68 Qaestor.
" 65 Aedile.
" 63 Pontifex Maximus.
" 62 Praetor.
" 61 Propraetor in Spain.
" 60 Forms the First Triumvirate.
" 59 Consul.
" 58-49 Proconsul in Gaul.
" 56 Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.
" 50 The Trouble with Pompey begins.
" 49 Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.
" 48 The Battle of Pharsalia.
" 46 The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.
" 45 The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.
" 44 The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on
the Ides of March.
II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions.  
2. The Cavalry.  
3. The Auxiliaries.  
4. The Engineers and Artisans.  
5. The Artillery.  
6. The Baggage Train.  
7. The Officers and their Staff.

II. THE STANDARDS.  
III. THE MUSIC.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment.  
b. Clothing.  
c. Armor.  
d. Weapons.  
e. Baggage.  
f. Food.  
g. Work.  
h. Pay.  
i. Discipline.

V. THE CAMP.  
VI. THE MARCH.  
VII. THE BATTLE.

VIII. THE SIEGE.  
IX. THE FLEET.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar’s time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar’s own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.
Introduction.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (equitatus), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 equites, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (alae) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. See Figs. 83, 84.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (auxilia peditum) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his auxilia, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (milites levis armaturae), the archers (sagittarii), and the slingers (funditores). See Figs. 45, 65, 99, 100. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (parma). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.
Roman Military Affairs.

Caesar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Caesar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Caesar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere, to twist*), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae, ballistae*, and *scorpiones* (see Figs. 75, 92, 94). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Caesar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Caesar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.
6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (sarcinae), was borne by horses and mules (iumenta), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (mercatores) and sutlers (lixae) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the tormenta, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it impedi-menta (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called legio impedita; when without, legio expedita. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers’ servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term calones. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 25, 66.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (imperator or dux beli). He possessed the imperium or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name imperator from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar’s case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The legati. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the imperium in his absence (legatus pro praetore). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a legatus at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The quaestores were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each imperator.
They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a legatus (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six tribuni militum, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar’s time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the legati, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. i, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers “of the line” were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior (“non-commissioned”) officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called centuriones primorun ordinum, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,
the first centurion of the whole cohort (primus or primipilus) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (vir fortis et magnae virtutis, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (vitis), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 56).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red tunica militaris worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (paludamentum) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 93).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the speculatores, evocati, beneficiarii, aquiliferi or signiferi, and bucinatoriores, tubicines, or cornicines. The speculatores or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The evocati were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The beneficiarii were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The signiferi or aquiliferi were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The bucinatoriores and tubicines were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 54, 105.

II. THE STANDARDS.

The term signa is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (aquila), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (primipilus) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (vexillum), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 84, 113, 120.

In a narrower sense, signum was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own signum (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar’s day.
The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 113.

III. The Music.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 51, 52, 53.

The *bucina*, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba*, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu*. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum*, sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. The Legionary.

*a. Enlistment.* — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization,—that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost
powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (evocatus).

b. Clothing.—All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (tunica), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (lorica). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (sagum), which was fastened by a clasp (fibula) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the sagum served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (cingulum militiae), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (caligae). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 65, 107, 123, etc.

c. Armor.—The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (lorica, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (galea or cassis), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the insignia put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (scutum) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (umbo) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 114, 115, etc.

d. Weapons.—The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (gladius Hispusus) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (baltens). See Figs. 65, 119, etc.

The spear (pilum) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the
hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

e. Baggage (Packs).—Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (vasa), food for at least two weeks (cibaria), his cloak or blanket (sagum), and usually one or two stakes (valli) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the vasa, cibaria, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (expeditus) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius’s mules (muli Mariani), after the great Marius (see p. 55) who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his sarcina (see Figs. 25, 65).

f. Food.—The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two modii,—about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (mercatores), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work.—It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (castra munire). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay.—Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about $45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active
service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline. — The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. The Camp.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (castra aestiva) and the winter camp (castra hiberna) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 111). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught e superiore loco (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 111): the porta praetoria, facing the enemy; the porta decumana,
in the rear; the *porta principalis dextra*, on the right side; the *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the *via principalis*. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (*praetorium*), in which stood the general's tent (*tabernaculum ducis*). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (*tribunal* or *suggestus*; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (*fossa*), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (*vallum*). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (*fascines*). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (*castra stativa*), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (*valli* or *sudes*; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 116). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (*pontes*). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (*castella*) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (*tentoria, pelles*) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.
VI. THE MARCH.

When the trumpet gave the signal (*signum profectionis*) to break up camp (*castra movere*), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (*vasa conligere*); at the second signal the baggage (*impedimenta*) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons; at the third signal the army (*agmen*) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (*magnum iter*) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (*agmen*) protected itself by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (*exploratores*), and by a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). Sometimes individual spies (*speculatores*) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (*expediti*), i.e. without packs (*sarcinae*), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*; see Fig. 125). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (*orbis*) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (*acies triplex*), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry
Roman Military Affairs.

Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Caesar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Fig. 70).

VII. THE BATTLE.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was tripex acies. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (media acies), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (cornua), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Caesar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two
Introduction.

lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the cuneus, or wedge, the testudo, or tortoise, and the orbis, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 79). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. The Siege.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (oppugnatio repentina); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (expugnatio); third, by investment and blockade (obsidio).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (ex itinere). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a testudo attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or agger, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.
It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23–28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 112). The men engaged in constructing the agger had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of plutei (see Figs. 126, 127), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the agger progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called vineae (see Figs. 48, 112), extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (tormenta) standing behind lines of plutei or upon movable towers (turre). The latter stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the plutei will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called testudines or musculi, placed at the ends of lines of vineae.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (expugnatio). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (falces murales). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (aries), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a testudo, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories drawbridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against
the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 89, 90, 124.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (obsidio) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44–53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72–80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times; see Fig. 96.

IX. THE FLEET.

Caesar mentions two principal classes of ships: naves longae, or war galleys, and naves onerariae, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The naves actuariae of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Caesar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 61, 63, 64.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (rostrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (nautae) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (remiges) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action tormenta were placed on the deck, and also a turris; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 76.
III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

1. The Gallic Province.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonesse Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and
of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was
to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the
free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of
it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome
through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Caesar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a
country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred
and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of
which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls
proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) at that time consisted of all the un-
subdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one
side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in
general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Ger-
many, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a
half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper,
or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same
word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people
of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of
the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the
Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be
considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans.
The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium,
including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the
northern belt of France on the other.

2. THE GALIC PEOPtE.

a. Origin and Early History.—The Gauls were a branch of the
great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times
occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were
known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied
without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown
west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The
Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the bar-
barians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made
no distinction, before Caesar's time, between German and Gaul.
Gaul and the Gauls.

The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Caesar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gaurs south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many
flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs. — The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door
alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skillful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 45, 71, 72, 109, etc., etc.). Caesar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress.— The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry — both men and women — of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (torquis), which was worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (bracae). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (sagum) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 44.

d. Arms and Military Tactics. — As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,
and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 93), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 110). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the testudo formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government.—The Gaules were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-
taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (vergobrets) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion.—The Druids.—Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophical lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.
The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called ‘cromlechs’ and ‘menhirs,’ popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13–16).


Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar’s time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day,—France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

The Britons.

With Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar’s invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar
The Germans.

137

gained but little detailed and accurate knowledge of the country, and after him the Romans did not go there for nearly one hundred years. Subsequently it was subdued and brought under Roman dominion. England still shows many traces of the Roman occupation. Many of her cities were founded by the Romans and bear Roman names. After the Romans came the northern invaders, who drove out or destroyed most of the original Celtic population. Those that survived are represented to-day by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Highland Scotch, among whom a branch of the Celtic language is still spoken to a considerable extent.

V.

THE GERMANS.

The Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113–101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was terra incognita to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1–3; Bk. vi. 21–28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his “Germania,” who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar’s fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31–54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.
VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

The campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the Nervii, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (Veneti, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (Aquitani), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.
Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Caesar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

VII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods (A. & G., pp. 381 ff.; B., pp. 117 ff.; G., pp. 437 ff.; H. 558), and the Definitions contained in § 171–180; B. 160–165; G. 201–209; H. 345–361.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words must mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to translate formally until you have got a complete idea of some integral part of the sentence. It makes nonsense
to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See Grammar, ch. 6, p. 386, and compare B. ch. 7, p. 227; G. 671–687; H. 559–573.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING \(^1\) thus in Hither \(^2\) Gaul, as I have shown above, CAESAR \(^3\) had frequent \(^4\) rumors brought to him,\(^5\) and despatches \(^6\) also from LABIENUS \(^7\) continued to inform him that ALL \(^8\) the BELGÆ,\(^9\) who constituted a third part \(^10\) of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the Roman gov-

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliæ, ita uti supra dēmonstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliæ partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsi-

\(^1\) The emphasis on being binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Caesar went to Hither Gaul,—and while he was engaged there."

\(^2\) Opposed to Farther Gaul, where the troops were.

\(^3\) The main subject of discourse.

\(^4\) The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he kept hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

\(^5\) An emphasis continued in Latin from CAESAR, the main person (see § 344. f.), but lost in English.

\(^6\), \(^7\) Opposed to the rumors.

\(^8\), \(^9\) Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "the entire body of the Belgæ."

\(^10\) Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "a full third of the whole."
Directions for Reading.

erment 11 and exchanging hostages. That for this conspiracy 12 the reasons were these, 13 namely: in the first place, because they were afraid 14 (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was all 15 subdued, 16 our army would be brought against them 17; and in the second place, because some 18 of the Gauls 18 (i.e. from outside) were tampering 18 with them. These Gauls were partly those who were disturbed that the Roman 19 army should pass the winter 20 and get a 20 footing in Gaul, just as 21 they had been unwilling that the Germans 22 should stay any longer 22 there, and partly those who from mere fickleness 24 dēsque inter sē dare. Coniū-randī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte

11 Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.
12 The main subject of discourse, "now this conspiracy, the reports said," etc.
13 The difference between "the reasons why these" and "these were the reasons why" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.
14 A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "fear" to "being tampered with." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said ipsī in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgae themselves, the Gauls by whom outside influence was brought to bear.
15, 16 The completion of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.
17 Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "them" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians (cf. Chiasmus, § 344. ʃ).
18 See note 14.
19 Opposed to the "Germans."
20 Opposed to "stay any longer."
21 The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.
22 Opposed to the "Romans."
23 See note 20.
24 Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the inconstancy of the second party is opposed.
and unsteadiness were [always] eager for new forms of government; [they were stimulated] by some also besides, who, inasmuch as in Gaul regal power was regularly usurped by the more powerful and by those who had means to employ soldiers, could not so easily succeed in such usurpations under our imperial control.

A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a change.

Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.
The two means of attaining regal power.
And consequently wanted to rebel.
The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as rem here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.

This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. After taking hostages he led his army back to the sea [where he] found the ships repaired. Having launched them, inasmuch as he had a great number of captives, and some of the ships had been lost in the storm, he proceeded to transport his army in two voyages. And [fortunately] it so happened that out of so many ships in so many voyages not a single one was lost that carried soldiers either that year or the year before, while of the ships which were sent back to him empty from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built later, very few reached their destination. Almost all the rest were driven back.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redécut ad mare, návis invenit refectás. His déductís, quod et captivórum mágnum numerum habébat, et nón nüllae temperáte déperierant návés, duóbus commeátibus exercitum reportáre institut. Àc sic accidit uti ex tantó návium numeró, tot návigationibus, neque hóc neque superioré annó ülla omnínó návis quae milités portáret désiderárétur; at ex eis quae inánés ex continentí ad eum remitterentur, [et] priórís commeátús expositís militiae, et quás posteá Labiënus faciendás cûraverat numeró LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae feré omnés réicerentur.
All Gaul is divided into three parts one of which the
Belgians round the Aquitanians, the third those who are
called in their language Celta in our language Gaes.
Rising themselves in language continues to live.
The Garamon were separate the Gauls from the Aquitanian.
The Mannov and the Iceni from the Belgians.

Of all these the most brave are the Belgien, because
they are away from all the culture and civilization
of the province (cultivated), and merchants penetrate to them, they are
often and unjust things which to weaken their
their spirit, they are to the Germans who live across the Rhine,
with which they wage war constantly.

Also for this reason the Belgians surpass the Boeumnic Gaul,
their bravery because they cannot almost slowly battled
with the Germans whom either they prohibit them to travel
their territories after themselves anywhere in their country.
The part of them which it has been said the Gauls held
borders, the country from the river Rhine, is bounded
by the Garamon R. By the ocean by the boundaries of the
Belgians, which are even on the sides of the (Saxons)
and Helvidians, the river Rhine and Rhine.
The Belgians, part of the F. River, looks toward the north and
across this and Aquitanian on the Garamon R. This
the Aquitanian into and the part of the Aquitanian, next
to Spain, looks between the setting sun and the moon.

When Caesar was in battle and when he had taken
alone frequent numbers who brought to him, however
he was informed by the letters of Belgenius that all the Belgics
willingly and said were, I will not offend them because
against the Roman prince and his causa amy
hosting was among themselves.

These were the deaths of such a noise, just because the
same but all Gauls had followed because I had offended
against them, Second, he was ten years by his
action. Part

A traitor who had been complaining, that the Germans should
remain and were employed by the arm of the Roman
people, should spend the water and grow a
a foothold in Gaul, a traitor because of
the unforeseen mind was this.

(Handwritten notes and corrections.)
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.—CHAP. I.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis tres; quærum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum linguæ Celtae, nostrâ Galli appellantur. Hi omnès linguæ, institutis, légibus inter sè differunt. Gallîs ab Aquitânis Garumna flûmen, à Belgis Matrona et Sêquana dividit.

Their Characters Compared.

Hôrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, própterea quod à cultû atque hûmânitate prôvinciae longissimè absunt, minimeque ad eös mercatórês saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effeminandös animös pertinent important; proximique sunt Germânîs qui trâns Rhênum incolunt, quibuscum continentem bellum gerunt. Quâ dê causâ Helvêtii quoque reliquòs Gallös virtûte praecèdunt, quod férè cotidîânis proellis cum Germânîs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eös prohibent aut ipsi in eòrum finibus bellum gerunt.

The Territories of Each.

Eòrum ùna pars, quam Gallös obtinère dictum est, initiúm capit à flûmine Rhodanô continètur Garumnâ flûmine,

Second Year Latin.

Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sólem. Aquitānia à Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnæōs montis et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sólis et septentriōnēs.

* * * * * * * * * * *

BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY, B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita utī suprā de-mōnstrāvīmus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litteris-10 que itēm Labiēni.certior 4 fiēbat omnis Belgās, quàm tertiam

esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānun coniūrāre 5 obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandi hās esse causās: prīnum quod verērentur 6 nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētūr; deinde quod ab nōn

Cf. 1 inferior, p. 8, l. 18.—2 pertinent, l. 3.—8 occāsum, 28, 12.—4 certior factus erat, 53, 19.—6 coniūrātum est, 71, 6.—6 verērentur, 38, 11.
Fig. 44. — Gaul with Trumpet (carnyx).
nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōlerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inverterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant, — ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Galliā a potentiōribus atque eis qui ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō régna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperīō nostrō consequi poterant.

Caesar promptly Moves against them.


The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Èō cum dē imprōviso celeriūsque omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, primum civitātis, misērunt, qui dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potentātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniu-rāsse, paratōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēteriūsque rēbus iuvāre;

reliquos omnis Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem ut nesciunxisse, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint quin cum his consentirent.

Origin and Strength of the Belgæ as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bellis possent, sic reperiabet: plei-risque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis, Rheumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse Gallisque qui ea loca incoherent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata, Teutonos Cimbrisque intras suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; quae ex re fieri uti eorum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritate magnostique spiritus in re militari sument. De numeris eorum omnibus se habere explorata Remi dicabant, propere quod propinquitatis adfinitatisque consociationem, quantam quisque multitubinim in communis Belgarum conciliabat id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numeri.

valère; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum, pollīcitōs ex eō numerō élēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suōs esse fīnitumī; finēs lātiissimus terrāccissimusque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoria Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum māgnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniāe imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicēri milia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, qui māximē fēri inter ipsis habeantur longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Velioccassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia; Condрусōs, Eburonēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri ad xl milia.

Caesar Marches to the Aisane, and Encamp beyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōratiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnglignum sit. Id fīeri posse, si suās cōpiās Haeduī in finīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxorint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum à sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre [vidit] neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs miserat explōrātoribus et ab Rēmis cōgnōvit,

flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum tradūcere mātūravit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus unum castrōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddebat, et commētus ab Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possent efficiebat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrum Sābinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relict; castra in altitūdinem pedum xii vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūniri iubet.

The Belgae Attack Bibrāx, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles away.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrāx aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multītūdine hominum tōtis moenibus undique

in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat.\footnote{1} Nam cum tanta multi-
tūdī lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūro cōnsistenti pōtestās\footnote{2} erat nūlī. Cum finem oppūgnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēne-
rant, nūntium\footnote{8} ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submit-
tātur, sēsē diūtius\footnote{4} sustinēre nōn posse.

Caesar Sends Relief and the Belgae Advance on his Camp.

10 7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus qui nūn-
tīi\footnote{8} ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et fundi-
tōrēs Baleārēs subsidīō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē dēfēnsīonis studium prōpūgnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi\footnote{6} oppidi discessit.

15 Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs\footnote{7} aedificiīisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar Strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitūdinem hostium et pro-
ter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit\footnote{8}; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent\footnote{9} periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōres intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruēndam nāturā opportunō atque idōneō,\footnote{10} — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitie ēditus, tantum ad-

Cf. \footnote{1} fīat, p. 28, 1. 4. — \footnote{2} pōtestātem, 17, 7. — \footnote{8} nūntii, 41, 17. —
\footnote{4} diūtius, 146, 2. — \footnote{5} nūntii, 41, 17. — \footnote{6} potiti sunt, 37, 24. — \footnote{7} vici, 65,
\footnote{15.} — \footnote{8} statuērunt, 17, 14. — \footnote{9} ausus sit, 78, 19. — \footnote{10} idōneum, 35, 21.
versus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī acīs īnstrūctā 1 occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris 2 dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter 8 fastigātus paulātim ad plānitiem redibat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trànsversam fossam 5 obdīxit circiter passuum quaedringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripserat 4 in castris 10 relictis, ut, si quō opus 5 esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs pró castris in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās 6 ex castris èductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgæ Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercītum. Hanc si nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant;

nostri autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur 1 parāti in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbatūr. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus 2 ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum 3 est. Ibi vadi repertīs 4 partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat 5 Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent 6 pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, 10 agrōs Rēmōrum populērunt, 7 qui māgnō nōbis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque 8 nostrōs prohibērunt.

Caesar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōres 9 sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnā-15 tum est. Hostis impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressi māgnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantis multādūne tēlōrum repulērunt, primōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumven-tōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et 20 dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse 10 intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquōrem prōgredi pūgnandi causā vidē-runt, atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quem-que 11 reverti, et, quōrum in finis primum Rōmāni exercitum 25 intrōdūxisserant, ad eōs défendendōs undique 12 convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis reī frumentāriāe uterentur. Ad eam sen-

tentiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eós deduxit, quod Diviciacum atque Haeduós finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuāderī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilia ferrent non poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

5 11. Eā rē constitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris égressi nūlō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcrunt ut consimilis fugae profectō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod quá de causā discēderent nondum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuat. Primā lūce confirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam légātōs praefecit; T. Labiēnum légātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extremō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur exaudītō clamōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostri interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatum; sub occāsum sōlis sequi déstiterunt séque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Caesar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postridiē ēius dieī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā recuperent, in finis Suessiōnum, qui proximi\(^1\) Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre\(^2\) cōnātus,\(^3\) quod vacuum ab défensōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae\(^4\) mūrique altitūdinem paucis défendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnitis vineās agere quae-

que ad oppūgnandum ľūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtis,\(^5\) māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditio-ne mittunt et petentibus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur impetrant.\(^6\)

In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitātīs atque ipsius Galbae régis duōbus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō

Cf. \(^1\) proximi, p. 146, l. 21. — \(^2\) oppūgnāre, 149, 13. — \(^3\) cōnātus, 153, 18. — \(^4\) fossam, 37, 19. — \(^5\) cōnstituit, 152, 6. — \(^6\) impetrātō, 54, 12.
trādidit\textsuperscript{1} in déditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sè suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs 5 māiores nātū ex oppidō egressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coeperunt sēsē in āius fidem\textsuperscript{2} ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset\textsuperscript{3} castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēisque ex mūrō passis manibus suō 10 mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Haudui, Pleads for the Bello vaci.

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessment Belgārum dimissis\textsuperscript{4} Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, qui 15 dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs\textsuperscript{5} omnis indignitātis contumēliāsque\textsuperscript{6} perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī āius cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem civitātīi intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn 20 sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem\textsuperscript{7} apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūram, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus,\textsuperscript{8} si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre\textsuperscript{9} cōnsuērint.’

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervi, who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit, et quod erat

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} trādidit, p. 25, l. 14. — \textsuperscript{2} fidem, 146, 23. — \textsuperscript{3} accessit, 81, 7. — \textsuperscript{4} dīmittit, 27, 8. — \textsuperscript{5} redāctās, 17, 15. — \textsuperscript{6} contumēliām, 15, 6. — \textsuperscript{7} auctōritātem, 147, 14. — \textsuperscript{8} amplificandā, 18, 18. — \textsuperscript{9} opibus, 12, 23. — \textsuperscript{10} sustentātūm, 149, 13.
civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit.\(^1\) His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō locō in finis Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdi-
dērunt. Eōrum finis Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque\(^2\) Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum
adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vini reliquārum-
que\(^3\) rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus
relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent; esse
hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre\(^4\) atque incū-
sāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdīdissent
patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre\(^5\) sēsē neque
lēgātōs missūrōs neque ľūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finis trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat
ex captīvis Sabīm flūmen ā castrīs suis non amplius mīlia
passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnis Nerviōs cōnsē-
disse\(^6\) adventumque iber Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum
Atrebātībus et Viromandūs finitimis suis (nam his utrisque
persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experīrentur\(^8\));
exspectāri etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in
itinere; mulierēs quique per aetēm ad pūgnam inūtilēs
vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs\(^9\)
exercitū aditus nōn esset.

The Nerviī, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Caesar
while Pitching Camp.

17. His rēbus cógnitis explōratōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-
mittit qui locum castrīs idōneum\(^10\) dēligant.\(^11\) Cum ex
dēditiciis Belgīs reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem
secūti ūnā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut posteā ex captīvis

Cf. 1 poscit, p. 27, l. 7. — 2 mōs, 67, 3. — 3 reliquis, 146, 13. — 4 incre-
pāns, 70, 3. — 5 cōnfīrmāvērunt, 41, 6. — 6 cōnsēdisse, 147, 10. — 7 utrā-
que, 152, 2. — 8 experiar, 30, 18. — 9 palūs, 152, 13. — 10 idōneō, 150,
cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērent; atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquām nē-gōtī, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub sārcinis adoriri; quā

pulsā impedimentisque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem déferēbant, quod Nerviī antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandi causā ad eōs vēnissent, impēdirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crēbris-

que in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant 1 ut instar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, 2 quō nōn modo nōn intrāris nē perspici quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostri impeditētur, nōn 5 omissendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī existimāvērunt.

Nature of the Ground.

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus 3 huic et contrā- 10 rius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspici posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equītum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur 4 omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ārdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. 5 Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; 20 inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē 6 cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant præsidiōque 7 impedimentīs erant. Equitātēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāngressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent āc rūrsus 8 ex silvā in 25 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis insequi

audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnire coepercunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eis qui in silvis abditi latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ēordinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsi sēsē confirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impe-tumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen décucurrērunt, ut paene unō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesari omnia unō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arces-sendi, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et suces-

sus hostium impediēbat. His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidii,—scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitāti quid fieri oportēret non minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Cae-
sar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur admi-
nistrābant.

Caesar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are already Engaged.

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ēratiōne cohortātus quam utī suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam reti-
nērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ho-
stiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōnspēxit ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandi tempus dimiteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

22. Ínstructō exercitū magis ut loci nāūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in

parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque\(^1\) dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis\(^2\) prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocāri neque quid in quāque parte opus\(^3\) esset prōvidēri neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administra ī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae\(^5\) quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

TWO LEGIONS FORCE THE ATREBATES INTO THE RIVER; TWO PURSUE THE VIROMANDUI, BUT THE NERVI Gain THE CAMP.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissis cursū āc lassitūdine exanimātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs—nam his ea pars obvēnerat—celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen copulērunt, et trānsire cōnantis\(^4\) insecuti gladiis māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum\(^5\) prōgressi rūrsus resistentis hostis redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūnē decima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis,\(^6\) cum in dextrō cornū\(^7\) legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nervī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, qui summam\(^8\) imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

THE ENEMY HAVE THE ADVANTAGE. THE TREVERI, PANIC-STRICKEN, WITHDRAW TO THEIR HOMES.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae\(^9\) peditēs, qui cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium

Cf.\(^1\) saepēs, p. 160, l. 2. —\(^2\) interiectis, 160, 2. —\(^3\) opus, 152, 10. —\(^4\) cōnātus, 155, 4. —\(^5\) iniquōrem, 153, 22. —\(^6\) nūdātus, 150, 2. —\(^7\) cornū, 82, 3. —\(^8\) summam, 148, 8. —\(^9\) armātūrae, 153, 14.
impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipere, adversis hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā porta āc summō iugō collis nostrōs victorēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspexerant, praedandi causā egressi, cum respēxissent et hostis in nostris castris versāri vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmōs fremitusque oriēbātur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equītēs Treveri, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, qui auxili causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equītēs, fundītōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnis partis fugere vidissent, dēspérātī nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostis potitōs, civitāti renūntiāverunt.

Caesar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātōne ad dextrum cornū praefectus, ubi suōs urgeri signisque in ūnum locum conlatīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit,—quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus fere centuriōnibus aut volnerātis aut occisis, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn possēt; reliquis esse tardiorēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimis désertō proeliiō excéderē āc tēla vitāre, hostis neque ā fronte ex inferiorō locō subeuntis

intermittere, et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque illum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, — scūtō ab novissimis [ūni] militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus 5 militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā militibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 10

Cf. 1 submittātur, p. 150, l. 8. — 2 scūtīs, 162, 21. — 3 redintegrātō, 163, 14.
Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstitērat, item urgerī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostis inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnēm duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspicīebantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castris gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnēm subsidiiō nostrīs misit. Qui, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad cele-ritātem sībi reliqui fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innīxi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostis cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpītūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrēnt. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insista- rent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātīs cadāveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pilae intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicāri dēbēret ausōs

esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum vīctorībus nihil impedītum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant cōnsēnsūs lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērant sēque ei dēdidērunt et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus lx vīx ad quingentōs quī arma ferre possent sēse redāctōs esse dixērant. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ĕsus misericordiā víderētur, diligentissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque finibus atque oppidis ūti iussit, et fīnitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficīō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

29. Aduatuci, dé quibus supra diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venirent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūncitis oppidis castellisque désertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpis déspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgni ponderis saxa et praecūtās trabis in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, qui,
Fig. 57. - Citadel of Namur.
cum iter in prövinciam nostram atque Ætiam facerent, eis impedimentis quae secum agere ac portäre non poterant citrà flümen Rhēnum dépósitis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs a fīnitimis exagitàti, cum aliās bellum īnferrent aliās inlātum défenderent, cónsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum délēgerant.

They Laugh at the Roman Siege Works and Scoff at the Romans for their Shortness of Stature.

30. Āc prīmō adventū exercitus nostri crēbrās ex oppidō excursionēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contēndēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circītū xv milium, crēbrisque castellis circummūnīti oppidō sēsē contingēbant.

Cf. 1 adventum, p. 158, l. 17.—2 crēbrī, 144. 9.
ubi vineis actis aggere extructo turrim procul constitui vidierunt, primum inridere ex miro atque increpitare vocibus quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: ' Qui-

busnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae statuarum — nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatis nostra contemptui est — ' tanti oneris turrim in miro sesse conlocare confiderent?'

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vero moveri et adpropinquare moenibus vide-runt, nova atque inusitata specie commotis legatios ad Caesarem de pace misierunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti:

'Non existimare Romanos sine ope divinam bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinaitiones tantae celeritatis promovere possent; sed suaeque omnia eorum potestati permittere.' dixerunt. 'Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audiren, statuisset Aquatucos esse conservandos, nes armes despoliaret. Sibi omnis feret finitimis esse inimicos ac suae

They Accept Caesar's Terms, but treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: "Sé magis consuetūdine suam quam meritō eorum civitātem conservātūrum, si, priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditōnis nōllum esse condicionem nisi armis trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populi Rōmāni iniūriam inferrent." Rē 10 nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum mágnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitūdinem acervi armōrum adaequārent, et tamen 8 circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in op-15 pidō retentā, portis patēfactis eō die pāce sunt ūsi.

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēisque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī 4 ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut 20 dēnique indigentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intestis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās 5 postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascēnsus vidēbā-25 tur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ūruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Cf. 1 inviderant, p. 59, l. 11. — 2 priusquam, 155, 1. — 8 tamen, 41, 1. — 4 oppidānīs, 150, 12. — 5 exiguitās, 162, 18.
Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus signifīcatiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnāri debuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs consisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postrīdīē ēius dieī refrāctīs portis, cum iam défenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectionem ēius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab ēis qui ēmerant capiūm numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subdues Many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crasso, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās civitātēs in dicionem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redactās.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Caesar’s Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. His rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eis nātiōnibus quae tranīs Rhēnum incolerō légāti ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās légātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Illyricumque propterbat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinqua

eis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnis in hiberna dēductis in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diēs quindecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

FIG. 60.—GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR
BOOK III, 7-16.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. B.C. 56.


7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar pácātam Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis], atque ita initā hieme in Íllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnes adire et 5 regionēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coör tum est.1 Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus aduléscēns cum legiōne vii proximus mare Óceanum in Andibus hīmābat.2 Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmenti erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūris in finitimās civitātīs frūmenti 10 causā dimisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ērae3 maritimae reiōrum eārum, quod et nāvis habent Ve- 15 neti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impētū maris vāstī atque aperti paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnis fērē qui eō mari úti cōnsuērunt habent vectigālis. Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili 20 atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs4 existimābant. Hōrum auctōritātē finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōn-

Cf. 1 coérta est, p. 40, l. 17. — 2 hīmāvī, 1, 3.— 3 drā, 37. 7.— 4 recuperandās, 48, 8.
III. 9.] *Campaign against the Veneti*, B.C. 56. 175

silia), eadem de causâ Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis légâtis per suös principès inter sé coniurant nihil nisi communi cōnsiliiō áctūrōs eundemque omnis for-tūnae exitum esse láturōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant 1 ut in eā libertātē quam á māioribus accēperint permanēre 5 quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omni ēra maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem légātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Si velit suös recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Fig. 61. — Gallia.

**Caesar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.**

9. Quibus dē rébus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod 10 ipse aberat longius, nāvis interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligeri, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā insti-tui, nautās gubernātōrēsque 2 comparāri iubet. His rébus

Cf. 1 *sollicitārentur*, p. 146, l. 1. — 2 *gubernātōre*, 69, 5.
CELERITER ADMINISTRATIS IPSE, CUM PRIMUM PER ANNI TEMPUS POTUIT, AD EXERCITUM CONTENDIT. VENETI RELIQUAQUE ITEM CIVITATES COGNITAS CAESARIS ADVENTU [CERTIORRES FACTI], SIMUL QUOD QUANTUM IN SE FACINUS\(^1\) ADMISissent intellegebant, lega-

\[\text{FIG. 62. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.}\]

5 TOS — QUOD NOMEN AD OMNIS NATIO\(\text{\textdagger}\)S SANCTUM INVOLATUMQUE SEMPER FUisset — RETENTOS AB SE ET IN VINcULA CONIECTOS,\(^2\) PRO\(\text{\textdagger}\) MAGNITUDINE PERICULI BELLUM PARARE ET MAXIME EA QuAE AD USUM NAVIUM PERTINENT PROVIDERE INSTITUENT, HOc MAIOR E SP\(\text{\textdagger}\) QUOD MULTUM NATUR\(\text{\textdagger}\) LOCi CONFIDEBANT. PedaSTRIA ESSE ITINera CONCISA AESTUARI\(\text{\textdagger}\), NavigatioNeM IMPEDITAM PropTER INCIENTIAM LOC\(\text{\textdagger}\)RUM PAUCITATEMQUE PORTUM SCIE\(\text{\textdagger}\)BANT, NEQUE NOSTROS EXERCIT\(\text{\textdagger}\)S PROPTER FRUMENTI INOPIAM DIUTIUS APUD SE MORARI POSSE CONFIDEBANT; AC IAM UT OMNIA CONTRA OPINIONEM

\(\text{Cf. 1 facinus, p. 69, l. 1. — 2 conecta sunt, 19, 25.}\)
acciderent, tamen sē plūrumum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs
neque üllam facultātem habère nāvium, neque eōrum locō-
rum ubi bellum gestūri essent vada, portūs, insulās nōвисse;
āc longē aliam esse nāvīgātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in
vāstissimō atque apertissimō Oceanō perspicīēbant. His
initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida
comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bel-
lum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt.
Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Am-
biliātōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex
Britanniā, quae contra eās regionēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and
Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendi quās superā
ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum
incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō
facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmis nē hac parte neglēctā reliquaē nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegērēt
omnis ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter
celeriterque excitāri, omnis autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī
studēre et condiciōnem servītūs ādisse, priusquam plūrēs
civitātēs cōspirārent, partīendum sibi āc lātiōs distribuen-
dum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North.
Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum légātum in Trēverōs, qui
proxīmī frūminī Rhenō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic
mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō a Gallis arcessitī dīcē-

Cf. 1 facultātem, p. 24, l. 6. — 2 cōnstat, 40, 2. — 3 arcessendās,
68, 22. — 4 imprīmis, 55, 2.
bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, pro-
hibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis xii et
māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, né
ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tante
5 nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum
cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque
mittit, qui eam manum distinendamī curēt. D. Brūtum
adulēscentem classi Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus
et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iussērat,
praeficit, et cum primum posset in Venetōs proficisci iubet.
Ipse eō pedestribus cópiis contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in
extrēmis lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus adītum
habērent, cum ex altō sē aēstusī incitāvisset (quod [bis]
15 accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod
rūrsus minuente aēstū nāvēs in vadis adfictārentur. Ita
utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī
quandō—māgnūtūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari
aggere āc mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātis—
20 déspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium
adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dépor-
tābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē
rūrsus isdem opportunitātibus locī défendēbant. Haec eō
facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostra
25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō
atque aperto mari, māgnis aestibus, rāris āc prope nūllis
portibus, difficūlās nāvigandi.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōres quam nostrārum

Cf. 1 distinērī, p. 148, l. 22. — 2 cūrāvit, 62, 5. — 3 aēstus, 12, 2.
nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērectae atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbere ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altītūdinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līni atque ēius īüss

inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās tempestātis Oceani tantōsque impetus ventōrum sustinēri āc tanta onera nāvium regi vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum his nāvibus nostrae clāsī ēius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum prae-stāret; reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illis essent aptīōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eis erat firmitūdō — neque

Cf. 1 admodum, p. 18, l. 6. — 2 contumēliam, 15, 6. — 3 pellibus, 72, 10.
Second Year Latin.

propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtis timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimī neque eis nocēri posse, statuit exspectan-
tio dam classem. Quae ubi convenīt āc primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ornātissimae profectae ex portū nos-
tris adversae cōnstītērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classi praerat, vel tribūnis militum centurionibusque, quibus sin-
gulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam rationem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocēri nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitudō puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adīgi possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostris, — falcēs praecātūrē adfixaeque longuriis nōn absimili formā mūralium falcium. His cum fūnēs qua antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmis incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisēs antemnēs necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōnsis-
teret, hīs ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēripē-
tur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnīs exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

paulō fortius factum latēre\textsuperscript{1} posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus déspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae āc ternaē nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi trānsscendere in hostium nāvis contendēbant. Quod postquam barbāri fieri animadverērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nullum reperirētur\textsuperscript{2} auxiliōm, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstītit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium conficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī consēctātī expūgnārērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII usque\textsuperscript{2} ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

\textsuperscript{1} latēbant, p. 161, 1. 3. — \textsuperscript{2} reperēbat, 83, 26. — \textsuperscript{3} usque, 17, 24.
The Veneti Surrender. Thei Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliqui neque quō sē recipere neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentiōs in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs légātorum cōnservāret. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquis sub corōnā vēndidit.

Fig. 66. — Pack-wagons and Carts.

Book IV, 1–19.

The First Invasion of Germany. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō consulibus, Usipetes Germānī et item Tencteri māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus infuit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēvis complūris annōs exagitāti 5 bellō premēbantur et agrī cultura prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis¹ singula milia armātōrum bellandi causā ex finibus edūcunt. Reliqui, qui domi mānsērunt, sē atque 10 illōs alunt.² Hi rūrsus in vicem³ annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī āc sēparātī agri apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō co- lendi causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam 15 partem lacte⁴ atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnā- tionibus⁵; quae rēs et cibi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne


183
et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina adsuèfacti nihil omnino contrà voluntatem faciunt, et viris alit et immanni corporum magnitudine hominés efficit. Atque in eam sè consuetudinem adduxerunt ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis habèrent quicquam, quàrum propter exiguitatem magnae est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.

2. Mercatóribus est aditus magis eò ut quae bellò cèperint quibus vëndant habeant, quam quò ullam rem ad sè importari désiderent. Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maximè Galli délectantur quaeque impënsë parant pretiò, [Germani] importatis non úntuntur; sed quae sunt apud eòs nàta, parva atque déformia, haec cotidiëna exercitatio nes summi ut sint labòris efficient.

Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis désiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eòdem remanere vestigiò adsuèfèce-runt, ad quos sè celeriter, cum ùsus est, recipiunt; neque eòrum mòribus turpius quicquam aut inertia habètur quam ephippìs úti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatòrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omnino ad sè importari non sinunt, quod eà ré ad labòrem ferendum remollèscere hominès atque effèminari arbitrantur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Publicè maxìmam putant esse laudem quam látissimè à suis finibus vacare agròs: hác ré significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinère non possè. Itaque 25 ünà ex parte à Suevis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrì vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succédunt Ubii, qui-orum fuit civitas ampla atque florèns, ut est captus Germànò-

Cf. 1 officiò, p. 177, l. 25.—2 vëndidit, 183, 11.—3 désiliuit, 51, 24.
rum; et paulò, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cèteris hümâniòrës, propterea quod Rhënum attingunt, multumque ad eòs mercâtòrës'ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitàtem [quod] Gallicis sunt mòribus adsuèfacti. Hòs cum Suëvi 5 multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitùdinem gravitátemque civitàtis finibus expellere non potuisset, tamen vectigàlis² sibi fècërunt ac multò humiliòrës infirmiòrësque redègèrunt.³

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eàdem causâ fuèrunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quòs 10 suprà diximus, qui complûris annòs Suëvòrum vim sustinuèrunt; ad extrêmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germàniae triennium vagàti⁴ ad Rhënum pervènérunt; quàs regionès Menapii incolèbant. Hí ad utramque ripam flùmi- 15 nis agròs aedificià vicòsque habèbant; sed tantae multitùdinis aditù perterríti ex eis aedificiis quae tràns flùmen habuerant dèmigràverant, et cis Rhënum dispositis praesi- diis Germànoròs trànsire prohibèbant. Illì omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nàvium neque clam trànsire propter custòdiàs Menapiòrum possent, revertì 20 sè in suàs sèdis regionèsque simulâvérunt⁵ et triduì viam prògressi rùrsus revertérunt, atque omni hòc itinere ùnà nocte equitátù cònfecitò insciòs inopinantisque⁶ Menapiòs oppressèrunt; qui dè Germànoròm discussù per exploratórës

Cf. ¹ mercâtòrës, p. 43, l. 13.—² vectigàlis, 174, 19.—³ redàctòs, 65, 10.—⁴ vagàbantur, 37, 11.—⁵ simulàns, 82, 13.—⁶ inopinâtum, 72, 20.
certiorēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. 1 His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae cīrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Caesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quae rēs; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus 2 circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre 3 cōgat. His rēbus atque auditōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre 15 necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.


Cf. 1 remigrārent, p. 56, l. 25. — 2 volgī, 2, 13. — 3 prōnūntiāvit, 28, 1.
They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Ré frumentaría comparató æquilibusque délectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locís esse Germánós audiebat. A quibus cum paucórum diérum iter abesset, légáti ab eis vénérunt, quórum haec fuit órátió: 'Germánós neque priórés populó Rómánó bellum inferre neque tamen recúsáre, si laccéssantur, quin armís contendant, quod Germánórum consuetúdó [haec] sit a máióribus trádita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque déprecári. Haec tamen dicere, vénisse invítós, eíctós domó; si suam grátiam Rómání velínt, posse eis útilis esse amícós; vel sibi agrós attribuánt vel patiantur eós tenère quós armís possesserint: sésé únís Suévis concédere, quibus nē dí quidem immortálés parés esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrís esse nénim quem nōn superáre possint.'

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit órátiós: 'Sibi nǔllam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliá remanérent; neque vērum esse qui suós finís tuéri nōn potuerint aliénós occupáre; neque ullós in Galliá vacáre agrós qui dari tantae præsertim multitúdini sine iniúriá possint; sed licère, si velínt, in Ubiórum finibus consídere, quórum sint légáti apud sē et dē Suévrórum iniúriis querantur et a sē auxílium petant; hóc sē Ubiis imperátrum.'

They Delay.

9. Légáti haec sē ad suós relátúrós díxeünt et ré délibé-rátā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversúrós; intereá nē propiús sē castra movérét petiérunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impertári posse dixit. Cógnoverat enim mágnam partem equitátús ab eis aliquot diébus ante prædandi frúmer-

Cf. ¹ laccéssēbat, p. 25, l. 11. — ² déprecantibus, 63, 12. — ³ vidéban-tur, 162, 8.
tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectāri equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābatur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.


Caesar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii milibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ērābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum si principēs āc senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, ea condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnfyenciās sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut tridui morā interposētā equitēs eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā proccessūrum eō dīē dixit; hūc posterō dīē quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs qui cum omni equitātū

Cf. 1 ingentīs, p. 37, l. 18. — 2 antecēdunt, 174, 16. — 3 ostendit, 54, 16.
antecesserant mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostis proeliō lacesset; et, si ipsi lacerarentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equites conspexērunt, quorum erat mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius dccc equites habērent, quod ei quī frumentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod lēgāti eōrum paulō ante ā Caesarē discerserant atque is diēs indūtīs erat ab his petitus, impētū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus his resistentibus, consuetūdine suā ad pedēs désiluērunt, subfossisque equis complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquis in fugam concēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā désisterent quam in conspectum agminis nostrīs vēnissent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

15 In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in his vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātri inclusō ab hostibus auxiliō ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō exesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfunctus est.

Envoys Come to Caesar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

13. Hoc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condicionēs accipiendas arbitrabatur ab eis qui per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. 1 désiliunt, p. 185, l. 15. — 2 avus, 33, 3. — 3 obtulerant, 71, 9.
intulissent: exspectäre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proelīō auctōritātīs essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum 5 existimābat. ῾Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaeōtōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnāe praetermitteret,1 opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridē ēius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātīōne ēus Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus māiōribusque nātū adhibītis,2 ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandi sui causā, quod (contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent) proelium prīdiē commiśissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtiōs fallendō 8 impetrērent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnīs 15 cōpiās castrīs ēduxīt equitātumque, quod recentī proelīō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

Cæsar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Aciē triplīcī institūtā et celerītēr vīllium itinerē cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnīt quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Qui omnibus rēbus 20 subitō perterrētī et celerītāte adventūs nostrī et discēssū suōrum, neque cōnsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praeṣtāret.4 Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs 25 nostrī prīstini5 diēi perfidiā inciṭāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō qui celerīrer arma capere potuērunt pauliṣper6 nostrī restītērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaque proelium commiśerunt; at reliqua multīūdō puerōrum multīrumque—nam cum omnibus suis domō excederant 30

Cf. 1 praetermiserat, p. 48, l. 15.—2 adhibitās, 29, 15.—3 feellissee, 153, 21.—4 praeṣtāre, 171, 2.—5 prīstinarum, 85, 10.—6 pauliṣper, 11, 25.
Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugēre coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.


Caesar’s Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.

cf. 1 tergō, p. 31, l. 25.—2 lassitūdine, 163, 8.—3 impulsōs, 156, 14.
invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperi aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubī autem, qui ūnī ex Trānsrerhē-nānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ērābant ut sībi auxilium 5 ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Arioivistō pulsō et hōc novissimō 10 proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās 1 Germānōrum nātiōnēs, uti opīniōne et amicitā populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnām cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar his de causis quās commemorāvi Rhēnum 15 trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābatur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendi pontis prōpōnēbatur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sībi contendendum aut 20 aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sēquipādālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dimēnsa 3 ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllo pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen défixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, 25 — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicularum, sed prōnē āc fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contra vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque 30 insuper bipedālibus trabibus 3 immissis, quantum eōrum

Cf. 1 ultimum, p. 17, l. 24. — 2 dimēnsō, 161, 2. — 3 trabibus, 179, 5.
tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extra parte distinебantur; 1 quibus disclāsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, 5 hoc artius 2 inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērectā materiā injectā contextēbantur ac longūris crātibusque consonēbantur; ac nihilō sēcīus 3 sublicae et ad inferiorem partem flūminis. oblique agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item supra pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs deiciendi operis essent ā barbariā immissae, his deēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, nee ponti nocērent. 4

Caesar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus materiā coepta erat comportāri omni opere effectō exercitus trāducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finis Sugambrorum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberālīter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. 20 At Sugambri ex eō tempore quō pōns instituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suīs exsesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant. 5

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frumentisque succisis, sē in finis Ubīorum receptū; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suēvōs,

Cf. 1 distinendum, p. 178, 1. 7. — 2 artius, 18, 9. — 3 sēcīus, 80, 5. — 4 nocēre, 179, 16. — 6 abditī, 161, 3.
Fig. 70. — Pons a Caesare in Rheno factus.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; bb, trabes bipedales; cc, fibulae; 
dd, directa materia longuriiis cratibusque constrata; 
eee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae; 
ffe, sublicae supra pontem imissae; 
fee, castellum ad caput pontis positum.
posteaquam per explōratōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, morte suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnis partis dimisisse, utī dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvis dépōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēvi obtinērent; hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituīsse.

Quod ubi Caesar commiserat, omnibus eis rébus cōnfectis quārum rérum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs uliciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidīōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum consūmpsis, satis et ad laudem et ad útilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliām recēpit pontemque rescidit.
rant, púrgandi¹ sui causá ad eum lēgātōs mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitāte in Trèverós missa neque ab sē fidem laesam:² petunt atque ērant ut sibi parcat, nē com-
mūni odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās
pendant;³ si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cōg-
nitā Caesār causā reperit ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse;
Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem⁴ accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs
perquīrit.⁵

He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the
Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus ēt ab Ubīis certior Suēvōs
omnis in ūnum locum cōpiās cogere, atque eīs nātōnibus 10
quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs
equitātūsque mittant. His cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam
prōvidet, castris idōneum⁶ locum dēligi, Ubīs imperat ut
pecora dēducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida cōnferant,
— spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs homīnēs inopiā cibāriō- 15
rum⁷ adductōs ad iniquam pūgnandi condiciōnem posse
dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs⁸ explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant
quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.⁹ Illī imperātā faci-
unt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt:¹⁰ ‘Suēvōs omnis,
posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitiū Rōmānōrum vēne-
rint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis quās cōegissent,
penitus ad extrēmōs¹¹ finis sē recepisse;¹² silvam esse ibi
infinītā māgnitudine, quae appellātur Bācenis; hanc longē
intrōrsus¹³ pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Čhēruscōs
ab Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Čhēruscōrum inīūris incursiōni-
busque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum¹⁴
Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.’

Cf. ¹ excūsāndi. — ² violentam. — ³ persolvant. — ⁴ excūsātiōnem. —
⁵ explōrat. — ⁶ opp. iniquum. — ⁷ rērum frūmentāriārum. — ⁸ frequen-
tēs. — ⁹ perquirant. — ¹⁰ dēferunt. — ¹¹ ultimus. — ¹² contulisse. — ¹³
penitus. — ¹⁴ opp. profectionem.
Customs of the Gauls. The Two Parties among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō different hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē própōnerē.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus civitātibus atque in 5 omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnunm principēs sunt qui summam auctōritātem 1 eōrum iūdiciō 2 habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summam omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redate. 3 Iduque ēius rei causā anti- 10 quitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret; 4 suōs enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ūllum inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliæ; namque omnēs civitātēs divīsae sunt in duās partīs. 5

Influence of the Romans upon the Relations of the Parties in Gaul. They Favor the Haeduī.

15 12. Cum Caesar in Galliām vēnit, alterius factiōnīs principēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hi, cum per sē minus 6 valērent (quod summam auctōritās antiquitās erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlæ), Germānōs atque Ariorīstum sibi adiūnixerant 7 eōsque ad sē māgnis 20 iactūris 8 pollicitātiōnibusque perduxerant. Proeliiis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omnis nobilitātē Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā 9 antecesserant 10 ut māgnām partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē traducerent obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent 25 nihil sē contrā Sēquānos cōnsili inītūros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupātām possiderent, Galliæque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitātēe adductus Diviciācus

auxili petendi causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā re redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus\(^1\) clientēlis restitūtīs, novis per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant\(^3\) meliōre condiciōne atque aequōre imperiō sē úti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāte amplificātā,\(^5\) Sēquani principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei qui propter veterēs inimicitiās\(^4\) nūllo modō cum Haeduīs coniungi poterant sē iō Rēmis in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur;\(^6\) ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū\(^6\) rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

**Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and their Power.**

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliō quō sunt numērō\(^7\) atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audēt per sē, nūlli adhibētur\(^8\) cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnituōdine tribūtōrum\(^9\) aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant\(^10\) nōbilibus; *quibus* in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equītum. Illī rēbus divīnīs intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscantium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit,\(^11\) māgnōque hi sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs publicis privātīisque cōnstituunt;\(^12\) et, si quod est admissum\(^13\) facinus, si caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrō-

Cf. \(^1\) antīquās. — \(^2\) concurrerant. — \(^3\) auctā. — \(^4\) opp. amicitiās. — \(^5\) dēfendēbant. — \(^6\) condiciōne. — \(^7\) dignitāte. — \(^8\) invītātur. — \(^9\) stipendiōrum. — \(^10\) dēdunt. — \(^11\) sē adgregat. — \(^12\) dēcernunt. — \(^13\) com-

\([\text{Digitized by Google}]\)
versia est, idem dècernunt; praemia poenásque cónstituunt; sí qui aut privátus aut populus eòrum dècrètò nón stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eòs est gravis-sima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numerò impiòrum ac scelerátòrum habentur, his omnès dècèdunt, aditum eòrum sermònemque dèfugiunt; né quid ex contâgiòne incommodi accipient, neque eis petentibus iùs redditur neque honòs ulla commùnicâtur. His autem omnibus druidibus præeest unus, qui summam inter eòs habet auctoritátém. Hóc mortuò, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitáte, succédit, aut, si sunt plúrès parès, suffrágìo druidum, nón numquam etiam armís dè principátù contendunt. Hi certò anni tem- ëre in finibus Carnutum, quae regió tótius Galliae media habètur, cónsidunt in locó cónsecrátò; húc omnès undique qui contròversiás habent conveniunt eòrumque dècrètis iùdiciísque pàrent. Disciplina in Britannìa reperta atque inde in Galliam trânslátà existimâtur; et nunc qui diligèntius eam rem coìgnòscere volunt plúræmque illó discendi causà proficiscuntur.

Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

14. Druides à bellò abesse 8 cónsuèrunt neque tribùta ūnà cum reliquis pendunt; [militiae vacatiònem omniumque rèrum habent immùnitàtem]. Tantís excitáti praemìis et

suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt etā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum édiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs non nūlli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rébus, públicos privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris útāntur. Id mihi duābus dé causis instituuisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litteris cōnfiōs minus memoriae studēre,—quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidio litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō āc memoriam remittant. In primis hōc volunt persuādere, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc máximē ad virtūtem excitāri putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praeterēā dé sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dé mundī āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dé rērum nātūrā, dé deōrum immortālium vi āc potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

The Knights are the Fighting Men.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incitāt (quod ferē ante Caesāris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiāisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientisque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōni-bus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adfectā graviōribus morbis, quiue in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs voent,

Second Year Latin. [Cæsar B. G.]

administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur,—quod, prò vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen placāri arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificiā. Alīi immāni

Fig. 72.—Gallic Coins.

5 māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventi flammae examinantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum qui in fūrō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eīus generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Gallic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventœrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaeśtūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquaë gentēs habent opinīōnem: Apollinem morbōs dépellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicare cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multiś in civitātibus hārum rērum exstrēc-

Cf. 1 ingenti.— 2 incēnsis.— 3 scelere.— 4 opp. suppedit.— 5 plārimum valēre.— 6 sententiam.— 7 proelium committere.
tōs cumulōs locis cōnsecrātis cōspicāri licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitūtum est.

They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Gallī sē omnis ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālis et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquis vitae institūtīs hōc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adulēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēret possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerili aetāte in pūblīco in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.


19. Viri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communicant. Hūius omnis pecūniāe coniūntim ratiō habētur frūctūsusque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriūsusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxōrēs sicut in liberōs vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae industriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestīōnem habent, et sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Funera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordi fussae arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia; āc paulō suprā hanc memoriam servi et clientēs,

quōs ab eis dilēctōs 1 esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cons-
fectis ūnā cremābantur.

All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae civitātēs commodius 2 suam rem pūblicam administraē 3 existimantur habent lēgibus sānc tum, si quis
quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum déferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet;
quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmō-
ribus terrērī et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cō-
silium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt
occultant, quae esse 6 ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdīnī prō-
dunt. 6 Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn concē-
ditur.

Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam
neque druidēs habent qui rēbus divīnis præsint neque
sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sólōs dūcunt 7 quōs
cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vōlca-
num et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīa
omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei miliāris consistit;
ā parvis labōri āc dūritiae student. Qui diūtissimē 8 impu-
berēs permānsērunt máximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hoc
ali statūram, ali viris nervōse convērmāri putant. Intra
annum vērō vicēsimum fēminaē nōtītiam habuisses in turpissi-
mis habent 9 rēbus: cūius rei nūlla est occultātiō, quod et
prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, 10 et pellibus aut parvis
rēnōnum tegimentis útuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum victūs
in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agri mo-

Cf. 1 amātōs. — 2 melius. — 8 gerere. — 4 reppererit. — 5 utīlis.
dum certum aut finis habet propriōs;\(^1\) sed magistrātūs āc principēs \(^2\) in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agri attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre\(^3\) cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: né adsiduā\(^4\) cōnsuētūdine capti studium belli gerendī agri cultūrā commūtent; né lātōs finis parāre\(^5\) studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs posses-
siōnibus expellant; né accūrātius\(^6\) ad frīgora atque aestūs
vitandōs aedificent; né qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, qua ex
rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut 7 animi aequitāte plēbem
contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs
aequā videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Civitātibus máxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlicitūdīnēs\(^8\) habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitīmōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere:\(^9\) simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnāe incursiōnīs timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut īnītum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui ei bellō praeśint, et vitae necīsque habeant potestātem, dēli-
guntur. In pāce nūllus est commune magistrātus, sed princīpēs regiōnum atque pāgrōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt con-
trōversiāsque minuunt.\(^10\) Lātrōcinia nūllam habent infā-
mīam\(^11\) quae extrā finis cūiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae āc désidae minuendae causā fieri
praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex princīpibus in conciliō dīxit 25 sē ducem fore, quī sequī velit profiteantur,'—cōnsurgunt
ei qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxiliōm
pollicentur, atque ā multītūdine conlaudantur; quī ex his

Cf.\(^1\) privātōs. — \(^2\) quotannīs. — \(^3\) dēmigrāre. — \(^4\) perpetuā. — \(^5\) ad-
quīrere. — \(^6\) diligentius. — \(^7\) aequō animō. — \(^8\) loca déserta. — \(^9\) cōnā-
dere. — \(^10\) compōnunt. — \(^11\) ignōminiam.
secúti nón sunt in désertórum ac prōditórum numero dúcuntur omniumque his rērum postea fīdes dérogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nón putant; qui quácumque dé causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāncīoquē habent; hisque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.

24. Āc fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Völcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns 'ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitia et bellicae laudis opinīōnem. Nunc quidem in eādem inopīa, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis üntuntur; Galli autem prōvin-ciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque üsum largitur. Paulātim adsuēfacti superāri multisque victi proeliis, nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis virūtē comparant.

The Hercynian Forest and Its Fauna. The Reindeer (?)

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō viii diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvi regiōne pertinet ad finis Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrs diversis ab flūmine regiōnibus multitūrumque gentium finis propter māgnitūdi-

nem attingit. Neque quisquam est huius Germaniae qui se [aut audisse] aut adisse\textsuperscript{1} ad initium\textsuperscript{2} eius silvae dicit, cum dieum iter LX pröcesserit, aut quò ex loco oriätur accëperit. Multaque in ea genera ferärum\textsuperscript{3} nàsci cönstat quae reliquis in locis visa nòn sint; ex quibus quae máximè differant ab cëteris et memoriae prödenda\textsuperscript{4} videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bös cervi figūrā\textsuperscript{5} cūius a mediä fronte inter auris ünum cornû existit excelsius\textsuperscript{6} magisque dërectum his quae nóbis nòta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō\textsuperscript{7} sicut palmae râmique lâtë diffunduntur. Eadem est fëminae marisque nàtûra, eadem forma mägnitūdōque cornuum.

The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcês. Hārum est cönsimilis capris figūra et varietās pellium; sed mägnitūdine paulō antecédunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiëtis\textsuperscript{9} causā pröcum-bunt neque, si quō adflictae\textsuperscript{10} cäsū concidœrunt, ěrigere sēsē äc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prö cubilibus; ad eās sē adaptant\textsuperscript{12} atque ita paulum modo reclāntae quīētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum\textsuperscript{18} a vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādicibus subruunt\textsuperscript{14} aut accident arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquētur. Húc cūm sē cōnsuētūdine reclānāvērunt, infirēmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque sūnā ipsae concidunt.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum qui ērī appellantur. Hī sunt mägnitūdine paulō infrā\textsuperscript{16} elephantōs; speciē et colōre


Cæsar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiōrīx.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit 4 Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam 6 frūmentī veritus (quod, ut suprā démonstrāvimus, minimē 7 omnēs Germānī 15 agri cūltūrae student), cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed, nē omninō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tārdāret, 8 reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium xii pontis tuendi causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūnitionibus firmat. Ei locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscēntem praeficit; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta incipent, ad bellum Ambiōrigis profectus, per Arduennam silvam — quae est tōtius Galliae māxima 25 atque ab ripis Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervīōs pertinet, milibusque amplius d in longitūdinem patet — L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitātū praemittit, sī quid celebritāte itineris atque opportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignis in castrīs fieri prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs 30 procūl significātiō fiat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequi dicit.

BRITAIN IN THE CAMPAIGNS OF B.C. 55 & 54.

Latin Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.

1ST. CAMPAIGN
2ND. CAMPAIGN
BOOK IV. 20–36.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 55.

Caesar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguâ 1 parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae 2 sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta 3 auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus [anni] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspēxissent, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnīta. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātorēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsī quicquam praeter òram maritimam atque eās regiōnīs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātorībus, neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae natiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtīs 4 ūterentur, neque qui essenū ad māiōrem 15 nāvium multitudinem idōneī 5 portūs reperire poterat.

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat 6 ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīnum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in 20 Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus 7 in Britanniam tràiectus. 8 Hūc nāvis undique ex fīnitimis regiōnībus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim 9 cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō

et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus Insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in ea sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fīdelem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgni habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātis, hortēturque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dāre potuit, qui nāvi ēgrediācē sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperīti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcisissent, sēque ea quae imperāssēt factūrōs pollicērunt. Höc sībi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tertum hostem relinquire volēbat neque belli geriēdi propter anni tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnedās iūdicābat, māgnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs caōctis [contrāctīisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātis

praefectisque distribuit. Húc accédébant octavae navēs, quae ex eō loquā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō 5 et Aurunculēiō Cottae légātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum a quibus ad eum légāti nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpiciōm Rūfum légātum cum eō praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabātur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. His cōnstitūtis rébus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
dum tempestātem tertia fērē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōnscendere et sé sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administra
tum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum prīmis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās
15 hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit. Cūius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigit posset. Hunc ad égrediendum nēquācum idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram nōnam in ancoris
exspectāvit. Interim légātis tribūnīisque militum convc-
cātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet
ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, máximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
25 eis administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum
ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs an-
coris, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus,
apertō ab plānō litorē nāvis cōnstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbari consiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis uto consuērant,\(^1\) reliquis cōpiis subsequīti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohiběbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstitui\(^2\) nōn 5 poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locīs, impeditis\(^3\) manibus, māgnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illi aut ex aridō\(^4\) aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membris expeditis, nōtissimīs 10 locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterrītī\(^6\) atque hūius ominō generis pūgnae imperīti nōn eādem alacritātē āc studiō quō in pedestribus uto proeliīs consuērant nitēbantur.

Caesar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum 15 et speciēs\(^6\) erat barbaris inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum

---

Cf. \(^1\) solent. — \(^2\) cōnsistere. — \(^3\) opp. expeditis. — \(^4\) terrā. — \(^5\) commōtī. — \(^6\) adspectus.
expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmis incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs māgnō īsui nostri fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā 1 et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōnstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem ret-tulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, qui x legiōnis aquilam fērēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter 2 eveniret, "Dēsilite," inquit, "commilitōnēs, 3 nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperātōri officium prae-stiterō." 4 Hoc cum vōce māgnā 5 dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, universi 6 ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis [primis] nāvibus cum cōnspēxissem, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter ēnsistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscum-que signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbā-bantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore 'aliquōs singulāris ex nāvi ēgredientis cōnspēxerant, inci-tātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, 6 plūrēs paucōs circum-sistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. 25 Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantis 8 cōnspēxerat his subsidia submittēbat. Nostri simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtis in hos-tīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque

longius prósequi potuérunt, quod equitès cursum tenère atque insulam capere¹ nón potuerant. Hóc únum ad pristinam fortúnam Caesari défuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpérunt, statim ad Caesarem légātōs dē pāce misérunt; 5 obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse pollicīti sunt. Únā cum his légātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem supra² dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs orātōris³ modō Caesaris mandāta déferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula 10 coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remisérunt; et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētūr⁴ petivērunt. Caesar quēstus quod, cum ultrō⁵ in continentem légātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere 15 imprūdentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī par- tem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquōribus⁶ locīs arces- sitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Interea suōs re- migrāre⁷ in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātisque suās Caesari commendāre⁸ coepērunt. 20

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus supra dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,⁹ ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt.¹⁰ Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō 25 coōrta est ut nūlla ēārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae

eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvis [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat]. 10 quās Caesar in āridum ṣubdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflic-tābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmis-15 sis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitus perturbātiō facta est. Neque

Cf. 1 opp. orientem sōlem. — 2 litus. — 3 plūrimis.
enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent; et omnia
deērant quae ad reficiendās 1 nāvis erant ēsui; et, quod
omnibus cōnstābat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in
his locis in hiemem 2 prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, qui post 5
proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūti, cum
et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānis deēsse 8 intellege-
rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguītāte 4 cō-
gnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine
impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs ā transportāverat, — optimum 10
factū esse dúxrunt, 5 rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque
nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod his
superātis aut rēditū interclūsis nēminem posteā belli infe-
rendi causā in Britanniam transitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque
rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castris discēdere et 15
suōs clam 6 ex agris dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar Suspects their Design.

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, 7
tamen et ex ēventū 8 nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsi-
dēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur.
Itaque ad omnis cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frū-
mentum ex agris cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gra-
vissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad
reliquās reficiendās ētēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ēsui ex
continenti 9 comportāri iubēbat. Itaque cum summō
studiō ā militibus administrārētur, 10 xii nāvibus āmissis, 25
reliquīs ut nāvīgāri satīs commodē posset effecit.

Cf. 1 opp. rescindendas. — 2 opp. aestātem. — 8 opp. supplere. —
4 opp. māgnitudine. — 6 putāvērunt. — 6 opp. palam. — 7 animadvert-
 terat. — 8 cāsū. — 9 opp. insulā. — 10 gerērūt.
He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur vii, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventītāret, — ei qui prō portis castrōrum in stātiōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulvērem māiorem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quām in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novi ā barbaris initum cōnsili cohortis quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stātiōnem succēdere, reliquās armāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus

Cf. 1 cōnspicī. — 2 sine morā. — 3 urgēri. — 4 opp. laxātā.
tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs húc nostrōs esse ventūros noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subītō adortī, paucis interfectis reliquōs incertīs ordīnibus perturbāvērunt, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partīs perequītant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equītum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs désiliunt et pedibus proelians tur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proelīō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, si illī a multitudine hostīum premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equītum, stabilitātem pedītum in proelīs praestant; āc tantum ūsu cotidianō et exercitatiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivi āc praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevi moderāri āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō ĭnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxiliūm tuli; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad laccesium hostem et committendīm proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuēt et brevi tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnībus occupātīs, qui erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtēs sunt continuōs complūris diēs

Cf. 1 cōnspēxit. 2 opp. interdiū. 3 sē occultāverant. 4 addresi. 5 sonitū. 6 urgeantur. 7 celerrimē. 8 opp. idōneum.
Second Year Latin.

tempestatēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dimiserunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore videbat,—ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugērent,—tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetuōs stēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt complūris ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificii incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē légāti ab hostibus missī ad Caesarēm de pace vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōisque in continentem addūci iussit quod, propinquā diē aequinocti, infirmīs nāvibus hiem navigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post médiam noctem nāvēs solvēvit quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed eis onerāriē duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere non potuērunt et paulō infra délatae sunt.

Cf. 1 prōnūntiāvērunt.—2 pedītum.—3 adiērunt.—4 futūrum.—5 terga vertissent, sē fugae mandāvissent.—6 sustulerat.—7 opp. suprā.
Fig. 78. — British Coins.

BOOK V. 1-23.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 54.

Caesar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Fleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefecerat uti quam plurīmās possint hieme nāvis aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Ėārum modum formamque ā dēmōnstrat. 5 Ad celeritātem onerandi subductionēsque paulō facit humiliōres quam quibus in nostrō mari ēti cōnsuēvimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestūm minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs sēriō cōgnōverat; ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōres ā 10 quam quibus in reliquis ētimur maribus. Ėās omnīs āctuāriās imperat sēriō, quam ad rem multum humiliās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ēūs ad armandās nāvis ex Hispāniā adportāri īubet. Ipsi conventibus Galliāe citeriōris perāctīs in Īlyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstīs finitīmam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstāri audiēbat. Ėō cum vēnisset, civitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenire īubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt qui doceant nihil ēārum rērum públicō factum cōnsiliō,

Cf. 1 āgurām. — 2 ōrnandās. — 3 opp. ultimam. — 4 ostendānt.
sēseque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā¹ orātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūci iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēse bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. 5 Eis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātis dat qui litem aestiment poenamque cōnstituunt.

Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius. Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.


Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to Caesar.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet⁶ māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit.⁷ In eā civitāte duo dē princi- pātū inter sē contendēbant,⁸ Induītiōmārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque ad-

ventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnis in officiō futūros neque ab amicitia populi Rōmāni dēfectūros confirmāvit; quaeque in Trēveris gerentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eisque qui per aetātem in armis esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abdītis, quae ingenti māgnitudine per mediōs finis Trēverōrum à flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūlli principēs ex ea civitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorīgis adducti et adventū nostri exercitūs perterrīt ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitāti cōnsulere nōs possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēserērētur Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēsē idcircō ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilium civitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentīam lāberētur; itaque civitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, si Caesar permittēret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātīisque fortūnās ēius fidei permissūrum.'

He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum rēs ab institūto cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōnsūmēre cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicīum bellum comparātis, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in eis filiō propinquīisque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est uti in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sécius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillātīm Cingetorīgi conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ā sē fieri intellegēbat, tum māgni interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrum 30

valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam\(^1\) in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiam inter suōs minuit]; et qui iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.\(^3\)

Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5 5. His rēbus cōnstitūtis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvis, quae in Mel-dis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās\(^4\) cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdēm unde erant prefectus revertisse; reli-quās parātās ad nāvigationem atque omnibus rēbus instructās\(^5\) inventī.\(^6\) Eōdēm equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milia III, principësque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, reliquēre in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcūm dūcere décrēverat,\(^7\) quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum\(^8\) Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hæduan, Again Appears.

15 6. Erat únā cum cēteris Dumnorix Hæduus, dē quō ante ab nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcūm habēre in primis cōn-stituerat,\(^9\) quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgni animī, māgne inter Gallōs auctōritātīs cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat huc quod in conciliō Hæduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ã Caesare régnum civitātīs dēferri;\(^1\) quod dictum Haedui graviter\(^3\) ferēbant neque recūsāndī aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Gallā relinquerē-tur ; partim quod insuētus nāvigationi mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri\(^10\) sēsē diceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negāri vidit, omni spē impetrāndi ademptā,

Cf.\(^1\) eximiam. —\(^2\) cōnflagrāvit. —\(^3\) repulsās. —\(^4\) reperit. —\(^5\) cōn-stituerat. —\(^6\) tumultum, sēdītionēm. —\(^7\) dēcrēverat. —\(^8\) tradī. —\(^9\) molestē. —\(^10\) dētinērī.
principès Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortāriquē coepit uti in continentī remanērent; metū territāre nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnis in Britanniam tràductōs necāret; fidem reliquis interpōnere, īūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ľūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem déferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnonior.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduæ dignitātīs tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum quībuscumque rēbus posset Dumnonīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius ámentiam prōgredi ľūdēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi āc rei publicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Ĉōrus ventus navigātionem impediēbat, quī màgnam partem omnīs temporīs in ľūsī locīs flāre cōnsuēvit; ľūbat operam ut in officiō Dumnonigem continēret; nihilō tamen sēcīus omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equītēisque cōnsendere nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnonior cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs insci- ente Caesare domum discēdēre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōnē atque omnīs rēbus post- positīs, màgnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pāreat, in- terfici iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbi- trātus qui praesentis imperiūm nēglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse

civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equītēs Haedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. His rēbus gestis,1 Labiēnō in continente cum iii legionibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gerentur cognōsceret consiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legionibus et pari numerō equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvis solvit; et lēni Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspēxit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, qui vectōriis gravibusque nāvigis nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō4 fērē tempore;4 neque in eō locō hostis est visus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captivis cognōvit,6 cum māgnae manūs eō convēnisset, multitudine nāvium per territae,7 quae cum annōtinis privātīisque, quās sui quisque commodi fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erat visae tempore, ā litore disesserant8 ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivis cognōvit quō in locō hostium ēōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc qui praesidio9 nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostis conteddit,

eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore mollī\textsuperscript{1} atque
aperto dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvi-
busque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus\textsuperscript{2} milia
passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī
equītātū atque essēdis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre
nostros prohibēre\textsuperscript{3} et proelium committere coeptērunt.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{testudo.png}
\caption{Testudo.}
\end{figure}

Repulsi ab equītātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti
ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domestici belli
(ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeeparāverant; nam crē-
bris\textsuperscript{4} arboribus succīsis omnēs introitūs\textsuperscript{5} erant praeclūsi. Iō
Ipsi ex silvis rāri prōpūgnābant nostrosque intrā mūnitōnēs
ingredi\textsuperscript{6} prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis vii, testūdine
factā et aggere ad mūnitōnēs adiectō,\textsuperscript{7} locum cēpērunt

\textsuperscript{1} lēnīter acclīvī. \textsuperscript{2} profectus. \textsuperscript{3} impedire. \textsuperscript{4} multīs.
\textsuperscript{5} aditus, opp. exitus. \textsuperscript{6} introīre. \textsuperscript{7} exstrūctō.
eósque ex silvis expulérunt paucís volneribus acceptis. Sed eós fugiēntis longius Caesar prósequí vetuit, et quod loci nātūram ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōnsūmptā mūnitioni castrōrum tempus¹ relinqui volēbat.

The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

5 10. 3 Postridiē ēius diēi māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fügerant persequerentur. His aliōnum itineris progressīs, cum iam extrēmi essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō ad Caeśarem vēnērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coértā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvis afflictās atque in litus éiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinerent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati³ possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum⁴ acceptum.

11. His rēbus cōgnitis Caeśar legiōnēs equitātumque 15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvis revertitur; eadem fērē quae ex nūntiis [litteris] cōgnōverat cōram perspicet, sic ut āmissis⁵ circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen refici posse māgnō negotiō⁶ vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs déligīt et ex continentī aliōs accessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit⁷ ut quam plūrimās possit eis legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvis instituat.⁸ Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodissimum⁹ esse statuit omnēs nāvis subdūcī¹⁰ et cum castrīs unā mūnitione coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissīs. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēregiē mūnitis eādem copiās quaēs ante praeсидiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur.¹¹ Eō cum vēnisset, māiorēs iam undique in eum

locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperi bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permīssā¹ Cassi-vellaunō; cūius finēs ā maritimis civitātibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum

**FIG. 80. — SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.**

lxx. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitātibus continentia² bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.³

The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs nātōs in insula ipsi memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praedae āc belli inferendi⁴ causā ex Belgīō trānsiērunt ¹⁰ (qui omnēs ferē eis nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus

Cf. ¹ mandātā. — ² perpetua. — ³ praeposuerant. — ⁴ gerendī.
orti ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitudō crēberrimaque1 aedificia ferē Gallicis cōn-
similia,2 pecoris māgnus numerus. Ùtuntur aut aere [aut 5 nummō aereō] aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminā-
tis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ēius exigua3 est cōpia; aere ùtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et 10 gallinam et āserem gustāre fās nōn putant;4 haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātīōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frigoribus.

Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Ínsula nātūrā5 triquetra, cūius ũnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, 15 quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat.6 Hōc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum 20. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, ìnsula dimidiō minor (ut existimātur) quam Britannia, sed pari spatiō trānsmissūs7 atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est ìnsula quae appellātur8 Mona; complūres praetereā minōrēs subiectae9 ìnsulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis 10 nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōni-
bus11 reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctis vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert 12 illōrum opinīō,13 DCC millium. Tertium est contrā septentrīōnēs, cui partī nūlla est ob-
jecta14 terra; sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germā-

Cf. 1 frequentissima. — 2 paria. — 3 parva. — 4 arbitrantur. — 5 för-
mā. — 6 vergit. — 7 trāiectūs. — 8 nōminātur. — 9 propinquae. — 10 qui-
niam spectat. Hoc milium passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu viciés centum milium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimi qui Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum a Gallicā differunt consuetūdine. Interiōres plērique frumenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vītrō īnsciant, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōres sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxorēs habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commune, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nāti eōrum habentur liberi quō primum virgō quaeque deducta est.

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōres fuerint atque eōs in silvās collisque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecūti nōn nūllos ex suīs amīsērunt. At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātis in mūni- tionē castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eīcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō qui erant in statioōne prō castrīs conlocāti, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his primis legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumis recēpērunt. Eō die Q.

Second Year Latin. [Cæsar B. G.]

Laberius Dürus tribûnus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tôtô hoc in genere pûgnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prô castris dîmicârêtur, intellexit ut nostrós propter gravitatem armôrum, quod neque insequi cêdentis¹ possent neque ab signis discêdere audêrent, minus aptós² esse ad hûius generis hostem; equités autem magnô cum periculô proeliô dîmicäre, propterâ quod illi etiam consultô plê-rumque cêderent, et cum paulum ab legiônibus nostrós remôvissent, ex essedis désilirent et pedibus dispari proeliô contenderent. [Equestris autem proeli ratiô et cêdentibus et sequentibus pár atque idem periculum inferêbat.] Accédébat hûc ut numquam cônferti³ sed râri magnisque intervâllis proeliiârentur⁴ stationâseque⁵ dispositâs habêrent, atque aliósi alië deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentês défatigâtis succêderent.

They are Again Defeated.

17. Posterô diei procul â castris hostês in collibus consitèreunt, rârique sê ostendere et lênius quam pridiê nostrôs equités proeliô lâcessere⁷ coepĕrent. Sed meridiê⁸ cum Caesar pâbulandi causâ iii legiônês atque omnem equitâm cum C. Trebôniô lêgatô misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pâbulatórês advolâvèrent, sic uti ab signis legiônibusque non absisterent.⁹ Nostri âcriter in eos impetû factô reppulèrent, neque finem sequendi fêcèrent quoad subsidiô cônfi sì equités, cum post sê legiônês vidèrent, præcipitês hostês égèrent; magnôque eôrum numerô interfécto neque sui conligendi neque cônsistendi aut ex essedis

dēsiliēndī facultātem\(^1\) dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique\(^2\) convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque\(^3\) post id tempus umquam summis nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

---

**Fig. 81. — Signa Militaria.**

**Cæsar Crosses the Thames.**

18. Cæsar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finis Cassivellauni exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omninō locō pedibus,\(^4\) atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit\(^6\) ad alteram flūminis ripam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās; ripa autem erat acūtis sudibus præfīxisque múnita, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitis 10 ā captīvis perfugisque Cæsar præmissō equitātū cōnfestim\(^6\) legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dimitterent\(^7\) āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cf. \(^1\) potestātem. — \(^2\) ex omnibus partibus. — \(^3\) posteā. — \(^4\) vadō. — \(^6\) vidit. — \(^6\) continuō. — \(^7\) relinquuerent.
Cassivellaunus Avoids a General Engagement, but Annoys Caesar by Guerilla Tactics.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprâ dēmōnstrāvimus, omni dēposītā spē contentiōnis, dimissis amplioribus cōpis, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relietis itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis āc silvestrisibus sēsē occultābat atque eis regionibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandi vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis emptēbat; et māgnō cum perculō nostrōrum equitum cum eis cōnfigēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agris vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī militēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes Yield to Caesar.


21. Trinobantibus défēnsis atque ab omni militum iniū-
riā prohibitis, Cēnimāgni, Segontiāci, Ancalites, Bibroci,
Cassi légātiōnibus missis sēsē Caesari dedunt. Ab his
cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī
abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnitum, quō satis māgnus
5 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem
Britanni vocant cum silvās impeditās1 vāllō atque fossā
mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis2 hostium vitandae causā con-
venire cōnsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum
reperit3 ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum; tamen hunc
10 duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre4 contendit. Hostēs pauli-
sper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque
aliae ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerum pecoris
repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsi5 atque inter-
fecti.

Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus
regiōnibus 111 rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Tax-
imagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat uti
doactis omnibus cópiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adori-
antur atque oppūgnent. Hi cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri
ēruptiōnē6 factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili
duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolōmis redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus
hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis7 acceptis, vāstātis fini-
bus, màximē etiam permōtus dēfectione8 civitātum, lēgātōs
20 per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit.
Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter
repenēnōs9 Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis super-
esset, atque id facile extrahi10 posse intellegeret, obsidēs

Cf. 1 dēnsās. — 2 inruptiōnis. — 8 inventīt. — 4 adorīrī. — 6 captī. —
imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cāsar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvis 5 inventī refectās. Hīs dēductīs,1 quod et captivōrum māgnum numerum habēbat et 2 nōn nūllae tempestāte déperierant

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō,3 tot nāvigationi- bus, neque hōc neque superiore annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis 10 quae militēs portāret désiderārētur;4 at ex eis quae inānēs

Cf. 1 opp. subductīs. — 2 aliquot. — 3 multitūdine. — 4 déperīret.
ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaueae locum caperent 1; reliquae fere omnēs réicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar fruśtrā exspectāsset, nē anni tempore à navigātioñe exclū- derētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, 2 necessāriō angustius militēs conlocāvit, æc summā tranquillitāte 3 cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit 4 omnisque incolumis nāvis perdūxit.

Cf. 1 pervenirent ad. — 2 aderat. — 3 malaciā. — 4 capit.
BOOK VII. 1–15.

GENERAL UPRISING OF GAUL, B.C. 52.

General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

QUIÉTÁ Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ítaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnoscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs īuniōres Ítaliāe coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā 5 habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vīdēbātur) retīnēri urbānō mōtū Caesārem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hāc impulsi occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populi 10 Rōmānī imperiō subjiciōs dolērent liberius atque audāciōs dē bellō cōnsilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus āc remōtis locīs queruntur dē Accōnīs morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrānt; miserantur communēm Galliāe fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemīsī dépōscunt quī belli

initium faciant et sui capitis \(^1\) periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primis rationem \(^2\) esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestina cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātore ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine præsidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, \(^3\) in aciē praestāre \(^4\) interfici quam nōn veterem belli glōriam libertātemque quam ā māioribus accēperint recuperēre.

The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

2. His rēbus agitātis \(^5\) profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēisque \(^6\) ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praeuentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanctiātur \(^7\) petunt, conlātis militāribus signis (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō belli ab reliquis déserantur. Tum \(^8\) conlauđātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore ēius rei cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cōtuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspēratīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, \(^8\) civisque Rōmānōs qui negotiandi causā ibi cōnstiterant, in his C. Fūsium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, qui rei frūmentāriāe iūsū Caesāris praerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnis Galliae civitātis fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnesque signifičant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximus trādunt, ut tum accīdit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente \(^10\) sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter clx.

Cf. \(^1\) vitae. \(^2\) curam. \(^3\) dēnique. \(^4\) melius esse. \(^5\) dēliberatīs. \(^6\) primōs. \(^7\) cōnfirmitur. \(^8\) conveniunt. \(^9\) contingit. \(^10\) opp. occidente.
Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae 1 adulēscēns, — cūius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat 2 ā civitāte erat interfectus,—convocātis suis 5 clientibus facile incendit. 3 Cōgnītō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētūr ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandum fortūnam nōn existimābant; expellitur 4 ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstītī tamen atque in agris habet dēlēctum egentium, ac perditōrum. Hāc 10 coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut communis libertātis causā arma capiant; māgnisque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs 5 suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtes- 15 tātur 6 ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnis qui Ōceanum attingunt adiungit 7; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā 8 potestāte omnibus his civitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum 20 militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domi, quoque ante tempus efficiat, 9 cōnstituit; in primis equitātui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperi sevēritatem addit; māgnitūdine supplici dubitantis cōgit 10: nam māiōre commissō dēlictō 11 igni 25 atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectās aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō 12 et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hædui for Help. Being Refused, They Join him.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coæctō exercitū Lucterium Caďūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Řēius adventū Bituriges ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidīō Biturīgibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morāti neque flūmen trānsire ausi, domum revertuntur, lēgātisque nostrīs renūntiāṭ sē Biturīgum perfidiām veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsili fuisse cōgnōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsi, alterā Arvernī sē circumśisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātis prōnūniārunt an perfidiā adducti fēcerint, quod nihil nōbis cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Bituriges eōrūm discēssū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Caesar’s Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. His rēbus in Êtiam Caesāri nūntiātis, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dimicātūrās intellegēbat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eis quidem eō tempore qui quiēti vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committi vidēbat.

Cf. 1 resistere, w. dat. — 2 sē recipiunt. — 3 referunt. — 4 circumveniērent. — 5 perlātis. — 6 meliōrem. — 7 permovēbātur. — 8 pūgnātūrās.

Cāser Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingetorix Goes to Protect the Arvernī.

8. His rēbus comparātīs, 6 repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, 7 quod intrāre intrā praevidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsi mōns Cevenna, qui Arvernōs ab Helviis disclūdit, 8 dūrissimō tempore anni altissimā nīve iter impedīebat; tamen, discussā nīve in altītūdinem pedum vi atque ita viis patefactis, 9 summō militum labōre ad finīs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus opprēssīs inopinantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimābant, āc nē singulāri 10 quidem umquam hominē eō tempore anni sēmitae 11 patuerant, equītibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint va-gentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perfe-runtur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant 12 ut suis fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dirīpi patiātur; praeśertim cum videat 13 omne ad sē bellum trāns-lātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturgibibus movet in Arvernōs versus.


9. At Caesar biduum in his locis morátus, quod haec dé Veringeterorige úsū ventūra opinióne praecéperat, per causam supplémenti1 equitátusque cógendí ab exercitú discédit; Brútum aduléscemtem his cópiis praefícit; hunc monet ut in omnis partis equités quam látissimé pervagentur²; datúrum 5 sē operam nē longius triduó à castris absit. His cónstitútis rébus, suís inopinantibus, quam máximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus³ recentem equitátum, quem multís ante diēbus eó praemísérat, neque diurnó neque nocturnó itinere intermissō, per finís Haeduórum in Lingo- 10 nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemábant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salútē ab Haeduis inirētur⁴ cónsili, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervénnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnis in ūnum locum cógit quam dē éius adventū Arvernis nūntiāri posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā⁵ Vering- 15 getorix rūrus in Biturigēs exercitum redúcit, atque inde projectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs⁶ Caesar conlocáverat Haeduisque attribuerat⁷ oppūgnāre instituit.

Caesar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesari difficultātem ad cōnsilium 20 capiendum adserēbat: si reliquam partem hiemis únō locō

Second Year Latin.

Cæsar Takes Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō died cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, 
vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expedi-
tiōre rē frūmentāriā uryetur, oppūgnāre instituit, eōque 
15 biduō circumvallāvit; tertiō died missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē 
dēditioē, arma conferri, iūmenta prōduī, sexcentōs obsidēs 
dari iubet. Ea qui coniceret C. Trebonīum lēgātum 
relinquit; ipse ut quam primum iter coniceret, Čēnabum 
Carnutum proficiscitur; qui tum primum adlātō núntio dē 
20 oppūgnātione Vellaunodūni, cum longius eam rem ductum 
iri existimārent, praesidium Čēnābī tuendi causā, quod eō 
mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc biduō pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, dieī 
tempore exclūsus 10 in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quae-
25 que ad eam rem usū 11 sint militibus imperat; et, quod oppi-
dum Čēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē 
noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armis excubāre 
iubet. Čēnābēnsēs, paulō ante medium noctem sileniō ex 
oppidō egressi flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explō-

Cf. 1 retinēret. — 2 tōta. — 3 optimum esse. — 4 perferre. — 6 ani-
rātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iussērat,
portis incēnsis,1 intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucis ex
hostium numerō dēsiderātis quīn cūnti caperentur, quod ponti-
tis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdini fugam interclūserant.9
Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnāt; 5
exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum finis pervenit.

Noviodunum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix
Approaching, Prepare for Defense.

12. Vercingetorix ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūg-
nātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille
oppidum Biturīgum posītum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre
instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgāti ad eum vēnissent 10
ōrātum8 ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitae cōnsuleret,4 ut cele-
ritāte reliquās rēs cōnsceret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus,6
arma cōnferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dāri iubet. Parte
iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centu-
riōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmīssis qui arma iūmentaque 15
conquirerent,6 equitātus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen
Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem 7 simul atque oppidāni
cōnspēxerunt atque in spem auxili vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō
arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepercunt.
Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novi 20
aliquid ab his inīri consili intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis
portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs8 recēpērunt.

Caesar Takes Noviodunum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēduci iubet, proeliumque
euestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs equitēs
circiter cccc submittit,9 quōs 10 ab initiō sēcum habēre insti-
tuerat. Eōrum impētum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt,

Cf. 1 exūsīs.— 2 impediērant.— 3 obsecrātum.— 4 parceret.— 6 cōn-
fēcerat.— 6 quaererent.— 7 ut semel.— 8 tūtōs.— 9 auxiliō mittit.— 10 primō.
atque in fugam coniecti\textsuperscript{1} multis āmissis sē ad agmen recē-pērunt; quibus próflīgātis\textsuperscript{2} rūrsus\textsuperscript{3} oppidāni perterriti com-
prehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus

\textbf{FIG. 88. — SIEGE OF AVARICUM.}

\textsuperscript{5} rébus cōnfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat máximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agrī fertillissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō\textsuperscript{4} civitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfidēbat.

\textit{Cf. \textsuperscript{1} conversā. — \textsuperscript{2} dépulsās. — \textsuperscript{3} iterum. — \textsuperscript{4} opp. āmissō.}
Vercingetorix Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuís incommodis Vellaunodúni, Cénabi, Noviodúni acceptis suós ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque antea gestum sit; omnibus modis huic rei studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsi abundant et quod anni tempore subleventur; pābulum secāri non posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostis ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnis cotidiē ab equitibus dēlēri posse. Praeterea, salūtis causā rei familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hoc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque versus, quō pābulandi causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā castris processūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentis exuānt, quiibus āmissis bellum geri nōn possit. Praeterea, oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et loci nātūrā ab omni sint periculō tūta; nē suis sint ad dērectandam militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commēātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimāri dēbere, liberōs, conīugēs in servitūtem abstrahi, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.'

They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquis civitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōn-

Cf. 1 cladibus. 2 plūrimum possint. 3 necessitāte adductūs. 4 undique. 5 iuventur. 6 opp. cōpiam. 7 dēspolient. 8 vitandam. 9 combūruntur. 10 accidit.
spiciuntur; quae etsi māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant,
tamen hoc sibi sōlāci própōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā
victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūros cōnfidēbant. Dēlīberātur
dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendi placeat an
dēfendi. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Biturigēs, nē
pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae et praeсидiō
et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitāti, suis manibus succendere cōgantur;
facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omni-
bus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et
perangustum aditum. Datur potentibus venia, dissuādente
primō Vercingetorīge, post concèdente, et precibus ipsōrum
et misericordiā volgi. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōnei dēliguntur.

The Siege of Avaricum, B.C. 52.

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-
quitur, et locum castris dēligit palūdībus silvisque mūnitum,
ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi per certōs explō-
rātōrēs in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gerentur
cōgnōscēbat, et quid fieri vellet imperābat. Omnis nostrās
pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnesque observābat, dispersōsque,
cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adorēbātur māgnōque
incommodō adficiēbat; etsi, quantum ratio nec providēri poter-
rat, ab nostris occurrēbātur, ut incertis temporibus divers-
sisque itineribus īrētur.

Difficulties of the Siege. The Romans are Resolute.

17. Castrīs ād eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae
intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus,
angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vineās agere, turris
duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre loci nātūra
probēbat. Dērē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhor-
tāri nōn dēstitit: quōrum alteri, quod nūllo studiō agēbant,

Cf. 1 cōnfirmitā. 2 cōnsultātur. 3 angustissimum. 4 speculā-
bātur. 5 obstēbātur. 6 variās. 7 iacere. 8 excitāre.
nón multum adiuvábant; alterí nón mágnis facultátibus, quod civitás erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habué-runt cónsúmpserunt. Summá difficultye reli frúmentáriae aductó exercitú, tenuitáte Bóiiórum, indiligentía Haeduó-rum, incendiis aedificiórum,—úsque eó ut complúris diēs frúmentó milités caruerint, et pecore longinquióribus vicis adáctó extrémam famem sustentárint,—nulla tamen vox est ab eis audita populi Rómáni mäiestáte et superió-ribus victóriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulás legiónés appelláret, et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, sé dimissúrum oppúgnátionem diceret, universi ab eó nē id faceret petébant: 'Sic sé complúris annós illō imperante meruisse ut nūllum ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā rē discéderent; hoc sé ignōminiae rātūrōs locō, si inceptam oppúgnátionem reliquissent: praestāre omnis perferre acer-bitātis quam nón civibus Rómānis qui Cēnabi perfidiā Gallórum interissent parentārent.' Haec eadem centurióni-bus tribūnisque militum mandábant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem déferrentur.

Caesar Marches towards Veringetorix.

Cum iam mūrō turrés adpropinquāssent, ex captívīs Caesar cógnōvit Veringetorigem cōnsúmpto pābulō castra mövisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditisque qui inter equitēs proeliāri cōnsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs postérō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cógnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi, celeriter per explōratōrēs adventū Caesaris cógnitō, carrōs impedimentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdīderunt, cópiās

omnis in locō ēditō¹ atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcīnas cōnferri, arma expeditī iussit.

He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnīmō acclivis. Hunc eō omnibus fērē partibus palūs difficīlis atque impedita cingēbat, nōn lātior pedibus l. Hōc sē colle interruptīs² pontībus Gallī fidūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūti [in civitātīs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parāti ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantīs³ premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, qui propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dimicandum existimāret; qui iniquitātem⁴ condicionis perspicere, ināni simulātione sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indignantis militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proeli

Cf. ¹ excelsō. — ² rescissis. — ³ impeditōs. — ⁴ opp. aequitātem.
exposcentis,\textsuperscript{1} edocet quantō detrimentō\textsuperscript{3} et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnsta re victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātos videat ut nūllum pró suā laude\textsuperscript{8} periculum recūsēnt, summae sē iniquitātis condemnāri dēbere, nisi eōrum vitam laude suā habeat\textsuperscript{4} cāriōrem. Sic militēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre\textsuperscript{6} instituit.

FIG. 90. — PLAN OF SIEGE WORKS.

Suspicions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense
and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suōs redisset, prōditionis insimulātus,\textsuperscript{9} — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omni equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō\textsuperscript{7} tantās cópiās reliquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitātē\textsuperscript{8} et celeritātē vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō\textsuperscript{9} aut

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} petentis. — \textsuperscript{2} damnō. — \textsuperscript{3} glōriā. — \textsuperscript{4} existimet. — \textsuperscript{5} comparāre. — \textsuperscript{6} accūsātus. — \textsuperscript{7} imperātore. — \textsuperscript{8} occāsiōne. — \textsuperscript{9} forte, cāsu.
sine consiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quām ipsōrum habēre beneficiō, — tāli modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus'; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportūnitāte, qui sē ipse sine múnitiōne défenderet; equitum vēro operām neque in locō palūstri dēsiderāri dēbuisse, et illic fuisse útilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūlli discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitudinis studios ad dīmīcan-
dum impellerētur; cui re propter animi mollitiam studēre omnīs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī si cāsū intervenerint, fortūnae; si alicūius indicī vocāti, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potue-
rint, qui dīmicāre nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre, quod habēre victoriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explōrāta: quin etiamipsis remittere, si sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-
untur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prō-
nūntiāri, audite Rōmānōs militēs." Prōducit servōs, quōs in pābulātīone paucis ante diēbus excēperat, et famē vincu-
lisque excrudīaverat. Hi, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogaγī prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperīre possent; simili omnem exercitum inopiā premi, nec iam viris sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisset imperātōrem, si nihil in oppūgnātione oppidi prōfēcissent, trūdō exercitum dēdūcerē. "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorix] "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō san-

guine tantum exercitum victorem famē consumptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hac fugā recipientem nē qua civitās suis finibus recipiat, ā me prōvisum1 est.”

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō consuēruit cuius orātiōnem adprobant: ‘Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec māiore ratiōne bellum administrāri posse.’ Statuunt ut x milia hominum delēcta ex omnibus cōpiis in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Bitūrigibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent; quod paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victorīae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

The Gauls Make a Most Skillful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulāri militum nostrōrum virtūti cōnsilia cuiusque modi Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summæ genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trā 15 duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcis āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentis intrōrsus reducēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omni parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās corīs interēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnīisque ēruptionibus aut aggerī ignem inferēbant9 aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbant10; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat,11 commissis suārum turrium 25 mālis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praēstā et praeacutā māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximi ponderis saxis morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Description of a Gallic Wall.

23. Mūri autem omnēs Gallicī hāc fere formā sunt. Trabēs diēctae, perpetuae\(^1\) in longitūdinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggregē vestiuntur\(^2\); ea autem quae diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxis effarcientur.\(^8\) His conlocātis et coagmentātis\(^4\) alius insuper órdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servetur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae singulis saxis interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur dum iusta mūri altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum in speciem varietātemque opus deforme nōn est, alternēs trabibus āc saxis, quae rectēs lineis suōs ordinēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et defensionem urbium summan habet opportūnītatem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria défendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedum quadra-

Cf. \(^1\) opp. intermissae. — \(^2\) integuntur. — \(^8\) complentur. — \(^4\) cōnfixīa.
gēnum plērumque\textsuperscript{1} intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpi\textsuperscript{3} neque distrahi potest.

The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduis\textsuperscript{3} imribibus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et dīēbus \textsuperscript{5} xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingēret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hor-tārētur né quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre ag-\textsuperscript{10} gerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant\textsuperscript{4}; eōdemque tem-pore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat. Alīi facis atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus\textsuperscript{5} iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque\textsuperscript{6} rēs quibus ignis excitāri\textsuperscript{7} potest fundēbant; \textsuperscript{15} ut, quō prīnum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīri posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō\textsuperscript{8} Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castris excubābant, plurēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut alīi ērumpiōnibus resisterent, alīi turris reducērent\textsuperscript{9} aggerem\textsuperscript{20} que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redin-tegārētur,\textsuperscript{10} — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum\textsuperscript{11} animad-vertēbant, — semperque ipsi recentēs\textsuperscript{12} dēfessis succēderent,

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} ferē. — \textsuperscript{2} perfringi. — \textsuperscript{3} perpetuīs. — \textsuperscript{4} incenderant. — \textsuperscript{5} opp. comminūs. — \textsuperscript{6} cēterēs. — \textsuperscript{7} opp. restinguī. — \textsuperscript{8} cōnsiliō, iūssū. — \textsuperscript{9} removērent. — \textsuperscript{10} renovārētur. — \textsuperscript{11} auxilium ferendum. — \textsuperscript{12} integrī.
omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbis quod dignum memorīā visum praetereundum nōn existimāvimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās 5 gēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab

latere dextrō trāiectus 3 examinātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis ūnus iacentem trāngressus eōdem illō mūnere 4 fungēbatur; eādem ratione ictū scorpiōnis examinātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prō-
10 pūgnātoribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omni parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pūgnandi factus.

The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod 5 rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortānte 15 et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnāti nōn māgnā iactūrā 6 suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad inequen-

VII. 28.] *The Siege of Avaricum, B.C. 52.*

**Storming of the Walls.**

27. Posterō die Caesar prōmōtā 6 turri directisque operibus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coörtō imbri, non inūtilem hanc ad capiendum 7 consilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versāri iussit, et quid fieri vellet 15 ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vineās] in occultō expeditis, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus frūctum 8 victoriae perciperent, eas qui primī mūrum ascendentissent praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illī subitō ex omni bus partibus evolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt. 20

28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque déiectī, in forō āc locis patentiōribus 9 cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hoc animō 10 ut, si quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venirētur, acié instructā dépugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum 11 sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundi vidērunt, 25 verītī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armis ulti mās 12 oppidi partis continentī impētū petīverunt; parsque

ibi, cum angustō\textsuperscript{1} exitū portārum sē ipsi premerent, à militibus, pars iam égressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsi caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectis, nōn mulieribus,\textsuperscript{2} nōn infantibus pepercērunt.\textsuperscript{3} Dēnique ex omni numerō, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primō clāmōreauditō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolūmēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnerunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castris ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā volgī sēditiō orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositūs familiāribus suīs principibusque civitātum, disparandōs \textsuperscript{5} dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique civitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō\textsuperscript{6} obvēnerat.

Vercingetorīx Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Posterō diē conciliō\textsuperscript{7} convocātō cōnsōlātus cohortā-tusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virūte neque in aciē vicisse Rōmānos, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errāre, si qui in bellō omnis secundōs\textsuperscript{8} rērum prōventūs\textsuperscript{9} exspectent; sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum défendi, cūius rei testis ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentīa Biturigum et nimiā consequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitātēs dissentirent,\textsuperscript{10} hās suā diligentiāeadiūncūrūm atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrūm, cūius cōnsēnsui nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Interēa aequum esse ab eis commūnis salūtis causā impetrāri\textsuperscript{11} ut castra mūnire instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs\textsuperscript{12} hostium impe-
tūs sustinēre possent.'

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} opp. lātō. — \textsuperscript{2} fēminās. — \textsuperscript{3} opp. occidērunt. — \textsuperscript{4} amīcās. — \textsuperscript{5} distribuendōs. — \textsuperscript{6} opp. fine. — \textsuperscript{7} contiōne. — \textsuperscript{8} opp. adversōs. — \textsuperscript{9} ēventūs. — \textsuperscript{10} discēderent. — \textsuperscript{11} obtinēri. — \textsuperscript{12} imprōvisōs.
They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallis, et máximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat¹ tantō acceptō incommodō, neque se in occultum² abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat³; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praeentire existimābātur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae⁴ auctōritātem minuunt, sic⁵ hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfirmātiōne dē reliquis adiungendīs cīvitātibus; primumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnire iō instituērunt, et sic erant animō cōnfirmāti, hominēs insuēti labōris, ut omnīa quae imperārentur sibi patienda⁶ existimārent.

Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, which Caesar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugātō omī equītātū Vercingetorīx cópiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxīt prōtīnusquē Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celerīterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar īmpedimentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praeṣidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum diēi tempūs est passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō āgmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcīt. Perspectō ī urbī sitū pererrītīsque hostĭbus, quod equītātū (quā māximē parte exercītūs cōnfīdēbant) erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituīt.

Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō ¹ admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnāri nōn posse vidēretur. Cūius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter milia passuum III in longitudūn dinem patēbat ²; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cópiāe Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam ³ in altitūdinem VI pedum prae- dūxerant. Ėius mūnitionīs quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat.⁴ Castra opportūnis locis erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū ⁵ statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō ⁶ fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ⁷ ac firmis praebēbant.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.


minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōn敷estimātum ad arma conclāmantrum; nōn nullī perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portas claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, com-\footnote{5} pluribus equis captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix Senda Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from Without.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit\footnote{8} omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnisque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint\footnote{10} ad bellum cōgant.\footnote{4} Sua in illōs merita\footnote{6} prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis rationem habeant, neū sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod si indulgentiōrēs\footnote{6} fuerint, milīa hominum dēlēcta lxxxīnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frū-\footnote{15} mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre\footnote{7} posse parcendō. His datis mandātis, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referī iubet; capitis poe-\footnote{20} nam eis qui nōn paruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat cópia a Mandubiis compulsa, virītim distribuit; frū-\footnote{20} mentum parcē et paulātim mētiri instituit; cópiās omnis quās prō oppidō conlocāverat\footnote{8} in oppidum recipit. His ratiiōnibus\footnote{9} auxilia Galliāe exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Description of Ĉæsar's Works of Circumvallation.

25 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captīvis Ĉæsar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit: fossam pedum viginti dirēctis lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem

Cf. \footnote{1} prōtīnus. — \footnote{2} opp. aperiī. — \footnote{3} init. — \footnote{4} conquīrant. — \footnote{6} officiā. — \footnote{6} neglegentiōrēs. — \footnote{7} sustinēre. — \footnote{8} cōnstituerat. — \footnote{9} modīs. — \footnote{10} dirēctē ad perpendicularum.
The Siege of Alesia, B.C. 52.

73. Erat eodem tempore et materiāri et frumentāri et tan-
tās munitiōnēs fieri necesse, dēminūtis nostris cópis, quae
longius a castris prōgrediēbantur; aequōnum a quo opera
nostra Galli temptāre atque éruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus
portis summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quaère ad haec rūrsus
opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum
munitiōnēs défendi possent. Itaque trunci arborum aut
admodum firmis rāmis abscessis, atque hōrum dēlibrātis aequō
praecūtis cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae
dūcēbantur. Húc illī stipitēs dēmissi et ab inſimō revincti,
nē revelli possent, ab rāmis ēminēbant. Quinī erant ōrdinēs
coniuncti inter sē atque implicāti; quō qui intrāverant, sē
ipsī acūtissimīs vāllis induēbant. Hós cippōs appellā-
bant. Ante hōs obliquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispo-
sitis scrobēs in altūtidinēm trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm
angustiōre ad inſimum fastigiō. Húc teretēs stipitēs femi-
nīs crassitūdine ab summō praecūtī et praēūstī dēmittēban-

Cf. 1 in opere occupātōs. — 2 humilibus. — 3 dēductā. — 4 impedi-
ment. — 6 opp. proprius. — 6 adoriri. — 7 exūtīs. — 8 infīxi. — 9 extā-
tur, ita ut non amplius digitis IIII ex terrâ 1 èminèrent; simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causâ singuli ab infimō solō pedēs terrâ excucçabantur; reliqua pars scrobris ad occultandās 2 insidiās viminibus âc virgultis integēbātur. Hūius generis octōni ordinēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmis infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, 3 mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

74. His rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās 4 prō locī nātūrā, xiv milia passuum complexus parīs 5 ēiusdem generis mūnitionēs, diversās ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitudine [sī ita accidat 6 ēius discessū], mūnitionum praesidia circumfundī 7 possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgregi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs conventum 8 iubet.

Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī concilīō principium indictō non omnīs qui arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuant, sed certum numerum cuique civitāti imperandum; nē tantā multitudine cōnfusā nec moderāri 9 nec discernere suōs nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eorum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis, Brannovicibus, [Blanno- viis,] milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūntis Eleutetis, Cadūrcis, Gabalis, Vellāviis, qui sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna milia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs.

Fig. 97. — View of Caesar's Line of Works before Alesia.

a, vallum; b, cervi; c, fossa; d, fossa cum aqua; e, cippi; f, lilia; g, stimuli; h, pinnae; i, turrea; k, lorica.
et Parisiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Membraticis, Petrocoriis, Nervis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia Aulercis Cēnomānis; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassis; [Lexoviis, et] Aulercis Ebrovicianibus III; Rauracis et Bōis bina; x universis civītātibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum consuētuōne Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti, Lexoviī, Venelli. Ex his Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulerunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent, neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperāturōs; rogāti tamen a Commiō prō āius hospitiō duo milia misērunt.

76. Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque utīli superiōribus annis erat āesus in Britannia Caesar; prō quibus meritīs civitātem āius immēnem esse iussēram, īūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen universae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equītum milibus VIII et peditum circiter cl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerosque inibātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebāti, Viridomārō et Eporēdorigī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiē trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex civitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cūnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacres et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam profisciscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam qui adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praeertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pūgnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Fig. 98.—Statue of Vercingetorix.
A Council is Held in Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Proposal.

77. At ei qui Alesiae obsidébantur, praeteritá díé quæ auxilia suórum exspectáverant, cônsúmptó omni frúmentó, inscií quid in Haeduis geréretur, concilió coáctó dē exitū suárum fortúnárum cōnsultábant. Āc variis³ dictis sententiis, quàrum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum virēs suppcrestent,² ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda⁴ oderió Critōgnāti vidētur propēr ēius singulārem āc nefāriam crūdēlitātem.⁶

Hic summō in Arvernis ortus⁶ locō ēt māgne habitus auctoritātis: "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententia dictūris sum qui turpissimam servitūtem déditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum his mihi rēs est qui ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsensū pristinae residēre⁷ virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam⁸ ferre⁹ nōn posse. Qui sē ultrō morti offerant facilius reperiuntur quam qui dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tamtum apud mē dignitas potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.¹⁰ Quid, hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interféctis, propinquis cōnsanguineisque nostrīs animī fore existimātis, si paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proelīō décertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre qui vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum negotiāre; nec stultītī āc temeritātē vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūti subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē constantiāque dubitātis?

Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine¹ causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiis cōnfīrmāri nōn potestis omni adītū praeceptō, his utīmini testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius rei timōre extrēmiti diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergō mei cōnsili est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquaquam pari bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; qui in oppida compulsi āc simili inopijā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt.² Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institūi et posteris prōdi pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō exsērrunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrīs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt.¹⁵ Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilis potentisque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque cōnsidere atque his aeternam³ iniungere⁴ servītūm? Neque enim unquam aliā condiçãoe bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiō-²⁰ nibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus⁶ subiecta perpetuā premitur servītūe!"

The Mandubii are Compelled to Leave the Town. Caesar Declines to Receive them.

78. Sententiis dictis cōnstituunt ut ei qui valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant,⁶ atque omnia prius experiantur' quam ad Critōgnāti sententiam dēscendent: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subextendam condicionem. Mandubīī, qui eōs oppidō recēperant,

cum liberis atque uxoribus exire cōguntur. Hi cum ad mūnitionēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus orābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipi prohibēbat.

Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

5 79. Interea Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa imperiō permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiās ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriores occupātō non longius mille passibus a nostris mūnitionibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equētātū ex castris eductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitudinem milia passuum IIII patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent; pedestrisque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superōriōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesia dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visī; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiās ante oppidum cōnsistent, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnōs cāsūs comparant.

A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are Defeated.

80. Caesar omni exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitionum dispositū, ut, sī ĭsus veniat, suum quique locum teneat et nōverit, equītātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs militēs intenti pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Galli inter equētēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interīcerant, qui suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetus sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō volnerāti proeliiō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Galli cōnsiderent et nostrōs multitudine premi vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et ei qui mūniōnibus continēbantur et ei qui ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gērēbātur, neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlāri poterat; utrōsque

et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sólis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germāni ūnā in parte cōnfectis turbis in hostis impetum fēcērunt eōisque proculērunt. Quibus in fugam concoctis sagittāriī circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex ā reliquis partibus nostri cēdentis üsque ad castra insecūti sui conligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī qui Alesiā prō-

Cf. 1 crēderent. — 2 occultāri.
cesserant, maestī¹ prope victoriā désperātā sē in oppidum recēpērant.

The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Unō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte 5 silentiō ex castris egressī ad campestris mūnitionēs accē- dunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne qui in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllo prōturbārē,² reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent 10 parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suos cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitionēs accēdunt; fundis librilibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. 15 Prōspectū tenebris³ adēemptō multa utrimque volnēra accipi- untur; complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, his auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

They Retire Discomfited.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitione aberant Gallī, plūs multītu- dine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteaquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrōbis delātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllo āc turribus trāiecti pilis mūrā- libus interibant. Multis undique volneribus acceptis, nūlla 25 mūnitionē perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,⁴ verīti nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptionē circumveniērentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōres, dum ea quae ā Vercin- getorīgē ad ēruptionēm praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in his rēbus administrāndis morātī,

Cf. ¹ trīstēs. — ² prōpellere. — ³ opp. lūce. — ⁴ adīret.
priors suōs discersisse cōgnōverunt quam mūnitionibus ad-
propinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō¹ repulsi Galli quid agant
cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs² adhibent; ex his superiōrum
castrōrum sitūs mūnitionēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septen-
triōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs³ opere
circumplecti nōn potuerant nostri; necessāriōque paene
iniquō locō et lēniter déclivi castra fēcerant. Haec C. An-
tistius Rēginus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgāti cum duābus
legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus 10
ducēs hostium LX milia ex omni numerō delīgunt, eārum
civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid
quōque pāctō agi placeat occultē inter sē consītuent; ade-
undī tempus dēfiniunt cum meriēs esse videātur. Hīs
cōpiis Vercassiāvellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, 15
propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs
primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere,
post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre
sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam mēridiēs adpropinquāre vidē-
rētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; 20
eōdemque tempore equītātus ad campestris mūnitionēs accē-
dere et reliqua e cōpiāe prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorīx Coöperates. Difficulties of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex
oppidō ēgreditur: crātis, longuriōs, mūsclōs, falcīs, reliqua-
que quae ēruptionis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō 25
tempore omnibus locis atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē
visa pars firma est hūc concurrītur. Rōmānōrum manus
tantis mūnitionibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locis occur-
rit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, qui post

Cf. ¹ caede. — ² opp. imperitōs. — ³ circumvāllāre.
tergum pügnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliëna vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentis perturbant.

Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō máximē contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitionēs, déf omni salūte déspērant; Rōmāni, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Máximē ad superiōrēs mūni
tionēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum démonstrā


Cæsar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus vi subsidiiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, si sustinēre nōn possit, déductis cohortibus éruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipsī adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dicīcatiōnum frūctum in eō die atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, déspērātis campestribus locis propter māgnitūdinem mūnitionēm, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; huc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multītūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantis dēturba nt, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōricam rescindunt.

His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,
cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidīō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortis IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūni-
tiōnēs et ā tergō hostis adoriri iuβet. Labiēnus, postquam 5 neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis XL cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faci-
endum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

Utter Defeat of the Gauls with Great Slaughter.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnītō, [quō insignī 10 in proeliis ūti cōnsuērat], turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iussērat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclivia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque om-
nibus mūniōnibus clāmor. Nostri omissis pilis gladiis rem 15 gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedēs. Seduliō, dux et prīn-
ceps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad 20 Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicāti ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūniōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus-hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fugā. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiīs āc tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent 25 dēfessi, omnēs hostium cōpiāe dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnum numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliqui ex fugā in civitātīs discēdunt.
Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō dē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bel-
   lum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis
   libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēden-
   dum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā-
   nīs satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē his
   rēbus ad Caesarem lēgāti. Iubet arma trādi, principēs prō-
   dūci. Ipse in mūnitioñe prō castris cōnsidit; eō ducēs
   prōductuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōiciuntur.
   Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernis, sī per eōs civitātīs recu-
   perāre posset, ex reliquis captīvis tōtī exercitūi capita singula
   praedae nōmine distribuit.

Caesar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' 
Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. His rēbus cōnfectis in Haeduīs profiscicitur; civitā-
   tem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernis missī quae imperāret sē
   factūros pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum.
   Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit; captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia
   Haeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus
   legiōnibus et equitātūs in Sēquanōs proficiscī iubet; huic
   M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et
   L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmis
   conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipi-
   ant. C. Antistium Rēginum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in
   Biturigēs, C. Caniūnum Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis
   legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium
   Cabillōni et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentā-
   riae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

His rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cōgnitis Rōmae diērum vigintī
supplīcātiō redditur.
NOTES.

N.B. References to the text are made by pages and lines. The Grammars cited are those of Allen & Greenough (§), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale & Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (confer) = compare; sc. (scilicet) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; inv. = imperative.

I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.

No. 1. This letter, it will be noticed, has no introductory address corresponding to our 'Dear Sir' or the like.

1 1 situales, etc.: in Cicero's time formal letters usually began with this expression, generally abbreviated to the initial letters S. V. B. E. E. V. See No. 29, p. 24.

1 2 laetus: the Latin has a tendency to use an adjective modifying the subject instead of an adverb modifying the verb. Of course if one does a thing 'gladly,' he is himself 'glad' in doing it. — consilio: abl. of cause.

1 3 nives: the Latin often uses the plural of words not apparently having a plural, conceiving the thing as divided into parts or instances. So here each 'snow bank' is a separate nix.

1 4 vivem: here the sing. is used because of the negative idea in raro. A denial of any one case is sufficient for all. — ut est apud: this
expression (used only of persons) is the stock way of speaking of a person's writings, like 'as Milton has it.'

15 caelum: subj. of ridet.

18 sitas, lying. Notice the changes of idiom which are necessary in turning Latin into English. This word, the participle of sino, put or leave, is the regular word for 'situated,' 'lying,' as on tombs, 'hic situs est,' here lies. — linguam, etc.: do not translate literally and say 'the modern language of the Italians,' but simply Italian, according to our mode of speech.

10 finem faciam: simply will end, making it natural English.— epistulae: dat., indir. object.

11 vive valeque: again a stereotyped expression, here of adieu, wishing long life and health — Good-by and good luck to you.

21 No. 2. gallorum certamina, cockfights, the proper English expression, not 'contests of cocks,' as the Latin has it.

22 autem, now. This particle sets off one statement against another, — what is called an adversative, — ranging all the way from 'on the other hand' to 'furthermore,' or 'now,' where the opposition is very slight. — bello Persico: the Romans treated wars and the like as epochs, and so used the constructions of time where we say 'in the war.'

24 dimicantis: pres. partic. agreeing with gallos.

25 et hanc orationem habuit, and spoke as follows. Note again the difference in idiom.

28 nec: the Latin puts a negative and connective together wherever it is possible; so here, the Latin says 'nor' where we should say and... not.

29 qua, instead of hac, to connect more closely with the preceding sentence.

210 consilio: cf. 12.

211 No. 3. e: we should say in. To the Romans the pleasure came 'out of' the shows.

12 qua: cf. 29 and note. — tam, so much. The word really modifies cernebatur, while the verb is understood again with quam, as. The statement here (a modern one) is very far from the truth. The gladiators were more carefully protected by armor than the knights of the Middle Ages, were the idols of the people, and very often obtained their discharge and freedom.

213 ingenium, indoles: subjs. of cernebatur. — primo: adv. opposed to postea.

214 exsequias: in fact the fights were originally an amelioration of human sacrifices to the spirits of slain warriors.

216 magistratum petebant, were candidates for office. For this idea peto was the technical word. — spectaculis: abl. of means.
Stories, Fables, and Letters. 281

2 16 hoc consilio, for this purpose; cf. 1 2, 2 10.

3 1 alebant: the regular word for kept; cf. the provincial expression, 'a horse's keep.' — paria: a noun. Gladiators regularly fought in pairs.

3 2 gregi: dat. after adscribebantur; cf. spectaculis, below, l 7.

3 3 nomina profitebantur: the regular expression for volunteered.

3 4 varia, etc.: the Romans especially delighted in cross matches of men armed with entirely different arms. The cut gives an ancient picture of a heavy armed warrior pitted against one armed only with net and trident.

3 9 morituri, the doomed, as we should say. In Latin almost any adjective or participle may become a noun, either from its original force, as 'the blacks' in English, or by the omission of a noun used with it, as hiberna (sc. castra), winter quarters.

3 10 No. 4. onustos: plur., because agreeing with both equum and asinum. In Latin a word belonging in agreement with two others may in form agree with one and be understood with the other, or be adapted so far as possible to both; cf. cernebatur, 2 12.

3 11 ut . . . levaret: a clause expressing a request, command, or any similar idea regularly has ut (neg. ne) with the subj. mood. Our form is commonly the infin., 'ask one to do something,' rarely the more formal 'that one should,' or colloquially 'if one would'; § 563 (331); B. 295-6; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 530. 2. — parte: remember that the case of depriving, etc., is the abl. where we use 'of'; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3. — se: referring, as usual, to the subject of the main proposition; not 'himself,' but him; § 300. a (196. a. 2); B. 244. i; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. i); H-B. 262. 2.

3 12 omnibus sacramis atque pelle: abl. of means. In this, the first distorted sentence in these stories, learn once for all how to go to work to read Latin easily. — omnibus: this form may be either dat. or abl.; if the former, it would refer to persons; if the latter, it would ordinarily (with one great exception, — the abl. abs.) refer to things. As there are no persons in question, it must almost certainly be abl. Furthermore, if it refers to things, it cannot be used as a noun, for only adjectives obviously neuter in form are used as neuter nouns. If it may be either masculine or feminine, it is regularly one of these. So we may assume that it does not refer to persons and that it is not a subst., but belongs to some noun to come after in the abl. The relations expressed by the abl. are with, from, in, or by, and, bearing this in mind, we may go on. The relative clause (from its position) obviously belongs to the same coming noun. Though we do not say 'all the, which, etc., things,' yet we can easily see how natural such an expression might be. We shall find later that it is extremely common in
Latin. The noun sarcinis completes the phrase, except as to the exact meaning of the abl., but we may already suspect that it is 'with' from the nature of the whole proceeding, and this suspicion is confirmed by oneravit. It might seem easier to follow the English order and jump at once to oneravit, as we usually want to do; but that process is an almost insuperable hindrance in learning to read Latin with ease, while the way suggested may be made a habit in a week, and then you are actually reading the language as the Romans read it and on the high road to your goal. See Directions for Reading, p. 139.

3 15 ei: depending on detracta, off from; cf. gregi, 3 2.
3 16 inquit: the regular word with a direct quotation and always standing, as here, after some few words of the quotation; cf. 'Yes, said he.'
3 17 obtetemperavissem: this is the 'contrary to fact' construction, where a false supposition is purposely made, and the statement is made of what would happen (or would have happened) in that case. Our form is 'If I had yielded (as I did not), I should have,' etc. See § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
3 18 gravissimum, a very heavy one. It is unnecessary in Latin to repeat a noun if there is anything to show its construction, as here the adjective; nor is any pronoun necessary to refer to it, as we do by 'one.'

3 21 No. 5. Cranone in Thessalia: notice that the name of the country takes a preposition, while the name of the town rejects it. — apud, at the house of; cf. apud, 1 3.

3 22 pugilum certamine, boxing-match: see example of idiom above, 2 1.
3 23 summō gaudio, to the great delight: abl. of manner.
3 24 in laudem: the Latin should mean 'into,' etc., but our idiom is in praise of, etc.—pio animo, piously or with a feeling of piety. The word pious denotes a feeling of duty or reverence towards gods or men as fathers, protectors, patrons, or the like.

3 27 improbavit, did n't like. The word properly means 'disapproved,' but here, referring only to a secret judgment, it must be rendered differently.

4 1 dimidium, only half; emphatic and contrasted with reliquum.
4 3 postulabis, you must claim. The future often has in many languages the force of a command; § 472 (278. a); G. 243; H. 560. 4. N. (487. 4); H-B. 572.
4 5 nuntio: cf. construction of illi, 3 17.
4 6 iam vero, but just then.
4 10 No. 6. domestici, members of the family, including slaves.
4 11 atrio: a large rectangular room opening from the entrance hall. In early times it served as the common living room and kitchen.—una: an adverb.
Stories, Fables, and Letters. 283

4 12 domino: we should say of the master. The dat. is often so used.
4 13 re vera, properly. The meaning of triclinium was extended so as to mean the room instead of the couch.
4 17 altera: sc. pars.
4 18 Romanis, etc., there was a proverb among the Romans or the Romans had a proverb.
4 19 ovo: as a part of the gustus, or first course. — mala: as a part of the dessert. — cenam: when, as here, the object comes first, it is convenient both in reading and translating to change the voice, making the object subject and turning the subject into the agent: The dinner was served by, etc.
5 1 No. 7. pedibus: we say on foot; in Latin abl. of means.
5 2 adeuntis, those that met him; the pres. partic. of adeo used substantively; cf. moritur, 3 9. — excipiebat, convenit: notice the difference of tense. The first refers to a custom, the second to a single event; the first is descriptive, the second narrative.
5 3 in ius vocatus erat, had been summoned to court.
5 5 patronum, advocate, the regular word. — cum: subj. of comitari.
5 6 at, well! used, as often, to introduce an emphatic or indignant remonstrance.
5 11 No. 8. ut videris, as it seems, in English. The Latin says preferably 'as you seem,' i.e. to live.
5 12 licet . . . venias, you may come; lit. 'it is permitted that you should come.' The idiom is a common one in Latin; see § 565 (331. i); B. 295. 6; G. 553. 3. 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); H-B. 531. 2.
5 13 felicitate: abl. with fruari; § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
5 15 num . . . sustines, you don't bear ... do you? the form of question which expects the answer 'no.' Num regularly has this force.
5 18 vestigia, marks. — cervici: dat. with circumdari; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348. r.1; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376.
6 2 nihil moror, I don't care for.
6 4 No. 9. e quibus, of them. The Latin often uses a relative merely as a connective instead of a demonstrative. Here e quibus cum unus = et cum unus ex his, but the former is preferred as making a closer connection with the preceding sentence; cf. 2 9 and note. — offendisset: the subjv. here with cum is idiomatic and has no special force which needs expression in English.
6 6 tamen: this word is always opposed to some concession expressed or implied. Here it is, 'Though the lion was angry and was just going to eat the mouse, nevertheless he spared the little creature's life in answer to
his prayers.' Do not translate such expressions mechanically, but get the thought from the Latin and express it in good English. — oranti: i.e. 'to him begging.' Ordinarily no pronoun of reference (he, she, etc.) is necessary in Latin if there is any word present which shows the construction. Here the pronoun would be ei, but oranti shows the case without it.

6 7 non sat is caute: the ways of expressing manner are various in all languages and very often do not correspond in particular cases. Here the Latin says 'not cautiously enough.' What should we say?

6 8 in venatoria, etc.: in reading this, notice that while the order is just the reverse of our most common way, yet it is very common in poetry and even in lively conversation, as 'Into the woods went he.'

6 9 rugiebat: observe again, as in 5 2, the imperfect of description here preceded and followed by narrative perfects.

6 10 cum spectavisset, having seen; for mood, cf. offendisset, 1 4, above.

6 12 deberet: the subjv. here is idiomatic and does not correspond to our English forms. It merely indicates that what is said was the thought of the mouse and not merely the fact. — grato animo: abl. of manner.

6 13 omni periculo: abl. of separation; cf. aliqua parte, 3 11.

6 14 reportavit: this means 'carried off,' as we say 'carried off the prize.' But as we should translate praemium by reward, with which we should not use 'carried off,' we must translate by some weaker word, like received or the like.

6 16 No. 10. sita erat: see note on sitas, 1 8. — divitiis et luxuria: these words tell in what respect the Sybarites excelled the Corinthians; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

7 1 bellicam, of war. The Latin is very fond of possessive and descriptive adjectives, for which we substitute phrases, as here.

7 2 vacabant, gave up their time to. The word properly means 'have leisure' or 'enjoy leisure.'

7 3 ad numerum, to the music.

7 4 saltarent: the subjv. with ut here expresses the result of the preceding — the regular Latin construction. The modal idea disappears in English; § 537 and n.² (319 and r.); B. 284; G. 551, 552; H. 570 (500 ii. n.³); H-B. 521, 2 and a. — sciebant, etc., this was known to their neighbors of Crotona. The Latin form, 'the neighboring Crotonians knew this,' would be awkward in English. Always have these changes in mind in translating.

7 5 cum gererent, while carrying on. See notes on offendisset, 6 4, and spectavisset, 6 10, above. The construction of cum with the subjv. is one of the most difficult in the language, but the difficulty is lessened if
we remember that *cum* with the subjv. never strictly expresses time, though it is the common word for 'when.' It is descriptive and expresses circumstances or occasions and the like. These may be introduced by 'when' in English, but oftener we use some other construction, as the pres. partic. or 'while.'

7 6 *tubas . . . tibias*: the first was of brass, and a warlike instrument; the second was of wood, and used for festival occasions.

7 7 *quam . . . pugnabatur, as long as the fighting was at long range*. The passive impersonal use of *pugno*, as here, 'it was fought,' is idiomatic and should never be literally translated.

7 8 *illī*: i.e. the musicians. — *res*: the translation of this word always requires care. It may mean anything suggested by the context and should be translated accordingly. Here we might say *battle, conflict, engagement*, or the like.

7 9 *numerōs*, etc.: i.e. dance music, as opposed to the exciting martial strains of brass. — *saltandum*: a gerund with *ad*, expressing purpose.

7 10 *cum . . . coeperunt*: a different use of *cum* from that in l. 5. With the ind. it may always be translated *when*, and expresses *time* rather than description or circumstance. — *tamquam . . . essent*, *as if they were*, i.e. 'they acted as (they would) if they were.' The conclusion in this construction is always omitted. See § 524. N. 2 and 1 (312. R. and N.); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and 6.

7 11 *dominis*: cf. note on *domino*, above, 4 12.

7 13 No. 11. *Actiacam, of Actium*. The Latin has a fondness for adjectives instead of prepositional phrases, and the former are often to be translated by the latter; cf. note on *bellicam*, 7 1. *Actium* is a promontory and city on the west coast of Acarnania, in northwestern Greece. It is especially famous for the great naval victory of Augustus, then known as Octavianus, over the combined forces of Antony and Cleopatra, B.C. 31. — *quā*: expresses means.

7 14 *superato Antonio*: this construction, called the ablative absolute, is one of the most common and characteristic of the Latin language. It is developed from the abl. expressing time or place and describes the circumstances under which the main action takes place. Here these circumstances are that 'Antony was conquered.' This had been an act of Augustus, and so we may say in English *having conquered Antony*, with a natural change
Notes: Second Year Latin.

of voice. Many other instances will occur for which a different rendering is necessary.—anno, etc.: this form of date is of course modern, but agrees with Latin idiom. Translate in the year 31 before Christ. Notice, however, that the Latin words mean ‘in the thirty-first year’ and ‘the birth of Christ,’ forms of expression which we do not use for a simple date.—ante Christum natum: lit. ‘before Christ born.’

7 15 principatum: this word, meaning properly ‘headship,’ ‘primacy,’ ‘first place,’ cannot be translated by such words, because in this case it implies more than these. We may say complete control, or supreme power (over). It often happens that a word in English which seems to correspond to a Latin one cannot be used for it, because words often imply ideas that they do not directly express.—occupavit, seized; it means ‘occupy’ only in the military sense of that word. Be careful about translating Latin words by the English words they resemble.

7 16 triumphanti: translate in his triumph, though it is really a partic. This word, agreeing with illi, refers to the technical triumph in which the victorious general entered the city, riding in a four-horse chariot at the head of his troops, with the spoils of war and everything to make a splendid pageant. See Fig. 14.—illi: notice that the dat. is the regular case after many verbs compounded with prepositions, which seem to us transitive; cf. illi, 3 17. —quidam, a man. It is implied that his personality is known as in Biblical ‘one,’ ‘a certain,’ which we now rarely use in that sense.—gratulantis: observe that adjectives and participles are often used as nouns, especially in the plural; cf. adeuntis, 5 2.

7 17 ut diceret, to say; cf. note on ut levaret, 3 11.—imperator: this word is untranslatable and is best rendered by transferring the Latin word itself, as with ‘consul’ and the like.

7 18 miratus: translate by the pres. partic., which is the usual English way in such cases. This partic., being deponent, is of course active in meaning.—officiosam, polite and respectful. The termination -osus makes adjectives expressing ‘full of.’ officium often means ‘a mark of respect’ or ‘respectful politeness’; hence the adjective properly means ‘full of these,’ i.e. ‘inclined to show them.’—milibus: the price. We say ‘bought for’; the Latin, ‘bought by.’ Hence the abl. is the regular case; see § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1.—sestertium: gen. plur., the regular construction with ‘thousands.’ Notice that we generally make the words agree—‘twenty thousand men.’ The sesterce was not a coin, but a unit of account, like a British pound sterling. It was worth about five cents of our money.

7 19 salutatus: cf. translation of miratus, above, but note that this verb is not deponent.
Stories, Fables, and Letters. 287

7 30 animadversa: cf. note above on Antonio superato, l. 14, and see § 420. N. (255. d. N.); B. 227. 2; G. 410; H. 489. 1 (431. 1. 2); H-B. 421.
7 22 ut ... institueret: the regular construction for expressing a purpose where we usually say 'to' or 'in order to,' as 'to instruct.'
7 24 exclamabant: the imperf., as often, expressing a customary action; cf. excipiebat, 5 2.
7 26 suum illud, his lesson. The Latin often uses indefinite words determined by the context, where we should use descriptive ones.
7 27 ut ... venderet: cf. note on institueret, l. 22.
8 1 audita voce: cf. note on arte ... animadversa, l. 20.
8 4 res: perhaps 'remark'; see note on 7 8. — excussit, forced. — Augusto: dat. expressing, in the case of persons, the one 'from whom,' the regular Latin construction.
8 5 ut ... emeret: this subjv. is idiomatic in Latin to express result; cf. ut ... saltarent, 7 4, and note. In English no modal form is required — that he bought. Notice that the Latin form for result is the same as for purpose, but these ideas are differently expressed in English. — tanti, etc., for more than he had ever paid for one before. The genitives tanti and quanti regularly express indefinite price. The Latin says, 'for so much as he had bought none before.' But we must change the form in translating.
8 8 No. 12. superior, above, or up-stream. — inferior, below, or down-stream.
8 9 inquit: cf. note, 3 16.
8 12 rei, of the matter; cf. note, 7 8. — initio: time when, expressed by the ablative.

No. 13. This poetic version of the preceding fable is by Phaedrus, a writer of the Augustan age. We know but little of his life, but it appears that he was brought to Rome as a Greek slave and belonged to Augustus, who set him free. He translated the Greek fables of Ἀσόπ into Latin iambic verse. Each line consists of six iambic feet. The iambus consists of a short and a long syllable (ι ᾠ), with the verse accent on the long syllable. Quantities and verse accent are marked in the text.
8 18 fauce: lit. 'gullet.' We may imitate improba fauce by greedy maw.
8 21 laniger: it is characteristic of poetry to call things by different names from the regular ones; here, woolly-back. — contra: sc. inquit, said in reply. The verb of saying is often omitted in reporting a conversation.
8 22 qui: here an adv., how. — quod: sc. id. A pronominal antecedent is often omitted when its gender and case are made clear by the form of the relative.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

8 23 haustus: lit. 'draughts,' but this would be forced in English, so we may say lips.

8 25 ante hos, etc., six months ago, a regular idiom in Latin.

8 26 equidem, why!

8 27 inquit: cf. note, 3 16.

8 28 conreptum: sc. eum, lit. 'him seized,' but translate having seized him. The Latin has no perfect active participle, and often supplies its place with the passive. — iniesta nece, by an unjust death.

9 2 innocentis: cf. gratulantis, 7 16, and note.

9 5 instituerunt, arranged. Notice that this is the same word that we translated 'teach' in No. 11. It properly means 'set up.' But a person who is taught may be said to be set up or established as a learned person, and hence the word may be used in that sense, as well as in very many others. Cf. 'set up as a philosopher,' or 'as a cobbler.'

9 7 advolarent: cf. saltarent, 7 4, and note.

9 8 quod cum, etc., when Zeuxis saw this. The Latin says, 'which when Z. saw,' using the relative where we use a demonstrative. Cf. qua, 2 9, and note. — videret: cf. note, 7 5. — verum: notice the emphasis on the first word, 'that it was real.'

9 9 occultaretur: this is in the idiomatic indirect discourse. Zeuxis would say 'verum est linteum quo pictura occultatur,' but stated indirectly, as in our clauses with 'that,' est becomes esse, and occultatur becomes subjv. The tense depends upon the past verb putavit, and is changed accordingly, as we also change the tense in English; § 580, 585 (336. 2; 336. B); B. 314, 317, 318; G. 650, 654; H. 642, 643, 543 ff. (523, 524, 491 ff.); H-B. 534. 1 and 2, 476. — agentem abl. abs., when Parrhasius did nothing. Cf. note on 7 14.

9 10 remoto, removing, etc.; cf. preceding note. The Latin is more exact than the English as to tenses. — tandem: finally, implying impatience at Parrhasius's waiting so long. — ostenderet: object-clause of purpose. Cf. ut . . . levaret, 3 11, and note.

9 11 moveret, that he might remove, etc. Parrhasius would say 'Tu impse move.' This, in the indirect discourse, becomes subjv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In this sentence and the one above we have the whole matter of the Latin indirect discourse, the great bugbear. Thus, verum esse linteum quo pictura occultaretur, 'that it was a real curtain by which the picture was concealed'; ipsae moveret, 'that he should (or to) remove it himself.' If a pupil will commit this to memory, he will have it all in a nutshell. — cognito: we may say learning; cf. remoto above.

9 13 fefellisset: this is also indirect discourse, but less formal. Zeuxis might hand Parrhasius the prize, or concede to him the supremacy, and
say, 'because I have deceived only birds, but you (have deceived) an artist.' This stated by another must take its verb in the subjv., as in the other case. These ten lines are a better lesson in grammar than pages of rules.

9 14 No. 15. quodam: almost like the English indefinite article. See note on 7 16.

9 15 crearetur: see note on 7 4 and 9 7. — quod cum: see note on 2 9 and 9 8.

9 17 regnum (subj. of obtigit), regal power, throne, or sceptre, as our word 'kingdom' is more concrete than regnum.

9 18 te, from you, though the word is acc.; celo takes two accusatives, here te and id understood, the antecedent of quod. On the omission of id, cf. note, 8 29.

9 19 tua interest, it is for your interest, an idiomatic construction with referit and interest. — quidnam: an emphatic quid, what in the world?

9 21 de vita decedente, when dying, or on his deathbed.

9 22 qui: the antecedent is thesaurus.

9 23 laudo, I approve, or I thank you for. — officiosam: see note on this word in 7 18.

9 24 perveniamus: verbs of effort usually take ut with the subjv. Cf ut . . . levaret, 3 11.

9 25 semitis: abl. of the way by which.

9 26 abducebat, kept leading, etc.

9 27 densa virgulta, a dense thicket, properly the shrubs of which the thicket is composed.

10 1 dicebat, used to say. Notice that these two imperfs. are descriptive, not merely narrative, like the perf. Cf. note, 5 2.

10 2 penetrabat: notice the descriptive imperf. again. He started and was on the way, but was stopped by the toils of the hunter.

10 3 cum imploravisset, having, etc. Cf. note on 7 5. — sero, too late, an implication which the word almost always has.

10 4 opus: pred. acc. after esse, as if an adj., necessary.

10 5 saltandi: gen. of the gerund. — autem, but, a weak adversative. He has described the monkey’s situation, and now turns to the fox on the other hand. Cf. note on 2 2.

10 6 habetis iam, etc., freely, there’s your dancing king for you, and much good may he do you.

10 8 No. 16. ad ancoram, etc., moored, or anchored.

10 9 ei: see note on 3 15.

10 11 deplorabat, proceeded to, began to, etc. The imperf. here denotes the beginning of an action. — quas . . . cum: cf. quod cum, 9 8, and note.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

10 12 emersit, rose from the water. Compare the three compounds of mergo in this number. — quid rei esset, what the matter was. This construction (called the partitive genitive), where quid rei stands instead of quae res, is a common idiom of the Latin, especially in colloquial language. The subjv. esset has no modal force to be represented in English, but notice the change in order between the direct and the indirect.

10 13 incauto mihi excidit, etc., I carelessly let fall my axe; lit. 'my axe fell from me incautious.' Notice the difference in the idioms.

10 14 neque, and . . . not; see note, 2 8. — quo emam, the wherewithal to buy; lit. 'that wherewith I may buy.' Technically a purpose-clause, hence the subjunctive.

10 15 paulo, a little while, abl. of degree of difference. — dextra: sc. manu. — securim: for form, see § 75. b (56. b); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 3 (62. iii); H-B. 88. 1.

10 16 num haec esset ea, whether this was the one, another indirect question. Cf. quid rei esset, above, and note.

11 1 amisisset: subjv. because in the indirect form. The direct form would be haec ne est ea quam amisisti? 'is this the one which you have lost?' Note carefully the changes in mood and tense, and cf. notes on 9 9, 11, and 13. — negavit, said no, or not, the regular meaning of nego.

11 3 ne . . . quidem, not . . . either.

11 4 ipsam, very.

11 5 laetus: see note on 1 9.


11 8 sua sponte, on purpose.

11 9 eum: i.e. fluvium.

11 11 eane: the enclitic -ne asks a question, whether, etc. — esset . . . deploraret: subjv., because of the indirect form. The direct form would be 'eane est cuius iacturam deploras?' Cf. note and text, 11 1.

11 16 No. 17. sibi: this pron., depending on adpropinquare, is not required in English; we should say his death.

11 18 quibus adlatis, upon these being brought. See note on superato Antonio, 7 14.

11 19 frangerent: see note on 3 11, and cf. ostenderet, 9 10, and perveniamus, 9 24. — quod cum, and when . . . this. Cf. note on 9 8.

11 20 singulis singulars, one to each, lit. 'to single (persons) single rods,' the regular way of saying this in Latin. — eis, etc., by their being easily broken, another use of the abl. abs., here expressing circumstance as means.

11 21 quam, how. — esset: notice that this is the fourth time this form has been used in a question (10 12, 10 16, 11 11). In each case the
question has not been directly asked, but reported indirectly, 'asked whether,' or the like. The subjv. in such cases is regular in Latin, but no different modal form is used in English; § 574 (334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649, ii (529, ii); H-B. 537. b.

11 23 No. 18. Demosthenes: the greatest orator of the Greeks and of the ancient world. He lived in the 4th century B.C., and some of his most famous orations are still extant. — _cum_ _defenderet_: here again the clause may be translated _when he_, etc., or _when once defending_, etc. Observe that generally _cum_ with a past tense expresses circumstance or description, and the mood is subjunctive. English makes no such modal distinction.

11 25 _rem_, _something_. See note, 7 8.

11 26 _narratur_, _while I tell_. This is a rare and unclassical use of the fut. partic., and is probably imitated from the Greek. — _auditu_, _to hear_, the latter supine, used only with adjectives. — _ad quae_, etc.: cf. _quas_. _cum_, 10 11, and note.


12 2 _media_ . . . _via_, _midway_.

12 5 _obtegeretur_: result-clause. So, too, _certarent_, l. 9, below. Cf. note on _saltaret_, 7 4. — _vetabit_: cf. _deplorabit_, 10 11, and note.


12 9 _in ius ambulant_: cf. note on 5 3.

12 10 _ubi_ . . . _vidit_: this construction differs from the one with _cum_ (cf. note on 7 5) in denoting time and not circumstance or description. _As soon as_, or the like. The mood is therefore ind., just as in English.

12 12 _reliquam_, _the rest of_. Cf. _media via_, 12 2.

12 13 _pergeret_: object-clause of purpose after _rogatus_. Cf. note, 3 11. — _libet_ (sc. _vobis_), _are you glad to_?

12 15 No. 19. Pompeius: Cnaeus Pompey the Great, the famous rival of Caesar, leader of the senatorial party, as Caesar was of the popular party. Pompey was defeated by Caesar in the Civil War. — _deposito consilio_, _abandoning the design_. See note on 7 14. — _adeundae Syriae_, _of going to Syria_. In this, the gerundive construction, originally a passive one, the voice must always be changed to fit the English idiom. — _aeris_, _here money_, as we should say 'gold' for money, the Romans using copper.

12 17 _milibus_: supply _impositis_ from _imposito_. — _armatis_: agreeing with _milibus_, though we should take it with _hominum_: lit. 'two armed thousands of men.' This idiomatic use of the gen. after _milia_ is regular; cf. the construction of _sestertium_, 7 18.

12 18 _aetate_: abl. of specification.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

12 19 Cleopatra: the famous queen of Egypt who killed herself rather than fall into the hands of Augustus. — paucis ante mensibus, a few months before, abl. of degree of difference. Cf. paulo, 10 15. In 8 25 there is a different idiom to express the same idea, ante hos sex menses.

12 23 Alexandria, into Alexandria. Cf. this with Athenis and Megaram, 12 1, and you observe that in the case of towns no prepositional is needed, but the abl. is irregular, 'received into or within.' — reciperetur: depending on the request implied in misit, i.e. 'he sent (to ask).'

12 24 qui, those who, the antecedent being omitted, as with our indefinite 'whoever.' See also note on quod, 8 22.

12 28 in procuratione, in control, properly, engaged in the care of the kingdom as regents.

14 1 sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, often used for aut . . . aut, as in English 'either . . . or' is replaced by 'whether . . . or.' — ne occuparet: dependent on the expression of fearing, timore adducti, the regular construction. Notice that the connective ne after a verb of fearing is translated by that or lest, and not by that not, as in other cases.

14 2 despecta fortuna: notice that where there is a word in the sentence for the partic. to agree with, as in the preceding case (adducti), it agrees, but if there is none, a new noun is used in the abl. with the partic., i.e. the abl. abs., so called because it seems to have no connection with the entence, though it really is an abl. of time, place, or manner.

14 3 palam: opposed to clam below.

14 6 ad interficiendum, etc.: see note on adeundae Syriae, 12 16. Here expressing purpose.

14 8 cum paucis suis, with a few of his friends.

14 14 No. 20. ei, to her, the dat. of reference after causa. So also liberis.

15 1 feminae Latonae: there are two indications that these words do not go together, as the beginner might carelessly think possible; the Latin regularly puts a proper name before its appositive, Latonae feminae; and again, if the sentence is read in order the et will naturally connect the priests and the women, and then Latonae will be seen to have no other construction than the dative. Use your common sense in reading.

15 4 mihi . . . sunt, I have, the most common form to express simple possession. Note the emphasis on the word mihi, indicated by its position.

15 5 genere: a quality is regularly expressed by a noun and adj. (not a noun alone) in the abl., where we say 'of'; technically, the abl. of quality.

15 6 ea: the Latin uses a pron. of reference when the name of the
person or thing referred to would require a different case from what it had when used before. Here, for example, Latona when last used was in the gen. — vindicarent: cf. note, 3 11.

15 9 saxum: the story was connected with a stone which was supposed to exude water. It is like the story of the pillar of salt.

15 10 ei: dat. of reference. But we may translate the whole, causes her to shed, etc.

15 11 No. 21. fuerat: we may say was, because we are not so exact as to tenses, but the Latin, speaking of the time of the story, says, 'had been the heir' or 'had inherited' before the story begins. — et ipse, and himself also, as opposed to his inheritance received from another.

15 12 sibi, for himself.

15 14 visum: supine, properly an acc. of the end of motion and used after verbs of motion to express purpose, to see.

15 15 civibus: dat. of reference.

15 16 septem sapientis: the famous seven sages of Greece.

15 18 esset: again the subj. in an indirect question; see 10 12, 11 21. — negavit, refused to admit, not denied; avoid stock translations of words and phrases. Find out the thought; then express it in the best English.

15 19 dispuicit, was displeasing to, hence followed by the dat.

15 20 sensit, found out. This word, referring to any kind of perception, is especially used of that which one finds out by actual experience. — esset: cf. 10 12, 10 16.

15 21 obtinebat (with regnum), was king, occupied the throne, or the like. Notice that obtineo does not mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy; see note on 7 15.

15 22 ut . . . impediret, to retard, regular purpose-clause.

15 23 bellum paravit, made preparations for war. Notice that bellum is more concrete in Latin than is 'war' in English, expressing all the paraphernalia of war, so that a Roman can parare bellum, while we 'prepare for war.'

15 24 Delphicum: the oracle of Apollo at Delphi in Greece was anciently supposed to be an unerring means of direct communication with the gods for advice and knowledge of the future. Its trustworthiness became proverbial.

15 26 quod interest inter, which flows between. — regnum, etc.: the responses of oracles were usually of this ambiguous character and were so framed by astute persons as to come true, whatever happened.

15 27 cum . . . comperisset, having learned, etc., as so often with cum and the pluperf. subjunctive.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

15 28 copiis: words of military significance are used in the abl. of accompaniment without cum. — autem: for the force of this word, see notes, 2 2, 10 5.

16 1 ita pugnatum est, the result of the battle was such; cf. 7 7.

16 2 neque hic neque ille, neither Cæsus nor his adversary; such English expressions as this have no exactly corresponding forms in Latin and hence must be substituted for the simpler Latin forms, and, conversely, must be excluded in writing Latin; hic refers to Croesō as the nearer on the page, ille to Cyrus, as farther off. — altero: not merely 'another,' but a second. — proelio: really abl. of manner, but translate by using it as the subject of pugnaretur.

16 4 captivus, being taken captive, equivalent to a participle.

16 5 cum, etc.: the idea can hardly be expressed in English otherwise than by when, but it is the 'when' of circumstance, not that of time; cf. 7 5 and note.

16 7 cum... audivisset: here the expression will admit the perf. act. partic., which should therefore be used, as more natural in English. Cf. cum... comperisset, 15 27, and note.

16 8 significaret: notice again the indirect question.

16 9 docuisset: this is a case where the indirect question is troublesome. As it stands, it means that Cæsus in his story answered a question like 'What did Solon say?' the indirect form of which would be 'I will tell you what Solon said.' But if it were id quod Solon, etc., there would be no question in the Latin, but a relative clause with the indicative. The difficulty is that either would be good Latin, and in English there is no modal distinction made at all.

16 10 ut Croesum... esset: notice that of these clauses, alike in Latin, the first two are result-clauses and so have no distinguishing modal form in English, and that the third, a purpose-clause (used as object of rogaret), is to be translated by the regular English infin. of purpose. We have a similar purpose-clause below in l. 13, monuit ut, etc.

16 12 ei: dat. after profuit.

17 1 No. 22. ante, etc.: cf. note, 7 14.

17 2 regebant, etc.: it is better here to change the voice, in order to preserve the emphasis which comes from the position of regebant, the city was ruled, etc.

17 4 nomines: the subjv. of the second person, where we say 'one might,' etc., a common Latin usage.

17 7 esset, should be, a future condition. The explanation of the tense will come later. — eum: this word can only be the object of coerceret, but it has this position because contrasted with alter.
17 8 coerceret, might, etc., another purpose-clause; cf. locupletaretur,
11 7. — quem morem, a custom which. This is the regular form in Latin
when an antecedent is in apposition with something that goes before.
Our form is different, as above.
17 9 saecula, for, etc.; the regular acc. of duration of time; § 423
(256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. i. — hoc tantium, this
great; notice that in English we leave out the 'so,' which the Latin
usually expresses, as here, by tantium. — diviseris: the subjv. is used, as in
nomines, l. 4; but here there is a future condition. The form means
'should have,' etc., but we express the idea by the pres. ind. (a subjv.
confounded with the indicative).
17 10 iam: used in reference to the earlier stage, 'the infancy'; now
you will have, etc.
17 11 quarum: sc. aetatum. — numero: abl. of respect.
17 13 ad ... revocantes, reckoning up; the calculi were counters
(originally stories) by which the Romans did their figuring. The Chinese
and Japanese still use a similar means, as do also the elementary grades in
our own schools.
17 14 statuerunt, made out; cf. note on instituerunt, 9 s.
17 15 redactas habuerunt: this form, the origin of the perf., etc., with
'have' in modern languages, is not exactly equivalent to that construction;
it means 'held brought under,' etc., but as the perf., etc., often expresses
the present state resulting from a preceding action, we may well say here had
brought, etc. The partic. redactas agrees, of course, with the obj. gentis.
17 17 saeculo and anno: abl. of time when. Cf. anno, 7 14.
17 19 medium: i.e. the Mediterranean. — iure, justly, abl. of manner.
17 24 bello ... finito, at the end of, etc. Try in all cases to give
the abl. abs. the shade of meaning required in English.
17 25 aemulam, their rival.
17 26 quo anno, the same year that; cf. note on quem morem, 17 8. —
e, in, though it properly means 'out of' (the year, or the events of that
century).
17 27 necatum, institutum: sc. esse. These infinitive-clauses are the
subjs. of mandatum est.
18 1 No. 23. eius, of the one, i.e. the father of the same name. —
cecidit, fell. Cf. cecidit, struck down. — ad Cannas: though we say at
here, yet the construction is not that of names of towns, which would be
abl., Cannis, because the town as a spot is not meant, but its vicinity.
18 2 consul, in his consulship, or when he was consul. A word in
apposition often expresses modifying ideas of this sort, inasmuch as the
Latin has no pres. partic. of esse to connect two nouns.
18 3 paterni: agreeing with odi. Modifying phrases (as here, in Romanos) are often inserted between two words belonging together, in order to show the close connection. Here it is not merely 'his father's hatred,' but 'his father's hatred against the Romans,' forming a single complex idea.

18 4 prefecturus esset, was on the point of setting out; mark the force of the first periphrastic conjugation.—domum: in this construction (end of motion) domus admits a possessive, so we must say to his house, where otherwise we should say 'returned home.'

18 5 Tertiam: Roman girls were more commonly merely numbered secunda, tertia, quarta, etc., the first one having the gentile name (as Aemilia, Iulia).

18 6 tristiculam, that she was, etc., though the word is only a pred. acc. This shorthand form of expression is very common in Latin.

18 7 tristis: how different in meaning from tristiculam above?

18 8 Persa: the common Latin form for Perses.

18 9 artius, warmly; the comparative often differs from the positive only in suggesting, not a real comparison, but only a rather higher degree of the adj. or adv.—complexus, the tense may be disregarded in English. Cf. miratus, 18. — accipio, etc.: an omen was usually not valid unless accepted by the party concerned, for which this was the regular form.

18 10 omen: such chance sayings were regarded by the superstitious Romans as tending to bring about their own fulfilment. The idea still lurks under such expressions as 'Oh, don't speak of it!' when any calamity is mentioned.

18 12 Macedoniam: as some verbs compounded with in and some other prepositions acquire a meaning that requires a dat. (cf. gregi, 39), so others acquire a transitive meaning and can take an acc., as here. — recta: abl. fem. of rectus, used as an adverb.

18 13 No. 24. Scipio: the conqueror of Hannibal. He was the son of Ēmilius Paulus, above mentioned, and was adopted by one of the Scipios, so his full name was P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Ēmilianus.

18 14 militarēt: see notes, 75, 165.

18 15 primus, etc., was the first to, etc., the regular way in Latin of expressing this idea.

18 16 quisquam: notice that this word is used only in connection with negative ideas, as 'not any one.'—nobilitate, etc.: abl. of cause or reason.

18 17 cuius magis saluti, etc., whose life ought to be spared and looked out for. The construction here, the impers. pass. of verbs which govern the dat., is a regular Latin one. In the active voice we might say eius saluti parce, spare his life, but only transitive verbs can be changed to the
personal passive, and if we want to express this in the passive form, his life is to be spared, we must say eius salutis parcendum est, or parci debet. By learning this difference of idiom once for all another great stumbling block may be removed. — deberet: this subjv., of the same class as the result-clauses, needs no special modal form in English. — sed: introducing, in opposition to what ought to have been done, the reason why it was not done. There is no sense in using 'buts,' 'fors,' and 'indeeds' mechanically. If the real connections are once noticed, these particles, of which there are so many in Latin, will become helps instead of hindrances. — tunc: notice the emphasis, at that time they vied with each other to see which could do the most, instead of saving themselves, as now.

18 18 clarissimus quisque . . . plurimum, the more distinguished a youth was, the more, etc. Another distinctive Latin idiom, expressing a kind of proportion. The persons or things are conceived as lined up in order, and each one (quisque), as he comes, is said to have the most of the quality among those who remain. — pro amplificanda, etc.: gerundive construction; cf. adeundae Syriae, 12 15, and note.

18 20 deforme: the emphatic position and the gender of this word make it almost certain that it is the adj. belonging to an infin. or clause which is to come later. In English such a sentence would be perfectly clear, because the copula would be expressed with the adj., and the infinitive clause would be introduced by 'that,' as 'thinking it was unseemly when, etc., that.'

19 i quos: the antecedent is his. This is the first case of the common precedence of the relative, like "whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you," to which the Latin form exactly corresponds. But this form has become obsolete in English except with the indef. rel. 'whoever,' etc. The best way is to read it in the obsolete English form, and translate it into the modern — by those whom, etc. — dignitate: another abl. of respect; so, too, virtute. — praestaret, the dependent subjv. in indir. disc.; see note on occultaretur, 9 9. — virtute: this word means properly 'manliness,' but as that was the chief Roman virtue it came to stand for all. Here it stands for prowess or heroism; beware of translating it 'virtue,' except where that word expresses the particular form of virtue indicated by the context.

19 2 ideoque, and it was for this reason that, a force given by the emphatic position. — Aemilianus: translate Scipio, his regular English name. — aliis . . . vitantibus, when others, etc.

19 4 No. 25. non defendissent, had failed to defend, a force often given by the simple verb with a negative; cf. 7 5 and note. Be sure that your translation is English, and not mongrel Latin.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

19 s occupare: here we may say occupy, as the word is used in a military sense, the only sense in which the two words correspond in the two languages; see note on occupavit, 7 15.

19 m militum: for construction, see note on sestertium, 7 18.—his copias: preserve the emphasis of position by changing the construction, these forces were under the command, or the like. This course is often necessary for a faithful rendering. For construction of the dat., see § 370. a (228. N. 1); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 1 (386. 1); cf. H-B. 376.

19 e enim: introducing the explanation of the fact that the forces of all Greece were under the Spartan king; cf. note on sed, 18 17.

19 s cuperet: see note on saltaret, 7 4.

19 l concessum esset, had not been, etc.; the modal form of this condition is apparently lost in English from the disappearance of our subjv.

19 i idem cogitabant: do not translate literally, 'thought the same thing,' but had the same feelings or determination, or the like. Remember that you are expressing ideas in English, though you get them from the Latin.—contra Persas: connect with eduxit.

19 j in Thermopylas: the preposition is used because not a town, but a pass is meant. Cf. ad Cannas, 18 1.

19 k autem: notice what connection of ideas this word indicates here; do not translate it mechanically by 'but' or 'now' or 'moreover'; cf. 2 2, 10 5, and notes.—quantis, how small. The Latin does not usually distinguish between small and great in such indefinite words. Of course if a thing is 'so great' it is equally 'so small,' according to the way you look at it.—defenderentur: remember the indir. question; see note on esset, 11 21.

19 l initio: abl. of time.—tum: opposed to initio.—quod: the reason is given as the writer's. If the reason had been given as that of Xerxes the subjv. would have been used. Cf. quoniam... fefellisset, 9 12, and note.

19 m ponenter: notice that the clause after the idea of commanding is the same whatever the word is that expresses that idea. Here misit means sent with orders. If it were 'sent (to say) that he was there,' it would be se adesse, because then misit would be equivalent to a verb of saying.

19 n quid... responsum sit, what answer was given. The Latin puts the descriptive ideas preferably in a verb where we put them in a noun. Here the indir. question is used as the subj. of notum est.—illi: refers to Xerxes.

19 o vobis, from you, but in Latin a dat. of reference. Cf. ei and liberis, 14 14.
19 18 itaque, in that way.
19 20 hominum: cf. militum, l. 6.
19 23 vulneratus: strictly agreeing with numerus for form's sake, but we should conceive it as spoken of the Persians.
19 24 electorum militum, picked men, not 'chosen soldiers.' As soon as you have seen that this is what the Latin says, then abandon it for your own word.
19 25 etiam hi, even these. Etiam regularly throws emphasis on the following word.
19 27 pecunia, by money; cf. with a Graecis, l. 23. Observe that means is usually expressed without a preposition, while agency requires a or ab.
19 28 efficerent: this, though an indir. question, is different from those before. The direct would be, not qua via...efficiunt, how are they effecting, but qua via efficiant, how shall they effect. These have the same form in the indirect in Latin, but it appears from the context which is meant.

20 3 acceperat: see note on accipio, 18 9.
20 4 aut...aut: notice that these words are mutually exclusive, so that the oracle might be interpreted that if the king (either of the Spartans or the Persians) was killed, the city need not be destroyed. Leonidas therefore satisfied the oracle by his own death.
20 10 No. 26. tristissimus, etc., I write this to you in a very sad state of mind, on account of the death of our friend Fundanus's younger daughter. This is a very good example of the great changes of idiom often necessary in translation. It will easily be seen that the English exactly reproduces the Latin, though in a very different form. The adj. agreeing with the omitted subject of scribo expresses the state of mind of the subject, a common Latin construction. The following abl. abs. expresses, as often in Latin, the cause of the preceding, though it properly only describes the circumstances; cf. note on superato Antonio, 7 14.—qua puella, a girl than whom; see note on quem morem, 17 8. The abl. is due to the comparatives; § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416 and a.—nihil umquam: lit. 'nothing ever,' but our idiom is usually never any one, or no one ever. The Latin often uses nihil and the neuter of indefinite pronouns to refer to persons. Grammatically nihil is the obj. of vidi, and the comparative adjectives agree with it.—nec, and not, the negative going with modo and the conjunction connecting amabilius and dignius. See note on nec, 2 8.
20 11 vita, immortalitate: abl. after dignius, the regular construction.
20 12 illi...erat, she had or showed, illi being the dat. of possessor.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

20 13 tamen, yet with it all. Cf. note, 6 6.
21 1 ut, how (exclamatory).
21 2 inhaerebat: this selection admirably illustrates the force of the imperf. tense in description. Note that the perfs., where they occur, mark the different steps of the narrative; cf. 5 2, 10 1, and notes. — nos: = me, as often in Latin; cf. Eng. editorial ‘we.’
21 3 paedagogos, attendants; the Romans at this time had the Greek custom of entrusting children to the care of a faithful old male slave, as a kind of chaperon.
21 4 pro suo quemque officio, each according to his station, i.e. their relation to her. The reflexive would naturally refer to the subject, but with quemque it refers to that word.
21 6 illa, the child; cf. note, 16 2. — constantia, heroism.
21 7 valetudinem, sickness, the most common meaning of the word. — tuli: notice the narrative perf. among so many descriptive imperfs.; so also duravit; see general note above on l. 2.
21 8 ipsam se, even herself.
21 9 viribus: from vis, abl. of separation after destitutam. — hic: i.e. vigor. — illi, with her, according to English idiom, though expressed by the dat. of reference.
21 11 relinqueret: a result-clause connected by the relative quo, whereby, i.e. ‘the death of one so lovely and heroic’ had as a result ‘that,’ etc.
21 12 desideri, for bereavement, properly ‘the sense of loss’ or ‘missing.’ — plane, truly, surely. — acerbum: almost regular for the death of young persons.
21 13 morte, than the death, the regular abl. after comparatives (see qua puella, 20 10); cf. this with vita, 20 11, which depends on the idea of dignus, while here the abl. depends on the comparative idea, as in both cases is shown by the context.
21 14 nuptiarum: Roman girls were married very young.
21 15 quod gaudium: placed first for emphasis; cf. note, 9 8. — quo maerore: in our idiom, into what grief. In an exchange either the thing got or the thing given may be in the abl. as the price of a barter.
21 18 quod erogaturus fuerat, what he had intended to spend. Again a first periphrastic; cf. prefecturus esset, 18 4. — hoc: antecedent of quod. — tus, etc.: these were for the funeral, to be burned on the funeral pile. — imponderetur: this is subjv. for the inv. of direct discourse. Cf. the construction of moveret, 9 11, and see note.
21 20 No. 27. Aemilius Paulus: the same one mentioned in No. 8a.
Stories, Fables, and Letters.

21 21 formaee insignis: note that qualities are described by either the gen. or the abl. Cf. genere, 15 5, and note.

21 22 duos: one was the Scipio spoken of in No. 24, the other Quintus Fabius Maximus.

21 23 sibi ipsi denegavit, he himself renounced, lit. 'denied to himself' by giving them in adoption. — ei: notice again the dat. of the person rendered from where we might have looked for the abl. Cf. Augusto, 8 4.

21 24 alter, one. Of course either of two may be 'the other,' according to the way you look at them. — triumphum: i.e. after his victory over Perses; see No. 23. — funere: abl. of means with praecessit. — quantum ante diem, three days before, according to our reckoning. So below, post diem tertium = two days after.

21 25 conspectus: partic. expressing concession, though seen.

21 26 qui, he who; cf. note on quos, 19 1. — ad donandos, etc., had so many children as to give them away. Cf. this gerundive construction with similar cases, 12 15, 14 6.

21 27 in orbitate, etc., was suddenly left childless.

21 28 quem: connecting rel., as so often; cf. quod gaudium, etc., l. 15, above, and note. — sustinuerit: subjv. in an indir. question, which is a kind of object of reliquit.

23 1 rebus, etc., his exploits, the regular expression. — apud, before, the regular expression in such a case. — adiciendo: abl. of the gerund, of which clausulam is the direct object. Observe that the gerund has the construction of an active verbal noun, the gerundive of a passive verbal adjective.

23 2 nulli ambiguum, no one in doubt, lit. 'doubtful to no one.'

23 3 ne quid mali, that...some misfortune. The partit. gen. with a neuter pronoun is regular in Latin for such ideas; cf. quid rei, 10 12.

23 4 fortuna: this idea of great fortune being the forerunner of ill was very prevalent among the ancients, and is often found lingering in modern times. — moliretur, was planning, in sense like the colloquial 'getting up.' For construction, cf. ne occuparet, 14 1. — Iovem, etc.: these were the three official Capitoline deities, the tutelary protectors of Rome. Their full titles belong to the solemnity of Roman ritualism. Such things could not be lightly referred to, but must be given in proper form.

23 6 immineret: what he would say would be imminet, a simple present condition, but this is changed to the subjv. on the principle of indir. disc.; cf. note on fefellisset, 9 13; technically the subjv. of the 'integral part'; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 629; II. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.1. 1); II-B. 539. — totum, wholly.

23 7 adnuendo: gerund as abl. of means, followed by votis, indir. obj.

23 8 id egerunt, they have provided.
23 9 vestro ingemiscerem, should bewail yours. vestro [casu] is abl. of cause, and ingemiscerem a much stronger word than doleatis. Technically the whole expression is an ut-clause of result in apposition with id.

23 11 No. 28. eo: i.e. spectaculo.

23 12 homines, etc.: a common practice with the Romans, of which the Spanish bull fight is the only survival.

23 13 capitis, to death, a regular idiom, the so-called gen. of the penalty.—essent: this in the decree would be sunt, but it is changed by indir. disc.; cf. note on immineret, l. 6.

23 16 ludorum: all such holiday shows of whatever kind were called ludi.

23 17 circum: the more common place for this was the arena, but the circus was sometimes used. Arena is a better word for it in English.

23 21 cui, whose, as often; cf. domino, 4 19.

23 25 meritus esset: indir. question.

24 1 ita narravit, told his story thus.

24 2 domini: we should say from.

24 5 etiam: see note, 19 25.—iam... desperabam, I now began to, etc. The imperf., especially with iam, often has this force. Cf. deplorabat, 10 11.

24 6 effugiendi: students often confuse the gerund and the gerundive. Bearing in mind that the latter is always an adj. in agreement with a noun, such a case as this must necessarily be a gerund. Cf. this with the gerundive in 12 15.

24 7 sed leo, the lion, however.—clamore, cries, dolores, pain. Notice that the languages do not agree, even in their conceptions of number.

24 8 autem: here does little more than to mark the change of subject from leo to ego. See notes, 2 2, 10 5, 19 13.


24 11 una: an adverb.


24 14 taedium, etc.: change the voice of the verb, I was seised with, etc.

24 15 discedere: the infin. added to a verb to complete its meaning, as in English; hence called the complementary infinitive. Many verbs take either this or the ut-construction.

24 16 ut venaretur, to hunt: infin. in English; but remember that the Latin infin. does not express purpose.


No. 29. S.: for salutem, greeting; sc. dicit.

24 23 S. V., etc.: i.e. Si vales bene est, ego valeo. See 1 1 and note. —velim cures, etc., I want you to take very good care of. velim is a less
emphatic and more polite form of speech than *volo*; as we say 'I should like,' instead of 'I wish,' and *cures*, etc., is an object-clause of purpose *without ut* (properly hortatory), a common construction after *volo*.

24 25 *quod, in that*.

25 2 *novi*: see note on *mali*, 23 3. — *facies ut sciam*, *you will let me know*; the result-clause *ut sciam* is a kind of obj. of *facies*.

25 3 D.: for *data*, i.e. handed to the messenger (as we might say 'posted'). Hence our word 'date.' — *III Nonas*, etc.: the Romans had a complicated system of dates, originally connected with the moon's phases. The date here is June 2d, three days before the Nones, which fell on the 5th in June.

No. 29. S. D.: i.e. *Salutem Dicit*.

25 4 *Tusculanum, our Tuscan estate*. The Romans often had villas in various parts of the country, like a modern English nobleman. — *nos*: instead of the sing., like the royal and editorial 'we'; cf. *nos*, 21 2. — *venturos*: with the fut. partic. *esse* is very often omitted, as here. — *Nonis*: i.e. the 7th, on which day the Nones fell in October.

25 5 *ut*: sc. *cura*, often omitted in familiar style. — The same thing occurs in l. 7 (cura) *ut sit*. — *plures, several, i.e. more than one*.

25 6 *diutius, some time*; see note on *artius*, 18 9.

25 8 *valitudinem*: this word means health, either good or bad. Here, of course, it means the former; but see 21 7.

25 9 Kal.: the 1st; in full, *Kalendis Octobribus*.

25 9 Venusino: another villa of Cicero's.

25 11 No. 30. *bello*: abl. of separation. — *se*: obj. of *abstineret*; many words which later became intransitive were in classical Latin transitive and required an object; cf. such words as 'abstain' and 'refrain,' coming from the later usage. — *abstineret*, a purpose-clause depending on *missus*, which here has the same force as in 19 15; see note.

25 11 *quo . . . lacessebat*: not part of what he was ordered to say. If it were, the subjv. would be used. The ind. shows it to be an explanatory phrase thrown in by the author; § 593. *a* (342. *a*); G. 628. *r. a*; H. 652. *i* (529. ii. *N.1. 2*); H-B. 550.

25 12 *prompto animo, with ready courtesy*.

25 13 *suam*: i.e. *dexteram*, suggested, as often, by the opposition.

25 14 *ut, when or as*, in this sense always with the indicative.

25 16 *interposuisset*: subjv., as implying a thought of Popilius; see note on *fesellisset*, 9 13.

25 17 *prius*: take with *quam*. — *quo, on which*, depending on the force of the prep. in the verb. So also *circulo*, in the next line. In such
cases the preposition may be repeated before the noun with the effect of increasing the emphasis.

25 18 *excedas*: the subjv. may be neglected here, as it expresses no apparent modal relation in English.— *quod*... *referam*, *for me to carry back*, a purpose-clause with a rel. Note that it is the purpose idea that requires the subjv. mood, and not any particular introductory word.

25 19 *locutum*: *sc. esse*.

25 20 *credere*, *one* (or lit. 'you') *would have thought*, the regular way of expressing that idea.— *fore ne*: a late usage for *non fore ut*, *that it should n't happen*, etc., i.e. *that Ptolemy should have no further cause for complaint*, which is perhaps the best translation.

25 21 *tum demum, then only*, 'then and not till then.'

25 23 *abscisa gravitas*: as this implies freedom from effusiveness, it may be used as well with *animi* as with *sermonis*; we may say *abrupt dignity of manner and speech*, or divide the idea into two.— *momento*, *vigorous action*, i.e. the influence exerted by his prompt and forceful demand.

25 24 *Aegypti, that of Egypt*; in such cases the Latin practically never uses a pronoun.

26 2 No. 31. *sonus, strepitus, rattling, clanking*; such words as these vary much in their translation, because they are very indefinite in their meaning.— *si attendere*: the subjv. is here used on account of the second person referring to an indefinite subj. 'you' ('any one'). Neither the first person 'we' nor the third 'any one' would require it, nor would it be used of a definite person addressed.

26 4 *redderatur*, *were heard* (plur. in English on account of the two subjs.). Notice that though *reddere* means 'give out' from the object, yet we can equally well translate by its effect on the person.

26 5 *confectus, disfigured*. This word means either to *make up,* i.e. *complete, make, or 'do up,* i.e. *exhaust, destroy,* as here.— *cruribus, manus*: abl. of instrument, though we say *on*.

26 6 *inhabitantibus*: the agent of an action is often by a change of the point of view put in the dative.

26 7 *noctes*: this word can be made the subj. of the passive *vigilabatur* because that verb is transitive in Latin, *spent in watching*.

26 9 *memoria imaginis, the remembered vision*.

26 10 *oculis*: dat. after *in-errabat*; cf. *copias*, 19 7.— *longiorque*, etc.: i.e. the terror outlasted its cause.

26 11 *solitudine*: abl. of the penalty after *damnata* as a judicial word. More often the penalty is expressed by the gen., as in *capitis damnati*, 23 13.— *tota, wholly*; see note on *laetus*, 1 3.
Stories, Fables, and Letters.

27 1 proscribed: the regular word for advertise. An advertisement 'to let' from the walls in Pompeii is given below:

INSVLA ARRIANA
POLLIANA CN ALLEI NIGIDI MAI
LOCANTVR EX (K) IVLIIS PRIMIS TABERNÆ
CVM PERGVLIS SVIS ET CENAVL
EQUESTRIA ET DOMVS CONDUCTOR
CONVENITO PRIMVM CN ALLEI
NIGIDI MAI SER.

"The Arria Pollia block of Cn. Aleius Nigidius Maius to let from 1st of July next, shops with their show windows, first-class gentlemen's chambers and a dwelling. Apply to Primus, slave of Cn. Aleius Nigidius Maius."

—tamen: i.e. though it was abandoned, yet it was advertised to be sold to some stranger.

27 2 seu quis . . . vellet, in case any one should, etc. This is really a fut. condition thrown back into past time by being quoted from the advertisement.

27 4 suspecta, suspicious, i.e. he thought something was the matter to make it so cheap. —omnia: the second acc. after doceo retained with the pass.; like 'I teach you Latin,' and 'you are taught Latin'; § 396. b. n. (239. c. r.); B. 178. 2; G. 339; H. 411. 1 (374. 1); H-B. 393. a. — nihilo, tanto: abl. of degree of difference; cf. paulo, 10 15.

27 6 sterni, a bed to be made; used impersonally.

27 7 pugillaris: see Fig. 43.

27 8 animum: obj. of intendit.

27 9 audita simulacra, imaginary sounds.

27 10 ubique: i.e. (the same as) everywhere else. — silentium: we may supply erat, but it is not necessary. — concutì: in rapid narrative, a description is often expressed by the infin. alone, the so-called historical infin., though it is not narrative but descriptive. The intrans. that follow are in the same construction.

27 12 offìmare, etc., he kept his mind fixed and placed it as a screen before his ears, i.e. he tried to make himself deaf to the noises by keeping his mind occupied.

27 13 ut, as it were, just as if.

27 15 vocanti: we may supply alicui, but see note on oranti, 6 6.

27 16 exspectaret: obj. clause of a command. Cf. note on misit,
Notes: Second Year Latin.

19 15. — ceris: the tablets for writing were made of wood coated with wax, and written on with a sharp point.

27 17 illa: the apparition.—catenis, etc., rattled the chains against, lit. 'with the chains.'

27 18 respicit, looks round and sees. — innumentem: supply eam, which is unnecessary in Latin; see note on vocanti, l. 15. — idem quod: our 'as' is often equal to a rel. pron., and is sometimes represented by one in Latin, as here. — moratus: for tense and translation, see note, 7 18.

27 20 aream: the houses of the ancients were regularly built around one or more open courts, one of which is meant here. The colonnade surrounding the court and the whole apartment was called the peristyle; see Fig. 15.

27 24 nuda et exesa: agreeing with quae; vinculis is abl. of cause or means, depending on exesa.

27 26 conditis: used like our word 'lay' of a ghost. The body being properly buried, the spirit was laid to rest and the house was free from it. — manibus: from manes.

28 2 No. 32. hora: the Romans reckoned time, not as we do, by uniform mean time, but by 'hours,' which were the twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset or vice versa. The second hour would begin somewhere about seven o'clock, and the fourth about nine.

28 3 id quia, etc.: the Latin often continues the indir. disc. to a great length without any verb of saying. We rarely do this, but repeat the verb of saying. It often clears up obscurities to do this in translating; thus, He said that this, inasmuch as, etc., or better, treating the acc. subjs. as nominatives, This, he said, inasmuch as, etc., could be known beforehand and predicted.

28 4 naturali ordine, in the course of nature. Cf. bellicam, 7 1, and note.

28 5 certi: pred. adj. after sint.

28 6 sint: as the indir. disc. still continues, the verbs in the subordinate clauses are of course in the subjv., and in the principal clauses in the infin.—pleno orbe, exiguo cornu: modify fulgere, of which lunam is the subject.

28 7 mirarentur: Gallus's own word would be miramini, but now the reader is addressed instead of the soldiers, and hence the soldiers become 'they' in the third person. The tense naturally changes because the time is past to us, and the subjv. is idiomatic, the clause being subordinate and in ind. disc. Cf. notes on No. 14, p. 9. Observe that our method is not very different, except that we do not change the mood. Therefore just as, he said, they were not surprised, etc., so they ought not, etc.
Stories, Fables, and Letters.

28 8 obscurari: the Latin made much use of antithesis, setting one word off against another, whereby many words which otherwise would be repeated could be left out the second time, as in 'John went up the street, James [went] down [the street].' So here fulgere has lunam expressed, but when its antithesis obscurari occurs, this word is to be supplied. — trahere in prodigium, to regard as a prodigy.

28 9 debere: its subj. is eos (i.e. milites), which is occasionally omitted. — quam, etc.: it is well to change the voice in translating, the night which was followed by, or, still more freely, the night preceding the 4th of September. — pridie, etc.: this phrase, being a date, is in apposition with dies, as if it were nom., i.e. 'the day before the Nones.'

28 11 videri: hist. infin., cf. 27 10 and note. — Macedonas, etc.: change the voice in translating, the Macedonians were moved, etc. Strictly Macedonas is the obj. of movit, the subject being the general idea of the eclipse, represented in Eng. by 'it.'

28 13 vates: i.e. portenderunt.

28 14 suam, its regular or usual.

No. 33. Erasmus, the contemporary of Luther, a great wit and the most accomplished man of letters in Europe since the decline of learning, left a considerable body of writings of various kinds much in the style of Lucian. His style is occasionally unclassical, but in the main is the purest of modern Latin. On account of some irregular freedoms of speech, these extracts may well be read with less attention to the syntax. Attention, however, is called to points that might mislead the learner. This story and the two following are taken from a piece entitled Convivium Fabulosum, 'a story-telling banquet.'

28 16 sacrificus: a late word for 'priest' in the modern Christian sense. — invitārat: = invitaverat; § 181. a (128. a. 1); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. — unum atque alterum, one or two, the regular Latin expression. — bellum homunculum: taken with unum atque alterum, jolly fellows.

28 17 obvios: plur., on account of unum, etc. Translate whom he met.

28 18 frigidam, without a fire, i.e. with nothing cooking.

28 19 illi: with him; cf. 21 9.

28 20 consilio: abl. with opus.

28 21 quīcum, with whom, qui being used for the abl.; § 150. b (104. c); B. 90. 2. a; G. 105. 3; H. 182. 1 (187. 1); H-B. 140. b. — ageret, did business. The subjv. is late and unclassical.

28 23 carnibus: from caro. — veste tectam, concealed under his clothing. — deferebat, started to carry, etc.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

28 26 deposite pignore: i.e. the stolen kettle was to be left as a pledge. Notice that the abl. abs. expressing circumstance may be used of things future as well as past.

28 28 accipiat: continues the construction of qui . . . sumat.

29 3 prospectum est, arrangements were made.

29 8 hoc . . . sacrifico, to suspect a priest of this; lit. 'this to a priest.'

29 9 itum est, they went: perf. pass. of eo used impersonally. — exploratum (sc. est), search was made; also impersonal.

29 10 ne musca, etc., not a sign of, etc.—quid multis (sc. verbis opus), what need of many words? i.e. to be brief.

29 12 quo tempore, at the time when.

29 13 commodato, as a loan; dat. of service.

29 14 unde, from whom, as often.

29 21 ipse cuius erat, to the very man that owned it.

30 3 No. 34. aptas, inventas: agree with ocreas, understood.

30 8 succinebat illi laudanti, chimed in with his words of praise; cf. note on illa, 21 6.


30 12 usu venit tibi, happened to you (in your experience). The following ut-clause is a kind of subj. of venit.

30 15 veniat, faceres: this construction is irregular but is found in colloquial Latin. Both verbs ought to be in the same tense; but the English translation would be 'should' in both cases, so we may neglect the irregularity.

30 16 consequeret: translate as if consequar, for which it is used; so, too, facerem, l. 18.

30 19 pro calceis, for, etc., in the sense of 'striving for a prize.'

30 25 ne quis remoretur: a negative command (prohibition) in which the subjv. is regularly used.

30 27 praebere: hist. infin.; cf. concuti, 27 10, and note.

31 6 negabat, etc., said that (he had) not, etc., the usual meaning of nego.

31 9 nec habere, etc., and that he has nothing to complain of.

31 11 umbra asini: cf. No. 18, p. 11.

31 12 No. 35. summam: a noun; below, in l. 16, we have the same form as an adjective.

31 13 sed argenteae: i.e. it was not a large sum, but being of silver it seemed large.
Cyrus, King of Persia.

31 18 commodaret: subjv. of purpose without ut; § 565. a. (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); cf. H-B. 502. 3. a. fn. 2.
31 19 quo, in order that; often used for ut when there is a comparative in the clause.
31 20 ipsius: i.e. the priest.
31 23 aedis: here in the sense of store or shop as at the time referred to the shops were in the houses.
31 26 causatus est, made an excuse that.
32 4 multa (we may supply verba): cf. multis, with the same meaning, 29 11.
32 5 averso sacrifico: i.e. when his back was turned.

II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

33 Cyrus, King of Persia: the founder of the Persian Empire, who reigned B.C. 559–529.
33 4 imperio: dat. with pareabant; cf. regi, 15 19.
33 8 coniuncta esset: the subjv. here is an integral part of the object of fear, the main idea of which is compressed into nihil. The modal idea appears in the natural translation, should be, etc. — Cambysi: indir. obj. of concessit.
33 10 ducere: the infin. is often used instead of the ut-clause after verbs of permission.
33 12 liberaretur, free himself from; a not infrequent force of the pass. voice.
33 15 ei misericordia, his pity. The dat. of reference in connection with a verb often has the force of a gen. or possess. — regio, of the king; cf. bellicam, 7 1.— idem . . . imperavit, gave the same orders. Notice that the Latin often puts descriptive ideas into verbs where we use expressive nouns.
33 17 aetatis: gen. of quality. Quality is also expressed by the abl.; cf. genere divino, 15 5. — ante breve tempus, a short time before. Notice the difference of idiom.
34 The Cylinder Inscription of Cyrus (extract).

136. The blackheaded peoples whom he [Merodach] caused his [Cyrus's] hands to capture,
14. he [Cyrus] provided for in right and justice. Merodach, the great lord, the protector of his people, for (?) his deeds prospered him, joyfully looked upon his pure hand and heart,
15. commanded him to march against Babylon his [Merodach's] city, caused him to take the road to Tintir [Babylon], like a friend and ally advanced at his side.
16. His widespread troops, numberless as the waters of a river, marched at his side in battle array [lit. 'with weapons in place'].
Notes: Second Year Latin.

17. Without fight and battle he caused him to enter the city Shuanna [Babylon]. His city Babylon he spared. In the city Shabsha he delivered into his hand Nabunâd, the king who did not reverence him.

18. The citizens of Babylon, all of them, all the people of Shumer and of Akkad, the great men and the governors, bowed beneath him, kissed his foot, rejoiced in his rule, (and) their faces shone (with joy).

19. The lord who by his help made the dead to live, who spared all of them in ruin (?) and woe (?), greatly blesses him (and) makes his name powerful.

20. I am Cyrus, king of hosts, great king, mighty king, king of Tintir [Babylon], king of Shumer and Akkad, king of the four regions,

21. son of Cambyses, great king, king of the city Anshan, grandson of Cyrus, great king, king of Anshan, great-grandson of Shishpish, great king, king of Anshan,

22a. lasting seed of royalty, whose rule Bel and Nabu love, and desire his reign (?) for their heart’s ease.

35 i ludis: dat. with compound; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — cum illis ludis interesseret: the cum obviously must connect the verb, otherwise the verb would have no connective. Hence ludis cannot depend upon cum, but must be in the dat. after interesseret. — regi: cf. imperio, 33 4.

35 10 interrogando: abl. of gerund expressing means.

35 12 excitatus esset: notice that here we suddenly come upon a subjv. in an independent clause. Of such there are only two classes. The more common of these is used for commands, etc., here impossible. The other class is used for the conclusion of a condition, which this must therefore be. Fut. conditions are expressed by the fut. tenses of the ind. or by the pres. and perf. subjv. So that this case must be one ‘contrary to fact,’ i.e. where a thing would (or would not) have happened if something else had (or had not) happened. This sort of condition regularly takes the imperf. or pluperf. subjv. in both the principal and the subordinate clause.

35 13 sollicitatris: this verb is really in an indir. deliberative question, like efficerent, 19 28. The direct would be the same in Latin, ‘Why should you be anxious?’ The answer is, ‘There is no reason.’ When these are put together in the narrative the question becomes indirect.

35 16 quod, because.

35 19 delectatus esset: the ordinary indir. question (not deliberative), simply ‘had enjoyed.’

35 23 cum . . . esset: in this case the circumstances indicated by cum with the subjv. are treated as a cause, and the construction is called that of cum-causal, though in essence it is not different from the descriptive cum that we have had; cf. note, 75.

35 26 libertate: i.e. that which they had formerly enjoyed before they were conquered by the Medes.
Cyrus, King of Persia.

36 6 post finitos labores, after the tasks were ended. This idiomatic use of the perf. partic. is very common in Latin, cf. ab urbe condita.

36 11 eligenter: a different sort of indir. question, where the direct would be eligatis, 'would you choose' (if you should have the chance)—a conclusion depending on an implied fut. condition. The tense of this, however, is changed when it is reported, as here, indirectly after a verb of past time. Compare this with excitatus esset, 35 12, where the past tense belongs to the idea and is independent of the time of the context.

36 12 delectemur: here we have the same kind of conclusion of a fut. condition as in the preceding line in its proper and direct form.

36 13 habeitis, si . . . liberaveritis: a vivid fut. condition; cf. the same form, 33 5, and the conditions in ll. 12 and 13.

36 18 tumultu, uprising, the regular word in Latin for any disturbance that is not regular war, as a rebellion or the like.

36 20 optaveris: notice that the Latin likes to look forward to the time of completing an action; hence the fut. perf. is often used where we should use the fut. or even the present.

36 24 cum: here causal; cf. cum, 35 23, and see those in 25 and 26 below, where there is no cause expressed, but description or circumstance.

37 6 Croeso: see No. 21.

37 8 ipse: as distinguished from Harpagus in the next line.

37 12 earum iniurias: the genitive, like our 'of' and sometimes our possess., expresses two different relations. Either the genitive may be the thing acting (subjective) or it may be the thing acted on (objective). Thus 'Caesar's wrongs' may be those inflicted upon Caesar (objective) or by Caesar (subjective). The context must usually be consulted to determine which is meant in any given case, as here. — iniurias: this word, in accordance with its derivation (in-ius), always implies some injustice or wrong, not mere 'injury.'

37 14 erat, there was, as often when in this first position.— autem, now; cf. 2 2.

37 15 ante muros: notice that the first position in the sentence is the most emphatic. Hence any word or phrase that stands there is important for some reason or other. When there is no other emphasis the subject usually stands there (except for connecting words), that being, as the thing talked about, the most emphatic. When, as here, some other word or phrase comes first, that word is the most so, more commonly because opposed to something else coming later. We express this emphasis by a stress of voice, and if one can become accustomed to express it so in thought, the first word will often give a clue to the meaning of the whole sentence. Here ante muros, if emphasized, suggests an opposition to some other
place. This is found in the next sentence, introduced by the adversative 
*sed,* 'In the field, etc., . . . but in the *siege* it was otherwise.'

37 90 **ne . . . sentirent, that they might not,** etc., shown to be a pur-
pose by the use of **ne.** If it were **ut non** it would be a result-clause and 
mean 'so that they did not,' etc.

37 23 **loco** : the abl. alone for the 'way by, in, or over which,' etc., often 
called the abl. of route; cf. **semitis, 9** 25, where the meaning is more obvious.

37 24 **murorum,** etc.: gen. with **potiti sunt;** § 410. **a (249. a);** B. 330;
G. 407. *a*; H. 458. 3 (410. v. 3); H-B. 353.

37 29 **Iudaeos,** etc.: see 2 Chron. 36. 22–23.

38 2 **restituerent:** cf. **ducere, 33** 10.

38 8 **Massagetarum:** subjective gen.; see note, 37 12.

38 13 **facet:** cf. **efficere, 19** 28, and **sollicitus,** 35 13; in the 
direct it would be **quid faciam?** — **Cresum:** cf. No. 21.

38 14 **suaderet:** in the direct, **quid suades?**

38 15 **postulasset:** cf. **suffisit, 9** 13.

38 20 **reficit:** adj. agreeing with **castra.**

38 27 **nisi id feceris,** etc.: a vivid fut. condition; § 516. **1 (307. 1);**
B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a. Note again the use of the fut. 
perf. where we should use the fut. or even the pres.; cf. **33** 5, **36** 13, **36** 20.

39 2 **illi, to her,** i.e. Tomyris.

39 8 **domicabant:** notice how this imperf. of description is surrounded 
by perf. of narration; cf. note, 21 2.

39 11 **cum diceret, saying.**— **quod:** its antecedent is the thought of 
the principal clause; trans. *as.*

The Story of Ulysses.—Ulysses, a celebrated Greek hero, took 
a prominent part in the long siege of Troy. After the fall of the city, 
he set out with his followers on his homeward voyage to Ithaca, an island 
of which he was king; but, being driven out of his course by northerly 
winds, he was compelled to touch at the country of the Lotus Eaters, who 
are supposed to have lived on the north coast of Libya (Africa). Some of 
his comrades were so delighted with the lotus fruit that they wished to 
remain in the country, but Ulysses compelled them to embark again, and 
continued his voyage. He next came to the island of Sicily and fell into 
the hands of the giant Polyphemus, one of the Cyclops. After several of 
his comrades had been killed by the monster, Ulysses made his escape by 
stratagem, and next reached the country of the Winds. Here he received 
the help of Aeolus, king of the winds, and having set sail again arrived 
within sight of Ithaca; but owing to the folly of his companions the winds 
became suddenly adverse, and they were again driven back. They then 
touched at an island occupied by Circe, a powerful enchantress, who exer-
cised her charms on the companions of Ulysses and turned them into swine.
By the help of the god Mercury Ulysses himself not only escaped this
fate, but forced Circe to restore her victims to human shape. After stay-
ing a year with Circe, Ulysses again set out and eventually reached his
home.

40 1 annos: the regular acc. of 'time how long.'—obsessam esse:
notice that constat, being an impers. verb, can take an acc. with its infin.
as a kind of subject.

40 5 redire: a complementary infin. with maturaverunt.

40 6 magno cum gaudio: note that manner is rarely expressed by a
noun standing alone. Regularly we have cum, or an adjective, or some-
times both, as here, with the noun. Cf. grato animo, 6 19.

40 7 erat: cf. 37 14.

40 8 quem, etc.: some care is necessary in translating such an
expression, inasmuch as in English we do not use relatives in clauses
already dependent, such as the indir. disc. construction. We must there-
fore use the direct disc., who, some say, etc.

40 10 constat: again with infinitive clause as subj., as in line 2. It
is not a real subject, but takes the place of one.

40 11 antequam: notice that this is a relative form, 'before...than,'
and hence introduces a new clause, though we translate it simply before,
which does not necessarily have a relative force.

40 13 videndae: notice that the gerundive, being a verbal adjective
and originally passive, agrees with its noun and hence we naturally change
its voice in translation. Observe also that when a word belongs in sense
to two or more nouns it very often agrees only with the nearest, but, as
here, is taken also with the other.

40 16 postquam, after; notice that the relative part of this word is
usually dropped in English, though its connective force remains. Cf.
antequam, above. — milia: cf. annos, l. 1.

40 18 aliae alias, different. This is a very common Latin idiom
where different predicates are distributed among different subjects, some
to one, others to others, or simply different.

40 19 qua: the vehicle in Latin is usually treated as means, and has
no preposition.

40 22 referrent: a purpose-clause, here introduced by a relative.
Translate by the English infin. to, etc.

41 1 facere: cf. redire, 40 5.—tamen: see note, 6 6.

41 2 quærunt, were seeking for. Dum is regularly followed by the
pres., hence the real time must be determined by the context.—quibus-
dam: dat. after obviam facti (meeting).
accidit: here followed by an ut-clause as a kind of subject. Impers. verbs are followed by ut-clauses or by the infin. according to their meaning. Cf. the construction with constat, 40 2 and 10.

**patriae, sociorum**: gen. with obliti; § 350. b (219. 1); B. 206. b; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.

**mansuros**: sc. esse, which is almost regularly omitted in the fut. infinitive.

**cibo**: cf. felicitate, 5 13, and note.

**at**: used here, as usual, to mark the change of subject.

**secum**: a dependent clause that contains the words or thought of the main subj. may refer to that subj. by the use of se. Hence an apparent ambiguity of reference often arises, but the context usually at once determines it, as here. `In this use se is called an indirect reflexive. Cf. se, 3 11, and note.

**cum ita essent**: cf. cum esset, 35 23.

**solvit**: lit. `let go,' referring to casting off the lines before sailing.

**diei**: this gen. depends on posstridie, which, though regarded as an adverb, is really a noun with an adjective in the locative case and so takes a gen. like any other noun. It is like the obsolete `on the morrow of that day.'

**quod habitari**: it happens that in this case the English admits the same construction as the Latin. `It is well in such cases, in order to gain freedom in translation, to translate in both ways, which they found was inhabited (cf. 40 8) and which they found to be inhabited.

**quod cum**: cf. quo cum, 41 2.

**quis . . . incoleret**: notice that an indir. question can depend upon any word that suggests a question, as here mirantur, were wondering (cf. quaerunt, 41 2).

**quidem**: the most common use of this word is to introduce an emphatic concession, to be sure, it is true. At any rate, it sets off the word that it follows against another which is to come after, as here sed ingenti, etc. Often it admits of no formal translation, but is best expressed by intonation of voice or emphasis in reading. — specie, etc.: abl. of quality or description. Cf. aetatis, 33 17, and note.

**autem**: opposing the certainty they now had in regard to the Cyclops to their first surprise at the monster. As quidem refers forward, so autem refers backward. The Romans could have hardly read their own language without these signboards all along the road.

**simul ac viderunt**: notice that these temporal connectives, ubi, postquam, simul ac, etc., which take the perf. ind., refer simply to
time, and do not express circumstances like *cum* with the subjv.; cf. 40 16, 41 13, and 18 14.

43 12 *mercatores,* etc.: persons who visited islands would naturally be either traders or pirates.

43 13 *praedandi:* the gerund being a passive used impersonally (cf. the gerundive) is treated as active and its passive origin disregarded, and it does not, like the gerundive, have a noun to agree with, just as *pugnatum est,* *they fought,* needs no subject in Latin.

43 14 *causā:* in this sense the word always *follows* a genitive depending on it; cf. 'for Heaven's sake.'

43 15 *sibi:* cf. *secum,* 41 14. — *iniuria,* *harm,* but with the idea of injustice; cf. 37 12.

43 16 *vecti essent:* subjv. as a part of his question; cf. *felifisset,* 9 13, and *postulasset,* 38 15.

43 17 *sibi praecavendum esse:* an impers. sentence turned into indir. disc. As in 9 8 *verum est linteum* becomes *verum esse linteum,* so *mihi praecavendum est,* *I must take care,* becomes *sibi praecavendum esse,* though in this case there is no subject to become accusative. The personal construction should be used in English, *that he must,* etc.

43 22 *dum haec geruntur,* *while this was going on;* cf. 41 9.

43 23 *occupavit:* not 'occupied'; see Vocabulary.

43 25 *postquam:* see *simul ac,* l. 5, and note.

43 26 *humi:* see § 427. a (258. d); B. 232. 2; G. 411. R.8; H. 484. 2 (426. 2); H-B. 449. a. — *quod cum,* etc.: cf. 9 8, and note.

44 2 *in eo erat ut:* *was on the point of,* a not uncommon Latin idiom.

44 3 *agendum:* sc. *esse.* The subject is *nihil.* Remember that the second periphrastic is always passive.

44 4 *antequam . . . faceret,* *before he should do,* etc. The subjv., showing that the clause is a part of the plan expressed in *explorare,* gives it this force. The ind. would mean 'before he did this' and would imply that he did it; cf. 40 11. The English form, however, is ambiguous, and the context must show whether there is a 'should' implied in it or not.

44 6 *nihil sibi,* etc.: this is an easy example of the fut. conditional sentence in indir. disc. Ulysses would say *nihil mihi proderit,* *si P. interfecerit,* *it will do me no good if I kill* (lit. 'shall have killed') *Polyphemus.* The fut. *proderit* in the principal clause becomes in the indir. disc. the fut. infin. *profuturum (esse),* and *interfecerit* in the subordinate clause becomes *interfecerisset* on account of the past tense of *intellexit,* the governing verb. Here again we have a typical example to learn by heart.

44 9 *quae cum,* etc.: cf. 41 16.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

44 13 multis et magnis: notice that the Latin connects two adjs. used together by a conj. We say many great.

44 14 dubium esse: where a word of doubting is negative (no doubt that and the like) the universal construction after it is a subjunctive clause with quin, precisely like the English 'no doubt but that.' English, however, more commonly uses the parallel construction, 'doubt that,' which is usually to be preferred. As the construction requires the subjv., any future idea must be expressed by the periphrastic -rus.

44 16 idem quod, the same as, the regular expression.

44 22 postquam: again, as usual, with the perf. ind.; so again in l. 27 and 45 2.

44 27 hoc, the following.

45 4 eodem . . . quo: see 44 16.

45 8 ad bibendum: lit. 'for drinking,' gerund denoting purpose; translate to drink.

45 14 gratiam . . . referam, repay; cf. gratias agere, thank, and gratiam habere, feel thankful.

45 20 extremum palum, the end of the stake. This idiom is very common with words denoting part or order, like prima aetas, the first part of summer; see § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N. 1); H-B. 244.

45 21 dum dormit: note again dum with the pres. ind.; cf. 41 2, also l. 24, below.

45 23 quod necesse fuit, as a matter of course, as was to be expected.

46 6 si . . . volneravit, . . . est: a good example of the so-called simple condition, where no opinion is expressed as to the truth or falsity of the supposition.

46 8 adficiaris: the same construction as in 44 14; but here there is no future idea, so that the periphrastic is not necessary.

47 2 hoc: cf. hoc, 44 27.

47 4 quas vidit pinguissimas: the regular order in Latin for the fittest that he saw.

47 5 unum, etc.: i.e. each group of three carried one man.

47 11 evasit: Ulysses himself escaped by clinging to the body of a great ram. See Fig. 19.

47 14 quo: cf. 41 12.

47 16 cum: this word might go with animis. It is only by the general sense of the narrative that it is seen to connect the verb. If the verb had no connective it would mean 'would have expected,' which makes no sense here. — in horas, from hour to hour; hence the construction with in.

47 17 id quod erat, as was really the case.
The Story of Ulysses.

47 18 auxilliandi causa: a common way of expressing purpose in Latin. Observe again that causa stands after its genitive.

47 19 satis tutum, etc.: another example of a conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. 44 6. Here, however, there are two exceptional uses. We should expect futurum esse, corresponding to the other case, but a general judgment in Latin as to any course is regularly expressed by the pres. So here Ulysses's thought would be non tutum est (not erit), requiring esse in the narrative indir. disc. Second, in the other case we had the pluperf. subjv. because the action in the direct was regarded as completed in the fut. (interfecerо); here, however, it is a continued action—'shall remain' (maneo or maneam). This, under the same circumstances, becomes imperf. subjv. maneret.

47 28 minimum afuit quin: a troublesome Latin idiom; lit. 'it was a very short distance off but that,' etc. The quin-clause is used, as in 44 14 (minimum conveying a neg. idea). In both this and the preceding (tutum esse) there is no proper subject, though the dependent clause in each case in a manner takes the place of one. Do not mechanically call it such, for the nature of the clauses makes that absurd. The meaning is obvious and should be expressed in an English idiom.

48 4 hic vasto, etc.: from Virgil's Æneid, Bk. i, 52–54.

48 7 hospitio: one of the few words that is used without cum or adjective or genitive modifier to express manner. See note, 40 6.

48 8 ad recuperandas viris: a gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 14 6, 21 26, and below, l. 22.

48 12 patriae videndae: a gerundive expression depending on cupidum; § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 1); H-B. 612; using the gerund we should have patriam videndi. Cf. note, 24 6.

48 14 tantum: an adverb.

48 15 navigando: dat. of gerund with idoneum; § 505. a (299); B. 338. 2; G. 429; H. 627 (542. ii); H-B. 612. ii.

48 17 gratiiс...relatis: this should properly be actus, because as it stands it means 'return the favor' or 'repay,' which Ulysses could hardly have done. See note, 45 14.

48 23 mirabantur, had been wondering; § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485.

48 25 omittendam: the same form which serves as the gerundive is in the nom. and acc. (without a prep.) used as a 'participle of necessity,' meaning 'to be,' 'ought to be,' and the like, making, with the verb sum, the so-called second periphrastic conjugation. In the infin. the copula esse may be expressed or not. This use can easily be distinguished from the
Notes: Second Year Latin.

gerundive or gerund because the noun and the partic. always stand in a subj. or pred. relation in the nom. or acc. and without a preposition.

- 49 3 velut, etc.: another quotation from Virgil’s Æneid, Bk. i, 82–3.

- 49 4 data: sc. est.

- 49 6 erant profecti: notice that the subjv. is not required in a clause dependent on the result construction. Such clauses do not usually share in the relation which the subjv. expresses.

- 49 7 referrentur: in the same construction as possent.

- 49 8 accum solutum: as in English, the copula is often omitted in Latin where the noun and its modifier make together a conceivable picture. Here the ‘bag untied’ means the same as ‘that the bag was untied.’ This principle extends much farther in Latin than in English.

- 49 9 tum vero: as usual, introducing the climax of an action or situation. — exarit, etc.: notice the difference in the tenses even so closely connected. The perfect states the fact once for all, the imperf. means ‘proceeded to’ or ‘began to,’ thus dwelling on the description.

- 49 11 videndae: gerundive, as is clear from its agreeing with patriae; cf. 48 12. — proiecissent: the subjv. shows that this is not stated by the author as his own reason, but as the one given by Ulysses in a kind of ind. disc. Cf. the stock example fedelisset, 9 13. For a reason stated by the author, where the ind. is used, cf. perspexerat, 19 15; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 540, 541; H. 588 (516); H-B. 535. 2. a, 555.

- 50 3 frumentandi causā: cf. 47 18 and note, also 43 14. — egrediendum esse: used imperfs.; lit. ‘that it must be disembarked.’ Cf. note, 43 17. Translate into good English.

- 50 5 haberent: the subjv. in the indir. disc. as a part of Ulysses’s thought. Notice how regular is the idiomatic subjv. in subordinate clauses of indir. disc., though a well-known fact may be expressed seeming to require no modal form.

- 50 6 cum . . . tenerent: the descriptive cum expressing the circumstances as a cause.

- 50 7 occubuisissent: the indir. question is somewhat more freely used in Latin than we should expect in English. Here there is no question about the death, but only about the degree of cruelty of it (quam crudeli). Yet the main verb has to take the indir. question construction as much as if the verb were queried. Notice also that any word that can be used of thought can introduce such a question. One can ‘remember’ or even ‘see’ or ‘feel’ a question as well as ask it.

- 50 8 egressi essent: the same principle as the indir. disc., but here it appears as a part of the indir. question. It is an almost universal principle.
that whatever is the thought of some other person than the writer should be idiomatically in the subjv. This should be observed, but rarely needs to be expressed in the translation. If you find the meaning you can then translate intelligently.

50 vellet: another idiomatic subjv., which need not now be analyzed, as it requires no modal form in English. Cf. deberet, 18 17. — quae cum ita essent: don’t be afraid to translate this being so, merely because the absolute case is rare in English. That is just the English expression for what is meant here. The subjv. essent is the same as tenerent, l. 7.

50 alteri (sc. parti): always one of two; distinguish from alius. For dative, cf. copius, 19 7.

50 praeesset: here, though the construction is, as often before, that of purpose, yet the best translation is with should. It is as mechanical to translate always with one expression as the other.

50 uter: which of two. Distinguish from quis or qui referring to any number. It is always interrogative, and here introduces an indir. question.

50 inter se: notice that this is the regular reciprocal (each other) form in Latin. One can easily see how ‘among themselves’ can come to be used for that idea. — hoc facto: sometimes the abl. abs. admits of a literal translation; see note, 50 9. ‘This being done’ has been good English for centuries.

50 sorte evenit, the lot fell upon, or it fell by lot to.

50 susciparet: a result-clause is regularly used to express what happens, remains, is added, or follows, and the like; cf. ut . . . abierit, 30 12.

50 his rebus: here the ‘absolute case’ in English would be clumsy and should be carefully avoided. Use your common sense both in what you adopt and in what you avoid.

50 occupaverat: the Latin often expresses a present or past state of things by means of the action that preceded it. So here, had taken possession, etc. — quin irent: the idiomatic construction after verbs of doubt when negated; cf. notes 44 14, 47 28. The clause is one of result introduced by quin, which is another form for quo non, whereby not, (so) but that.

50 visuros: without esse (as often), as if it were ‘supposed themselves not about to see.’ Cf. note, 41 6. The principle here involved is a far-reaching one, and on it depends the construction of the gerundive, the abl. abs., and many others; cf. post finitos labores, 36 6. — aliquantum: acc. of extent.

50 villam: the regular word for a country house of any kind, as domus for a city house.

50 pulsarent: cf. irent, l. 19.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

50 26 in hospitium, to accept her hospitality.

51 2 foris: abl. of place where; cf. foras, 50 26. — at: as usual, to introduce a change of subject; cf. 41 8.

51 4 accubuerunt: the Greeks and Romans reclined at meals; cf. No. 6. We may translate it took their places.

51 5 Circe: the cut gives an ancient representation of the various points of the story all at once, in the antique manner.

51 13 eo: an adverb.

51 15 at: cf. l. 2.

51 19 si quid, etc. The Latin needs no verb of saying after speech or thought has been suggested, as here in obsequare. We have here another conditional sentence and tense are regular for indir. disc. In English the direct would be 'If anything ... (shall have happened) happens to you ... the lives of all will be in the greatest peril,' — Si quid tibi acciderit, ... erit, — a vivid fut. condition. Cf. this with 44 6 and notice that the forms here are perfectly regular.

51 21 neminem: obj. of adducturum.

51 22 ei licere, etc.: another condition in indir. disc. The direct form would be 'tibi licet, si mavis, in navi manere,' a simple condition. Observe that the changes of mood and tense are regular for indir. discourse.

51 24 nullo sequente, without any one following him. 'Without' is often expressed in this way. The abl. of nemo is not used, hence nullo.

52 2 fecisset: cf. note on haberent, 50 5. — ut ... transiret: a clause of purpose or result is frequently in apposition with a pronoun, so that the clause becomes manageable as a noun. Here we translate was on, the point of, etc. We had the same idiom in 44 2.

52 4 manu, in his hand; but the Latin regards it as means.

52 5 nonne, etc.: do you not? etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question.

52 7 num vis, you don't want, do you? etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question; cf. l. 5. It is usually said that num expects the answer 'No,' and nonne, 'Yes.' This is not strictly true. It is sometimes implied that it ought to be 'No' and 'Yes,' but not always even that. Cf. 'You don't happen to be going to town to-day, do you?' where an affirmative is hoped for.

52 11 valere: for valet of direct disc. Notice that in English we change the tense of the main verb in indir. disc., while the Romans changed 'the mood and kept the tense; so here we say, 'He said, was potent.'

52 13 impetum: obj. of facias. — vide ut facias: a strengthened inv., as in English, see that you make. The subjv. is a purpose-clause, as with most words which have an idea of something 'to be done.'
Life of Caius Marius.

52 14 mortalitas, etc.: a quotation from Virgil's Aeneid, Bk. iv, 277-8. — visus: plur. for sing., much used by poets.

53 1 subeunda: gerundive, which must be used here, because the gerund with a prep. does not admit an object.

53 3 atque, as, as often; cf. aliter atque, l. 10, below.

53 10 atque, than; cf. l. 3. In both cases the ideas are connected as if alike, and the comparison is left to be made.

53 12 quidquam: cf. note, 18 16.

53 18 reduceret: cf. note, 3 11.

53 20 nisi, etc.: again a fut. conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. 51 19. Here the direct form would be nisi id factum erit, poenas sumam. — sumpturum: the Latin treats punishment as a penalty to be paid, not as punishment to be suffered, and says 'pay the penalty' (supplicium dare) and 'exact the penalty' (poenas sumere). But English more commonly treats it as inflicted, hence sumo may be rendered inflict.

53 24 atrium: see note, 4 11.

54 5 diceret: cf. referent, 40 22.

54 6 Circaeam: cf. Actiacam, 7 13, and note. — universi, with one accord, or the like, — the peculiar meaning of the word.

54 8 diei: cf. note, 41 22.

54 9 discedere: a complementary infin. after the expression in animo habebat.

54 13 ei persuasum sit: again the impers. use of the pass. of an intrans. verb; lit. 'it was persuaded to him.' Cf. note, 18 17. — maneret: a purpose-clause dependent on persuasum sit. When verbs taking an object-clause of purpose become pass. the object-clause may be treated as subject.

54 14 consumpserat: the pluperf. here is irregular. The perf. only is usually found with postquam, ubi, and the like. See note, 43 5.

54 19 reficiendas: gerundive. Could the gerund be used? See note, 53 1.

54 21 confecerint: the tense does not follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses, but result-clauses allow this exception. — ubi vidit: cf. l. 14.

54 24 maturandum sibi: cf. sibi praecavendum, 43 17, and note.

54 27 perveniret: the subjv. is used on account of the 'should' or 'could' idea involved; cf. 44 4.

54 28 longum est: in a judgment as to a future course of action, the Latin uses not sit, 'it would be,' but est, 'it is.'

Life of Caius Marius. — This selection and the one that follows on the life of Julius Cæsar are taken from Viri Romæ, a well-known compila-
Notes: Second Year Latin.

tion from the writings of Cicero, Livy, Sallust, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman authors, made by Charles François Lhomond (1727-1794). The Latin has been somewhat simplified, but is in the main taken verbatim from the authors named. The style is, therefore, in general good and the Latin classical.

55 1 C.: translate Caius. The Latin name is Gaius, but the Romans at one time wrote C for both C and G, and retained the character in the abbreviations C. and Cn. for Gaius and Gnaeus. This spelling was forgotten later, and the word came into English as Caius, though it ought to be Gaius in Latin.

55 2 duce Scipione: this free use of the abl. abs. is idiomatic, where we should say 'under Scipio,' etc. — Scipione: this was the younger Scipio Africanus, about b.c. 146; see No. 24. — posuit: here passed; lit. 'put,' as we might say 'a man put the best years of his life into something.'

55 3 impigram ad, etc.: for order, see note, 18 3.

55 7 inter cenam: simply at dinner.

55 8 si quid, etc.: here is a conditional sentence of the same sort as in 51 19 turned into an indir. question. Notice that accidisset stands for a fut. perf., as in the previous case, and is changed in the same way. The main clause is not a statement ('the state will have') but a question ('will the state have?'). It does not therefore become fut. ininf. as in the other cases, but becomes an indir. question and takes the first periphrastic subjv., the regular way to represent a future idea in a dependent clause.

55 8 quemnam: more emphatic than quem.

55 10 hunc, this young man, or simply him. The acc. depends upon the verb to be supplied from the previous sentence, an ellipsis common in English, as well as in Latin.

55 11 rebus, deeds, exploits; the abl. regularly after dignus. Notice again a colorless noun colored by the context; see note on res, 7 6.— spiritus: here, ambition.

56 1 Q. Metellum, etc.: we have here a freer and more characteristic order than we have usually had before. In reading, attack it fearlessly, noticing that the first word is acc., and hold it ready to be the object of a verb, or what was really the same thing to the Romans, the subject of an infin. The object first is not absolutely strange to English and is an order often convenient. The verb which governs this object is found to be criminatus est (he accused). The natural modifier of this idea is expressed by 'of,' and bellum ducere can mean nothing else than 'prolonging the war.' In this way, without suspending any construction or changing the Latin order, we have a very good, if not the best, English rendering. If we had
undertaken to analyze the sentence by rule it would have taken twice as long, and very likely we should not have succeeded at all.

56 2 eo: i.e. Metellus.

56 3 sic se, etc.: another case of a fut. condition in indir. disc.; cf. 51 19 and give the direct form. Remember that the Latin needs no new verb of saying.

56 8 perfugem: notice the fondness of the Romans for taking a new point in the narrative and bringing up the circumstances by the pluperfect.

56 10 fudit: here the narrative begins again.

56 13 Boccho: dat. with persuasit, which is followed, as usual, by a clause of purpose.

56 14 vinctus: distinguish from victus.

56 15 triumphant: see note, 7 16.

56 16 carcerem: this prison was the so-called Tullianum, perhaps originally a well-house, which is still shown at the foot of the Capitoline Hill on the side of the Forum. It was customary to kill dangerous captives in this prison.

56 17 os ridentis, etc.: i.e. into a forced smile. os is object of diduxisse, which depends upon fertur.

56 18 fertur: = dicitur; the subj. is Iugurtha.

56 19 frigidum, etc.: the Romans were fond of hot baths, and the bath houses were usually kept warm by special arrangements. Hence the point of this grim speech.

56 22 ei . . . decretum est: the functions of the different magistrates were assigned either by the senate or the people, of either of which decernere can be used.


56 26 quod, that which, the rel. being the obj. of petere, to be supplied from its use in the main clause. The omission of the antecedent (id) is not unusual in such a case as this; cf. note, 8 22.

57 1 tres duces: see Introd. to Cæsar, p. 116. — non sustinerunt, failed to, etc.; cf. note, 19 4.

57 9 actum erat . . . nisi, etc.: a form of expression common in Latin but not unknown in English, in which a thing is said to have actually
happened, instead of saying it would have happened if something had not occurred to prevent. Here we should expect the 'contrary to fact' construction (cf. 35 19), 'actum esset nisi fuisset,' but to show how near it came, the thing is said to have actually happened (actum erat). The condition, however, is expressed in the usual manner.

57 3 nisi Marius fuisset, if it had not been for Marius, the regular way of saying this in Latin; see preceding note.

57 4 sub ipsa, etc.: at Aquae Sextiae in the valley of the Rhone, near the Isère.

57 5 medium, in the middle (of it).

57 6 copia: sc. erat; the copula is sometimes omitted in rapid narrative.
—causa victoriae: notice that this is not the causa of purpose, which is in the abl. and follows its noun.

57 7 flagitante: always used of urgent demand.

57 9 eaque, and such.—victores: as the Latin eschews meaningless rhetorical expressions, this must express some additional idea as a pred. apposition, like 'gaining the victory' or 'being victorious.'

57 11 caesa: sc. esse; but cf. 50 21.

57 19 saltu: i.e. a wooded height near the battle field.

57 13 vir: here again we have a significant appositive, 'being a man,' etc. Cf. note, 18 9, and victores, l. 9.

57 14 tropaeae: it was customary to set up at the point where the victory was obtained a rude figure of a man with arms hung upon him (see Fig. 28), and this display was used also in the Roman triumph. Here it is intimated that this stalwart German was more conspicuous than the lay figures on which they hung the captured arms.

57 16 qui: subj. of tracieissent. — ex alia parte: the Teutons were intending to cross into Italy by the Riviera; the Cimbri with the Helvetii succeeded in crossing the Alps from the north, and were met by Marius on the Po. — Athesim: the Adige, a tributary of the Po on the north.

57 18 eis: dat. after occurrit; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

57 21 quos . . . dicerent, what brothers they meant.

57 22 tenet: note the emphatic position, 'they have it.'

57 24 ludibrio (dat.) haberI: cf. 'hold in derision.' — ultionem: the Latin says 'threaten vengeance to,' we say threaten with vengeance.

57 25 advenissent: notice that this seems contrary to the rule after simul atque; cf. § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 602 (518); H-B. 557. The subjv. is used because this is a part of what the Gauls said, i.e. implied indir. disc. The main clause 'that they would do something' is absorbed in minati ultionem. Cf. § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; H-B. 535. 1. a.
Life of Caius Marius.

57 26 civile: properly the act of citizens with fellow-citizens, but forced later into the meaning 'courteous.' Cf. English 'to be civil.' — foret: used for sit, by a late and not strictly classical usage. — fratibus, etc.: abl. abs.; a common way in Latin of expressing the English idea of 'without doing something'; cf. note, 51 94.

58 3 diem: i.e. to set a time.

58 5 Marius cum, etc.: a troublesome mode of expression, not unclassical but somewhat rare. The Latin likes to put the main subj. first, preceding connectives. But, as the subj. of the main clause is usually also the subj. of the dependent clause, there is rarely any difficulty. But here the main clause becomes passive and so the subject is changed. Hence Marius must be taken only with instituisset, contrary to the apparent order, and a new start made with the main clause.

59 1 caesa: sc. esse.

59 3 cum: this must go with pugnarent; for mood, cf. 35 23. — obiectis: i.e. drawn up in front. — desuper: modifies pugnarent, i.e. they mounted on their carts and fought from them.

59 5 tamen: i.e. in spite of their brave defence. Cf. note, 6 6.

59 8 defendère: perf. ind.; distinguish from defendere.

59 10 ei: dat. with inviderant; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362.

59 11 ut, av. — novo homini: this was a term applied by the Romans to the first man of a family to hold office.

59 16 iuris civilis: the regular name for law as affecting the rights of citizens and opposed to military powers.

59 18 illa: i.e. b.c. 88.

59 19 causam, etc.: change the voice in translating. See note on cenam, 4 19.

59 21 Sullae: dat. of reference, but best translated by the genitive.

59 25 hostis: obj. of fugiens, which sometimes takes an acc. in the sense of 'to flee from' or 'escape.'

59 28 ut erat: cf. 32 6.

60 4 Marium se, etc.: as the subj. and obj. of an infin. are both in the acc., an apparent ambiguity often arises, but usually the context at once decides, as here.

60 7 agrum: an ancient state consisted of a city, in which was the government and where all business was transacted, and a greater or smaller territory occupied by farmers and the like. This last was the ager.

60 9 lictor: the regular officer of a person in supreme command.

60 10 hoc: i.e. Sextilius. — laesisset: again the subjv. in informal indir. disc. as containing Marius's thought.
tamen, at any rate; i.e. notwithstanding Sextilius's position.

60 12 nisi vellet: a simple condition thrown into subjv. imperf. by the
indir. disc. In the direct form, 'nisi vis.' — animadverti: impers., action
to be taken against; a euphemism for 'put to death.' — torveque, etc., and
as Marius, etc. A clause is often thus compressed into a participle.

60 13 et vocem, etc., and did n't say anything. — tandem ecquid: these
emphatic forms are transferred from the direct question, where they would
mean 'Pray, tell me, is there anything that,' etc., to the indirect. In En-
lish they can hardly be translated except by stress of voice, 'whether there
was n't anything he wanted,' etc.

60 16 de inconstantia, etc.: connect with eum admovebat.

61 1 rerum, fortune; cf. note, 7 8. — cum: here the best translation
is when, because in this case the English word has the same implication of
a situation that belongs to the Latin construction.

61 11 diripiendas: gerundive agreeing with domos, expressing pur-
pose. It is used only in the acc. with a noun after verbs meaning to 'give,
'deliver,' 'undertake,' and the like. It resembles the partic. of necessity
in implying something to be done; § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b.) 2); G. 430;
H. 622 (544. n.2); H-B. 605. 2.

61 19 civili luctu: almost an abl. of time, so that the prep. is felt to
be unnecessary.

61 13 peteret: cf. deberet, 18 17, and vellet, 50 9. Relative-clauses
that are used to state some fact about an antecedent already defined take
the ind.; but when the relative clause expresses some quality or character-
istic of an antecedent not otherwise defined, the subjv. is used, and the
clause is called a clause of characteristic. An ind. relative clause means
'a man who actually does something'; a relative clause of characteristic
means 'a man of such a character or quality as to do something.' So here
the thought is 'no one could be found of such a character as to,' etc.

61 16 viri: modifies vitia.

61 17 dictu: supine with adj.; § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H.
635. 1 (547); H-B. 619. 1.

61 18 quam, etc.: cf. 19 1, quos, etc., and see note.

61 19 togatus: the toga, as the garb of peace, is often used as a sym-
bol of peace. — fraudis: alluding to the revolutions attempted by Marius.

62 1 durior: cf. artius, 18 9, and note.

62 4 lapide: the abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 215; G. 395–6;
H. 467 (415); cf. H-B. 406. 4, and a.

62 5 aedificandam: cf. for a similar use diripiendas, 61 11.

62 6 doctoribus: i.e. the Greeks themselves. — suis: referring to the
subj. of profuissest, i.e. litterae. — profuissest: cf. note, 50 8.
confirmatus: used as an adj.; sc. erat.

ei: dat. of reference, but translate as possessive with crure.

Iudicaret: cf. profuissent, l. 6.

Life of Caius Julius Caesar. — The student should read in connection with this selection, the Life of Caesar, p. 97.

familia: abl. of source; source, origin, and material all belong to the same general ablative idea; cf. lapide, 62 4.

Cinnae: the colleague of Marius in his seventh consulship, B.C. 86, and a prominent democratic leader. — duxit: sc. in matrimonium. —
cuius pater cum, since her father, etc.

is: inasmuch as no pronoun would be necessary if the first subject were continued, the presence of is shows a change of subject and so it must refer to Sulla.

neque, and yet not. Caesar by defying Sulla the dictator when but seventeen years old showed the mettle that was in him.

veste nocte urbe: the Romans, reading their language straight away and using their common sense, were not troubled by three ablatives together.

quartanae: sc. febris, i.e. an intermittent fever that returns every fourth day, or every third day as we reckon.

prope per, etc., almost every night.

perduceretur: verbs of hindering take ne or quominus, thus apparently doubling the negative. They are classed as result-clauses because a result is implied, but they were probably originally purpose-clauses, hence ne.

veniam: a noun. The verb of that form would make no sense.

expugnatum: agrees with Sullam. — vincerent: for vincite of the direct; cf. 9 11 for this regular construction. — scirent: regular subjv. after dummodo, but the modal form does not appear in English.

incolunm: no verb esse is necessary in Latin, but the construction is like "I want the window opened"; cf. note, 50 21.

partibus, exitio: two datives after futurum; cf. navi praeidio, 47 14.

corona civica: a chaplet of oak leaves presented to the Roman soldier who had saved the life of a comrade in battle and slain his opponent. See Fig. 32.

per otium: the prep. per and some others are used in Latin like many English prepositions to make adverbial phrases in which the sense of the prep. becomes very vague, ‘in,’ ‘at,’ ‘with,’ etc.
63 21 tralcit: i.e. from the mainland of Asia to Rhodes. For the
tense, cf. 41 9, 45 21.
65 3 terrori, etc., an object of, etc. The idiomatic dat. of service has
often to be freely translated as 'a means of,' 'a source of,' 'an object of'
or simply 'a' (as a pred.); cf. partibus exitio, 63 16; § 382 (233); B. 191;
G. 356; H. 433 (390); II-B. 360.
65 4 redimeretur: notice the constant use of the relative clause to
express purpose; cf. referrent, 40 22.
65 6 quibus numeratis, upon the payment of which; notice the variety
of renderings of the abl. abs., as might be expected from its original mean-
ing of 'circumstances in which.'
65 7 proxime aberat: the Romans could say 'very near off' just
as we say 'very far off.' Some equivalent expression must be substituted in
English.
65 8 ibique, etc., and collecting a fleet there and sailing, etc.
65 10 piratasque: with several connected words a conjunction is used
with each, or -que may be added to the last, as here.
65 11 quod illis, etc.: notice the difference of idiom between Latin
and English with words of threatening; cf. note, 57 24.
65 12 crucique: the connective -que and sometimes others are used,
not to add something new but only to express a detail already generally
included. This sometimes occurs in English as well. So here the cruci-
fixion was the supplicium spoken of.
65 13 quaestori: i.e. quaestor provincialis, an officer appointed as
assistant to a consul or praetor in charge of a province. — ulterior: Spain
was divided into two parts, citerior and ulterior, for military administration.
— obvenit: the place of administration of such officers was assigned by
lot. For this idea compounds of ob are especially used; cf. obtigit, 9 18.
— quo prefectus, on his way thither. If you are sure you know what the
Latin means, don't be afraid of 'free' translations.
65 15 inter se: see note, 50 13. — num, whether; in indir. questions
this particle suggests no answer; cf. notes on 52 5 and 7.
65 16 ambitioni: dat. of reference, regular with locus est and similar
expressions, expressing our 'for.' — serio: opposed to per iocum, hence
the emphatic position.
65 17 dominationis: almost equal to a gerund, dominandi, but a
little more abstract; cf. dicendi, 63 21, and regnandi, in the following
lines.
66 2 Euripidis, etc.: the couplet is, of course, translated from the
Greek, but is in the same iambic metre as the original.
66 3 gratià: used exactly like causā; cf. 43 14. The student may
here call to mind the numerous ways in which purpose (to, in order to) is expressed in Latin:

quibus redimeretur, 65 4  ad navigandum, 54 18
ut operam daret, 63 20  postulantis, 57 19
ne excluderetur, 54 24  auxiliandi causa, 47 18
ad expediendas pecuniarias, 65 4  regem visum, 15 14.

66 4 rebus: abl. of respect; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441. — colas: the hortatory subjv. expressing a command.

66 5 quod: notice that this rel., though referring to Gades, agrees with the pred. oppidum, the regular Latin construction in such a case.

66 7 ignaviam: governed by pertaesus used in an active sense like a deponent. This construction is rather late, taken from Suetonius. Usually the verb is impers. and has the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.

66 8 actum esset: a part of Cæsar’s thought; so subegisset. — aetate: Alexander had ‘conquered the world’ at the age of thirty-two.

66 9 aediles: these officers had charge of the public buildings. The munificence displayed in this office had the most important bearing on a Roman politician’s popularity and advancement.

66 12 Comitium: a paved open space adjoining the Forum, the large square between the Capitoline and Palatine Hills. The Forum was surrounded by temples, porticoes, and shops, and was the centre of the life of the city.

66 13 porticibus: these were colonnades built in frequented places to protect the people from the weather and as places of public resort. — venationes, etc.: the public shows also were in great part in charge of the ædiles. Cæsar’s displays surpassed all others in splendor.

66 14 factum est ut, etc.: cf. note, 50 15.

66 17 miliens sestertium: a contracted expression for miliens centena milia sestertium, a hundred million sesterces, about $4,100,000. The meaning is that Cæsar was worth so much less than nothing.

66 19 societatem: the First Triumvirate, B.C. 60.

66 21 ageretur: agreements, like commands and laws, take the purpose construction. — dispuicuisset: a part of the command (agreement) reported indirectly. The original form would be ne quid agatur quod . . . dispuicuerit, let nothing . . . which shall (have), etc. Apart from the technical rule, it is obvious that no form could express this idea indirectly except the subjv., on account of the ‘should’ notion involved (i.e. the command). All indicatives would imply that the thing happened or was going to happen, neither of which belongs here. — ulli: like quisquam (18 16),
only used with negatives (not any one). Here the negative is disguised, but its force affects the dependent as well as the main clause. This will be seen if we try to substitute ‘some one’ for ‘any one’ in English.

66 22 plebi divideretur: here because we do not say ‘divide to,’ a beginner might be puzzled; but if one uses ‘distribute,’ the idioms of the languages will agree. Do not be misled by such differences of expression.

66 26 fasces: the emblems of the consul’s authority carried before him by the lictors.—ei: the dat. of reference used, as often before, where we might expect the gen. But it means more than that, implying that it was a setting at naught of his authority, or the like. Colloquial language often has such implications in English,—‘Break his head for him,’ ‘Call three strikes on him.’ Sometimes this idea can be represented and sometimes not. Often an adv. will suggest it, ‘as ‘insultingly,’ ‘contemptuously.’

66 28 domo: regularly domi, but here copied from Suetonius.

67 1 ad arbitrium, at his pleasure, independently.

67 2 testandī, attestation, as with us in the case of wills or deeds, where the date is given and witnessed.

67 4 actum, done, as we say ‘signed, sealed,’ etc.—Iulio et Caesare: sc. consulis.

67 5 nomine: Romans regularly had three names, e.g. Gaius (praenomen), Iulius (nomen), Caesar (cognomen).—duobus: i.e. consulis.

67 6 consulatu: cf. felicitate, 5 13.—Galliam: see Introd. to Cæsar, p. 103.

67 7 annis: observe that the abl. denotes not only the time ‘when,’ but also the time ‘within which.’ ‘Time within which’ is often considered a space of time marked off, as it were, and expressed as ‘time when.’

67 9 primus: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

67 13 quod, that, in that, whereas, introducing a substantive clause.

67 15 aquiliferum: see Fig. 55.
Life of Caius Julius Caesar.

67 16 comprehensum: translate as if comprehendit et. A verb and participle are often best rendered by two verbs.

67 20 vincere: the infin. is used with words like scio, doceo, metuo as a complement with the meaning 'how to'; this infin. must be carefully distinguished from the object clauses that follow such verbs. Translate and taught those how to conquer who were ready to be conquered. — paratas: agrees with legiones understood.

68 1 Crasso: see Life of Cæsar, p. 63.

68 4 suspectae, etc.: sc. erant,—had long been an object of suspicion or jealousy. — Pompeiana: cf. Circaeam, 54 6.

68 5 ferebat: the imperf. is not generally used with a negative, and when so used it has some special sense like 'could not.'

68 6 ne . . . discederet, ut . . . liceret: here we have side by side a pure purpose-clause and one used as an obj. after a verb of asking. They are not distinguished in Latin, just as they are often alike in English. But the relation ought to be seen and, when necessary, expressed.

68 8 suadentibus, etc., through the influence of Pompey and his friends.

68 9 ei (i.e. Caesar): the indir. obj. of negatum est, the subject of which is Cæsar's foregoing request.

68 10 vindicaturus: this form also denotes purpose, but belongs to later writers and should not be imitated. — bellandum: again an impersonal periphrastic in indirect discourse. — ratus: always pres. in force.

68 11 Rubiconem, etc.: notice the true significance of the famous passage of the river, as given here, but often misused in common speech.

68 15 iacta alia esto: i.e. let us risk it.

68 17 Brundisium: the most important seaport in southern Italy for all traffic to the East.

68 20 a Brundisio, etc.: connect with transmisit.

69 1 morae: gen. with impatiens; § 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 (399); H-B. 354.

69 6 prius: with quam; the parts of antequam and priusquam are often separated in this way.

69 7 obrutus esset: the subjv. with ante quam and prius quam denotes some inner connection between the two clauses, as here, approaching in this the use of cum. The ind. here would only be a kind of date recognized as known, like 'before he was made consul,' which is not at all the meaning here. Here the thought is 'before (i.e. until) he was reduced to such a pass that he was nearly engulfed.' The English does not usually mark this difference by any modal form.

69 9 ut, when, construed with perf. ind., like ubi. — occisum: i.e. 'that he was killed'; esse might be supplied, but cf. 50 21.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

69 12 Pharmacem: obj. of profligavit.
69 13 praefecerocem: the word ferox usually has in it not so much the idea of 'fierceness' as of the encouragement of success, — elated, puffed up, emboldened, confident.
69 14 quattuor horis: lit. 'in (the same) four hours'; cf. 67 7.— quibus, etc., from the time that he had come in sight.
69 15 quod: referring to fulmen. — vénit: we might expect the pres, but the time is attracted by the time of the events described and so put in the past.
69 17 ante victum, etc.: in a sentence like this when a rel. dependent clause occurs, the Romans, by leaving out the verb of the relative clause, were able to make a short-hand construction; as 'I see you like the same things as I (do)'. In Latin the 'do' is omitted and 'I' takes the same case as 'you.' So here by omitting the copula with visus it becomes visum, like victum. (In English a 'was' is required.)
69 18 praetulit: i.e. he had it carried.— titulum: in the triumph all sorts of pictures and inscriptions were carried as pictures and transparencies are in modern political processions.
69 19 Scipionem: Metellus Scipio, Pompey's father-in-law.
69 22 Hispaniense, in Spain; sc. bellum. This completion of the idea is shown by the position of Africani before belli, indicating an opposition between 'African' and some other war. With the bellum thus supplied gravius agrees. This is one of the most common forms of ellipsis in Latin, as in English. Cf. note, 28 8.
69 24 sequentium: the partic. instead of a relative clause ('those who,' etc.) though rare in classical Latin becomes very common later. The gen. depends on auxilliis and shows that of which it is composed (gen. of material).
69 25 sua, his customary; this pronoun is often used in this and similar senses and may then refer to other nouns than the subject.
70 1 initum: sc. est. — proelium: the battle of Munda, b.c. 45— Marte: often used for proelio.
70 3 servasset: cf. sefellsis, 9 13.
70 4 proinde viderent, let them therefore consider, for videte of the direct; cf. moveret, 9 11.
70 8 omnibus: dat. with ignovit.
70 12 trecentorum, etc.: pred. gen. of quality after esset, the subj. of which is annus.
70 13 intercalario, etc.: the incongruity between the lunar and the solar year had before been remedied from time to time by inserting a short
month before the Kalends of March. The calendar as revised by Caesar has remained without essential change till the present day.

70  19 ius civile: Caesar's death postponed the work of making a digest of the Roman law for more than 500 years.

70  20 optima quaeque, all the best; cf. 18 18.

70  23 Pomptinas paludes: this marshy tract along the coast of Latium is still almost entirely waste, although millions have been spent since Caesar's time in efforts to reclaim it.

70  27 in perpetuum: an adv. phrase; cf. per otium, per iocum.

71  3 consulatum, in the consulship. Notice that the genitive is the regular case for one noun depending on another, no matter what the relation seems to be in English. Nouns are not loosely connected by prepositions as with us.

71  4 rostris: so called because adorned with the beaks (rostra) of captured ships.

71  6 sexaginta amplius, sixty or more.

72  1 Idus: referring to a single day, though fem. plur.; hence illas in next line. — is: sc. inquit, answered.

72  4 offici, of a mark of respect.

72  5 renuentique, and as he refused.

72  7 adversum: sc. eum, which is unnecessary in Latin.

72  8 adreptum: see note, 67 16.

72 10 obvolvit: the regular attitude of a Roman in the presence of death.

72 11 confossus est: cf.: —

"Then burst his mighty heart; And in his mantle muffling up his face, Even at the base of Pompey's statua, Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell."

72 14 talem: i.e. sudden and by violence.

72 15 et: correlative with the et in l. 18.

72 16 valetudine: cf. 21 7. — Xenophon: the well-known Athenian general and historian (B.C. 400), author of many books, among them a history of Cyrus the Great.

72 18 occideretur: the subj. is somewhat irregular and late. Translate simply on the day before he died. — subitam: sc. mortem.

72 19 super: cf. inter, 65 11, and per, 65 15. — esset: the indir. question depends on sermone; cf. 42 7.

72 22 sua, a natural; cf. 69 25. — damnati: i.e. by the gods. — alius alio: cf. 40 18.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

72 25 quo . . . hoc: abls. used with comparatives in this way are ablative of degree of difference. Notice also that English inverts the order of the clauses, the rarer self-restraint is, etc.

73 3 diversis: i.e. different from his own.

73 4 gravius consulendi, etc.: a euphemism, to use severe measures against, etc.

73 5 quod, that, introducing a substantive clause. The subjv. is used because the words are given as Cicero's.

73 7 ulter: this word, meaning 'beyond,' is constantly used of any act not called for or unprovoked, as here, of his own accord, or without being asked.

73 11 fuisse: notice that the infin. expresses time relative to that of the main verb. Esse would mean is at the time spoken of; fuisse means was previously, which become 'was' and 'had been' respectively.

73 15 quod . . . erat: notice the ind., expressing the author's reason, not Caesar's thought.

Life of Hannibal. This selection on the life of the great Carthaginian general is from Cornelius Nepos, a contemporary and friend of Cicero, who busied himself chiefly with history, and especially with biography. Only one book of a much larger work of biography, De Viris Illustribus, and the lives of Cato and Atticus are extant. He is only valuable for his style and sometimes as being the sole authority for what he treats.

75 1 Hannibal, etc.: this is not a full sentence, but only a name in a list, as it were, and gives the title of the biography.—si . . . est: notice that in this form of simple cond. there is no indication of the truth or falsity of the matter supposed; so that, as in English, it is often only a form for saying something which in fact is not conditional at all.

75 3 superarit: regularly this should be infin. with acc., but occasionally verum est takes a result-clause, as if it were factum est; see note, 50 15. — tanto . . . quanto (so much . . . as much), so much as; abl. of degree of difference; cf. quo . . . hoc, 72 25.

75 5 eo: i.e. populo Romano.

75 7 quod: the Latin often uses a neuter pronoun referring loosely to the preceding, like the vulgar English 'which.' It is translated and, now, but.

75 8 esset: the context shows that this must be contrary to fact; cf. note, 35 12. — videtur: remember that the Latin prefers the personal construction of verbs of saying, etc., where we should say 'it is said' 'it seems,' etc. — potuississe: this must, according to rule, stand for potuit of the direct. This would seem not to agree with the contrary to fact idea; but
words of necessity, propriety, and possibility take the ind. in that construction. Translate could have conqnered.

75 11 prius, etc.: the separation of the two parts of priusquam in Latin and the loss of the rel. part (quam) in English make this clause seem difficult. But if we remember that the quam in such words is a rel. whether we make it one or not, we shall see that the sentence must mean 'that he abandoned his life before he would do that,' where 'before' introduces a clause exactly like a rel. word and so corresponds to priusquam.


75 13 destiterit: a rel. with the subjv. very often describes a quality or a significant fact about a man (or thing) which has an important bearing on the rest of the statement. Its effect may be very different, according to the context, so that the translation varies between because, although, when, in that, such that, and other forms. This is called 'the characteristic relative clause'; see also note, 61 13.

75 15 ut omittam, to say nothing of, expressed as a purpose, not of what is said, but of saying it.

75 19 venissent, fecissent, comperisset, vidisset: all introduced by cum.

76 1 tamquam, on the ground that, a late usage.

76 2 alia atque, otherwise than; cf. 53 10.

76 9 conficiabatur: contrary to the general rule of dum with the pres., and not to be imitated; see 41 2.

76 12 ducere: in the meaning of hesitate to, dubito regularly takes the infin. — faciam, etc.: a good example of the vivid fut. cond. sentence.

76 14 eam: obj. of tenente, which agrees with me.

76 15 numquam: note its emphatic position.

76 17 quin...sim: the regular construction after verbs of doubting when negated; cf. note, 44 14.

76 19 me: governed by celaris (= celaveris) as the acc. of the person, that of the thing being only implied; § 396. c (239. d); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.

76 27 annis: by comparing this with l. 7 we observe that either the acc. or the abl. may be used in this idiom.

77 10 ea...qua, there...where, correlative adverbs.

77 12 hac, in this way; an adverbial form from hic; cf. huc and hoc.

77 14 Clastidi, at Clastidium, a locative form. Latin has peculiar forms for relations of place with names of towns and a few other words.

77 15 tertio, for the third time; adverb.

77 20 dextro: oculo may be supplied, though such an ellipsis is common also in English.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

78 5 proelio: the famous battle of Cannæ, B.C. 216, the worst defeat the Romans ever sustained.

78 9 nullo resistente: cf. 51 24.

78 15 dedit verba: a colloquial expression like 'fooled' or 'outwitted.'


78 23 sustulit, destroyed, as coming from tollo.

78 25 longum est: cf. 54 28.

78 26 in campo, etc.: i.e. ventured to meet him in the open field.

Hannibal maintained himself undefeated in Italy for sixteen years.

79 1 defensum: supine, expressing purpose. Cf. visum, 15 14, and note.

79 4 fugarat: = fugaverat; cf. invitarat, 28 16.

79 5 quo: introducing a purpose-clause. Cf. 31 20.

79 19 Hadrumeti: another locative. Cf. Clastidi, 77 14; § 427. 3 (258. c. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 449.

80 6 ad P. Sulpicium, etc.: again the names of the consuls merely as a date, B.C. 200. So again his magistratibus, I. 7, under these magistrates.

80 11 eorum: we should expect suos, but as it refers to the Carthaginians, who were not strictly the same as the legati, the reflex is not used.—Fregellis: place where. Cf. note, 12 93.

80 18 domum: note the regular absence of a prep. with this word.

80 19 fuerat: we should expect fuit, but the pluperf. is used with a slightly different feeling.

80 21 bini: the distributive, because they were elected each year.

80 22 diligentia: as the abl. of quality has the sense of an adj., it is used here for a pred. like an adj.—ac: cf. 78 21.

80 23 ut esset, etc., that there was money to pay, etc.

80 25 dare tur: cf. note, 69 7. The expression is regular for granting an audience.

81 2 possent: a vivid fut. condition thrown into the imperf. subjv. as a dependent clause. The command in the direct would be 'comprehendite, si poteritis consequi.' When this command is compressed into a purpose ('which were to arrest'), the condition follows the new turn and becomes si possent (if they should be able, or if they could). This is sometimes called a case of attraction and sometimes an integral-part clause. The essence of it is that the dependent clause partakes of the nature of the main clause
so much that when the main clause becomes dependent the dependent one
also takes the subjv. as a part of it.

81 4 ipsum: as opposed to his property.—exsulem: pred. acc., as
in 'call a man a thief.'

81 5 profugerat: cf. consumption, 54 14.
81 6 L. Cornelius, etc.: B.C. 193.
81 8 si... inducerentur, to see if, etc.; in this very common form of
condition the conclusion is suppressed and the clause becomes equiva-
 lent to a kind of indir. question, 'to see whether,' etc.—Antiochi, in
Antiochus; cf. note, 71 3.
81 10 huc: i.e. to Cyrene.
81 11 eadem, etc.: cf. ll. 3 and 4.
81 15 naufragio, servulis: notice that the means has the abl. alone,
the agent takes a; cf. pecunia, 19 27.—interfectum eum: depending,
like an infinitive clause, on scriptum reliquem, which is equivalent to
a verb of saying,—have left the statement that, etc.
81 17 voluiisset: 'contrary to fact' condition; cf. note, 35 12.—institute-
rat, had begun to.
81 18 Tiberi: dat. after propius, which takes the dat. as an adv. of
nearness. Thermopylae is of course in the same construction.
81 19 quem: i.e. Antiochus; use the name, as is customary in English.
—videbat: in like manner supply Hannibal.

82 2 Pamphylio, etc.: i.e. the sea off
the coast of Pamphylia in Asia Minor.—
quo, in which battle; supplied from the pre-
ceding statement.—cum, while; another
clause of circumstance, but not quite a con-
cession. Either thought would require the
subjunctive.

82 3 quo cornu: i.e. eo cornu quo; cf.
'What measure ye mete, (it) shall be meas-
ured to you again'; cf. 19 1 and note.—rem
gessit, acted or commanded.
82 5 ne: remember that after verbs of
fearing we translate ne by that or lest, and
ut by that not.
82 8 omnium: partit. gen.—se fore,
eetc.: another fut. condition in indir. disc.;
in the direct form, 'ero... nisi providero.'

82 11 amphorae: the memory of this usage still survives in 'a pot of
money.'
Notes: Second Year Latin.

82 16 domi, at his house; cf. humi, 43 26.
82 18 inscientibus eis: translate by a temporal clause; cf. note, 17 24.
82 21 eodem: i.e. the same as before with Antiochus.
82 23 quam . . . armavit, than arm; notice the idiom for this idea in Latin; the same form is used after the quam as before it.
82 23 opibus: abl. of respect; cf. dignitate, 19 1. — conciliabat, began to, proceeded to, etc.
82 25 eo: i.e. Prusias.
82 26 mari, terra: notice that these words need no prep. in this use.
83 1 quem si, etc.: cf. 82 8.
83 5 superabatur, was overmatched.
83 9 praecipias omnes ut, etc.: his own words would be: — praecipio omnes ut . . . concurratis, . . . habeatis vos defendere. Id (vos) facile . . . consequemini. Rex autem in qua navi vehatur ut scatis (ego) faciam; quem si aut ceperitis aut interfeceritis, magno vobis polliceor praemio fore.

Note carefully the changes in mood and tense when this is reported indirectly.

83 11 id, etc.: it is to be remembered that the Latin needs no new verb of saying in such a case as this. It is implied in the verb praecipit; cf. note, 51 19.
83 17 daretur: subjv. as a part of Hannibal's plan, — before it could or should be given; cf. notes, 44 4, 69 7.
83 18 caduceo: the herald's staff, equivalent to a flag of truce.
83 22 esset scriptum: cf. 44 14.
83 27 praecepto: abl. in accordance with.
84 3 reliquae, etc.; for order, cf. Marius cum, etc., 58 5, and note.
84 6 coepta sunt: the pass. of this word is used with the same sense as the act. when a pass. infin. is used with it, as here conici.
84 9 potissimum: in meaning equal to a superlative of 'rather'; i.e. rather than anything else, most.
84 12 alias: adv., elsewhere, on other occasions.
84 15 consularem: ex-consuls retained such dignity from their former office as to constitute a kind of division of the nobility higher than the general senate.
84 18 detulit: the technical word for laying anything officially before a person in authority. — patres conscripti: the regular appellation of the senate.

84 18 qui . . . existimarent: this may be translated simply as the ind., but the Latin expresses by the subjv. the idea that the statement in the clause has some important bearing or inner connection with the action of the senate. This is often implied in English, but is not distinguished. If we wish to make it clear we must say 'inasmuch as,' or 'since,' or express it by a participle. This usage in Latin is a form of the characteristic subjv.; cf. 61 13.

84 21 suum, sibi: observe the indir. reflex., referring to the main subject, the senate, while secum is a direct reflex. referring to Prusias. Such apparent ambiguity is readily explained by the context; cf. 41 14 and note.

84 22 ne . . . postularent: in accordance with the construction of verbs of hindering, the clause with ne is here used; cf. 63 10. We may translate the whole this is the only thing that he refused, that they should ask him, etc.

84 23 esset: cf. 81 9.

84 24 comprehenderent: cf. moveret, 9 11. Again indir. disc. without an expressed verb of saying. It is implied in recusavit.


85 2 multitudine domum circumdedisset: here the verb properly means 'put around,' but comes to mean also surround. Hence it has a double construction, — put a thing (acc.) round another (dat.), or surround a thing (acc.) with another (abl.). A number of similar verbs have this construction depending on their double meaning.

85 4 foris: acc. plural.

85 6 obsideretur: an indir. question can depend on any expression which in sense can introduce a question or the answer to it.

85 7 occupatos: cf. oppletas, 84 8.

85 9 alieno: this word is the possessive of alius, and properly means 'of another.' Here the whole expression may be translated at another's will, i.e. wishing to die free and not to be put to death.

85 12 laboribus: regular abl. with perfunctus: cf. 5 13.

85 13 quibus consulisibus: again merely a date, as usual. So also the names following.

85 14 Atticus: Titus Pomponius Atticus, the friend of Cicero, who tried his hand at history.

85 15 scriptum reliquit: cf. 81 15.
340

Notes: Second Year Latin.

85 16 Polybius: a historian who wrote in Greek, a friend and protégé of the younger Scipio.

85 18 atque: though we often may translate this word by and, yet it always introduces something striking or important in addition to what has been said. Here almost like 'and yet,' or the colloquial 'and, do you know.'—tantus: merely great, not 'so great,' inasmuch as we do not use a demonstrative in such cases.—tantisque: we should omit the 'and.'

85 20 in eis, among them.—ad Rhodios, etc.: the title of the book, where we should supply 'an address' or the like.

85 21 huius: translate Hannibal's; cf. notes, 21 6, 90 24. —belli gesta, exploits in war; cf. 71 3.

85 22 duo: sc. sunt.

85 25 usus est: the regular word for attendance on a teacher.

III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

It is of the essence of poetry to use the greatest freedom in constructions and in the choice of words, so that both words and constructions are often unusual and will need more careful consideration. But, on the other hand, they are rarely complex, and, aside from an occasional free use of figurative expressions, —which, after all, are more vivid than the faded ones of prose,—poetry ought to be quite as intelligible as prose. The greater freedom of order will, however, sometimes embarrass a young pupil.

Obviously these extracts must be read metrically, otherwise the effect would be almost entirely lost. But the metres generally are too difficult to be mastered by beginners. For this reason the rhythmical ictus is here marked by an accent. A stress on the syllables so marked will give a rhythmical movement after the English fashion, which is all that most persons attain or even attempt. The rhythm of the ancients was, however, something very different from this. Their poetry was, as it were, set to a definite musical movement, in which time (i.e. quantity) was all-important. All who have learned to read 'quantitatively' will naturally produce something of the ancient effect, because in this book the quantity of the syllables is everywhere indicated. As to the word-accent, if no special attempt is made to have it prominent, the quantitative reading will so weaken it that it will not disturb the rhythm of the verse, while still being sufficiently observed. The rhythmical accent must always be obvious, the time or quantity ought to be, and the word-accent may well be, when it can without losing the feeling of the other two.

If these verses can really be read quantitatively the difficulties of accent will disappear. If one can once get the melody in his head as definitely
as 'Old Hundred' or 'Dennis,' he need n't trouble himself about accent. That will come of itself.

Besides the accents, the reader will find some syllables printed in italics. These are to be suppressed in the reading (elision and echlipsis). See § 612. e. f (359. c. d); B. 366. 7; G. 719. 1. 2; H. 733. 1 (608. i); H-B. 646.

No. 1. See introductory note to No. 13, p. 8.

86 1 ad fontem: for the order, cf. 'On Linden, when the sun was low.'
86 2 liquore, the limpid mirror.
86 5 venantum: the plural of participles is often used for nouns, rarely the singular.

86 7 exceptit, received; the personal character of the word suggests 'in its depths,' or the like, which our rhetoric usually plainly expresses.—ferum, the creature; not that this word in itself is any better than 'animal' or 'wild beast,' only these suggest associations which do not belong in the picture and so should be avoided.

86 8 retentis, catching or clinging; lit. 'caught' (i.e. by the trees).
86 10 vocem, words.
86 11 me: the acc. is often used in exclamations; cf. English 'Ah me!'
86 13 habuerint, have brought; lit. 'had in them.' — luctus: partit. gen. with quantum; cf. aliquid terrae, 56 25.

No. 2. From Ovid, one of the most popular and clever writers of the Augustan age. The metre is the so-called elegiac, consisting of alternating hexameters and pentameters of the dactylic type. The even lines have a pause in the middle.

86 14 multos, by scores.
86 16 ut, how; introducing an indir. question. As the interr. and rel. came from the same stem, so the adv. uti (ut) is both interr. (as here) and rel. (as in its meaning when and in the purpose and result constructions).

86 18 tendunt, make their way.
86 19 ibit, will come.
86 20 ut, as, correlative with sic, l. 22.—per: here following its case, as often in poetry.—euntibus, as you go; lit. 'to those going,' a dat. of reference.—umbra: the subject.

86 21 pressus, obscured; but the figure is more vivid in Latin, something like 'suppressed.'
86 22 lumina: the poetic plur. for singular.
86 23 simul: sc. ac; cf. the British use of 'once' and 'directly' as connectives, without 'when' or any such word.

No. 3. This is an inscription of about B.C 100. Some archaisms not essential to the metre have been modernized.
87 2 **sepulcrum**: notice the alliteration, a common ornament in older Latin.
87 3 **Claudiam**: a second acc. after words of naming, calling, etc. Cf. 'Call him John'; see also 81 4.
87 5 **creavit, bore.** — **horunc**: an old form for **horum**, in which the c is retained, as in hic.
87 6 **alium**: we should expect **alterum** as the regular form, but authors are not always careful in this respect. — **locat**: this may be taken for **locavit** or treated as present, meaning **leaves buried**.
87 7 **sermone**: abl. of quality.
87 8 **servavit**: i.e. did not gad about. — **fecit, wrought**; i.e. spun and wove. These two lines express the ideal qualities of the perfect woman according to the ancient standard. — **dixi, I've had my say**; a common form at the close of a speech. — **abi, pass on**.

No. 4. From a play of Titus Maccius Plautus (B.C. 254–184) who adapted comedies from the Greek New Comedy. A considerable number of his plays are preserved and rank among the oldest extant Latin literature.

87 9 **hominibus**: dat. of reference.
87 10 **dormientis, when they are sleeping**; referring to men.
87 11 **velut, as for instance**, a common meaning of the word. — **hac nocte**, etc.: the redundancy of expression is characteristic of Plautus.
87 12 **visast**: i.e. **visa est**, the regular colloquial contraction.
87 13 **ascensionem**, etc., to be trying to climb. — **admolirier**: an old form for the pres. infinitive.
87 15 **postibi**: a different form equivalent to **postea**.
87 16 **adgredirier**: cf. **admolirier**, above.
87 17 **utendas**: cf. **diripiendas**, 61 11.
87 19 **Philomela**, etc.: referring to a well-known Greek myth.
87 21 **nimio**: in early Latin this word means 'much,' not 'too much.'
87 22 **ultro**: from meaning 'beyond,' this word comes to mean 'beyond what is called for or expected'; so here, **unprovoked**. — **malum, trouble**.

87 23 **med**: old form for **me**. — **nescio quo modo, somehow or other**. The phrase **nescio quis** rarely introduces a real indir. question, but is only a weak indef. pron., **some one or other**.
87 24 **mediam, by the middle**, in our idiom.
87 25 **nequissumam**: superl. of **nequam**.
87 26 **dicam**: this word in comedy is often superfluous, but it may be translated to say.
87 27 **hodie**: a very weak word, merely meaning **now, so far**, or **yet**.
Poetical Selections.

No. 5. A famous bit of Catullus, a lyric poet of the first century B.C. The metre is the so-called Phalæcan (\(\hat{\imath}\hat{\varepsilon} | \hat{o} \hat{o} | \hat{o} \hat{o} | \hat{o} \hat{o} | \hat{o} \hat{o} | \hat{o} \hat{o} \hat{o})).

88 2 quantumst: i.e. quantum est; cf. visast, 87 13. The phrase is idiomatic for all. — hominum: the earlier and more popular Latin affects the use of the partit. gen. — venustiorum: i.e. endowed with a greater degree of grace than men in general.

88 5 oculis: regular abl. after the comparative.

88 6 mellitus, honey sweet. — norat: i.e. noverat, knew. — suam: refers to the sparrow, and agrees with puellam understood.

88 13 male sit, a plague upon you! ill betide you! the most common mild form of curse with the Romans.

88 14 omnia bella, all that’s fair.

88 17 tua opera, through you, or on account of the emphasis, it is your fault, you are to blame, that, etc.

No. 6. An extract from a play of Publius Terentius Afer, a comedian somewhat later than Plautus (B.C. 195–159) who wrote in the same field but with less wit and rollicking humor and more elegance and refinement. Only six comedies of his are extant. The metre is iambic, regularly \(\checkmark \hat{o} \hat{o} \hat{o} \hat{o}\) repeated three times. — et: connecting these remarks with what precedes in the play.

88 19 errat: the subj. is the omitted antecedent of qui, one of the commonest of Latin idioms. — mea: pronounced as one syllable, mya. — quidem: emphasizing mea, at least, however others may think.


88 21 adiungitum: by a curious turn of thought the Romans spoke of uniting the bond as well as the things bound by it. Hence, for instance, iungere pontem means to make a bridge.

88 22 ratio, way of thinking, orig. ‘reckoning.’ — animum: for the tautology, cf. 87 11.

88 23 malo: almost technical for punishment. Cf. ‘getting into trouble.’ Cf. 87 22.

88 24 rescitum iri: the rare fut. infin. passive.

88 25 ingenium: i.e. his natural conduct.

88 26 quem . . . adiungas: here used in the proper sense; cf. l. 21.

88 27 par referre, to repay in kind; cf. gratiam referam, 45 14.

88 28 patriumst: when a final vowel or syllable in m would be cut off before est or es it was customary to cut off the vowel of the verb and preserve the ending, as here; cf. quantumst, 88 2.

88 29 alieno, of another; cf. 85 9. In many cases in Latin the distinction between objective and subjective gen. is lost sight of; in fact, there is no hard and fast line between the two, the objective being only a
variation of the subjective. The fear belongs as much to the one who inspires as to the one who feels it.

89 hoc pater, etc.: a short-hand construction for hoc interest inter, etc.—hoc: obj. of nequit; a neuter pron. in the acc. is often used after verbs which otherwise are not transitive. This is of the same kind as the cognate acc., 'to fight a battle,' 'to run a race.'

89 fateatur: hortatory subj.; cf. 30 25.

No. 7. This extract is from one of the satires of Horace, next to Virgil the most famous poet of the Augustan age. He is better known by his odes, but he also wrote satires, pictures of life and manners spiced with genial raillery. This extract and the following are in the common verse of Epic poetry, the dactylic hexameter. This consists of dactyls (—ооо) and spondees (——).

89 3 olim: the regular word in Latin for once upon a time in stories.

89 4 rusticus, etc.: poetry not only has a freer order of words, but purposely uses fanciful arrangements in order to set off one word against another. Here the two kinds of mice are contrasted by putting them together, and the two forms of mus, coming as they do, produce an effect that was much liked by the Greeks and Romans.

89 5 cavo: without a prep., as often in poetry by an earlier usage, where we should have one in prose.—veterem, etc.: on the disposition of the words, cf. l. 4.

89 6 quaesitis: a few neuter adjs. and partics. are used, especially in poetry, in the cases which do not show their gender (contrary to note on 3 14).—ut tamen, etc.: the result-clause, though usually having a kind of intensive sense, as, 'It rained so that I could not drive out,' yet not infrequently expresses a limitation, as one might say in reply, 'Yes, that's true, but so that (ut tamen) you could run into your neighbor's.' Here this meaning is made clearer by the use of tamen (but).—artum, close, as the opposite of generous and effusive; cf. 'close-fisted.'

89 7 hospitiis: abl. of means, though we may translate by in. For the plural, cf. nives, 1 3.—quid multa: cf. 32 3.

89 8 ciceris: an exceptional construction after invidit in the sense of grudge or be sparing of, after the analogy of expressions of plenty and want.

89 9 at: connecting the whole sentence, though displaced by avidum with the freedom of poetry.

89 11 tangentis: cf. oranti, 6 6.—male, hardly. Of a bad thing the word means much, of a good thing little.

89 12 pater domus: i.e. pater familias, the master of the house.

89 13 esset: from edo.
Poetical Selections.

89 14 ad: not ‘to’ him exactly, but rather ‘at’ him, as reproaching him. — te: the regular acc. after several impers. verbs, like ‘it repenteth him of the evil.’

89 15 nemoris: cf. laboris, 73 22.
89 17 comes, as my companion, in pred. apposition with the omitted subj. of carpe. — terrestria, all earthborn things.
89 18 sortita, possessed of, lit. ‘having got by lot.’
89 19 leti, from death; cf. note, 71 3. — quo . . . circa: to be taken together. — bone, my good friend, a familiar form of address.
89 21 aevi: gen. of quality; cf. aetatis, 33 17.
89 24 nocturni, by night; cf. laetus, 13.
89 25 ponit: in this use, as in ‘the sun was just setting when two horsemen were seen,’ etc., cum always takes the ind. It will be seen that the idea is entirely different from the other uses of cum; § 546. a (325. b); B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. (600. i. 1); H-B. 566. a. Notice the slight grandiloquence of the style, which is intentional travesty.

89 27 canderet: subjv. with the rel. adv. ubi, characterizing the house as a fine one; cf. 61 13.

89 29 procul: this word does not necessarily mean ‘far off,’ but sometimes near by; cf. ‘off Cape Hatteras.’

90 1 succinctus: i.e. as a waiter or attendant. These would be slaves in short tunics.

90 2 verniliter, like a pampered slave. The verna, a slave born in the house, was a pampered pet, and took liberties in thieving, tainting the dainties, etc.

90 4 ille, the other; cf. illa, 27 17. Use sensible freedom in the translation of demonstratives. — sorte: that in which one delights is expressed by the abl. of cause.

90 5 agit . . . convivam, acts the part of, etc. — cum: cf. 89 25.

90 7 currere, trepidare: hist. infins.; see note on concuti, 27 10. These are at once recognized from having the subj. in the nominative.

90 8 Molossis: a famous breed of dogs, like ‘Newfoundland’ or ‘St. Bernard.’

90 9 canibus: used by a figure instead of the noise as the means.

90 10 opus, etc.: cf. the vulgar ‘I’ve no use for.’ For the following abl., cf. consilio, 28 20. — valeas, I bid you good-by, an optative subjunctive.

90 11 solabitur: i.e. for the implied loss of this dainty fare. Cf. the expression ‘consolation prize.’

No. 8. From the voyage of Æneas to Italy in Virgil’s famous poem. The metre is again dactylic hexameter. We may compare the “Story of Ulysses,” pp. 50–54.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

90 12 proxima: i.e. next in the course of Æneas.—raduntur, they
graze (lit. 'scrape'), changing the voice.
90 13 solis filia: this enchantress was fabled to be the daughter of the
sun.
90 14 resonat: here translate makes resound; cf. personuit, l. 9.—
tectis: for omitted prep., cf. cavō, 89 5, and note.
90 16 arguto, etc.: notice the artistic order; such pairs as these are a
favorite arrangement.
90 17 exaudiri, saevire, ululare: cf. currere, l. 7.—gemitus iraeque,
the roar and the fury. In Latin a complex idea is often for greater vivid-
ness separated into two parts. Here what is meant is the prosaic ‘angry
roars of the lions,’ but both the noun and the adj. are made more emphatic
by dwelling on them separately. This use is called hendiadys, a name
better forgotten than kept, unless fully understood.
90 18 recusantum: the gen. of participles in -um instead of -ium is one
of the archaisms of poetry.
90 22 induerat: a confusion of ideas. The goddess had clothed
(induerat) the men with the forms of beasts, but in so doing had put them
into those forms (in voltus).

No. 9. This description of the fabled Golden Age is by Tibullus, one
of the less famous poets of the Augustan age. The stanza is in the same
metre as No. 2.
90 23 Saturno: cf. the giving of dates by naming the consul.—vive-
bant, they lived, i.e. men lived, as in English.
90 24 longas, etc. Notice that the two halves of the verse end in
words that belong together, and even have a kind of rhyme; so in l. 25,
caeruleas . . . undas. This is a favorite arrangement with the Latin poets,
and will sometimes make clearer the construction, as indeed will all such
tricks when they are once understood.
90 25 pinus: i.e. the ship, like ‘steel’ for ‘sword,’ or ‘lead’ for ‘shot,’
or ‘birch’ for ‘canoe.’ This is metonymy, and in fact so is ‘rubbers’ for
‘overshoes.’
90 26 præbueratque: in prose the connective comes as early as
possible along with the words it connects, so that we should expect the
enclitic here appended to the first word. But poetry allows it to be delayed
to suit the metre, and here we have it appended to the verb.
90 27 nec vagus, etc.: the order here seems hopelessly involved, but
we may translate almost word for word, nor roving in pursuit of gain in
foreign lands had the sailor loaded deep with foreign wares his bark. So
much distortion is quite within English usage, and will enable us to notice how
closely the Latin follows the development of the picture in the poet’s mind.
Poetical Selections.

91 9 illo . . . validus . . . tempore taurus: observe the parallel arrangement by which one pair (noun and adj.) is let into the corresponding one,—a favorite trick of poets (interlocked order).

91 4 fixus . . . lapis: for order, cf. 90 27.

91 5 qui regeret: relative clause of purpose.

91 7 securis, (to the shepherds) free from care; notice that no noun is necessary in Latin, being implied in the adjective.

91 8 non acies, no array of battle.—ensem, etc.: the order may well be preserved by treating the obj. as subj. and changing the voice of the verb.

91 9 immi: this word naturally is only applicable to persons, but the effect of the poetry is enhanced by assigning the quality to the art of the smith, and giving him another (saevus). The order here again is interlocked; cf. l. 2.

91 10 Iove: the reign of Saturn was succeeded by that of Jove, in which the idyllic state of society ceased.

91 11 mare: the great catastrophes of the sea were much more present to the imaginations of the ancients than to our own, and even now the sea is still an object of terror; cf. the prophecy of the millenium, 'and there shall be no more sea.'

No. 10. An address of Horace to a friend on the necessity of death. The metre is called Alcaic, from the Greek poet Alcaeus.

91 16 non: sc. adferet.—trecenis: with tauris.—quotquot, etc., for every day that goes, or for every passing day.

91 17 plaece: the long a shows that this comes from placo, not from placeo.

91 18 Plutona: a Greek form of acc. This god ruled the world below, and so was the god of death. Only by appeasing him could death be stayed.

91 19 Geryones, etc.: fabled monsters in the world below. The first had three bodies.

91 20 unda: i.e. the fabled Styx, which surrounded the region of the dead, and so had to be crossed (enaviganda) by departed spirits.—omni-
bus: dat. of agent with enaviganda.

91 21 munere: abl. with vescimur.

91 24 carebimus: i.e. keep out of danger for fear of death.

91 26 autumnos: in the climate of Rome the autumn is especially dangerous from fever and the deadly sirocco.

91 27 corporibus: dat. after nocentem; cf. 33 4.

92 1 visendus: i.e. in spite of our precautions death must overtake us.

92 2 Cocytos: another fabled river in Hades.—Danai, etc.: these are two famous cases of punishment below. See Classical Dictionary.
plācens: cf. plāces, 91 17.
cupressos: a tree particularly associated with death and funerals.
Cf. the old weeping willow as associated with mourning.
ulla: i.e. arbor, supplied from arborum. — brevem, short lived;
the real meaning is 'for only a brief space their owner.' — dominum: in
apposition with te.
Caecuba (sc. vina): one of the finer wines of Italy; hence centum
clavibus.
tinguet: i.e. the precious wine you are so careful to preserve
will only be wasted after all by a spendthrift heir who deserves it better
than you because he knows how to use it instead of hoarding it.
pontificum: splendid banquets of the various colleges of priests
were almost a part of the ritual of the Roman religion. These became
proverbial, like aldermen’s dinners in England.— cenis: abl. after com-
parative.

No. 11. An extract from a longer ode on the joys of country life, a
subject on which the Romans were never tired of dwelling. The metre is
iambic; cf. No. 6.
prisca, etc.: i.e. in the earlier, simpler times of Roman life; cf.
English ‘the good old days of yore.’
solutus, etc.: i.e. free from the avaricious anxieties of the money-
lender. We should speak in the same tone of the stockbroker.
excitatur, etc.: he is neither a soldier nor a trader with the
trials of either. — miles, as a soldier; pred. appositive.
forumque, etc.: the arduous duties of political ambition do not
disturb him.

No. 12. An exhortation to the proper enjoyment of life, chiefly, as is
Horace’s manner, on account of the certainty of death; cf. No. 10. The
metre is the same as in that ode.
aquam, etc.: the aim of all the great post-Socratic schools of
philosophy was to secure the even temper of the sage, neither depressed by
troubles nor exalted by fortune.
servare: a complementary infin.; cf. redire, 40 5.
moriture: this word is really the keynote of the whole ode.
The certainty of death makes the troubles or successes of life too trivial to
disturb the calmness of the sage.
seu... vixeris: the condition of moriture.
bearis: for beaveris.
temper, etc.: the oldest and so farthest back in the store-
house.
Poetical Selections.

93 5 quo, to what end? i.e. if not to enjoy them. — pinus, etc.: notice that the pairs in this line are reversed in order, a favorite arrangement.

93 6 umbram: governed by consociare in the sense of unite to make.

93 7 laborat: suggesting the rocks and other impediments that make the charm of a babbling brook.

93 9 unguenta: odors were a much-valued source of enjoyment with the ancients, and as spirits were not yet invented, the only vehicle for them was oils and fats making ointments; cf. the Biblical alabaster box of ointment.

93 10 iube: i.e. the slaves.

93 11 sororum fila: an allusion to the Fates who were fabled to spin the thread of human lives; cf.:—

“Somewhere on an unknown shore,
Where the rivers of life their waters pour,
Sit three sisters forever more
Spinning a silver thread.”

93 12 atra: anything connected with death has from time immemorial been associated with darkness.

93 13 saltibus, pasture lands, an important source of wealth. — domo, villa: cf. note, 50 22.


93 17 divesne... moreris: an indir. question. — Inacho: the name of an ancient king of Argos; proverbial of ancient and noble descent.

93 20 Orcus: a name of Pluto.

93 21 eodem: i.e. to the same end, the world below.

93 22 versatur, etc.: as if men’s fate was determined by drawing lots shaken in an urn, and when each one’s lot was drawn he must go below and cross the Styx in Charon’s boat to eternal exile.

“Frightful in filth, Charon the ferryman
These streams and waters guards: upon his chin
Lies his unshorn and matted beard: his eyes
Are shafts of fire: his squalid mantle hangs
Tied at the shoulder with a knot. His boat,
Trimmed with a sail, he pushes with a pole,
And in his rusty skiff takes ghosts across,—
An old man now, but with a god’s old age
Still fresh and green.”
Fig. 107. — The Legionary.
THE first Book of the commentaries begins with a general description of Gaul. This is followed by an account of the two wars that occupied Sæsar's attention during his first year in Gaul: the Helvetic War and the campaign against Ariovistus.

THE HELVETIC WAR.—Early in the year B.C. 58, the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy, and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Caesar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Caesar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign lasted only from March to June.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.—The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hœdui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Sæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetic War began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship
to the Hædui; and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend, recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar’s consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides on the old quarrel.

BOOK FIRST, CHAP. I.—B.C. 58.

PAGE 143. LINE 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the southeast, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2). — omnis (predicate), as a whole. — est divisa, is divided: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r. 2; H. 640. 3 (550. N. 2); H-B. 320. iii. — unam: sc. partem.

143 a incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: of which one is inhabited by the Belgians, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. — Belgae: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1). — Aquitani: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20). — aliam: here alteram would be more usual as meaning the second in the list. — qui . . . appellantur: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (whoever) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (those who). So here tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui; see § 307. c (200. c); B. 251. i; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1. — ipsorum, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words
General Description of Gaul.

353 to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in their own tongue... in ours.

143 3 Celtae: probably of the Gaelic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch. — lingua: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

143 4 differunt: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German. — inter se, from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation; § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. n.); H-B. 266. — Gallos: see note on incolum, l. 2.

143 5 dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. b (205. b); B. 255. 3; G. 211. r. 1; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

143 6 horum: part. gen. with fortissimi; §§ 346. a. 2 (216. a); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. — propter qua, because; lit. 'because of this, that,' etc. The difference between this and the simple quod is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as and the reason is or and it is because.

143 7 cultu, civilization, as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling. — provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down to us in the modern Provence.

143 8 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Cæsar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — commens: this verb means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire). — ea: object of important.

143 9 effeminandos: §§ 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. — proximi: notice how the three superlatives, longissime, minime, and proximi are arranged. After the emphatic idea of cultu, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

143 10 Germania: dat. with an adjective of nearness; §§ 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. — trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — continent (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any
interruption. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 459.

143 11 *qua de causa, and for this reason:* § 308. f (180. f); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to *proximi*, etc., and further explained by *quod . . . contendunt.* — *Helvetii:* here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — *quoque:* i.e. just as the Belgians.

143 12 *reliquos, the rest of:* § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. r.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.¹ 2.); H-B. 346. c.; notice the emphasis of position; the others as opposed to the Helvetii. — *virtute,* not *virtue,* but *courage;* for construction, see note on *lingua,* l. 3. — *praecedunt,* excel; lit. 'go ahead of.'

143 13 *proelii:* abl. of means; *finibus:* abl. of separation. — *cum prohibent,* while they keep them off (pro-habeo).

143 14 *ipsi* (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians.

143 15 *eorum una pars,* one division of them (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country. — *quam . . . dictum est,* which, it has been (already) said, the Gauls hold. Notice that in direct discourse it would be *Galli obtinient:* the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the in fin. after the verb of *saying:* *dictum est.* § 561. a (272. r.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here *quam* is the object and *Gallos* the subject of *obtinere,* while the clause is the subject of *dictum est.* § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a. — *obtinere* (ob-teneo), not *obtain,* but *occupy;* strictly, *hold against* all claimants. *Ob* in composition almost always has the sense of *opposing or coming in the way of* something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. *Obtineo* does not mean *obtain,* nor *occupo,* occupy. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

144 1 *ab Sequanis,* on the side of, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of *ab;* § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. n.⁸; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

144 2 *vergit,* etc., slopes to the north; the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly. — *septentriones* (septem triones, "the seven plough-oxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.
The Belgian Confederacy.

Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.

spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259 f); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).

spectat: cf. spectant above. — inter occasum, etc., northwest, i.e. from the Province.

Book Second. — B.C. 57.

The Belgian Confederacy. — The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Caesar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Belgian Confederacy.

Dodge's Caesar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 10.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Caesar.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 3.

Chap. 1. cum esset, etc., while Caesar was: subj. with cum temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. 8; G. 585; II. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524. For discussion of the principle, see notes on 7 5, 7 10, 16 5. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like and being thus in, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. 139. — citeriore Gallia: northern Italy. — ita uti (= ut, as): correlatives; the demonstrative word so is often omitted in English: § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144. — demonstravimus, dixeramus: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing; the pluperf., what took place before the time of demonstravimus.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

144 9 adferebantur, certior fiebat; imperf. of repeated action; § 470
(277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate kept
coming in; he was informed from time to time.— litteris, by despatches: abl
of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.

144 10 Belgas . . . coniurare . . . dare, that the Belgians, etc.: indir.
disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase certior fiebat; § 459 (272);
B. 331. 1; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct.— Belgae coniurant.
Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the
Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked.— quam agrees with
partem, though the proper antecedent is Belgas: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3;
G. 614. r. 6; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

144 11 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. quam), after dixeramus.—
dixeramus is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is paren-
theticlly merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. b);
B. 314. 3; G. 628. r. a; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. d.

144 12 coniurare: from the point of view of the Romans, any war
against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified."
— inter se, to one another: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1
(448. n.); H-B. 266. — coniurandi: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G.
428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.— has esse causas, that the reasons were
as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc.

144 13 quod vererentur, sollicitarentur: subjv. because subord. clauses
in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2.
The two clauses introduced by primum and deinde contain the two reasons
for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes
the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who,
though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their
more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (partim . . . partim), but
to these are added in Cæsar’s words, but in a different construction (ab
non nullis), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the
Romans.— ne . . . adduceretur: subst. clause, object of vererentur; § 564
(331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4.— omni pacata
Gallia: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, having
subdued, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best
bring out the thought. Gallia: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous
campaigns had been conducted; § 521. a (310. a); B. 305. 1; G. 667; H.
638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6.

144 14 exercitus noster: i.e. to subdue them in their turn.— ab non
nullis Gallis: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i); H-B. 406. 1.

146 1 partim qui, etc.: not part of Labienus’s report, but explanatory
remarks added by Cæsar; hence the indic.— ut . . . ita: correlatives;
§ 323. & (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144, 563. — Germanos ... versari: object of noluerant; § 457, 563. b (271. a, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and a.

146 2 exercitum hiemare, etc., they took it hard (molestè ferebant) that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold (inveterascere, lit. ‘grow old’) in Gaul. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. exercitum, are in indir. disc. after molestè ferebant: § 572. b (333. b); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. n.); H-B. 594.

146 4 mobilitate: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. — novis imperiis studebant = were eager for a change of government (lit. ‘new ruling powers’): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that novis is emphatic.

146 5 ab non nullis, by some also (sc. sollicitabantur): these were petty chiefs of clans. — quod (causal) ... occupabat, because royal power was (constantly) usurped. Notice the indic.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (quod ... sollicitarentur) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. i; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (occuparentur) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus. — potentioribus: used substantively; the more powerful.

146 6 ad ... facultatis, the means to take men into their pay. — conductiones: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N.); H-B. 612. iii.

146 8 rem: cf. note on 78. — imperio nostro: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, under our dominion. — consequi, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and a.

146 9 CHAP. 2. nuntiis: abl. of cause; cf. mobilitate, 146 4. — duas legiones ... misit: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII—XI) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.

146 10 inita aestate: abl. abs., expressing time when; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. 1 (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; aetas is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

146 11 qui deduceret (the antecedent is Q. Pedium): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2. — Pedium: Pedius was Cæsar’s nephew, son of his sister Julia. — legatum, aide, lieutenant; no English word exactly translates it.

146 12 cum primum, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — incipere: cf. note on esset, 144 8. — ad exercitum: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See map, Fig. 42.
Fig. 110.—Gallic Remains.

The Belgian Confederacy.

146 13 Senonibus; these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in Sens.—reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.1); H-B. 346. c.

146 14 Belgis: dat. with finitimi; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.—uti...cognoscant, to find out. This is a subj. clause of purpose in apposition with negotium; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a.—gerantur: subjv. as depending on cognoscant; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

146 15 seque...faciant, and inform him (Cæsar); see is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 594 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.—constanter, consistently (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

146 16 manus (acc. plur., subject of cogi): small bands or companies.

146 17 tum vero: see Vocabulary and observe the emphatic position;—dubitandum non [esse], he must no longer hesitate; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after existimavit; § 158. d. n. (113. d. n.); B. 115; G. 251: H. 531 (466. n.); H-B. 162; dubitantum is impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 337. 8. b; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a.—quin can follow only a negative expression, as here non existimavit, etc.—quin...proficiscetur, to set out (lit. 'but that he should,' etc.): relative clause of result depending on dubitantum [esse]; § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. 1 (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. b. In the sense of hesitate, dubito regularly takes the infin. and not quin, but exceptions occur, as here.

146 18 re comparata: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on 144 13.

146 19 diebus: abl. of 'time within which'; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.—finis: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

146 20 Chap. 3. eo: adv.—omnia opinione, than any one expected (following the comparative celerius): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. N.1; H. 471. 7 (417. i. N.8); H-B. 416. c.

146 21 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12.—proximi Galliae; nearest to Gaul; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. c.—ex Belgis, of
the Belgae, for part. gen. Belgarum; see § 346. c (216. c); B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. r.; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. n.8); H-B. 362; translate with proximi.

146 22 legatos, as ambassadors, predicate apposition.

146 23 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the principal clauses are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all dependent clauses in the subjv.: § 580 ff.' (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. 1 and 2. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populii Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquias omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cisc Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium fuerunt ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostras, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent (habeant), deterrere potuerimus quis cum his consentirent (consentiant). — se in fidem permittere, put themselves under the protection (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — se suaque omnia, themselves and all their (possessions) ("their all"): object of permittere. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition se (subject) se (object). In the next clause se is expressed.

146 24 neque, and (had) not: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. 1. d; G. 480; H. 657. 1 (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3 — cum Belgis: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. 1.

146 26 paratos (participial adj.), ready. — dare, facere, etc.: infinitives following paratos; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533-3); H-B. 586. f.

146 27 oppidis recipere, receive [the Romans] into their strongholds; oppidis is abl. of place without in: § 429 (258. f); B. 228. i, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1. — frumento: abl. of means; cf. litteris, 144 9. — ceterisque rebus, everything else (necessary); see Vocabulary. — recipere, iuvare: sc. eos (i.e. the Romans) as object.

147 1 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

147 2 sese . . . coniunxisse, had united; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. — tantum . . . ut: correlatives; § 537. 2. N. 2 (319 r.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N. 1; H-B. 521. 2. a.
The Belgian Confederacy.

147 3 fuorem, madness (blind and unreasoning passion).—ut...

potuerint: result-clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. c. N.1 (287. c. r.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 54. 91. —ne... quidem: § 322. f (151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1.—Suessiones (obj. of deterre're): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

147 4 iure et legibus, rights and laws: for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429. —isdem: for eisdem.

147 5 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party. —cum ipsis: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. se is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of ipse are occasionally used instead. Here ipse is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

147 6 quin...consentirent, from leaguing with: relative clause of result depending on deterre're; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. (Notice that deterre're is negativated by ne...quidem above, which makes the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

147 7 Chap. 4. ab his: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. r.1; H. 411. 4 (374. n.4); H-B. 393. c.—quae...essent: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. 6.

147 8 quid...possent, what strength they had in war; quid is cognate acc. with adverbial force; § 390. c and d. N.2 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii.—sic, as follows.—reperiebat: for force of the tense, cf. adferebantur, 144 9 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words Remi dicebant, 147 16.—plerisque, etc.: Direct:—

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque... traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi conserunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incoelebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, ... Teutones Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fit uti...magnam sibi auctoritatem...suman. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata...propterqua quod propinquitibus...coniuncti, quantum quisque multitudinem...ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci...valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque bellorum imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae
potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc ... summa totius belli ... desertur; oppida habent numero XII, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atriabates, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc.... Condrosus, Eburones, etc.... qui... Germani appellantur, arbitramur (conficere posse or polliceri) ad XL milia.

147 8 plerosque, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. n.²); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

147 9 ab Germanis: abl. of source; § 403. a. N.¹ (244. a. r.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b. — Rhenum: acc. governed by trans in traductos; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

147 10 traductos: participle agreeing with Belgas. — propter fertilitatem: construe with consedisse.

147 11 qui... prohibuierint: rel. clause of characteristic with solos; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftnt¹. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. ut... potuerint, 147 3 and note. — memoria: cf. diebus, 146 19. — Teutones, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories.

147 12 ingredi: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271. a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. r.¹; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and a. — qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact): abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. n.²; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. b.

147 13 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti... sumerent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a. — memoria: abl. of cause. — sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. n.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.

147 14 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi dicebant.

147 15 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.: habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. N.); H-B. 605. 5 and a; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on redactas habuerunt, 17 15.
147 17 propinquitatibus, ties of blood.—adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.

147 18 quantam quique... pollicitus sit: indir. quest., object of cognoverint; cf. 147 7.

147 19 cognoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. 'have found out'). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

147 20 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.

148 1 armata milia centum = armatorum hominum milia centum.
As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 134. d (94. e); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

148 2 electa, choice troops, picked men.

148 3 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, 147 14, above; it refers to the Bellovaci. — suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, 147 5.

148 4 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones. — fuisses... esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the dir. disc. fuit) refers to time past, esse (dir. est) to time present, with respect to the verb of saying (dicabant, l. 8). — regem: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

148 6 cum... tum, not only... but also.

148 7 Britanniae: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—obtinuerit, had held; in the dir. obtinuit, held. For tense, cf. note on cognoverint, l. 19, above.

148 8 summam: subject of deferri.

148 9 voluntate: abl. of manner; § 412. b and N. (248. r.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. N. 2); H-B. 445. 1.—habere: the subject must be supplied from Suessiones, above. — numero: abl. of specif.; cf. 147 20.

148 10 Nervios, etc. (see map, Fig. 42): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebates, Arras; Ambiani, Amiens; Caleti, Calais; Viromandui, Vermandois; Condrusi, Condroz.

148 11 feri: pred. after habeantur, are regarded.

148 15 Condrusos, etc.: subjects of polliceri or conficeri posse understood.—qui... appellantur: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while qui... habeantur above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive; cf. note 81 2.

148 16 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (Condrusi, Eburones, etc.). — arbitrari: in dir., arbitramura;
in translation we may say *they thought*, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

148 17 chap. 5. *cohortatus, prosecutus*: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. 6); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1 (550. N.1); H-B. 601. 1.

148 19 *obsides* (pred. appos.), *as hostages*: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves.— *quae omnia, and all this*. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308.f (201. e); B. 251. 6; G. 610. r.1; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

148 21 *quanto opere... intersit, how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety*. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. i; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

148 22 *interit*: indir. quest.; cf. 147 7, 147 18.— *manus* (acc. plur.)... *distineri*: infin. clause, subject of *intertit*.— *ne configendum sit, lest they should have to contend*: clause of purpose depending on *distineri*; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.— *configendum sit* is an impers. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. c (129, 146. d); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. a.

148 23 *id fieri posse*, etc., *this, he said, could be done*, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

148 24 *suas copias*: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army.— *Bellovaccom*: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manoeuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 153 28 ff.).— *introduxerint... coeperint*: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. c (397. c); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a, 577. a.

148 25 *eorum*: i.e. *Bellovacom*.— *dati*: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

148 26 *dimittit*: the effect of his mission appears in 154 2, and he has returned to Cæsar in 156 11.— *postquam... vidit, as soon as he saw*: § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

148 27 *neque*: -que connects *vidit* and *cognovit*; *ne- with iam* = *no longer*.— [vidit]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

148 28 *ab eis*: construed with *cognovit*.

149 1 *A Lawson* (apposition), *the Aisne*; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise.— *in extremis... finibus, in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi*: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in
a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

149 2 exercitum is dir. object of traducere; flumen (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on trans (tra-duco = trans-duco); § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r.1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — castra: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 47), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see map, Fig. 48).

149 3 quae res, this movement (or manœuvre), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream.
— ripis: cf. frumento, 146 27.

149 4 post eum quae erant, the rear of his army (lit. "[those things] which were behind him"). — tuta: pred. acc.; § 393. N. (239. a. N.1); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. n.2); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is ea, the omitted antecedent of quae. — commatus: subject of possent.

149 5 ut ... possent: subst. clause of result, object of efficiebat; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result-clause, 147 3, and with the subject clause of result, 147 14.

149 6 efficiebat: the subject is still quae res; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 5 2, 10 1.

149 7 in altera parte, on the other side, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

149 9 pedum XII: gen. of measure, with vallo; § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365. r.2; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — duodaviginti pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 116.

149 11 CHAP. 6. nomine: cf. the ablative in 147 20.—Bibrax: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.

149 12 milia passuum octo, eight miles: the regular way of stating measure, milia being acc. of extent of space, and passuum partit. gen. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (mille passuum) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double
pace — *ex itinere*, on the march, i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town. — *magnus impetus*: abl. of manner: cf. *voluntate*, 148 9.

149 13 *aegre sustentatum est* (impers.), it was with difficulty that they held out. In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — *Gallorum... haec*, the attack (mode of attacking) of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this (the following).

149 14 *ubi*: cf. 40 16, 43 5 and notes.

149 15 *circumiecta multitudine* (abl. abs.)... *moenibus*, a host of men being thrown round all the walls: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

150 1 *iaci*: complem. infin.; cf. *sequi*, 146 8 and note. — *coepti sunt*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — *defensoribus*: abl. of separation: § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

150 2 *testudine facta*, making a testudo. See chapter on military affairs, vii (last part), and Fig. 79.

150 3 *quod, this*, i.e. the movements just described. — *tum, in the present instance*. — *multitudo*: subject of *conicerent*: § 317. d (2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — *cum... conicerent*: *cum* describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 144 8.

150 4 *consistendi*: gen. of gerund with *potestas*: § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

150 5 *nulli*: dat. of possessor: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; nobody could keep a foothold on the wall (lit. ‘power of standing on the wall was to nobody’). — *cum... fecisset*: again describing the situation. — *oppugnandi*: gerund; cf. *coniurandi*, 114 12.

150 6 *summa nobilitate et gratia*, [a man] of the highest, etc.; abl. of quality: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443 — *inter suos, among his* [fellow-citizens]. — *oppido*: dat. with *praecipitari*; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

150 7 *unus ex eis, one of those*: after numerals ex with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — *legati, as ambassadors*: pred. appositive.

150 8 *nisi... posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in nuntium mittit. Translate unless reinforcements, he said, etc. — *sibi*: i.e. Icicius; the dat. is used instead of ad se with subsidium submittatur, because the idea of help (for him) is more prominent than that of motion (towards him). In the dir. disc. the message of Icicius was:

Nisi subsidium *mihi submittetur*, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.
The Belgian Confederacy.

150 10 Chap. 7. eo, thither, to that place, i.e. Bibrax. — isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men [as] guides: for the ablative, cf. iure, 147 4. Observe that ducibus is pred. appos.; cf. legati, 150 7.

150 11 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 100.

150 12 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 46. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. b. — et . . . et: see Vocabulary.

150 13 studium . . . accessit, eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi. — propugnandi: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. coniurandi, 144 12.

150 14 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N. 8); H-B. 366. — potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 503. N. 2 (296. R.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N. 8; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N. 8); H-B. 613. N.

150 15 morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis . . . incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 144 13.

150 16 quo, to which (or the like).

150 17 omnibus copiis: cf. 146 24, and for the omission of cum, see § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R. 1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

150 18 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbially; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. c; milibus is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424; minus does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N. 8); H-B. 416. d; amplius (l. 19) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387; and milibus (l. 19), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under minus.

150 22 Chap. 8. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement: for the abl., cf. defensoribus, 150 1, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

150 23 quid...posset...quid...auderent, indir. questions.—virtute: abl. of specification. But the whole is best rendered, tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.

150 24 periclitabantur: note the tense and cf. adferrebantur, 144 9 and note.

150 25 loco...idoneo: abl. abs. expressing cause.—ad...instrumentum: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 146 6.

150 27 tantum, etc., spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum), etc.—adversus, right in front.

152 1 in latitudinem, in breadth, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—loci: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with the correlative tantum, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

152 2 lateris deictus (acc. plur.), lateral slopes (lit. 'slopes of the side').

152 3 in fronte, etc., falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain (see battle plan, Fig. 48).

152 4 transversam: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

152 5 passuum quadringentorum: gen. of measure; cf. pedum, 149 9.

—extremas, the ends of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.5); H-B. 244.

152 6 tormenta: see chapter on military affairs, i. 5, and Figs. 75, 92, and 94.

152 7 instruxisset: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind. ; § 593, 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d.—tantum: adv. acc.; cf. quid, 147 8.—poterant: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like instruxisset) attracted into the subjunctive.

152 8 ab lateribus, on the flanks: § 429. b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying circumvenire.—suos: i.e. Caesar's, referring back to the subject of conlocavit.

152 10 si quo (adv.): sc. duci, but translate freely if they were needed anywhere.—esset: protasis of a fut. condition (si...erit); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause ut...possent; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.—subsidiō: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on 150 12.

152 11 sex: see note on 146 9.—suas: notice the emphatic position, their forces too.

152 12 copias...eductas instruxerunt, had led out and drawn up, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coordinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.
152 13 Chap. 9. nostrum: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. R.1; H. 440. i. N.2 (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. a.

152 14 hanc: i.e. paludem.—si...transirent, (to see) if our men would cross: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. i. N.1); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

153 1 si...fieret, in case they should begin the passage (lit. 'a beginning of crossing should be made by them'): fut. condition (si...fiet); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause ut...adgrederentur; cf. note on esset, l. 10.

153 2 adgrederentur: purpose, depending on parati, etc.


153 4 nostris: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

153 6 ad flumen, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

153 8 eo consilio ut, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with consilio; § 531. i. N.1 (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.

153 9 castellum, the redoubt beyond the river, held by Sabinus (149 7).—cui: cf. oppido, 150 6.

153 10 pontem: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (149 7). By destroying this, the Belgae would cut off Caesar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 149 3-6.—si possent (l. 8), si minus potuissent: fut. conditions; possent represents the fut., potuissent the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense, cf. note on 152 10. —minus, not.

153 11 popularentur, prohiberent: in same construction as expugnarent.—magnus nobis usui: cf. note on subsidio oppidanus, 150 12.—ad bellum gerendum (gerundive), for carrying on the war; cf. note on 152 10.

153 12 commetatu: abl. of separation; cf. defensoribus, 150 1.

153 13 Chap. 10. ab Titurio: abl. of voluntary agent.

153 14 levis armaturae (gen. of description), of light equipment = light-armed (see chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 65, 99).—Numidas, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

153 15 traducti: with two accusatives; cf. 149 2 and note. —pugnatum est: cf. note 7 7.

153 18 conantis: with reliquis.

153 19 equitatu: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep.—circumventos interfecerunt: cf. note on eductas, 152 12.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

153 20 ubi . . . intelleferunt: the regular mood and tense with ubi; cf. 149 14. — de, with regard to.
153 21 neque, and . . . not.
153 22 pugnandi causa: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404. c, 533. b (245. c, 318. b); B. 338. 1. c; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444. 4, 612. 1.
153 23 ipsos: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

153 24 constituerunt here has two objects: (1) optimum esse, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [ut] conveniunt (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. 6 (332. 6); B. 295. 1 and n.; G. 546. r. 1; H. 565. 5 (498. i. n.); H-B. 589. a; cf. note on 3 11. The subject of esse is the infin. clause of quemque reverti: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — domum: § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.
153 25 quorum: the antecedent is eos.
153 26 introduxissent stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subj. by being made part of the purpose-clause; cf. potuiissent, 153 10. — conveniunt: sc. ut; § 565. a (331. 1. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r. 2; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ft. 2.
153 27 suis, alienis, domesticis: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

154 2 quod . . . cognoverant: indic. because Caesar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. 146 5 and note. The clause is in apposition with haec ratio. — Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare: see 148 24. — finibus: dat. after adpropinquare.

154 3 his persuaderi, etc., these could not be persuaded, etc. (lit. ‘it could not be persuaded to these’). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass. and retain the dat. — ut, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on persuaderi, but (in the impers. construction) used as subject of poterat.

154 4 neque . . . ferrent, and so fail to carry (lit. ‘and not carry’). — suis: § 363 (225. 6); B. 193; H-B. 365. ft. par. 2.
154 5 Chap. 11. strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio: abl. of manner; cf. impetu, 149 12.
154 7 cum, where, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N. 2 (326. N. 2); B. 288. b; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.
154 s fecerunt: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, 'the result was.' — ut . . . videretur: subst. clause of result, object of fecerunt; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. — fugae: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

154 9 per: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by per with the acc.; § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3

(415. i. n.) II-B. 380. d. — speculatores, spies: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the scouts, exploratores, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.


154 11 castris, in camp: § 429. f (258. f); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

154 12 re: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating. — ab exploratoribus: abl. of agent; cf. above, per speculatores. — qui moraretur: rel. clause of purpose; cf. 146 23.

154 13 his: dat. with praefectit; cf. construction of oppido, 150 6.
154 16 milia: cf. 149 19 and note.
154 17 cum: causal; cf. 154 7 and note. — ab extre mo agmine, in the year.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

154 18 quos: relates to the implied subject of consisterent. — ventum erat: § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. a. 1.

154 19 priores: sc. and in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy. — quod . . . viderentur, because they seemed (i.e. they thought themselves). This word and continerentur are subjunctives as being part of the subjv. clause cum . . . ponerent. For similar cases of attraction, see 81 2, 153 9, 153 26.

154 21 exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), breaking ranks on hearing the outcry (of those engaged in the rear).

154 22 sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. i. n.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366. — ponerent: same construction as consisterent and sustinerent.

154 23 tantam . . . spatium, killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed (lit. ‘as the day was long’); notice the correlatives tantam . . . quantum; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. 150 27, 151 1.

155 1 Chap. 12. postridie eius diei, next day (lit. ‘on the day after that day’); for the gen., see § 359. b (223. c); B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c. — priusquam . . . recipierent, before the enemy could recover themselves: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.

155 2 in finis . . . duxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.


155 4 Noviodum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic dunum = English “town”; hence Noviodum = Newton or Newburg. Soissons is derived from Suessiones. — ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 149 12.

155 5 esse: sc. oppidum for subject.

155 6 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), though there were few defenders. — oppugnare means to attack; expugnare, to take (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Caesar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112, 116.

155 7 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of quae, if expressed, would be ea.

155 8 ad oppugnandum: § 506, 385. a (300, 234. b); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. N.; G. 432, 359. R. 8; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.
The Belgian Confederacy.

155 11 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations.
— quae, which (i.e. the like of which).

155 12 ante: adverb.

155 14 petentibus Remis, at the request of the Remi. — ut conserva-
rentur: subst. clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1;
G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.

155 15 Chap. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, after he had received
as hostages the chief men, etc.

155 16 Galbae: see 148 7-9.

156 2 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of
Paris, about Beauvais. — qui cum, and when they. A relative is often used
to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect
demonstrative with a connective (here hi autem). The relative serves to
bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — se suaque omnia:
cf. 146 23 and note.

156 3 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley.
Notice that Bratuspantium is in apposition with oppidum, not in
the gen. according to the English usage.

156 4 circiter, etc., [only] about five miles. — milia passuum: cf. 149 19,
154 16.

156 5 maiores natu: § 131. c (91. c); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122;
natu is abl. of specification.

156 6 voce significare, show by the tones of their voice (of course they
could not talk Latin). — in eius fidem . . . venire: i.e. surrendered at
discretion; cf. the clause se in fidem permettere, 146 23. Notice that the
reflexive se se refers to the speakers, and represents the first person of the
dir. disc.; eius refers to Caesar, the person spoken to.

156 7 neque, and [that they would] not.

156 9 pueri mulieresque, women and children. — ex muro: English
says on the wall, from another point of view.

156 10 ab Romanis: § 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339. N.2;
H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.

156 11 Chap. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.

156 12 eum: i.e. Caesar.

156 13 Bellovacos, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc.,
depending on facit verba. Direct: —

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt;
impulsi ab suis principibus, qui diebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem
redactos omnis dignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defecerunt et populo
Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intel-
legebant quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

*Petunt* non solum *Bellovacii* sed etiam pro his *Haedu* ut *tua* clementia ac mansuetudine in eos *utari*. Quod si *feceris*, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas *amplificabitis*, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare *consuerunt*.

156 13 *omni tempore, always.* — *in fide atque amicitia*: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the *Haedu*.

156 14 *impulsos* (notice the emphatic position: *not* of their own accord, but *induced* by their chiefs); agreeing with the subject (*eos*) of *defecisse* and *intulisse*, which is to be supplied from *Bellovacos*.

156 15 *dicent*: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by *Cæsar* as a part of the speech of *Diviciacus*. The subject is *Haedu*; the verb, *perferre*. — *omnis*, *all* (kinds of).

156 17 *qui*, (those) *who.* — *eius consili, in this design*: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by *in, to, and* many other forms of speech in English.

156 18 *quantam...intulissent*: cf. 147 7 and note.

156 19 *civitatis*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — *Britanniam*: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from *Cæsar*'s excuse for his subsequent expedition there. — *profugisse*: the subject is the implied antecedent of *qui*.

156 20 *sua clementia, his* (characteristic or well-known) *clemency*: for the case, cf. 147 4, 150 10.

156 21 *in eos*: but for the interposition of *Haedu*, this would be in *se*; § 300. b (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 594 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2; here, as-often, the last word or thought governs the construction. — *utatur*: subst. clause of purpose, after *petere*: § 563. d (331. d'); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); cf. H-B. 530. 2. *ftn.1*; cf. also 3 11 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. *cognoverint*, 147 19 and note. — *quod si fecerit*: fut. condition (more vivid); *fecerit* is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is *amplificaturum*: § 516. a (307. a); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. a; on the use of *quod*, see note on *qui cum*, 156 2.

156 22 *quorum*: the antecedent is *Belgas*. — *si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint*: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. b (309. c); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. a.

156 24 *consuerint*: present in force; § 205. b. N.² (143. c. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. r.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.
The Belgian Confederacy.

156 25 Chap. 15. honoris Diviciaci... causa, out of respect for Diviciacus (lit. 'for the sake of honor'). — Diviciaci: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — causa: abl. of cause; § 404. c (245. c); B. 198. 1; G. 373; 408; H. 475. 2 (416. fn.2); H-B. 444. d; 339. d; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here honoris.

156 26 recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits esse, as here. — quod erat: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require quod esset), cf. 146 5.

158 1 magna... auctoritate: cf. 150 6. — multitudine: cf. 147 20.
158 4 Ambianorum: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.
158 5 eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. Their territories reach to the Nervii. — natura: i.e. what sort of people they were, like quales essent.

158 6 reperiebat: cf. note on 144 9. — nullum aditum, etc.: Direct,—
Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patientur vini... inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos... existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; inceptitant atque incusan reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiecerint; confirmant sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis acceperos.

158 7 mercatoribus (dat. of possessor; cf. nulli, 150 5), traders have. — pati (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is only brief notes of his campaigns (commentarii). — nihil... vini: § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

158 9 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 263. 1 (167. a); B. 155. 1; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — esse, that they are.

158 10 magnae virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with feros by a coördinate conj.: § 223. a (154. a); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

158 11 Belgas: object. — qui... dedidissent... proiecerissent, who [they said] had surrendered, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a; cf. also note on 50 8.
158 12 patriam: an adjective.

158 13 missuros... accepturos: on the omission of esse, cf. note on 156 26. The subject of the infinitives is sese, which refers back to the omitted subject (eos) of confirmare.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

158 14 Chap. 16. cum ... fecisset: for similar cum-clauses, cf. 144 8, 150 3, 6. — eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. — triduum: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

158 15 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, — Sabis flumen a castris ... milia passuum x abest; trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanorum exspectant una cum Atrebatibus ... (nam his ... persuaserunt uti eandem belli fortunam experientur); exspectantur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quique ... inutiles videbantur in eum locum conicerunt, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

— Sabim: the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. a. 1 (56. a. 1); B. 37; G. 57. R. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — non amplius milia, etc.: milia is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by amplius; cf. a similar construction, 150 18, and see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. 3); H-B. 416. d.

158 18 Atrebatibus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — his: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

158 19 experientur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 156 20.

158 20 exspectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

158 21 quique, and (those) who (not to be confounded with the plur. of quisque with the same form); qui, as so often, implies its own antecedent eos, the obj. of coniecieisse.

158 22 quo = in quem.

158 23 esset: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1; cf. 147 11. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the marshes an army could not get access."


158 26 dediticiis: i.e. the three states just subdued.

158 27 una, along (with him).

159 1 eorum dierum, during those days: see note on consili,

156 17.

159 3 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions. — impedimentorum magnum numerum, a great number of baggage-animals (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, 1. 6.
FIG. 112.—GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS.

$ABCD$, hostile wall; $ss$, testudines aggestilines, protecting those levelling the ground; $kk$, agger; $xx, xx'$, etc., pluetai, protecting those working on the agger; $efg$, line of pluetai, manned with archers and slingers; $tt$, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; $ro$, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; $iq$, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; $fg'$, position of pluetai, covering the beginning of the agger; $mn$, covered gallery through the agger; $nnn$, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.

159 4 neque, and that... not (or no); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them.—nogoti: part. gen.; cf. nihil vini, 158 7.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

159 5 cum venisset abessent: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the direct discourse.

159 6 hanc: i.e. the first legion.—sarcinis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. c, and Fig. 25.—adoriri: subject of esse (l. 20), quicquam being in the predicate.—qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), if this should be routed, etc.

159 7 futurum [esse]: apodosis of the condition.—ut non adeupt: subst. clause of result, subject of futurum [esse]; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c.—contra consistere, to withstand their attack.

159 8 adiuvat: the subject is the subst. clause quod Nervii... effecerant, the advice of those who reported the matter was reinforced by the fact that the Nervii, etc. Notice the emphatic position of adiuvat, which may be expressed in English by using the passive as above.

159 9 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England.—cum: causal.

159 10 nihil (adv. acc.) possent, had no strength.—neque enim, and in fact... not.—ad hoc tempus: opposed to antiquitus.—rei: cf. construction of imperis, 146 4.

159 11 quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., all the strength they have is in infantry.—quo facilius... impeditum, in order to check the more easily; quo is the regular conj. introducing a purpose-clause which contains a comparative; § 531. a (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. b.

159 12 praedandi causa: cf. 153 22.—venissent: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

160 1 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms, to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

160 2 ut praebent: object-clause of result, depending on effecerant; cf. 154 8.—instar muri: § 359. b (214. g); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. d.

160 3 quo (adv.): i.e. into which.

160 4 posset: result-clause.
The Belgian Confederacy.

160 5 sibi: dat. of agent with omittendum [esse].
160 6 Chap. 18. loci . . . quem locum: § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4. — castris: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.
160 7 aequaliter declivis, with even downward slope.
160 8 quod agrees in gender with flumen. — vergebät: imperf. of description; cf. note on 5 2. — ab: i.e. on the other side.
160 9 pari acclivitate: abl. of quality; cf. 150 6, 158 1. Notice the opposition to declivis, above. — adversus . . . contrarius, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).
160 10 passus: cf. 149 12, 154 16. — apertus: i.e. cleared of woods. — infimus, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. r.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.²); H-B. 244; opposed to ab superiore parte, along the upper portion: § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 1; H. 434. 1; H-B. 406. 2.
160 11 ut non: observe that a negative result is expressed by ut non, while a negative purpose is expressed by ne.
160 13 secundum: preposition.
160 14 pedum trium: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. 152 5.
160 16 Chap. 19. copiis: cf. 146 24, 150 17. — ratio ordoque: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — aliter . . . ac, etc. (see Vocabulary), was different from what the Belgae had reported (lit. 'had itself otherwise [than] as,' etc.): § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. a.
160 17 ad Nervio : § 363 (225. b); B. 358. 2. a; G. 340. r.²; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).
160 18 consuetudine sua, in accordance with his custom.
160 19 ducabat: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. — conlocarat, had put in place (of greatest safety); this verb (conloco) is often confounded by beginners with conligo, collect.
160 20 proxime conscriptae, latest levied. These were legions X111 and X14, mentioned in 146 9, 10, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
160 21 praesidio impedimentis: cf. 150 19, 152 10, 153 11.
160 23 cum, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by interim, which follows (cf. 150 3, 5, 158 14). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.
160 24 reciperent . . . facerent, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by identidem).
380  Notes: Second Year Latin.

160 25 quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

160 26 cedentis agrees with eos the understood object of insequi. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

161 1 opere dimenso, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.

161 2 ubi . . . visa sunt: cf. 149 14, 153 20. Notice that this is purely temporal. Cæsar might have used cum with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 160 23 shows the difference clearly.

161 4 quod tempus, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi . . . visa sunt. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 17 8 and note). — committendi proeli: depending on tempus. See note 71 3.

— ut (just as) . . . confirmaerant: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

161 8 ut, so that (result).

161 9 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.

161 11 adverso colle, etc., pushed straight up the hill. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition; cf. semitis, 9 25. — eos: after ad.

— occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in opere); occupatus is regularly used as an adj.

161 13 Chap. 20. Cæsari: dat. of agent; cf. sibi, 160 5. Notice the emphatic position of omnia. Cæsar had to do everything at one time. — vexillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 113, and chapter on military affairs, 11.

161 14 proponendum [erat]: second periphrastic, like agenda erant above; so also dandum, etc.

161 15 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 53.

— ab opere, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.
The Belgian Confederacy.

161 16 qui relates to the understood subject (ei) of arcessendi [erant]. — aggeris, materials for a mound, an unusual meaning. — arcessendi: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

161 17 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. d (135. d); B. 112. b; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftn. at end; H-B. 291. — signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action; cf. 162 16. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. impediebat). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers, who did what was proper without orders.

162 1 difficultatibus . . . subsidio: cf. 150 12, 162 21.

162 3 quid . . . oporteret: indir. quest., object of praescribere; cf. 147 7.

162 4 quam connects similar constructions: § 323. a (208. a); H-B. 305. 1.

162 5 quod: i.e. the second of the two things mentioned. — singulos, etc., had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.

162 6 nisi munitis castris: abl. abs.; see note on 144 13. The meaning here is not until after, etc.

162 7 nihil: adv. acc.; § 390. d. N.2 (240. a); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than non; nihil iam, no longer.

162 8 quae videbantur, what seemed best.

162 10 Chap. 21. necessariis: i.e. such as were (absolutely) necessary; observe emphasis. — ad cohortandos milites: gerundive of purpose; cf. 146 6, 150 25.

162 11 quam in partem = in eam partem in quam; cf. note on quem ad finem, 160 25.

162 12 decimam: Cæsar’s favorite legion. — non longiore . . . quam uti, with no more words than that they should, etc.

162 13 retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent: object-clauses of purpose with ut, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

162 15 quam quo . . . posset: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. c); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

162 18 pugnantis: sc. eis, and see note on cedentis, 160 18. —
hostium depends on animus.

162 19 paratus (adj.) ad dimicandum, ready for battle.

162 20 ad insignia accommodanda, for fitting on the decorations (of the
helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps,
too, the different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets.
At all events, these were considered important and were always put on
before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, vii.

162 21 scutis: abl. of separation; cf. 150 1, 153 12. On the march
helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and orna-
ments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 25. — defuerit, failed, i.e.
there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. 147 6, 147 13. — quam in
partem, to whatever place.

162 22 ab opere: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying.—
quaeque, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (prima, adj. with signa),
he fell in (lit. ‘took his stand’) there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled
that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly
the duties belonging to it.

162 23 haec (signa): antecedent to quae, but implying also the ante-
cedent (in hac parte) of quam above, for which it is really substituted.—
in quaeerendis suis [signis]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the
different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in
the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on
military affairs, xi; also Figs. 81, 105.

162 24 Chap. 22. ut . . . quam ut: as . . . than as. The military
science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the
troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

162 27 cum: causal; cf. 154 7. — aliae alia in parte, some in one pos-
tion, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B.
265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 51.

163 1 saepibus . . . interiectis: cf. note on 159 9.

163 2 ante: i.e. in ch. 17. — impediretur: connected with resisterent
by -que in l. 1.

163 3 neque: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is
poterant.

163 4 provideri: complement. infin. with poterat supplied from poterant.
The subject of this poterat is the indir. quest. quid . . . opus esset. — ab
uno (emphatic), by only one man.

163 5 fortunae: emphatic, set off against rerum. The circumstances
were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various
results.
163 6 eventus (nom. plur.): subject of sequebantur.

163 7 Chap. 23. ut, as, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, having taken up their position: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d); B. 356. 2. c; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of as, ut is not followed by the subj. — sinistra: here Labienus was in command.

163 8 aei: gen.; § 98. N. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. n.1; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. — pilis emissis: see chapter on military affairs, vii, and Fig. 118. — exanimatos: agrees with Atrebates (object of compulerunt).

163 10 ex loco superiore: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.

163 12 impeditam, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross). — ipsi: referring to milites, 163 7.

163 13 progressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.

163 14 rursus resistentis (acc.), when they again made a stand.

163 17 ex loco superiore: i.e. starting from, etc. — in ripis modifies proeliamabantur (were continuing the fight).

163 18 totis: emphatic position (cf. English “exposed entirely almost”).

163 19 nudatis, being exposed, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were vii and xii, in dextro cornu.

163 20 constitisset: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a situation passes over into cause. — magnó intervallo, confertissimo agmine: best regarded as ablative of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use in, at, or by.

163 21 duce: abl. abs.; translate under the leadership of.

163 23 aperto latere: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436. — legiones: the twelfth and the seventh. — castrorum: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).


163 28 una: adverb.

164 1 pulso [esse]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. quos. — adversis hostibus, etc., met the enemy face to face: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

164 2 occurrabant... ferébantur: these descriptive imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 5 2.

164 3 ab decumana porta: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 111. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

164 5 cum respexissent, on looking back. Notice that this descriptive cum-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. cum... vidissent, l. 11, below.

164 6 praecipites: adj., agreeing with calones, but with the force of an adv., pell-mell, in utter confusion; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

164 7 qui, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see 160 19-21.

164 8 oriebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. 160 16 and note. — alii aliqu: § 315. e (203. e); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. — perterriti, frantic with fear, panic-stricken (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of per- (see Vocabulary).

164 10 quorum (poss.) virtutis (obj.) opinio, whose reputation for valor: § 348. b (217. b); B. 200; G. 363. r.2; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

164 11 a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

164 12 compleri (was filling)... premi... teneri... fugere: indir. disc. with vidissent. The present tenses indicate what they saw going on before their eyes (dir. complentur... premuntur... tententur... fugiunt). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

164 15 domum: cf. 153 24 and note.

164 16 pulsos superatosque [esse]: indir. disc.; the subject is Romanos. — castris: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429.

164 17 hostis: acc., subject of potitos [esse].

164 18 Chap. 25. Caesar: subject of processit, 165 4. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are suspended. Such a sentence is called a Period: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus: —
Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank—it happened that he had come there without a shield himself—and advanced to the front.

164 19 ubi: construe with vidit, l. 21. — in unum locum: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

164 20 sibi . . . impedimento, hindered one another in fighting (lit. 'were for a hindrance themselves to themselves'); cf. 153 11, 160 21.

164 21 quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, vi and vii. — omnibus centurionibus occisis: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on omni pacata Gallia, 144 13.

164 22 signo: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

164 24 in his, among these. — primipilo: see chapter on military affairs, l. 7. — Baculo: this was one of Cæsar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.

164 26 iam . . . non, no longer. — tardiores, rather slack (discouraged): § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

164 27 ab novissimis, in the rear: so below, l. 8. — deserto proelio, withdrawing from the fight (abl. abs.).

164 28 neque: correl. to et = both . . . not . . . and.

165 2 vidit: repeated from 164 21 on account of the length of the sentence. — neque ullam subsidium: the rear guard, legions xiii and xiv, had not yet arrived.

165 3 posset: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 147 12, 162 16. — militi: dat. after detracto; cf. construction of hostibus, 150 14 and note.

165 6 signa . . . laxare, to charge and [thus] open out the ranks, i.e. as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and
so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — quo . . . possent:
cf. 159 11.

165 9 etiam . . . rebus, even in his own extreme peril.

166 1 CHAP. 26. constiterat (from consisto): not had stood, but had
taken up a position, and so stood; cf. consuerint, 156 24; § 476 (279. c):
B. 262. A; G. 241. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

166 3 ut . . . coniungere: subst. clause, secondary obj.
of monuit; cf. 156 20 and note. — conversa, etc., should face about and
charge the enemy in opposite directions (lit. 'bear turned standards against').
The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary
to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this
is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

166 4 alii: dat. after a verbal phrase of helping; § 367 (227); B. 187.
i. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn.1. 2d par.
166 5 ne . . . circumvenirentur: cf. ne . . . adduceretur, 144 13. —
aversi, in the rear (lit. 'while their backs were turned'). — ab hoste:
collectively, in which sense the plural is more common.

166 7 legionum duarum: i.e. xiii and xiv; see plan, Fig. 51.

166 9 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — Labienus: he, with
legions ix and x, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

166 11 gerentur: indir. quest.

166 13 esset: indir. quest.

166 14 nihil . . . fecerunt, hastened as fast as they could (lit. 'left
nothing undone in the way of speed').

166 15 reliqui: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used
with facere: § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 369. R.3; H. 447 (403); H-B.
340. a.

166 17 CHAP. 27. etiam qui, even such as. — procubuisse: subjv. of
characteristic; see 84 18 and note. — scutis: abl. with innixi: § 431
(254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. l. N.); H-B. 438. 2. a.
See Figs. 114, 115.

166 19 inermes armatis, etc., (though) unarmed, threw themselves upon
the armed (enemy). — occurrerent: result, like redintegrarent.

166 20 delerent, praeferrent: purpose-clauses, but in slightly different
relations, dependent on pugnante. The use of quo as a conj. to introduce
a purpose-clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is
used regularly in 159 11, 165 6. Here we should expect ut.

166 21 at: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the
Romans to the enemy.
The Belgian Confederacy.

166 22 tantam virtutem praestiterunt: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.

166 23 primi, foremost.—iacentibus (sc. eis, dat. after insisterent), stood upon them as they lay fallen (lit. 'them lying').

166 25 qui superessent: characteristic clause. — ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound.

166 26 ut ... debetur, so that we may consider (lit. 'it must be judged') that not without good hope of success (nequiquam) did men, etc.; ut ... debetur is a result-clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of debetur is the infinit. clause homines ausos esse.

167 2 quae: the antecedents are the preceding infinit. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate deeds which. — facitia: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. b (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage,—they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

167 4 Chap. 28. prope ad internecionem: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

167 6 aestuarium: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

167 7 dixeramus: for tense, cf. note on the same word, 144 11. — cum: causal; cf. 154 7. — impeditum [esse], etc., there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing hindered to') the conquerors.

167 10 in ... calamitate: gerundive construction.

167 12 qui ... possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. 61 13. — quos: see note on 156 2.

167 13 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. 1; H. 611. N.1 (534. 1. N.1); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — misericordia (abl.), mercy: it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.

167 15 ut ... prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit; cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.

167 17 Chap. 29. supra: see 158 39. — cum ... venirent, while on the way. — omnibus copiis: cf. 146 24, 150 17.
sua omnia: cf. 146 23 and note. — oppidum: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 57). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Palhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

quod cum: cf. qui cum, 156 2 and note.
pedum: cf. 149 9.
conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.
ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. 147 9. This refers to the terrible invasion of the Cimbri and Teutons with their allies. They first appeared B.C. 106 and swept away six Roman armies, one after the other. They were finally annihilated by Caius Marius. See pp. 56–8.
impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. ferre et agere, to plunder.
custodiam, a guard, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; praesidium, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with milia.
sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — una (adv.), with it, i.e. the impedimenta. — hi: i.e. the six thousand. — eorum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.
obitum, destruction: the Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiae (Aix-les-Bains), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ. — alias: adverb.
inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. — inlatum [sibi bellum] defendentur, defended themselves when attacked. — consensu eorum omnium, by mutual agreement, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.
Chap. 30. adventu: abl. of time.
faciebant: notice the tense, and cf. 144 9 and note. — parvulis: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164 a); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.
pedum XII: i.e. in height. — XV milium: fifteen miles (sc. passuum) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.
oppido: for the omission of in, cf. castris, 154 11 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112.
170 9 viderunt: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal-clause with ubi; cf. 161 2 and note. — inridente: histor. infin.; see note on 27 10.

170 3 quod ... institueretur: because (as they said), etc.; subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. a); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. a.— ab tanto spatio, so far off (lit. 'away by so great a space'): abl. of degree of difference, ab having an adv. force.— quibusnam, etc.: the enclitic nam gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, by what hands, pray, or what strength?

170 7 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., conlocatos [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

170 8 Chap. 31. moveri, that it was actually moving: for the omission of the subj. acc. turrin, see § 581. N.1 (336. a. n.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn.2); H-B. 592.

170 10 locuti, speaking: cf. 148 17.

170 11 existimare (sc. se, and cf. 158 7 and note), that they thought: depending on locuti.

170 13 possent: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523.— se (obj.) ... permittere, that they surrendered themselves, etc.: depending on dixerunt.

170 14 unum, only one thing; notice the emphatic position of the word.— pro sua, etc., in accordance with his usual, etc.; cf. 167 13.

170 15 quam ... auditrent, which they were [all the time] hearing of: repeated action.

170 16 statuisset: for the fut. perf. (statueria) of the dir. disc.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.1.— ne ... despoliaret: subst. clause of purpose in app. with unum, but really depending on decrepari for its form. Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends.

170 17 inimicos: cf. 169 4-6.

171 1 virtutii: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362.— traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. a (310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.

171 2 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. — si ... deducercuntur (fut. condition), if they should be reduced to such an extremity.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

171 3 quamvis: from quivis.
171 4 consueissent: for the form, see § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in dir. disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.
171 5 Chap. 32. consuetudine...merito: cf. note on 163 20. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it manner, "that in accordance," etc.; if merito were alone we should call it cause. Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them cause if we like.
171 7 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 124). — attigisset...dedisserant stand for attigerit...dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. ε (327. a); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.
171 8 nisi armis traditis: cf. nisi munitis castris, 162. 6.
171 9 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms. — ne quam, lest any: § 310. a (103. d); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.
171 10 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of ad; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.
171 11 imperarentur: the subj. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — facere: sc. se as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. 158 7. We should expect facturos [esse]. The pres. infin. standing for facimus of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. ε); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — dixerunt: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.
171 13 ut prope...adaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. See Figs. 59, 116.
171 16 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — pace...usi: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.
171 17 Chap. 33. ex oppido exire: for the repetition of ex, see § 402 (243. b); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N. 8); H-B. 408. 1.
171 18 ne quam: see note on 171 9.
171 19 ante inito consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.
171 20 quod crediderant: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. 146 5, 154 2. — praesidia: i.e. those stationed in the castella,
171 ex cortice: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

171 viminibus integris: in the same construction as cortice.

171 pellibus: abl.; § 364 (225. d'); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. b.

171 qua, where; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

172 celeriter: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it instantly. — ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

172 eo, to that place. — concursum . . . pugnatum: impers. use of pass.; § 208. d (146. d'); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. a. 1; see note on 77.

172 ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight. — in extrema spe, for their last chance (lit. ‘in the last hope’).

172 iniquo loco: § 429. 1 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436. — qui . . . iacerent: subjv. of characteristic; cf. 147 12, 167 12.

172 in una virtute, in valor alone. — cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.; see note on 161 2.

172 ad, about.

172 postridie eius diei: cf. 41 23 and note.

172 sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

172 milium: pred. gen., after esse understood.

172 Chap. 34. Venetos, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

172 14 maritimae civitates: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

172 19 Chap. 35. perlata: notice the force of per; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.

172 20 incolerent: subj. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. n.1. 1); II-B. 539.

172 21 se... daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

172 22 in Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar’s province extended to the Rubicon. — Illyricum: this province formed part of Cæsar’s government, but he went there only during the winter season; see 174 3 and 221 14.

172 24 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern Chartres. — Andes (whence Anjou): near the lower Loire. — Turonos: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast. — quaeque civitates: translate as if et civitates quae.

173 3 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar’s party was now all-powerful at Rome. — quod: for id quod; § 307. d. n. (200. e. n.); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. r.2; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); II-B. 325. a. n.2.

Book Third, 7-16. — B.C. 56.

The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. Two legions under L. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people. The first six chapters of this Book give an account of Servius Galba’s
Campaign against the Veneti.

campaign, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes. Following
this was the campaign against the Veneti.

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. — The Veneti inhabited the penin-
sula of Aremorica, called Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration
from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of
the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic
populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly
given in Caesar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of
Caesar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than
this.

READING REFERENCES ON CAESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 11.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 4.

174 2 Chap. 7. Germanis: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed
that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in
this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most
important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

174 4 Illyricum: part of Caesar's province.

174 6 Crassus: see 72 24 ff. — adulescens: like our 'junior,' to dis-
tinguish him from his father.

174 7 mare: following proximus with the construction of prope; § 432.
a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.1; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. b.

174 8 praefectos: officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.

174 9 compluris goes with civitatis.

174 13 Chap. 8. huius civitatis: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern
coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

174 14 orae: part. gen. — regionum: added to describe and limit orae.

174 15 Britanniam: at this time an important Celtic country, having
close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a
large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their
allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — consuerunt, are
accustomed: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. 1. 2);

174 17 in magno . . . aperti: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent
storms.
174 18 omnis . . . habent vectigalibus: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; vectigalibus is in pred. apposition with omnis.

174 22 subita . . . consilia: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

175 5 quam acceperint: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. a.

175 6 quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in malint.

175 9 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The dir. disc. would be si vis etc., remitte.

175 11 Chap. 9. aberat longius, was too far off, i.e. to take command at once in person.—navis longas, galleys. See chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 61, 63. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see 180 25–28.

175 12 Ligeri: the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering.—institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

176 1 cum primum: the first moment when (lit. ‘when first’). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

176 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.

176 4 admisissent: indir. quest.—legatos . . . coniectos (the specific act): in app. with facinus, but the construction is determined by intellegebant; see note on 170 16; legatos: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar’s legatī or lieutenants.

176 5 quod nomen: cf. quod tempus, 161 4 and note.

176 9 pedestria itinera, etc., approaches by land.

176 10 concisa, impeditam: with esse. They depend upon sciebant.

176 11 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans’ lack of acquaintance.—neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

176 13 ut . . . acciderent, etc., granting that, etc.: ut here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the “Gallic War.” Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.

177 1 posse and the following infinitives depend upon perspiciebant, l. 5.

177 3 gesturi essent: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.
Campaign against the Veneti.

177 4 longe aliam... atque, very different... from; cf. aliter ac,
160 16.—concluso: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and
which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

177 9 socios: pred. apposition; cf. vectigalis, 174 25.—Osimos,
etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in
Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablintes in Jablins.

177 14 Chap. 10. iniuria retentorum equitum, the wrong done by
detaining the knights: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. r.; H. 636. 4
(549. 5. n.); H-B. 608. 2.—rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not 'rebellion').

177 16 ne... arbitrentur: a new rising was threatened by the Bel-
gians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman
attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose-clause is under the same
construction as the nominatives iniuria, defectio, etc., which express other
reasons for Caesar's action, and are all in apposition with multa.)

177 17 idem: subj. of licere.

177 19 excitari: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a gen-
eral truth; while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a pres., all men
naturally hate.

177 20 priusquam... conspirarent: see note on 69 7.

177 24 Chap. 11. flumini: dat. with proximi, but cf. 174 13.

177 25 adeat: after mandat, which expresses a command; cf. 3 11
and note; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.; H. 565. 4 (499. 2);
H-B. 502. 3. a. ft民国。

177 26 auxilio: dat. of service or end for which.—acessiti [esse]
dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.

178 2 Crassum: cf. 174 12 and note.

178 3 Aquitaniam: in southwest Gaul; see 144 5-7. These peoples
were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little inter-
est in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Bk. vii.

178 6 Venellos, etc.: in Normandy.

178 7 distinendam: cf. 61 11, 62 5 and notes.—Brutum: afterwards
one of the conspirators against Caesar, with the more celebrated Marcus
Brutus.

178 8 Pictonibus, Santonis: on the coast south of the Loire (Poitou
and Saintonge).

178 13 Chap. 12. eius modi... ut, of such sort that.

178 13 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to
sea several miles.

178 14 cum... incitatisset: i.e. at high tide.—[bis]: apparently an
error of the MSS. Some editors read xxiv instead of xii; others refer it
to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

178 15 quod ... addictarentur: subj. as an integral part of the result-clause.
178 16 minuente, at the ebb: intransitive.
178 17 utraque re, in either case.
178 18 superati, agreeing with the subject of coeperant.
178 19 his (aggere ac molibus) ... adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls.

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an agger for approach to the town."

178 23 haec ... faciebant, this they continued to do: repeated action.
178 24 partem: duration of time.
178 25 summa: with difficulas; note the emphasis.—vasto mari, etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words may be called abl. abs., but they probably go back to the locative abl.; see § 419 (255) fn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.

178 28 Chap. 13. namque: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, [but the Veneti had less trouble] for.—ipsorum, their own.

178 29 aliquanto: abl. of degree of difference.
179 1 navium: depending on carinae understood. — quo ... possent: cf. 31 90, 159 11.

179 2 atque item puppes, and the sterns too: accommodatae (being adapted) standing as an additional predicate.
179 4 quamvis: from quivis.
179 5 transtra, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

179 7 pelles: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (pelles) or tanned (alutae).
179 11 tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight.—non aatis commodae, not very well.

179 12 nostrae classi: dat. of possession, but translate the encounter of our fleet with, etc.

179 13 praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).
Campaign against the Veneti.

179 14 reliqua: here a neut. plur. substantive, everything else.

179 15 eis: dat. with nocere; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 362.

179 16 rostro: see Figs. 61, 63.

180 2 copulis: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — accedebat ut, there was this additional advantage that, followed by the result-clauses, ferrent, consistenter, and tимерent; cf. 50 15, 147 14.

180 3 se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence ventus is repeated to give the complete expression.

180 4 consistenter, rode at anchor.

180 5 ab aethu relictae: translate if or when, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2. a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — nihil: cf. 162 7 and note.

180 8 Chap. 14. neque: see note on 176 11.

180 9 eis nocier posse, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is imper., and cf. 18 17 and note.

180 10 quae ubi: cf. note on qui cum, 156 2.

180 11 paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatissimae, thoroughly furnished. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 62.

180 13 neque satis Bruto ... constabat, and Brutus could not make out. agerent and inesiterent refer to Brutus and his officers.

180 14 tribunis militum, etc.: in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

180 16 nocier, etc.: cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

180 17 excitatis, raised. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following tamen.

180 18 ex barbaris navibus, on the enemy's ships; for force of ex, cf. una ex parte, ex itinere, etc.

180 20 magno usui, of great service (cf. auxilio, 177 26), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

180 22 muralium falciem, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling
down walls (see Fig. 124). The gen. limits formae understood, which would be dat. after absimili. — cum = whenever, as often as, and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs comprehensi adductique erant being in the protasis, and prae rumpebantur in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf. 156 93 and note.

180 24 prae rumpebantur, etc., they [the halyards] were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars.

180 25 Gallicis navibus: dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

181 1 paulo fortius factum: one of Cæsar’s mild expressions for ‘an act of remarkable daring.’

181 4 Chap. 15. cum, etc.: another general condition; see note on 180 29. — singulas, etc.: i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy’s.

181 6 contendebant: expressing repeated action; cf. with contendebant below, which describes a single act. — quod postquam: cf. quae ubi, 180 10 and note.

181 8 cum . . . reperiretur: a causal clause; cf. 35 23, 154 7.

181 9 conversis . . . navibus: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast, — the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

181 14 pervenerint, came to land; for the tense, cf. 54 21, 147 3, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result-clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

181 15 hora III (quarta): about 10 A.M.

182 2 Chap. 16. cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time.

182 4 convenenter, coegerant: i.e. for this war. — quod ubique, all that there were anywhere, followed by the part. gen. navium.

182 5 quo, whither: i.e. any refuge.

182 8 eo gravius . . . quo, the more severely, etc., in order that. — vindicandum [esse] (impers.), punishment should be inflicted.

182 10 sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction; lit. ‘under the wreath,’ since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.
The Campaign in Southern Gaul. — The campaign in Aquitania, which closes the year, was made merely for strategic reasons. It was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on 178.3) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.


Fig. 118. — Roman Javelins (tha).

The First Invasion of Germany. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

Reading References on the First Invasion of Germany.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 12.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Caesar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 5.

183.1 ea quae, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — Pompeio, Crasso: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus,
sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Caesar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Cæsar," p. 102).

183 2 Usipetes, Tencteri: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

183 4 quo: adv. = in quod.

183 5 quod ... prohibebantur: Caesar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.

183 6 præmebantur, prohibebantur: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, they were being hard pressed, etc.

183 8 centum pagos: there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

183 9 bellandi causa: gerund, expressing purpose with causa. Observe that causa in this use always follows its case; cf. above causa transmundi, with a totally different meaning.

183 11 hi ... illi, the latter ... the former. — anno post, the following year: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. n. 4; H. 488. 1 (430); cf. H-B. 424.

183 12 ratio, theory (theoretical knowledge); usus, practice (knowledge derived from experience).

183 13 sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, etc. — privati ... agri: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

183 14 longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

183 15 frumento (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Germania, 27). — maximam partem: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. c, 397. a (240. a, b); B. 185. 1; G. 334. r. 2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.


185 1 quod ... faciunt: this clause is a parenthesis; because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will, — a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.
First Invasion of Germany.

185 3 alit: the subject is quae res. — homines [eos] efficit, makes [them] men, etc.

185 4 eam: correl. with ut, introducing a clause of result. — locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate.

185 5 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam. — haberent, have; lave-
rentur, bathe: imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt; § 485.
a (287. a); B. 268. 1; G. 511. r.3; H. 546 (495. i); II-B. 481.

185 8 Chap. 2. eo ut ... habeant, so (on this account) that they may have (some one) to whom, etc.

185 9 quam quo ... desiderent, than that they want, etc. For the use of quo expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 592. N. (341. r.); B. 323; G. 541. n.2; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); II-B. 535. 2. b.

185 11 impenso pretio, at high cost. — importaris non utuntur, do not import for use (lit. 'do not use imported').

185 13 deformia, ill-shaped. — summi laboris, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).

185 20 quamvis pauci, however few. — vinum: cf. the description of the Nervii, 158 6–10. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.

185 23 Chap. 3. publice, as a community.

185 26 una ... Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction. — sexcenta: probably exaggerated. — agri, their lands.

185 27 Ubii: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.

186 1 paulo ... humaniores, somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race (Germans).

186 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.

186 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.

186 7 vectigalis: sc. eos referring to the Ubii. — humiliores (pred.): in translating sc. so as to be.

186 9 Chap. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.

186 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.

186 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.

186 14 multitudinis: see 192 10.

186 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.

186 18 vi contendere, to force a passage.

186 22 confecto: with itinere.

186 23 oppresserunt: not 'oppressed'; see note on obtinere, 143 15.

187 2 priusquam ... fieret: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; II. 605.

ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. b; see also note on 69 7.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

187 5 partem: acc. of time. — eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).

187 6 Chap. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = fickleness.

187 8 nihil . . . committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum [esse] is impers. and nihil adv. acc.

187 9 eat . . . consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom: § 343. c (214. d); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340. — uti . . . cegant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with hoc.

187 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.

187 15 quorum eos . . . paenitere: § 354. b (221. b); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); II-B. 352. — in vestigio, on the spot: cf. 185 16.

187 16 serviant, are slaves to. — plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.

187 17 eorum: i.e. the questioners.

187 18 Chap. 6. graviore bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

187 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy.

187 20 facta: sc. esse; so with missas below.

187 21 missas legationes, etc.: these infinitive clauses explain ea.

187 22 uti . . . disceruent: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgae, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

187 23 postulassent: for fut.perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, b); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ft.1. — fore parata, should be made ready (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like promiserunt, implied in invitatos. Instead of fore parata, we might expect fore ut pararentur.

187 24 Eburonum, etc.: German tribes.

187 27 permulsis, calmed from their terror (lit. ‘soothed by stroking,’ like a nervous horse).

188 1 Chap. 7. equitibus delectis: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

188 3 a quibus: refers to locis.

188 5 priores: first, or, as aggressors. — neque recusare, they do not decline, followed by quin and subjv.; cf. 147 6.

188 7 [haec]: may be translated. — quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.

188 8 neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. ‘and not beg off’). — haec tamen dicere, this, however, they did say; supply se for subj. of dicere and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 158 7, 170 11, 171 11.
First Invasion of Germany.

188 10 eis: i.e. to the Romans. — attribuunt: subjv. in indir. disc. for inv. of the direct.
188 11 eos: sc. agros.
188 12 concedere, yield, as inferior.
188 13 reliquum...neminem: the position gives a force like besides these there was no one else on earth, etc.
188 15 Chap. 8. quae visum est, what (it) seemed proper (to answer).
188 20 Ubiorum: see ch. 3.
188 21 quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. 'and') complain, etc.
188 25 Chap. 9. post diem tertium (= tertio die): i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.
188 26 proarius se: proarius sometimes has the force of a preposition; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. b.—id: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by ne...moveret).
189 1 trans: i.e. westwardly.
189 2 expectari: change the voice and translate as active, they were waiting for.
189 4 Chap. 10. Vosego, the Vosges: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.
189 5 parte...recepta: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (Vacalus, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).
189 6 Omit the words in brackets.
189 9 Nantuatium: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.
189 12 multis...effectis: translate actively, making many, etc.
189 13 feris...nationibus: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."
189 15 capitibus, mouths (more commonly, sources).
189 17 Chap. 11. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.
189 19 eos equites (antecedent to qui), the cavalry who, etc.
189 20 antecessissent: attracted into the subjv. by the ut-clause; cf. praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
172 20.—praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
189 21 sibi: i.e. the Germans.
189 22 quorum si, and if their: cf. note on qui cum, 156 2.
189 23 condizione...usuros, would accept the terms: see ch. 8.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

189 25 daret: sc. petebant uti from l. 19. — eodem illo pertinere, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (eodem and illo are adverbs).

189 28 aquisitionis causa: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.

190 3 accessisset: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.

190 5 CHAP. 12. amplius DCCC, more than eight hundred: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. n.2); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his “Germania” (ch. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.

190 9 indutiis: dat. of the end for which.

190 10 resistentibus: sc. nostris.

190 11 subfossis, etc.: after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in 189 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

190 14 venissent: cf. 187 2.

190 17 genere: abl. of source; § 403. a (244. a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413. — regnum obtinuerat, had held supreme power.

190 20 quoad: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.

190 25 CHAP. 13. neque iam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

190 26 ab eis qui, from men who, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

191 1 exspectare: subject of esse; note the emphasis of position.

191 2 dementiae: pred. genitive.

191 3 quantum ... auctoritatis, etc., how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.

191 5 quibus: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of dandum [esse]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, 9 8.

191 7 ne quem, etc.: cf. 171 9.

191 8 res: in app. with quod ... venerunt.

191 9 eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

191 11 simul ... simul, partly ... partly. — purgandi sui: see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. 1. n.1); H-B. 614.
First Invasion of Germany.

191 12 contra atque, contrary to what; see Vocabulary. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

191 13 si quid . . . de indutiis, whatever (lit. 'if anything') they could in the way of truce.

191 14 fallendo: i.e. by another trick. — quos, illos: both refer to the same subject. — quos oblatos [esse] gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power (gavisus, from gaudeo). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

191 17 subsequi, to follow in the rear; they usually went in advance (cf. 189 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

191 18 Chap. 14. acie tripli: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, vi and vii.

191 19 quid agetur, what was going on.


191 21 et . . . et, both . . . and.

191 22 ne . . . an . . . an: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it was better.

191 24 quorum timor cum: note the emphatic order.

191 29 reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

191 2 ad quos consectandos (freq. of sequor), to hunt them down. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his "Life of Cæsar," writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

192 3 Chap. 15. Germani: i.e. those who were fighting. — clamore: i.e. of those who were massacred.

192 4 signis: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 81, 110.

192 6 reliqua fuga, further flight.

This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.

192 9 ex . . . timore, (relieved) from the apprehension of so great a war.
192 19 discedendi potestatem, permission to depart. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.
192 13 veriti: regularly pres. act. in force, fearing.
192 17 Chap. 16. illa, the following.
192 19 suis: note the emphasis on this word.
192 20 cum intellegent: here nearly equivalent to a participle.
192 21 accessit quod, and besides: see Vocabulary.

192 22 quam . . . transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed: see 188 27 ff. (the conj. that of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Caesar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Caesar the actor is always in the third.

192 25 Sugambrorum: living just north of the Ubi.
192 27 intulissent: cf. antecessissent, 189 20.—dederent: observe the omission of ut; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.².

192 28 finire: see introductory note to Bk. iv.
193 1 aequum: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause Germanos . . . transire.
193 2 sui . . . imperi: pred. gen. of possession after esse, under his power.

193 7 occupationibus rei publicae, by the demands of state affairs.
193 8 transportaret: same construction as ferret.
193 9 futurum [esse]: sc. verb of saying from orabant, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

193 19 latitudinem, etc.: Caesar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.
First Invasion of Germany.

193 21 rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 70): —
1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipedalia), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.
2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.
3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trahs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.
4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, crates) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.
5. Piles (sublicae) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

193 22 tigna: probably unhewn logs. — bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.

193 24 pedum duorum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. — cum . . . defixerat, etc.: cum here equals whenever or as often as and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 180 22 and note.

193 26 sublicae modo, like a pile.

193 27 ut . . . procumbent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.

193 29 ab inferiore parte, downstream. — contra . . . conversa, slanting against; agrees with duō [tigna].

193 30 haec utraque . . . distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum . . . distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. For number of utraque, see Vocabulary.
2 quibus [tignis]... revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (tigna) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

4 rerum, structure: see note on 78. — quo maior... hoc artius: the greater... the more closely, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in fibulis, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties. But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.

5 haec... contextebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise.

7 sublica... agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current.

8 pro ariete, as a buttress.

10 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not. — spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

11 deiciendi operis, to throw down the work: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.1 (298. r.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. r.2; H. 626. 5 (544. N.2); H-B. 616, last example.

12 neu... nocerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.

14 Chap. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when. — coepsta erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; C. 150 1; see also l. 20 below.

15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 192 21.

16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.

21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of abdiderant; we say 'hid in,' etc.

27 Chap. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., se daturum, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv., according to the rule.

28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see notes on 913, 50 8.

1 per exploratores: cf. note on 154 14.
Second Invasion of Germany.

196 3 uti...convenient: object-clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase nuntius...dimississe, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

196 5 hunc, etc., this had been selected about the middle, etc.: medium is used as a pred. agreeing with hunc in preference to an adverbial phrase in medio; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. r.8; H. 497. 4 (440. n.3); H-B. 244.

196 7 decertare: not merely fight, but fight the decisive battle or decide the issue. This force of de is very common.

196 10 ut...liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with rebus, and their form as result-clauses is determined by confectis. For infinitive clause in apposition, cf. 176 4 and note. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, having accomplished, etc. (namely), inspired,... chastised,... relieved.

196 13 arbitratus: cf. 148 17 and note.

Book Sixth, 9-29.—B.C. 53.

The Second Invasion of Germany and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans.—Cæsar's first invasion of Germany was immediately followed by his first invasion of Britain. In the following year (b.c. 54), he went to Britain again in force, but was able to accomplish but little. On his return, he was compelled to put down a rebellion of the Gauls, so serious that he lost a division of his army and barely saved another from the same fate. The last campaign, mainly unsuccessful as it was, must have been in the eyes of the Gauls at least as good as a drawn battle, and have given them fresh hope in the struggle. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine,—a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

Reading References on Cæsar's Sixth Campaign.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 17 (last part).
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 6.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 9.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Taylor's Hist. of Germany, chaps. 1 and 2.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 7.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

196 19 Chap. 9. *paulo supra*, a little above, or to the south, probably near Andernach.

196 20 *nota . . . ratione*, on the plan already tried and approved (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17).

197 1 *purgandi sui*: § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); H-B. 614.

197 5 *cognita*, having inquired into.

197 9 Chap. 10. *paucis post diebus*: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. n.4; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 424.

197 10 *eis . . . imperio*: subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Germania, 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Caesar’s time, have been admitted to alliance.

197 18 *quaeque*: -que connects *mittant* and *cognoscant*.

197 22 *silvam*: this was the natural frontier and defence (*pro nativo muro*) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cheruscii held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

198 1 Chap. 11. *locum*, etc.: here there is really nothing to tell, as Caesar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

198 7 *existimantur*: is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

198 8 *quorum*: the antecedent is *principes*.

198 9 *deeat*: is characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those namely who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents. A good illustration is found in modern political bosses.

198 10 *ne . . . egeret*: in app. with *eius rei*, the past tense (*egeret*) taking its time from *institutum* [esse]: § 485. j, 585. a (287. i, 336. b. n.9); B. 268. 7. b, 268. 2; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 483.

198 13 *haec . . . Galliae, this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul.*

198 14 *divisae*: adj. use of the participle; cf. *divisa*, 143 1.

198 15 Chap. 12. *cum . . . venit*: notice the difference between this and the *cum* in descriptive clauses (cf. 16 5, 144 8). Here it means merely ‘at the time when,’ and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

198 16 *Sequani*: these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni. *—hi, the latter.*
Second Invasion of Germany.

198 17 antiquitus: really only a little while before, as the Hædui had risen by favor of the Romans.

198 18 clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.

198 24 iurare: i.e. the Hædui.

198 25 nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

199 1 infectare, without effecting his object.

199 2 adventu Caesaris...dimiserant: this long Latin periodic sentence should in our idiom be rendered by several coordinate sentences (cf. note on 164 18).—facta commutatione: i.e. by his friendship to the Hædui and the defeat of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.

199 4 ei: subj. of videbant.

199 6 reliquis rebus: abl. of specification.

199 8 adaequare, were equal; i.e. to the Hædui. (The infin. clause quos adaequare is the subj. of intellegebatur, which is used impersonally.)

199 9 gratia: abl. of specification.

199 11 dicabant: distinguish from dicebant.

199 13 statu: loc. ablative.

199 16 Chap. 13. plebes: here a noun of the fifth declension; cf. plebs.

199 18 cum...premuntur: a general condition expressing repeated action, cum meaning whenever or as often as. The perf. indic. would be more usual; cf. si qua, etc., 156 23.

199 21 quae dominis (dat. of poss.), as masters have.

199 22 druidum (pred. gen.), that of the druids.—illi: the former.

199 25 hi: i.e. the druids.

199 26 eos: i.e. the Gauls.

199 27 quod facinus, any crime.

200 1 idem: nom. plural.

200 2 qui: why not quis? Observe also si qui in l. 10 below.

200 3 sacrificiis: abl. of separation; understand eos with interdicunt. —poena: like an excommunication, taboo, or boycott.

200 5 decedunt (with dat.): sc. de via (i.e. ‘make way for’ them in the street).

200 6 incommodi: part. gen. following quid.

200 13 Carnutum: this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

200 16 disciplina, system of doctrine; cf. meaning of the same word in 199 25. —Britannia: many think that druidism originated in Gaul and was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.
200 21 CHAP. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.

201 2 numerum versuum: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.

201 4 fas: the words fas and nefas refer to what is religiously right and wrong; ius and iniuria refer to human obligations only.

201 8 litteris confos, by trusting to written words, a useful hint to teachers.

201 11 hoc (acc.), more usually illud, refers to what follows; hoc (abl.) to what has just been said.

201 12 transire: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.

201 15 mundi, the universe (system of things); terrarum (cf. orbis terrarum), the world.

201 17 CHAP. 15. equitum: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal noblesse of France before the Revolution.—

cum est: notice the force of the indicative. See note on cum . . . premun-
tur, 199 18. — usus: a noun; see Vocabulary.

201 21 ut quisque . . . amplissimus, ita plurimos, the more powerful . . . the greater number: § 313. b (93. c, at end); G. 642. r.2; H. 515. 5 (458. 2).

201 22 ambactos: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of servus, slaves, as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. 199 16—21.

201 27 CHAP. 16. homines immolant: it is not certain that the practi-
ce of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Caesar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

202 3 plācāri: distinguished from placēre. — publice: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.

202 4 habent instituta: cf. 17 15, 147 16, and notes.

202 9 cum . . . deficit: cf. cum est, 201 17.

202 19 CHAP. 17. Mercurium: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (Teutates?); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been
Second Invasion of Germany.

identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian Thor. (See Esquisse de la Religion des Gaulois, by Henri Gadioz.)

202 20 cum, etc.: see 199 18 and note.
202 21 ceperint: subj. of informal indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.

203 2 neglecta religione: i.e. in violation of his vow.—capta, taken as spoil.—apud se, at his house.
203 3 posita, consecrated as a gift.

203 5 Chap. 18. Dite, Pluto, the god of Darkness, or of the Underworld, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them: see § 403. a. N.¹ (244. a. r.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b.

203 7 noctium, etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e. g. the Germans (Tacitus, Germania, 11). Our word “fortnight” is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.

203 9 ut...subsequentur: i.e. the calendar day began at sunset.

203 10 fere (with hoc): i.e. speaking loosely.—suos liberos, etc. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again cum with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. 202 90. Observe that this perf. becomes a present in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.

203 13 turpe ducunt, they consider it disgraceful, turpe being pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause.

203 14 Chap. 19. quantas...communicant: i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife’s marriage portion.

203 16 ratio habetur, a reckoning is kept.

203 17 fructus, revenues or profits.—vita: abl. of specification.

203 19 viri in uxores, etc.: cf. the Roman patria potestas; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.

203 20 de uxoribus: this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans; see Tacitus, Germania, 18. — in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, i.e. by torture.

203 23 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.

203 24 excruciatus interficium: cf. 67 16, 152 12, and notes.—pro
cultu, considering the degree of civilization.

203 27 hanc = nostram (cf. 148 5), i.e. a generation ago.

204 1 dilectos: distinguish from delectos.—iustis, regular, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents
was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls
in immortality, which is fully attested.

204 3 Chap. 20. quae civitates = eae civitates quae; a relative
clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent.

204 4 legibus sanctum, established by law, agreeing with the sentence
si . . . communicet (obj. of habent); cf. 147 16.

204 6 neve, and that not, the regular connective for a negative purpose-
clause. — quo: indef., any one.

204 7 quod saepe, etc.: cf. the lively account 187 9–17.

204 9 quae visa sunt, what they think fit to conceal (understand
 occultanda).

204 11 per concilium, by means (or, in the proceedings) of the public
assembly.

204 14 Chap. 21. neque druides habent: i.e. this particular hierarchy.
They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms
public and private.

204 15 deorum numero, etc. In this, Cæsar’s testimony is directly
contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Germania, 9) of their worship of
Mercury, Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction
between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions
there is a striking agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we
bear in mind that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and
had relatively little to do with them. This description of the Germans
may be profitably compared with Cæsar’s account of the Suevi in the
opening chapters of Bk. iv.

204 19 a parvis, from childhood. — qui . . . permanserunt: i.e. “who
are slowest to outgrow” their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: ‘sera juvenum venus,
eoque inexhausta pubertas’; and contrast the premature debaucheries of
the Roman youth.

204 20 hoc: abl. of cause.

204 23 nulla occultatio: like the English ‘there is no hiding.’

204 25 renonum: i.e. small cloaks of hide. — magna . . . nuda: abl.
abs.

204 26 Chap. 22. agri culturae: as to this chapter, cf. what is said
in the Introduction to Cæsar and in Bk. iv. ch. 1, where it is shown that
the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by
that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though
“barbarians,” not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

204 27 neque quisquam, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation
of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (cognitionibus),
is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.
Second Invasion of Germany.

205 1 finis proprios, private lands.
205 2 gentibus, etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.
205 3 quantum agri, as much land; agri is part. gen.
205 6 agri cultura: notice the use of the abl., here to be rendered for; § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. 4 (422. N.4); H-B. 427. 1, cf. 431. — ne . . . expelled: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Caesar in his own consulship had attempted to check, following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the potentiores had already succeeded in ousting the humiliores, and enormous plantations, cultivated by slaves, had taken the place of the earlier peasant freeholds.
205 11 cum . . . videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.
205 13 Chap. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.
205 14 virtutis: § 385. c 234. d; B. 204. 2; G. 359. R.1; H. 435. 4 (391. ii. 4); H-B. 339. c.
205 16 prope, near; consistere, to stay or settle. The infinitive clauses are in apposition with hoc.
205 17 cum . . . infert: note the force of pres. indic. with cum; cf. 199 18 and note.
205 18 magistratus . . . deliguntur: by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.
205 19 praesint, habeat: subjv. of characteristic.
205 21 principes . . . pagorum: these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tacitus, Germania, 12).
205 22 latrocinia . . . extra finis: as with the "cattle-lifting raids" of the Scottish Borderers.
205 25 ubi quis, etc., whenever any one, equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.
205 26 profiteantur: representing an inv. form in the direct discourse.
206 2 omnium rerum fides, confidence in anything.
206 3 qui . . . venerunt: again the perf. indic. in the protasis of a general condition,— whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever; cf. 202 20.
206 6 CHAP. 24. cum ... superarent: a clause of characteristic, such that, etc.; see § 535. a. N.8 (322. r.); G. 631. 2; H. 591. 4 (503. i. N.9); H-B. 521. 1.

206 7 superarent, inferrent, mitterent: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.

206 10 Hercyniam silvam: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. — Graecia: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.

206 11 Volcae Tectosages, etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany; or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

206 16 Gallis: indir. obj. of largitur, multa being the direct object.

206 22 CHAP. 25. iter: acc. of extent; cf. 188 3. — expedito (dat.): i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage. — non ... noverunt: i.e. the Germans who lived there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (Stunden) instead of miles.

206 24 Nemetum, etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle. — recta regione: i.e. parallel.

206 25 Dacorum, etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.

206 26 sinistrorsus: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.

207 1 huius: that familiar to the Romans, viz. western.

207 2 [aut audisse]: may be omitted in translation. — initium: as we should say 'the end,' eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.

207 3 processerit: subjv. as an intermediate clause in indir. disc. for perf. indicative.

207 4 acceperit: subjv. of characteristic.

207 5 quae, such as, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

207 6 differant: subjv. of characteristic.

207 8 CHAP. 26. bos: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the reindeer, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.

207 9 unum cornu: this description is unintelligible.

207 10 palmae ramique (hendiadys; cf. note on 90 17), branching antlers, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.

207 13 CHAP. 27. alces: this name is undoubtedly elks, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.
Second Invasion of Germany.


207 17 si...conciderunt: cf. 206 3 and note. By what tense should this perfect be rendered? The same construction occurs below in l. 20, cum est animadversum, and in l. 23, cum reclinaverunt.

207 21 omnes: with arbores.

207 22 ab radicibus, at the roots.—accidunt, cut into.—tantum ut, etc.: lit. 'so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left'; translate so that to all appearances they are standing firmly.

207 26 Chap. 28. uri: this name is generally understood to refer to the German Urochs (the primitive or wild ox, probably buffalo), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania. Caesar evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

208 6 quae sint testimonio, to serve as evidence, a purpose-clause.

208 7 ne...excepti, not even when caught quite young.

208 12 Chap. 29. Caesar, etc. This chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

208 14 supra: see 204 26.

208 15 ne...tolleret: as would be done by completely destroying the bridge.

208 16 barbaris: dat.; § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d'; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.—atque, and at the same time.—ut tardaret: which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

208 17 auxilia: i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

208 19 in extremo ponte. There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (extremo), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 70.

208 20 cohortium: these were auxiliaries, as it appears in ch. 33 that he took all his legions with him.

208 22 cum maturescere, etc.: i.e. early in August.

208 24 Arduennam: the modern Ardennes.

208 26 D: an obvious mistake, possibly of some抄ist. The distance is about 150 miles.

208 27 Basilum: afterwards one of the conspirators against Caesar.—si...possit, (to see) whether he can, etc.: see § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460. (b); H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.1); H-B. 582. 2 and a.

208 30 subsequi: notice the pres. for the future.
BOOK FOURTH, 20–36.—B.C. 55.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, after Cæsar had returned from his first expedition into Germany, he sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a “demonstration.” Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarce's Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus's Agricola.

209 1 Chap. 20. exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.

209 2 ad septentriones, towards the north: cf. Bk. i. ch. 1, p. 144.

209 4 omnibus bellis: abl. of time.—hostibus: dat. after submini-

209 5 si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.

209 6 fore: the subject is practically the clause si . . . cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if, etc. In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly ‘that fact,’ ‘that result,’ implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply ‘it.’

209 7 adisset, etc.: the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. adieit of dir. disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's action is given in the perf. (contendit), his reasons are in the imperf. (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); cf. note on 5 9. The conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, etc., are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. discourse.
First Invasion of Britain.

209 8 quae omnia, all of which: § 346. e (216. e); B. 201. i. b; G. 370. r.²; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. N.); H-B. 346. c. For the order, cf. 17 8, 183 17 and note.

209 9 Gallis ... incognita: probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of the Veneti, 174 19. — neque enim: neg. of etenim, to be rendered with quisquam, for no one; § 324. h (156. d); cf. B. 341. 2. d; G. 498. n.³; cf. H-B. 311. 6. a and b.

209 10 illo: adv.; see Vocabulary. — neque ... quicquam, and nothing: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective.—eis: dat. after notum; § 375 (232. a); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

209 11 Gallias: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

209 12 vocatis ... mercatoribus, etc., he called the traders, but could not, etc.

209 13 quanta ... portus: these indir. questions follow reperire poterat. Notice that the imperf. poterat is used rather than potuit, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.

209 14 quem usum, what degree of skill.—belli: cf. note on 71 3.

209 17 Chap. 21. faceret: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar's mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. a; see also 69 7 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as "before making the attempt."

209 18 idoneum: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. — Volusenum: one of Cæsar's tribunes. — navi longa: see chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 61, 63.

209 21 Morinos, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

209 23 quam ... classsem: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.—Veneticum bellum: see Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

211 1 insulae: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

211 2 qui pollicieantur: a purpose-clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. participle.

211 3 dare: complem. infin., instead of se daturos [esse], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. c. n. (330. f. N.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. n.⁴; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. a.—imperio: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.
Atrebatibus (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. r. 1; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

fidelem, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.

magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — huic: indir. obj. of imperat; the order he gave is the whole clause down to nuntiet.

fidem sequantur, i.e. accept the protection of.

se: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. discourse.

quantum (sc. tantum) . . . auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.

auderet: subjv. of characteristic.

perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. e (287. e); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r. 1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

superioris temporis, of the season before.

hominis barbari, being (as they were) barbarians. — consuetudinis: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

feccissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. discourse.

pollicentur: the same construction as excusarent above.

arbitratus: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

belli gerendi: obj. gen.; connect with facultatem.

has . . . anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of [the invasion of] Britain. For the number of occupationes, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N. 6; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

indicabat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 5 2.

navibus: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — coactus, gathered from various quarters; [contractus] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 68). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.
First Invasion of Britain.

211 28 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.

211 29 quod...habebat, what galleys he had besides.

212 2 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — tenebantur quo minus, were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b (317. b. N.¹, 319. c); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. N.²); H-B. 502. 3. b.

212 4 equitibus: of these there were 450.

212 10 Chap. 23. tertia...vigilia, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — solvit, cast off the ships: a technical phrase used like our 'weighed anchor.' — equites: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

212 12 paulo tardiis: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

212 13 hora...quarta: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

212 16 montibus angustiis, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

212 18 dum...convenienter, until the other ships should come up: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is dum followed by the indic.? cf. 41 2, 45 21, 63 21.

212 22 ut...postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require: rel. clause following monuit [ut]...administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. Ut is omitted after monuit, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

212 23 ut quaes...haberent, since they have, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. c (320. c); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and b.

212 25 his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts (observe the distributive effect of di-). — aestum...secundum: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

212 27 progressus: towards the north.

212 28 aperto...litore: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

213 2 Chap. 24. essedariis: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 121, 122. — quo...genere: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, 219 7 ff.

213 3 consuerunt: to be translated by what tense? cf. 156 24 and note. — egressi: infin. for the more usual ne or quominus with the subjv.; cf. 212 8 and note.
213 5 alto: here a noun; see Vocabulary.
213 6 militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down.
213 7 oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. Notice
in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main
idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing
directly with militibus.
213 9 cum . . . concercent, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good
example of cum and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. 7 5, 160 23.
213 11 insuefactos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.
213 13 generis: gen.; cf. 211 19.
213 14 pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.
213 15 Chap. 25. navis: subject of removeri; § 563. a (330. B. 2);
B. 331. ii, 587. b; G. 423. N. 6; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. b.
213 16 insitiatior, quite strange.
214 2 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields.—
inde: connect with propelli ac submoveri.

214 3 tormentis: see chapter on military affairs, r. 5, and Figs. 75, 94, 92.—
ac: notice that this word always adds
something with emphasis.
214 4 quae res, a manœuvre which:
cf. 183 17 and see note on 17 8.
214 8 qui . . . ferebat, the one who
charged: the antecedent of qui is the
understood subject of inquit.—X legi-
onis: again the splendid tenth distinguishes
itself; cf. 116 11.
214 9 obtestatus, appealing to. Such
prayers almost always preceded any formal
address among the Romans, like "God save
the Commonwealth of Massachusetts." The
words would be Quod vobis feliciter
eveniat, desilite, etc. — legioni, imperatori: dat. of reference.
214 10 nisi voltis: a present simple condition; § 515 and a (306 and a);
B. 302 and 4; G. 595; H. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.
214 11 ego certe . . . praestitero, I at any rate shall have done, etc.:
§ 478. N. (281. R.); B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.
214 14 inter se, one another: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H.
502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — universal, in a body.
214 15 ex proximis navibus, from the nearest ships. Omit [primis].
214 16 adpropinquaverunt: the subject is the soldiers, implied.
First Invasion of Britain.

214 17 Chap. 26. ab utrisque, on both sides: cf. utraque, 193 30.

214 18 poterant ... submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — alius alia ex navi, men from different ships: § 315. e (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1 (459. i); II-B. 265. — quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat.

214 21 ubi ... conspexerant ... adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, whenever they saw, etc.; cf. 180 29, 193 24, and notes.

214 22 singularis, scattered soldiers.

214 23 adoriebantur, would attack: to express the repeated action. So, too, circumstistebant and coniebant.

214 24 ab latere aperto: see 214 2. — in universos, upon the whole body. This word means not merely all, but all at once, or all together, and the like; cf. universi, 214 14.

214 26 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — quos ... conspexerat ... submittebat: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (l. 21), quos equallg whomsoever, or if any.

214 28 simul [atque], as soon as. — suis omnibus consecutis, and all their comrades had joined them.

215 1 longius, very far. — quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 212 1-4.

215 3 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander.

215 6 Chap. 27. quae imperasset, what he should require (in dir. disc. quae imperaveris).

215 7 quem ... praemissum [esse]: cf. 211 5-11.

215 9 hunc, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretense. — oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).

215 13 ut ignoscetur, that their act might be pardoned: ignosco may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. 1 a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

215 14 cum ullo, etc.: cf. 211 1-3.

215 15 bellum ... intelisissent: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Caesar's expedition for an invasion. — ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 158 7.

215 17 acessitam, after they had been fetched.

215 18 remigrare, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

215 21 Ch. 28. *post diem quartum quam*, three days after (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N. 4 a; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 550. c.

215 22 *naves*, etc.: see 212 1.

215 25 *Britanniae*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — *tempestas*: from the northeast.

215 26 *aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.*

216 2 *propius . . . occasum*: cf. 188 26.

216 3 *cum . . . complerentur, since they began to fill*: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

216 4 *adversa nocte, in spite of the darkness.*

216 6 Ch. 29. *eadem nocte*: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

216 7 *aestus maximus, very high tides.* The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

216 9 *navis*: obj. of *compleverat.* — [quibus, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

216 11 *addictabat* (intensive), dashed about.

216 12 *facultas, etc.:* i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

216 14 *funibus . . . amissis, etc., from the loss of, etc.*

216 15 *id quod*: § 307. d (200. e); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. r. 2; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. N. 2.

217 1 *quibus = ut eis*: result.

217 2 *quod . . . constabat, because it was understood: the subject is oportere, of which the subject is *hiemari, that it was best to winter in Gaul.*

217 3 *provisum*: see note on 153 23.

217 5 Ch. 30. *principes*: subject of *duxerunt* in l. 11.

217 9 *hoc*: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 72 25.

217 10 *optimum*: in pred. agreement with *frumento . . . producere.*

217 11 *factu*: cf. 61 17. — *duxerunt*: see Vocabulary. — *frumento commeatuque, corn and other supplies.*

217 12 *rem, the campaign. — his . . . interclisis, if these should be overcome, etc.:* abl. abs. expressing condition.
First Invasion of Britain.

217 15 rursus: not 'a second time,' which would be iterum, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.
217 16 deducere: i.e. from their farms; cf. 215 18-20.
217 17 Chap. 31. at Caesar: emphatic transition to Caesar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 166 21.
217 18 ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships.—ex eo quod, from the fact that.
217 19 suspicabatur, began to suspect.
217 21 quae...naives, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.
217 22 aere: the Romans used the word aes both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.
217 23 quae...usui: the antecedent of quae is ea, the understood subject of comportari; see note on qui...appellantur, 143 2.
217 25 reliquis...effectit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, imper.) tolerably with the rest.
218 1 Chap. 32. geruntur: § 556 (276. c); B. 293. i; G. 229. r.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with dum when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of dum, 212 18.—frumentatum: supine; cf. 79 1.
218 3 pars hominum, some of the people.
218 4 remaneret: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy.—ventitaret, returned from time to time: frequentative or iterative; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.
218 5 statione: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
218 6 quam...ferret, than usual.
218 7 id quod erat, what was the fact.
218 8 aliquid...consili (part. gen.), that some new design was on foot; infin. clause in apposition with id.
218 11 armari, to arm: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.—paulo longius, some little distance.
218 12 premi...sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

218 13 conferta legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

219 2 una, only one. — suspicati, supposing: cf. 211 22 and note.

219 4 dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros, understood from the preceding line.

219 5 incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.

219 7 Chap. 33. ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.

219 8 terrae equorum: objective gen., the terror that the horses arouse.

219 10 cum se... insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between: the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis... proeliantur, being the apodosis; cf. 193 24. The perf. indic. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.

219 12 illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.

219 13 expeditum... receptum, a ready retreat.

219 15 praestant, exhibit. Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see p. 190, ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry.

219 16 uti... consuerint: clause of result following efficiunt. — declivi ac praecipiti loco, a steep downward slope.

219 17 incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (complementary infin. after consuerint). — brevi, within a short space.

219 18 iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.

219 20 Chap. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances: abl. of means. — nostris: dat. following auxilium tuit. — novitate: depends on perturbatis.

219 24 alienum tempus, unfavorable time; so suo would be favorable (cf. “one’s own time”).

220 1 quae... continent: note the subjunctive.
Second Invasion of Britain.

220 4 quanta... facultas dareetur: indir. quest. following demonstration.

220 5 sui liberandi: cf. 197 1 and note.

220 10 Chap. 35: ut... effugerent: a result-clause in app. with idem, the subject of fore, namely, that if, etc.

220 11 effugerent, would escape: the future idea is given by fore.—equites XXX: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

220 12 ante: i.e. 211 5-11, 215 7-11.

220 15 tanto spatio, over as much ground: § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. c.

220 22 Chap. 36. die aequinoctii, etc. (September 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinoctial was near and his ships were unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred September 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

220 26 eodem portus, the same ports with the others.

220 27 paulo infra: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.

Book Fifth, i-23. — B.C. 54.

Second Invasion of Britain. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Caesar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the esparto, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Caesar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from Portus Itius, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.

Reading References on the Second Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Caesar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Caesar, chap. 12.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, pp. 199-206.
Froude's Caesar, last part of chap. 16.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 8.
Scarfe's Roman Britain, chaps. 2 and 3.
Tacitus's Agricola.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 6.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

221 1 Chap. 1. L. Domitio, etc.: cf. 183 1 and note. The consuls entered on their office January 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been December 12. Cæsar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.

221 2 ut quotannis, etc.: cf. 172 22.

221 4 navis: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — navis . . . curent, have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired: cf. 61 11, 178 7 and note.

221 5 modum formamque, style of build.

221 6 subductionis: the vessels of the ancients were usually 'beached' and not left at anchor. — humiliores: agrees with eas, the understood object of facit; see note on 160 26.

221 7 nostro: i.e. the Mediterranean.

221 8 id: sc. facit; § 319 (206. c); B. 166. 3; H. 388. 5 (368. 3. n.1); H-B. 222. a.

221 9 minus magnos seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry 'chopping seas' of the Mediterranean.

221 10 iumentorum: not pack-animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see 214 27 ff.

221 11 actuarias: fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.

221 12 humilitas: as compared with the high-banked galleys.

221 13 armandas, fitting out: see introductory note.

221 14 conventibus, proconsular or provincial courts. These courts were regularly held in the winter.


221 17 imperat: in the sense of to levy, to make requisition for, impero takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.

222 5 arbitros, arbitrators.

222 6 litem, amount of damages. — poenam: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.

222 8 Chap. 2. Galliam revertitur: Cæsar's activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about January 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.

222 9 circumitis, having inspected: see last note on 144 13; § 388. b (237. d); B. 175. 2. a; G. 331; H. 406 (372); H-B. 391. 2. ftn.
222 10 studio, etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.

222 12 neque ... quin, and are not far from the condition that; eo is antecedent to the vague relative idea in quin, etc.

222 15 Itium: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23, and note on 211 87).

222 17 XXX: a little less than 28 English miles.—[transmissum]: omit in translation.

222 18 satis ... militum, enough soldiers: part. genitive.

222 19 Treverorum: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern Trèves. This, their principal town (Augusta Treverorum), was long the seat of Roman power in northern Gaul.

222 20 concilia, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest.—veniebant, etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; § 471. f (277. g); G. 233.

222 20 dicebantur: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.

222 23 CHAP. 3. Galliae: part. gen.; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. i; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

222 24 ut supra demonstravimus: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 11.

222 27 alter, the latter, Cinetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.

223 1 suos: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cinetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.

223 2 at: marking the transition to the other man.

223 4 cogere: with instituit, l. 8.

223 5 Arduennam: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.

223 11 petere: used absolutely (i.e. without an object); ask his decision or assistance.—civitati, etc.: they were prevented by Indutiomarus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Cæsar for themselves individually.

223 12 possent: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjunctive.

223 16 laberetur, lit. 'fall off' (from obedience).

223 17 se ... eius fidei permissurum, to put ... under his protection.

223 22 CHAP. 4. omnibus ... comparatis, now that, etc.
223 28 quod cum, etc.: Cæsar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.

223 29 cum . . . intellegebat, considered on the one hand.—cum . . . tum: see Vocabulary; eius refers to Cingetorix, se to Cæsar.—merito eius, according to his deserts: § 418. a (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397: H. 480 (424); cf. H-B. 414.—magni interesse: § 417 (252. a); cf. B. 203. 3: G. 380: H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 356. 1.

224 2 [suam . . . minui]: in app. with id factum, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.

224 3 qui . . . fuisset, while, etc.: § 535. e (320. e); cf. B. 283. 3. b: G. 634; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 523.

224 4 hoc dolore, this grievance; properly, indignation at this.

224 6 CHAP. 5.  in Meldis: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

224 8 eodem (adv.) = in eundem locum.

224 13 loco, in the condition: § 429. 3 (254. a); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. n.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.

224 14 cum . . . abesseit, while he should be away: a fut. idea (cum abero) thrown into the past by verebatur.

224 15 CHAP. 6. Dumnorix: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance.

224 19 accedebat hoc quod, to this was added the fact that: cf. 180. 9 for a different construction after accedebat.

224 20 deferri: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Cæsar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.

224 21 neque, and yet not, a very common force of the word.


224 26 religionibus, scruples, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious peoples such ideas are common.

225 2 territare: histor. infin.; see 27. 10 and note.

225 3 fieri ut, etc., it was coming to pass that, etc.; or may be translated that Gaul was, etc., compressing the two clauses into one.—esse: depending on a verb of saying implied in metu territare.

225 6 interponere: same constr. as territare.—ex usu, to the advan-
tage.

225 7 intellexissent: here represents the fut. perf. of direct discourse.

225 8 deferebantur: note the force of the tense.
Second Invasion of Britain.

225 9 Chap. 7. quod...statuebat: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Cæsar to his state.

225 11 longius, too far.

225 12 prospiciendum [esse], that precautions must be taken: depends on statuebat.

225 13 quid...necere, to do some harm to: quid is cognate or adv. acc.; § 390. d. N. 2 (240. a. n.); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333; H. 409. 1 (371. ii, 378); cf. H-B. 396. 2, cf. 387. iii.

225 14 commoratus: i.e. during the delay; cf. 71 8. — Corus (or Caurus), the northwest wind.

225 15 omnis temporis, every season of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.

225 18 milites: i.e. the legionary infantry.

225 19 at: note its force and cf. 223 3. — omnium impeditis animis, while the attention of all was occupied.

225 24 si vim...iubet: informal indir. disc. The direct would be ‘si vim facit neque paret, interficie [eum].’

225 25 pro sano, rationally.

225 26 neglexisset: the tense depends on arbitratus, which is, however, essentially present in meaning; see note on commoratus, l. 14.

225 28 liberum, etc.: Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.

226 7 Chap. 8. pro tempore et pro re, to suit the time and circumstance.

226 8 pari...quem, the same...as, etc.: i.e. 2000, as in l. 5.

226 10 Africo: the southwest wind.

226 12 sub sinistra: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 73).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 P.M.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting towards the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a northwesterly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast). With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by (relictam) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to
move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been
found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking.
Here they arrived at about noon. (von Göler.)

226 16 viris, pluck, spirit. — gravibusque, and heavy-laden besides. —
navigiis: abl. of means.
226 18 accessum est (impers.): the landing was probably near Walmer
Castle.
226 20 cum: concessive.
226 22 quae . . . amplius DCCC, more than 800 of which: subject of
visae erant. — annotinis, those built the year before. — sui commodi: pred.
gen.; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340,
here expressing purpose; cf. note on deiciendi, 194 11.
These were vessels that the rich members of Cæsar’s staff had had built
for their own use.
226 27 Chap. 9. cohortibus X: i.e. two from a legion.
227 1 navibus: dative.
227 3 noctu: not nocte; see Vocabulary.
227 5 equitatu atque essedis: abl. of accomp. without cum; § 413. a
(248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. r.1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420. —
fiumen: the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. —
superiore: the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.
227 11 ipsi . . . propugnabant, they themselves rushed out of the woods
in small parties to fight.
227 19 testudine facta et aggere . . . adiecto: from the rapidity with
which this agger was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate
structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but rather a mass
of hastily collected material. We may also infer that the British strong-
hold was only rudely fortified.
228 5 Chap. 10. tripartito: i.e. following different roads.
228 7 extemi: i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.
228 8 Atrio: who had been placed in command of the camp, 227 3.
228 12 concursu: referring to the violent driving together of the ships
after they had broken from their moorings.
228 15 Chap. 11. revocari: i.e. those who were in advance and out of
sight. — resistere, to halt: i.e. those who were near.
228 17 coram perspicit: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal
examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordi-
nates. — sic ut, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true to
the extent that, etc.; ut and similar words often have a limiting meaning;
 cf. tantum, meaning only so much, and ut tamen, 89 6 and note.
Second Invasion of Britain.

228 19 fabros deligit: a certain number of carpenters (fabri lignarii) was attached to the engineer corps of the army, but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps, except that a praefectus fabrum was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, i. 4.

228 20 legionibus: abl. of means.

228 26 easdem quas, the same as: see 226 27.

228 27 eodem: i.e. to the British defences on the Stour; cf. note on

224 8.

229 4 a mari: probably from Cæsar’s place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.

229 5 huic, etc.: “The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (Caswallon), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, — formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation.” (Mommsen.) — huic . . . cum reliquis civitatis et intercesserant, had occurred between him and the other states; note the idiomatic construction.

229 8 CHAP. 12. natos in insula: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.

229 9 proditum [esse]: the subject is quos natos [esse] in insula. — pars: sc. incolumis.

229 11 eis nominibus: for example, Atrebates and Belgae.

230 3 Gallicis: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

230 4 [aut nummo aereo]: omit in translation.

230 6 plumbum album: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phenicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

230 7 exigua: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.

230 9 fagum atque abietem: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.

230 10 gallinam, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons.

230 12 frigoribus, seasons of cold.

230 17 CHAP. 13. ad Hispaniam, etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (Agricola, 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Cæsar conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

230 20 atque, as: § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. i. c; G. 643; H. 657. i. n. (554. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. a; i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

230 21 Mona: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.

230 25 ex aqua mensuris: the celf sydra, or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture something like a sand-glass. — breviore: naturally, as this was in the summer.

231 1 hoc: sc. latus.

231 6 Chap. 14. interiores: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later Picts, whose name Picti (cf. picti, painted) has been thought to denote their woad-staining. The woad plant, Isatis tinctoria, akin to the common shepherd’s purse, is still used somewhat for dyeing.

231 11 parte: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. ii (419. ii); H-B. 443.

231 13 sed qui sunt, etc., but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused.

231 14 quo (adv.) here stands for ad quos; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. r.1; H. 307. 4 (304. ii. 3. N.); H-B. 284. 10.

231 16 Chap. 15. essedarii: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

231 18 fuerint: for tense, see 181 14 and note.

231 25 atque his, and these, too. — primis: the first cohorts had the best soldiers; see chapter on military affairs, i. 7 (last part).

231 27 per medios: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

232 11 Chap. 16. [equestriis, etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated. — cedentibus et inssequentibus (abl. abs.): with eis understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

232 14 proeliarentur: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by ut with the subj. instead of the usual construction with quod and indic.; cf. 224 19 and note. — stationes, supports. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (phalanx) of the Gauls and Germans.

232 24 Chap. 17. quoad: followed by the indic.; cf. 190 9 and note.
Second Invasion of Britain.

232 25 subsidio: abl. with confisi; § 431 (254. b); B. 219. 1; G. 401. n. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. 1. 1. N.); H. B. 437.
232 27 sui conligendi: cf. 197 1, 220 5.
233 1 ex, directly after.
233 5 Chap. 18. uno loco: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the Wey. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain.
233 13 capite solo: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legions. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

234 1 Chap. 19. supra: i.e. 233 1–3.
234 3 servabat, excedebat, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing customary and repeated action, he used to; cf. 225 8.
234 4 locis, regionibus: loc. abl. — locisque impeditis ac silvestribus: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.
234 7 cum... eiecerat: a general condition; see note on cum, 180 29. Other instances of general conditions occur in 193 24, 214 21, 26.
234 9 emittebat, configebat, prohibebat: the subj. is Cassivellaunus.
234 10 hoc... prohibebat, by fear of this kept them [sc. eos] from roving too widely.
234 11 reliquebatur ut, the consequence was that.
234 12 discedi: impersonal.
234 13 tantum... quantum: correlatives; see Vocabulary.
234 14 nocreretur: impers., governs the dat. hostibus; cf. notes on 18 17, 154 3.

234 16 Chap. 20. Trinobantes: in Essex. Their chief place was Camulodunum, later Colonia Castrum, now Colchester. This defection was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.
234 18 [Galliam]: omit in translation.
234 23 mittat: sc. aliquem.
234 24 his imperat obsides: see note on 221 17.
235 2 Chap. 21. Cenimagni, etc.: these were petty populations of the vicinity.
235 4 oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans.
235 6 oppidum, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.
235 7 cum, whenever, another general condition: cf. 234 7 and note. The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the present of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the regular descriptive cum in narration.
235 9 consuerunt: what tense in translation?
235 14 multi: i.e. the people, not the cattle.
235 17 Chap. 22. supra: see 231 5.
235 18 regionibus: implying that Kent (Cantium) was divided into four recognized military commands.
235 20 castra navalia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships; see 228 21–25.
235 28 neque multum aestatis: Cæsar had now been in Britain about two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sailing and return are July 20 and September 21.
235 29 extrahi, protracted, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened the dissolution of the triumvirate and gave him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.
236 1 vectigalis (part. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.
236 7 Chap. 23. commeatibus: has its original meaning; see Vocabulary.
236 8 accidit uti, etc.: cf. 234 11 for a similar construction.
236 10 portaret, remitterentur: subjv. of characteristic.
237 1 [et]: omit. — prioris commeatus, etc., after the soldiers of the first trip had been landed.
237 2 quas: refers back to ex eis. — faciendas curaverat, had had made: cf. 61 11, 178 7. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly after the big storm; see 228 20.
237 3 locum: i.e. Britain. — caverent, reicerentur: in the same construction as desideraretur.
237 6 aequinoctium: cf. 220 22 and note.

The remainder of this Book records a desperate rebellion of the Gauls. Its events are among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the reign of Claudius.
General Uprising of Gaul.

BOOK SEVENTH, 1–15.—B.C. 52.

General Uprising of Gaul.—The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco, the chief of the Cenones and very influential throughout Gaul, which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Caesar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Caesar’s communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Caesar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N.B.—In this Book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Caesar’s Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.

Reading References on Caesar’s Seventh Campaign.

Dodge’s Caesar, chaps. 15–20.
Fowler’s Julius Caesar, chap. 13.
Froude’s Caesar, chap. 19.
Holmes’s Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul, chap. 7.
Napoleon’s Caesar, chap. 10.
Plutarch’s Lives, Caesar.
Trollope’s Caesar, chap. 8.
NOTE.—This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no *agger* is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

**238 1 Chap. 1.** *quieta Gallia*: cf. **172 18.**—*in Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

**238 3 Clodi**: see note above.—*ut ... coniurarent* (clause depending on *senatus consulto*): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy *in mass*, in which the entire population of Italy liable to military duty (the *juniores*, between 17 and 46) took the oath of service. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province (*tota provincia*), in which were included *Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina*, and *Illyricum*.

**238 7 quod videbatur**: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (*urbano motu*).

**238 9 qui dolerent**: translate by pres. part., *being indignant*, etc.; the characteristic subj. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of *cum*. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause.—*ante*: adv. modifying *dolerent*.

**238 11 principes Galliae**: subj. of *queruntur*.—*locis*: loc. abl. without a prep., as usual.

**238 13 Acconis**: see introductory remarks.

**238 15 qui**: sc. *eos*, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.

**239 1 capitis, of their lives**: the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.

**239 3 ut ... intercludatur** (see introductory note): depends on *rationem, a plan* (of campaign).

**239 9 Chap. 2.** *Carnutes*: this name is represented by Chartres.

**239 12 cavere inter se, take security from each other.**—*ne res efferatur*: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.
239 13 coniatis, etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath was taken by this symbol of unity.

239 15 deserantur: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.

239 19 Chap. 3. Cenabum: now Orléans, on the Loire.

239 20 negotiandi: their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.

239 21 constiterant, had settled.

239 24 maior atque inlustrior: i.e. than usual.

239 25 clamore: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.

239 27 Cenabi: locative.

239 28 ante...vigiliam: between nine and ten at night; the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours. — Arvernorum: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.

240 1 Chap. 4. Vercingetorix: a name or title explained as meaning “very brave lord,” and well calculated (says the historian Florus) to inspire terror.

240 2 principatum, the headship; see note, 7 15 and last note on 143 15.

240 3 totius Galliae: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.

240 5 incendit: sc. eos.

240 6 prohibetur: conative present; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.

240 8 Gergovia: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.

240 9 perditorum: men of ruined fortunes, desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.

240 15 Senones, etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

240 19 imperat, he levies, with acc. and dat.
240 20 quantum armorum, how many arms.
240 21 quod (interrog.): agrees with tempus, and before what time.
240 25 necat: i.e. the offenders.

241 3 Chap. 5. Rutenos: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.

241 6 de consilio, by the advice.
241 8 qui: agrees with the persons implied in equitatus peditatusque;
§ 280. a (182. a); B. 235. B. 2. c; G. 211. R.1; H. 397 (445. 5); H-B. 325.
241 11 veritos: translate by a causal clause.
241 12 quibus id, etc., who they knew had this plan.
241 13 ipsi: i.e. the Bituriges. — id eane, etc., whether they did this for the reason which, etc.

241 15 quod (adv. acc.), because (the reason for non videtur, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentaries, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Caesar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.

241 19 Chap. 6. virtute = vigor. This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.

241 21 qua . . . posset: indir. quest. following difficultate, which implies doubt.

241 23 se absente: Caesar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes. — dimicaturas [esse]: sc. eas, i.e. the legions.
241 24 ipse, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.— eis: indir. obj. of committi, the subj. of which is suam salutem.

242 1 Chap. 7. Lucterius, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see 241 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Caesar.

242 2 Nitiobriges et Gabalos: these completed the Arvernan frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province.

242 4 Narbonem, Narbonne, the chief town of Gallia Narbonensis, founded by C. Gracchus.

242 5 antevertendum [esse] has for its subj. ut . . . proficisceretur, and is followed by the dat. consiliis.

242 7 provincialibus: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

242 14 Chap. 8. quod . . . putabat: referring to Lucterius.

242 15 Cevenna: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.
242 16 durissimo, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.

242 18 summo . . . labore: “these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief,” but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.

242 21 singulari . . . homini, a solitary wayfarer, to say nothing of an army.

243 1 Chap. 9. at: marks a transition as usual; translate meanwhile.

243 2 usu . . . praecipserat, had suspected would come to pass. — per

causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his real motive was to join his force.

243 4 Brutum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar’s assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see 178 7–10.

243 6 triduo: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.

243 8 Viennam, Vienne, a little below Lyons on the Rhone.—recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

243 11 hiemabant: his route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles.—quid: with consili.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

243 19 de sua salute, affecting his own safety; opposed to any design on his forces.
243 13 reliquas, etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxembourg, and six at Sens, about 140 miles apart.
243 17 Gorgobinam: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.
243 18 Haeduis attribuerat: this Cæsar mentions in the first Book.
243 20 difficultatem: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, si ... contineret, ne ... deficeret, and si ... educeret, ne ... laboraret.
244 1 Chap. 10. stipendiariis: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.
244 2 amicis, etc., since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.
244 4 ab, in respect to his supply of corn.
244 10 Agedinci: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.
244 12 Chap. 11. altero die, on the second day of the march. — Vellaunodunum: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.
244 13 quo, in order that.
244 15 circumvallavit: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.
244 18 iter: i.e. to the relief of the Boii at Gorgobina.
244 19 qui tum primum, etc.: i.e. they had just heard of the investment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.
244 20 eam rem: i.e. the siege.
244 21 quod mitterent, to send, giving the purpose of comparabant.
244 24 in posterum: sc. diem.
244 25 militibus imperat, he orders the soldiers to prepare the direct obj. of imperat being a demonstrative antecedent of quae, not expressed in Latin, and in English absorbed in 'what.'
244 26 contingebat, touched: i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.
245 3 desideratis quin, etc.: a loose use of the quin-construction; all, with very few exceptions, were captured.
245 5 diripit: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.
245 8 Chap. 12. ille: i.e. Cæsar.
245 9 Noviodunum: the position is uncertain. Cæsar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum, a city of the Hædui.

245 11 celeritate: we may supply in English a demonstrative as antecedent to qua.

245 20 novi aliud . . . consili, some new design.

245 29 omnis incolumis: see l. 15 above; construe with receperunt, got their men all back safe to Cæsar's camp.

245 24 Chap. 13. Germanos: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Cæsar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described Bk. i. ch. 48.

245 25 ab initio: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.

246 2 quibus, and these (the Gallic horse).

246 3 eos (obj. of perduxerunt): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.

246 5 Avaricum: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.

247 3 Chap. 14. longe alia ratione atque, in a way quite different from, etc.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.

247 6 anni tempore: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (aedificia), which might easily be destroyed.

247 8 hos omnis: i.e. hostis.

247 10 incendi: just as the Helvetians did B.C. 58.

247 11 hoc spatio: explained by quo, etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. — [a Boia]: omit.

247 13 quorum: the antecedent is eorum.

247 15 neque interesse, and it makes no difference [he says]. — ne . . . an, whether . . . or.

247 19 sint receptacula, serve as retreats.

247 20 neu, and lest, sc. sint from preceding clause. — proposita, offered to be captured by the Romans. The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.

247 26 Chap. 15. urbes: Cæsar more commonly calls them oppida. Rome alone is always urbs.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

248 2 solaci: part. gen. with hoc.
248 3 amissa, all they had lost (obj. of recuperatos).
248 4 incendi, etc.: a double indir. quest., whether ... or.
248 9 flumine: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.
248 12 volgi: obj. gen.; i.e. his compassion for the poor people, who would be turned out of house and home in the winter, if the town should be burned.


The Siege of Avaricum.

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

248 15 Chap. 16. longe, distant. — certos (cerno), regular.
248 16 in ... tempora, from hour to hour.
248 20 etsi, etc., although so far as skilful planning (ratione) could provide (against this danger), our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.
248 21 ut ... iretur: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from provideri, though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.

248 23 Chap. 17. quae ... habebat: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (248 8 ff.).
248 24 intermissa, left free. — [a]: omit.
248 25 aggerem, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, viii.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 88). Cæsar pitched his camp on the plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the agger.

248 28 alteri: the Hœdui, already wavering in their allegiance; alteri (next line): the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians.
249 8 ab eis: the source of vox, not the agent of audita. Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.
249 14 ignominiae loco, in the place of (i.e. as) a disgrace.
249 16 Cenabi: locative.
249 17 parentarent = ut parentarent, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, 'It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades,' omitting 'to.'

249 23 Chap. 18. qui . . . consuessent: as described Bk. i. ch. 48.
250 2 sarcinas, etc.: the regular preparation for battle.
250 5 Chap. 19. difficilia, hard to cross; impedita, embarrassing; the two words express only different phases of the same idea.
250 7 fiducia loci, trusting to the strength of the position.
250 8 [in civitatis]: omit. — vada [ac saltus], fords and open spaces, where the way seemed practicable.

250 10 haesitantia, struggling in the mud or bushes. — premerent: a purpose-clause, taking its construction from sic animo parati, determined; cf. 251 3, where the same words take a result-clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.

250 11 propinquatatem: i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. — videret: the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (qui . . . perspiceret). — prope, etc., on nearly equal terms; iniquitatem (next line), unfair advantage, showing that their offering battle was inanis simulatio.

250 14 quod . . . possent: follows indignantis, chafing that, etc. — conspectum suum, the sight of them.

251 2 necesse sit, etc., a victory must needs cost, with the abl. of price.
251 4 iniquitatis: § 352 (220); B. 208. 2. a; G. 378; H. 456 (409. ii); H-B. 342.

251 8 Chap. 20. proditionis: see last note.
251 10 discessisset and venissent refer to the action in ch. 18. — imperio = imperatore.

251 12 non haec, etc., all these things could not [they said].
252 1 illum: connect with malle . . . habere.
252 2 ipsorum: sc. concessu.
252 5 persuasum [esse]: imper. that it had been recommended. — qui se . . . defenderet, which was its own defence (ch. 19).

252 19 fortunae (dat.): as well as huic (referring to alicuius), to be construed with habendum gratiam, thanks were due.

252 16 imperium: the same as regnum Galliae above.

252 18 quin etiam, may even. Distinguish carefully from quin introducing a neg. result. — remittere, is ready to resign; in dir. disc., remitto, I resign. — si = [to see] whether (indir. quest.).

252 27 nec iam viris, etc., that no one any longer has sufficient strength; viris is from vis.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

252 28 posse: sc. quemquam, supplied from cuiusquam.
252 30 [Vercingetorix]: may be omitted.
253 2 quem: construe with ne... recipiat, subj. of provisum est, and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.
253 4 Chap. 21. suo more: cf. Tacitus (Germania, 11), "si placuit sententia, frameas concuittunt.".
253 5 in eo, in the case of him.
253 6 summum: this word is often used where we should say 'a great.'
253 7 maiore ratione, with bitter generalship.
253 11 si... retinuissent: in app. with eo (that condition).
253 14 Chap. 22. genus: i.e. the Gauls.
253 15 atque... aptissimum: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; atque connects the descriptive gen. summæ sollertiae and the descriptive adj. aptissimum.
253 16 laqueis, etc.: see Fig. 124.
253 17 cum destinaiverant, ... reducebant: a general condition expressing repeated action in past time; cf. 234 7.
253 19 ferrariae: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani.
253 25 cotidianus agger: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the agger. — commissis malis, by splicing the upright timbers; these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.
253 26 apertos cuniculos... morabuntur, etc.: this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the open passage-ways which ran through the agger, and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; morabuntur has the force of blocked or obstructed. See Figs. 89, 90, 112, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.
254 2 Chap. 23. directae, at right angles with the course of the wall. — perpetuae in longitudinem, along the whole length.
254 4 revinciantur, are fastened by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall.
254 5 intervalla: i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (ordo).
254 7 ut idem, etc., in such a way that the same space (between the beams) is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them; i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.
254 11 cum: correlative with tum below.
254 15 quadragenum: note the distributive, forty each.
255 1 introrsus revincta: i.e. the beams were mortised together at some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 91.
255 4 Chap. 24. frigore: it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring.
255 6 latum: as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for longum; others, that the numeral should be xxxx.
—altum pedes LXXX: it must be remembered that the height of the agger had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.
255 11 cuniculo: i.e. a mine running under the agger. It should be remembered that the agger was built largely of wood.
255 13 turrium: the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the agger; see Figs. 59, 89, 124.
255 19 partitis temporibus: i.e. in their turn.
255 20 reducterent: i.e. out of reach of the fire.
255 21 interscinderent: i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the agger, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.
255 25 Chap. 25. pluteos: here the high wooden bulwarks (loricae) protecting each story of the tower.
255 26 nec . . . animadvertabant, and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.
256 2 accidit, etc., an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seeming worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the 'editorial we,' extremely common in Latin.
256 4 per manus . . . traditas: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.
256 5 scorpione: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, i. 5, and Fig. 92.
256 18 palus: probably the watery valley of the Auron.
257 3 Chap. 26. suorum, their husbands.
257 5 quos: refers to se as well as to liberos.
257 8 quo timore: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect cuius rei timore.
257 16 Chap. 27. [intra vineas]: it would be impossible for legions to find room inside the vineae. Either legiones here refers to the storming columns, or intra vineas means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. — expeditas, put in fighting order.
257 18 adscendissent: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.
257 22 Chap. 28. cuneatim, in a compact body; (lit. 'wedge-fashion') implying tactics like those of the Romans.
257 23 si qua . . . veniretur, if an attack should be made from any side; [contra] may be omitted; veniretur is impersonal.
257 25 circumfundi (impers. pass.) = that men were pouring in.
257 27 continenti impetu, without stopping.
258 1 exitu: abl. of cause.
258 3 quisquam: i.e. Romanorum. — Conabensi caede: see ch. 3.
258 10 [ut]: omit. — procul in via, etc., placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they [the fugitives] should be separated and conducted to their own people.
258 12 quae . . . pars = ad eam partem . . . quae and refers to the persons implied by suos, and is explained by 250 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged generatim.
258 14 Chap. 29. consolatus cohortatusque: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.
258 18 errare si qui = that those were mistaken who, etc.
258 19 sibi numquam placuisse: see 248 3-13.
258 20 quae . . . dissentirent: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.
258 27 effectum habere: see notes on 17 i5, 147 i6.
258 28 impetrari, etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.
259 5 Chap. 30. re integrā, before anything had happened (see ch. 15).
Siege of Alesia.

259 6 ut...sic: correlative.
259 9 de reliquis, etc.: follows *in spem*, hope of, etc.
259 11 *homines insueti*: an appositive expressing concession; translate by although.

After the fall of Avaricum, Vercingetorix levies new troops and prepares to continue the struggle. Caesar sends Labienus northward with four legions, and himself proceeds towards Gergovia. This city, situated on a high and steep mountain, was almost impregnable. Both Caesar and the Gauls occupied commanding positions before the city. In the operations that followed Caesar was far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that defied his assault successfully. The prestige of Vercingetorix was so greatly increased by Caesar's failure to take the city that almost entire Gaul joined the revolt. Even the Hædui, Caesar's oldest and most faithful allies, plotted against him. For a time his condition seemed almost desperate, but he managed to save his army and at least hold his own until Labienus returned from the north. Caesar then turned all his energies against Vercingetorix, who was daily becoming more powerful. In a cavalry battle the Gauls were defeated and withdrew to Alesia.

**Book Seventh, 68–90. — B.C. 52.**

**The Siege of Alesia.**

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

260 2 *Chap. 68. Alesiam*: this famous fortress (now called Alise Ste. Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Hæduan frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described:

"Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to
Notes: Second Year Latin.

blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."—Froude's "Caesar." See plan, Fig. 97.

262 2 Chap. 69. loco: in app. with cole; cf. § 282. d (184. c); B. 169. 4; G. 411. 3; H. 393. 7 (363. 4. 2); H-B. 319. i.

262 7 sub muro, etc.: this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus: Under the wall, which side of the hill (i.e. the side which) faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch, etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly grammatical in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say: Under the wall, the side... all this space the forces... and had made there, etc.

262 10 munitionis: Caesar constructed a line of contravallation; i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

262 11 milia: acc. of extent; tenebat having here the force of pertinebat.—castra, etc.: in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 96).

262 13 stationes, etc.: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (excubitoribus) on their walls.

262 18 Chap. 70. supra: i.e. l. 4.


262 20 pro castris: these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 96); castris is plural, = camps.

262 23 angustioribus, too narrow, either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy's entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (maceria); see plan.

262 24 acerius, with all the more vigor.

264 1 veniri... existimantes, thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them.

264 4 portas, town gates: these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the fossa and maceria) should rush into the town in a panic.

264 7 Chap. 71. perficiantur: for mood, cf. 69 7 and note.

264 11 suae, se: i.e. Vercingetorix.—neu, and not, the regular way of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of neu.
264 14 ratione inita, having made a calculation.
264 17 opus: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.
264 21 copias omnis: not those that held the fortification east of the
town (262 7–10), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.
264 26 Chap. 72. pedum viginti: i.e. in breadth.
264 97 directis, vertical, the bottom (solum) being as broad as the
top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was
(as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the
interior line of defence against the town.—solum: notice the quantity of
the first syllable.
265 2 [id] may be omitted. — hoc consilio, with this design, followed
by the app. clauses of purpose, ne . . . possent.
265 3 quoniam . . . ne, that, since, etc., not, etc.—esset complexus
and cingeretur are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, ne . . .
possent.
265 4 nec = et non, as usual. — totum opus, the entire work, eleven
miles in extent, according to 262 11.
265 6 operi: take with destinatos.
265 8 eadem altitudine, of equal depth.—quarum interiorem: i.e.
the one nearer the town.—campestribus . . . locis: loc. abl. describing
the situation.
265 10 aggerem: here not the technical approach used in a siege,
but a bank of earth serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the
vallum of stakes, twelve feet in height.
265 11 loricam, pinnas: these were to raise higher the defence of the
vallum.—cervis: stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting
like stags' horns. —ad commissuras, at the joining, i.e. the place where
these plutei were fixed in the agger, which would be at their lowest part.
265 12 pluteorum: the lorica was really a series of plutei, arranged
side by side on a wall and bound together.
265 13 turris: if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must
have been at least 400. —quae . . . distarent: not 'which were distant'
(this would be indic.), but so placed as to be, etc., hence subjv.; cf. 61 13.
265 15 Chap. 73. erat: with necesse; its subj. is the infinitives.—
materiari: i.e. to get timber; lignari would mean to get firewood.
265 16 copias: Caesar had about 50,000 men.
265 20 quo, in order that.
265 21 truncis arborum, etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs
were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends,
and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (quinos pedes),
and perhaps one and a half feet wide.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

265 24 huc...eminebant, those boughs being sunk in these (huc, i.e. the trenches) and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.

265 25 quini...ordines: these five rows of chevaux-de-frise, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

265 26 quo qui intraverant, whoever entered within them; protasis of a past general condition.

265 27 cippus: i.e. boundary-stones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 97.

265 29 scrobes, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (in quincuncem), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a 'lily-cup' (lilium); see Fig. 128. — paulatim...fastigio, sloping gradually towards the bottom.

265 30 teretes, round, like a cylinder, while the word rotundus means round like a ball. — huc, in these; cf. same word in l. 24.

265 31 praebusti: to harden the point.

266 2 singuli...exculcabantur, a foot of each [stake] was packed down with earth at the bottom.

266 7 taleae: blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 129. — totae, their whole length, so that only the hooks projected.

266 10 Chap. 74. regiones...aequissimas: the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 96) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. It was protected by a single ditch.

266 11 XIV milia: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see 262 11).

266 12 diversae, facing the other way.

266 14 Omit the bracketed words.

266 16 habere...convectum: see note on redactas habuerunt, 17 15.
Siege of Alesia.

266 19 CHAP. 75. omnis: subj. of convocandos [esse].
266 24 [Blannoviis]: this name is doubtful.
266 25 milia: dir. obj. of imperant, the datives being the indir. obj.
The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where imperant
is to be supplied.
268 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.
268 12 pro, in consideration of.
268 15 civitatem: i.e. the Atrebates.—immunem, free from tribute.
268 16 attribuerat, had assigned to him as a prince.
268 19 moveretur: i.e. Gallia.
268 23 Viridomaro et Eporedorigi: these Hæduan nobles had been
among Cæsar's most faithful friends and had received many favors from
him.
268 24 Vercassivellauno: in this word, as in Vercingetorix, the prefix
Ver is probably a title, like the modern 'Sir' or 'Lord.'
268 25 his: indir. obj. of attribuuntur.
268 29 ancipiti, with double front, having to be fought behind and
before.
268 30 cum... foris, etc., [in a case] where they would fight in a
sally from the town, and on the outside, etc.
270 1 CHAP. 77. at: to mark the change of scene.
270 7 crudelitatem: perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would
be constantiam.
270 10 seditionis: a mere 'laying down of arms.'
270 12 cum... est, I have to do with those.
270 14 animi est, etc.: the infin. clause following is in app. with ista.
From the English idiom we should expect istud, but in Latin such pronouns
agree with the predicate.
270 16 offerant, ferant: subjv. of characteristic.
270 17 atque, and yet.—probare... viderem: apodosis and prota-
sis in a contrary-to-fact supposition; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579
(510); H-B. 581.
270 18 tantum potest: see Vocabulary.—dignitas: i.e. of those who
advocate making a sally.
270 19 vitae nostrae: depending on iacturam, to be supplied accord-
ing to the Latin idiom.
270 21 quid animi, what heart.
270 22 propinquis, consanguineis: dat. of possessor after fore.
270 27 prosterne,ubicere: connected by nec with expoliare.
271 2 animi causa, for the pleasure of it. — illorum: the Gauls; his: the Romans. — exerceri, are toiling.

271 4 testibus, as witnesses, pred. appositive.

271 6 consili: pred. gen. — facere: sc. meum consilium est, from the preceding.

271 7 Cimbrorum: see pp. 56-8. They did great damage in laying waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.

271 12 pulcherrimum: in pred. agreement with the two preceding infinitives. — quid, etc., what was there in that war like this?

271 17 quos: the antecedent is horum.

271 21 finitimum: over the border, — the Province.

271 22 securibus: the lictors’ axes, the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).

271 27 Chap. 78. illo: observe the emphasis. — potius, with quam. — utendum [esse]: impers., governing the abl.; § 500. 3 (294. c. N.); B. 337. 7. b. 1; G. 427. N.4; H. 623. 1 (544. N.6); H-B. 600. 3. a.

272 4 prohibebat: one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the Roman lines.

272 7 Chap. 79. colle: this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the Brenne; see plan, Fig. 96.

272 10 demonstravimus: see 262 4.

272 13 concurrunt: i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.

272 16 fossam: see 264 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 96.

272 23 Chap. 80. Galli, etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German cavalry tactics.

272 26 complures: i.e. of the Roman cavalry.

273 5 neque . . . ac, etc. (perhaps a misreading for neque . . . nec), and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action, etc.

273 8 Germani: for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans decide the day for Caesar; cf. 260 9 and note.

273 12 at: what is its force here? Cf. 272 4, 270 1, and note.

274 3 Chap. 81. atque, and even.

274 4 harpagonum: iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences; see Fig. 124.

274 5 campestris munitiones, the works in the plain; i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see plan, Fig. 96.

274 6 qua = ut ea: introducing a clause of purpose.

274 8 cratis, hurdles of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.

274 13 fundis librilibus: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.
Siege of Alesia.

274 14 glandibus: leaden bullets
274 18 his auxilio: two datives.
274 19 deductos: sc. milites. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.

274 23 pilis muralibus: large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.
274 26 superioribus: on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).

274 29 fossas: this word should probably be fossam. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide; see 264 26 ff. and plan. — explent: coördinate with proferunt.

275 6 Chap. 83. collis: see plan; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.
275 13 quoque pacto, and in what manner.
275 15 Vercassivellaunum: see 268 23-25.
275 29 Chap. 84. multum valet, tends greatly.

276 1 quod . . . constare: as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.

276 4 Chap. 85. idoneum locum: i.e. where he can see everything.
276 5 utrisque, etc., the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion.
276 8 si rem obtinerint, if they (shall) gain the day.
276 11 iniquum . . . fastigium, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see 275 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.

276 13 agger: i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.
276 15 occultaverant: i.e. the stimuli, scrobos, etc., described in ch. 73.
276 17 Chap. 86. Labienum: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.

276 19 deductis . . . pugnet, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.
276 22 interiores: i.e. the Gauls within the town.
276 23 loca praerupta: probably the Heights of Flavigny.
276 24 [ex]: may be omitted.
276 26 vallum ac loricam: see 265 10 ff.

277 1 Chap. 87. integros: i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.
277 2 eo, etc.: i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.
Notes: Second Year Latin.

277 10 Chap. 88. ex colore: the purple or scarlet paludamentum. The bracketed words may be omitted.

277 12 de locis superioribus, from the high ground occupied by the Gauls.

277 13 declivia, the downward slopes. — cernebantur, were in plain sight.

277 14 excipit clamor: i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and reëchoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.

277 16 equitatus: who had been sent for that purpose as told above.

277 22 conspicati: agrees with the subj. of reducunt; sc. Galli.

277 24 quod: lit. 'as to which,' referring to the preceding sentence; § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 610. r.²; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); cf. H-B. 388. a. N.; translate and.

277 25 crebris subsidiiis, constant service in relief parties.

278 8 Chap. 89. Vercingetorix deditur: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Caesar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his "Life of Caesar" describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Caesar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Caesar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

278 9 si [to try], whether, indir. question.

278 10 capita singula, one apiece.

278 17 Chap. 90. huic: i.e. Labienus.

278 25 Bibracte: loc. ablative.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Caesar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away. The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (scrobes) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Caesar's narrative.
Close of the Campaign.

Close of the Campaign. — If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (si per eos, etc.). His aim was "not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the degenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence."

Cæsar's own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked by the Bellovaci under Commius, but the latter were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar's record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then "invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established, — a unique experience in political history."
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1 aequitas, fairness.
aequalis, equal.
aequaliter, evenly.
eaquinocium, equinox.
eaquo, equalize.
adaequo, make equal.
ago, drive.
actuarius, fast sailing.
agmen, line of march.
ager, field.
cogo, compel.
cogito, think.
adigo, force.
agito, pursue.
examino, weigh.

2 aedes, fireplace, house.
aedificium, building.
aedifico, build.
aestas, heat.
aestivus, hot.
aestus (boiling), tide.
aestuariaum, tideway.

4 aequus, even, level.
iniquus, uneven, unfavorable.
iniquitas, unfavorableness.
Groups of Related Words.

8
animus (breath), soul, mind.
animus, breath.
anima, breath.
animal, animal.
exanimis, out of breath.

9
ante, before.
antea, before.
antiquus, ancient.
antiquitus, anciently.

10
ars, art.
articulus, joint.
arma, arms.
armo, equip.
armamentum, rigging.
armatura, equipment.

11
arx, citadel.
arceo, keep off.
co-erceo, restrain.
exerceo, exercise.
exercitus, training, army.
exercitatio, exercise.

12
angeo, increase.
auctor, responsible party.
auctoritas, influence.
autumnus, harvest season.
auxillum, help.
auxiliaris, helping.
auxilior, assist.

13
cado, fall.
casus, fall, chance.
cadaver, body.
caedo, fell.
caedes, murder.
accido, befall.
accido, cut into.
concido, fall down.
concido, cut down.
incido, happen.
incido, cut into.
occido, fall.
ocasio, occasion.

14
capio, take.
captus, capacity.
captivus, captive.
accipio, receive.
decipio, deceive.
excipio, take up.
excepto, catch up.

15
caput, head.
capillus, hair.
anceps, double-headed.
paeceps, head-foremost.

cerno, separate, distinguish.
certus, fixed, certain.
crimen, charge.
certe, surely.
[certo, decide by contest.]
certamen, contest.
concerto, contend.
decerno, decide.
decerto, decide by contest.
decretum, decision, decree.
discerno, decide.
discrimen, decision.

17
circum, around.
circa, circiter, about.
circinus, compasses.
circuitus, circuit.
Groups of Related Words.

18

colo, till.
cultus, cultivation.
cultura, cultivation, culture.
[colonus, husbandman.]
colonia, colony.
icolo, inhabit.
icola, inhabitant.

19

conscius, conscious.
[consciens, being conscious.]
conscientia, conscience.
conscicio, resolve.
inscius, not knowing.
insciens, unknowing.

20

consto, be established (stand firm).
constans, firm.
constanter, firmly.
constantia, firmness.
consisto, take a stand.
constituuo, establish.

21

consul, consul.
consulatus, consulship.
consulo, consult.
consilium, plan.
consultum, decree.
consulto, by determination, designedly.
consulto, consult.

22

cresco, grow.
creber, thick.
crebro, frequently.
creo, make to grow, create.
[Ceres, goddess of growth.]

23

curro, run.
curruus, chariot.
cursus, course.
concurro, run together.
concursus, rush.
concurso, rush together.
decurro, run down.
excurso, sally.
incurro, rush upon.
incursio, attack.
incursus, rush.
percurro, run along.
succurro, run to help.

24

de, down from.
desuper, from above.
deinde, then.
demum, at last (farthest down).
denique, at last.
deterior, worse.

25

defatiscor, give out (cf. 'busted').
defessus, tired out.
defatigo, wear out.
defatigatio, exhaustion.

26

dico, say.
indico, ordain.
index, informer.
indiciun, information.
indico, give information.
index, judge.
indicium, trial.
[vindex, avenger.]
vindicato, avenger.
dictum, thing said.
dictio, pleading.
dico, adjudge.
dicio, sway ('say so').
condicio, terms.
Groups of Related Words.

27

dies, day.
diu, long, all day.
interdiu, by day.
diutinus, long continued.
diurnus, by day, daily.
diurnarius, long.
diurnitas, length of time.
biduum, two days.
triduum, three days.

dies, day.
cotidie, every day.
cotidianus, daily.
hodie, to-day.
pridie, the day before.
postero die, the next day.
postridie, the day after.
[perendie, day after to-morrow.]
perendinus (adjective).

docos, give.
dedos, give over.
deditus, devotion.
deditio, surrender.
dediticius, surrendered.
reddo, give back.
trado, hand over.
donum, gift.
donos, present.

29
duo, two.
bis, twice.
bini, two apiece.
bellum, for duellum, war.
dubius, doubtful.
dubium, doubt.
dubito, doubt.
dubitatio, doubt.
duplex, double.
duplico, double.

31
emo (take), buy.
eximius, exceptional.
exemplum, specimen.

32
equus, horse.
eques, horseman.
equester, of cavalry.
equitatus, cavalry.
[equito], ride.
adequito, ride up.
perequito, ride over.

33
ex, out.
exter, outer.
extra, outside.
extremus, last.

34
facio, make, do.
beneficus, well doing, beneficent.
facilis, easy (to do).
facultas, facility.
dificilis, difficult.
dificilias, difficulty.
dificulter, with difficulty.
facio, employment, party.
facies, face (the 'make').
factum, deed.
facinus, deed (usually evil).
artifex, artist.
conficio, make up.
perficio, accomplish.

35
fides, faith.
fidelis, faithful.
perfidus, faithless.
perfidia, perfidy.
Groups of Related Words.

fiducia, confidence.
foedus, treaty.
infidelis, unfaithful.
confido, trust.

36
finis, bound, boundary.
fines, country.
finio, set bounds.
finitor, neighboring.
appendix, connection.
appendix, connection (by marriage).
confinis, adjacent.
confinium, neighborhood.
definio, set limits, fix.

37
fors, chance.
fortuito, accidentally.
fortuna, fortune.
fortunatus, fortunate.

38
fruor, enjoy.
fructus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitful.
fruges, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

39
fugio, fly.
fuga, flight.
fugo, put to flight.
fugitius, a runaway.
effugio, escape.
perfuga, refugee.
perfugio, escape to.
perfugium, refuge.
profugio, flee forth.
refugio, run away.

40
gero, carry, carry on.
res gestae, exploits.
[aggero, heap up.]
agger, earthworks.
congerno, heap together.
suggestus, raised mound.

41
iacio, throw.
iaculum, javelin.
iaece, lie.
actura, loss.
acto, toss about.

42
is, this.
item, likewise.
ita, so.
itaque, therefore.
iterum, again.
idem, the same.
ideo, therefore.
ipse, himself.
eo, thither.
ea, that way.

43
iubeo, order.
iussu, by order.
inussu, without orders.

44
ius, right.
iudex, judge.
iudicum, judgment.
iudico, judge.
adiudico, assign.
deludico, decide (between).
iurius, wrong.
iustus, just.
iustitia, justice.
iuro, swear.
coniuro, conspire.
coniuratio, conspiracy.

45
[lego, choose.]
legio, levy, legion.
delectus, levy.
legionarius, soldier.
lex, law.
[lego, assign by law.]
legatus, lieutenant.
legatio, embassy.
deligo, select.
diligo, love.
intellego, understand.

46
[libet], it pleases.
libenter, willingly.
liber, free.
liberi, children.
libertas, freedom.
liberalia, generous.
liberaliter, generously.
liberalitas, generosity.
libero, set free.

47
mane, in the morning.
maturus, early, ripe.
mature, early.
maturus, make haste.
matureasceo, ripen.

48
memini, remember.
mens, mind.
[demens], mad.
dementia, madness.
mentio, mention.
[memor], mindful.
memoria, memory.
moneo, remind.

49
reminiscor, remember.
commemoro, mention.

moveo, move.
motus, motion.
mobilis, mobile.
mobiliter, easily.
mobilitas, mobility.
momentum, means of motion.
commuto, change.

50
nasco, be born.
natus, birth.
natalis, of birth.
nativus, native.
natura, nature.
natio, race.

51
navis, ship.
navicula, boat.
navalis, naval.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, of a sailor.
navigo, sail.
navigium, vessel.
navigatio, voyage.

52
nosco, learn.
novi, be acquainted with.
notus, known.
notitia, acquaintance.
ignotus, unknown.
nobilis, famous.
ignobilis, ignoble.
nobilitas, nobility.
nomen, name.
nomino, name.
nominatim, by name.
ignominia, disgrace.
Groups of Related Words.

cognosco, investigate.
ignosco, pardon.

53
nuntius, messenger, news.
nuntio, announce.
denuntio, warn.
enuntio, report.
renuntio, bring back word.
pronuntio, make known.

54
obesa, hostage.
obideo, blockade.
obsidio, blockade.
obessio, blockade.

55
[Opas], goddess of abundance.
opae, resources.
opia, abundance.
opiae, resources.
copiosus; well supplied.
inops, poor.
inopia, want.

56
[pascor, agree.]
pango, join.
pactum, agreement.
pax, peace.
paco, pacify.
pacatus, subject.

57
pario, acquire.
parens, parent.
parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58
ex-prior, try.
peritus, experienced.
periculum, danger (trial).
periculosus, dangerous.
periclitor, be in peril.
aperio, open.
reperio, find.

59
paro, prepare.
impero, order.
imperium, power.
pereo, be on hand, obey.

60
parum, too little.
parvus, small.
parvulus, very small.
paucus, few.
paucitas, small number.
paulus, small.
paulatim, little by little.
paulum, a little.
paululum, a very little.
paulo, a little.
paulisper, a little while.

61
[pasco, feed.]
pabulum, forage.
pabulor, forage.
pabulatio, foraging.
pabulator, forager.
pater, father.
patrius, belonging to a father.
patronus, patron, protector.
patrus, uncle (on the father’s side)

62
pes, foot.
pedes, footman (man on foot).
peditatus, infantry.
pedester, of men on foot.
pedalis, a foot long, etc.
impedio, entangle.
impedimentum, hindrance.
Groups of Related Words.

impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
expeditio, expedition.

63
pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.
also
plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publīce, publicly.
publīco, confiscate.

64
porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

[putus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus, clean.]
purgo, clear, excuse.
compto, reckon.
disputo, discuss.
disputatio, discussion.

66
pro, before.
probus, good.
improbus, bad.
prope, near.
propinquus, neighboring.
propinquitas, nearness.
protinus, straightaway, 'right away.'
propter, near by, on account of.
propterēa, for this reason.

67
prae, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterīta, bygones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

68
rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
[regula, rule.]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
directe, straight.
pergo, keep on.

69
sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.
Groups of Related Words.

sacerdos, priest.
sacramentum, oath.
sacrificium, sacrifice.

70
secus, cut.
sectio, a cutting, a lot.
sectura, mine.
securis, axe.

71
sequeor, follow.
secundus, second.
secus, otherwise.
secius, less.
sector, pursue.
socius, companion.
societas, society.

72
[sero, bind.]
servus, bondman.
servio, be a slave.
servo, guard.
conservo, preserve.
servilis, servile.
servitus, slavery.
sermo, speech (connected discourse).
presertim, especially (at the head of the row).

73
similis, like.
simul, at the same time.
simultas, quarrel.
simulo, pretend.
dissimulo, pretend not.
dsimulatio, pretence.
similitudo, likeness.
simulacrum, image.

74
species, appearance.
conspecio, behold.
conspectus, sight.

conspicor, espy.
adspectus, view.
specto, gaze at.
exspecto, expect.
speculator, watch.

75
sto, stand.
statio, station.
statim, forthwith.
status, position.
statuo, set up.
constituo, establish.
stabulis, stable.
stabilitas, steadiness.
stabilio, make firm.

76
sub, under, up.
superus, above.
super, over.
superior, superior.
supero, overtrop.
supra, over.
summus, highest.
summus, supremus, total.
supera, proud.
superci, arrogantly.

77
tam, so.
tamen, nevertheless.
tametsi, although.
tandem, at last.
tantus, so great.
tantulus, so little.
tantum, only (so much and tantummodo, no more).

78
tango, touch.
contingo, touch, happen.
Groups of Related Words.

contagio, contact.
contaminio, taint.
integer, untouched, whole.
redintegro, renew.

79
tempus, time.
tempesta, weather.
tempero, control.
temperantia, self-control.

80
teneo, hold.
tener, tender.
tenuis, thin.
tenuitas, scantiness.
tenuiter, scantily.
continuo, hold together.
continens, continuous (a continent).
continenter, without stopping.
continentia, self-control.
continuus, continuous.
continuo, forthwith.
continuo, continue.
continuatio, continuance.

also
tendo, stretch.
tento, try.
contento, contend.
contentio, contest.
intendo, strain.
ostendo, show.
ostentatio, ostentation.

81
[tribus, tribe.]
tribunus, tribune.
tribuo, assign.
tributum, tribute.
distribuo, distribute.
attribuo, assign.

82
utor, use.
utilis, useful.
utilitas, advantage.
usus, use.
usitor, use.
usitatus, customary.

83
verto, turn.
versus, towards.
versus, verse.
universus, all together.
verso, deal with.
versor, engage in.
averto, turn aside.
adverto, turn to.
adversus, turned towards, opposed.
adversarius, opponent.
animadverto, attend to.
converto, turn about.
reverto, turn back.
rursus, back, again.
transversus, across.

84
vetus, old.
veteranus, veteran.
inveterasco, grow old in.

85
vir, man.
virgo, maiden.
virtus, manliness.
virilitim, man by man.

86
volo, wish.
voluntas, will.
voluntarius, volunteer.
voltus, countenance.
voluptas, pleasure.
malo, wish more.
nolo, not wish, wish not.
LATIN COMPOSITION.

I. COLLOQUIAL EXERCISES.

These exercises are put in the form of dialogues (conloquia) for rapid oral drill in forms and pronunciation. They are based upon the text and introduce its vocabulary, construction, and idioms. In the first few the questions and answers are given in full, to serve as models for those that follow, in which the questions only are given. In the latter the student will answer the questions in Latin after a careful study of the text. Questions should not be answered by simply 'Yes' or 'No,' but fully, as in the models. The models should be carefully studied and memorized.

1. A Letter.

Ecce, aliquid novī habeō.
Quid est?
Epistula Latina à puerō qui hiemāt in Ætālia cum parentibus.
Gravisne est hiems in Ætālia?
Minimē. Illic nivem rārō vident et rīdet, ut est apud poētās, caelum.
Quam iūcundum! Et amoenane sunt loca?
Amoenissima. Illic est Vesuvius mōns, illic multae urbēs clārae, illic pulchrae īnsulae in mari sitae.
Quid agit puer?
Linguae Ætālorum et linguae Latīnae puer cotīdiē operam dat.

1 See here, I have something new.

2. Cock-fighting.

Quae pūblica certāmina Athēniēnsēs īstituērunt?
Gallōrum pūblica certāmina īstituērunt Athēniēnsēs.

N. B. A superior figure after a word refers to that word alone; when placed before a word it refers to the next two or more words.
Cūius cōnsiliō?
Themistoclis cōnsiliō.
Quid Themistoclēs vidit cum bellō Persicō iter in hostīs faciēbat?
Duōs gallōs vidit in viā dimicantīs.
Quōs ad spectāculum convocāvit?
Militēs suōs ad spectāculum convocāvit.
Quam orātiōnem tum habuit?
“Hī gallī nōn prō patriā et cēterīs rēbus dimicant; dē nūllā rē
dimicant nisi dē victōriā.”
Nōnne excitāvit haec orātiō animōs mīlitum?
Excitāvit, nec impetum eōrum hostēs sustinēre poterant.

1 Nōnne: an interrogative particle commonly used when the speaker expects an
affirmative answer to his question. Here ‘Did not?’ etc.
2 The usual manner of answering a question in Latin is to repeat the verb of the
question for ‘Yes,’ and with a negative for ‘No.’

Quibus ex spectāculis Rōmānī māgnam voluptātem capiēbant?
Gladiātōriīs è spectāculis māgnam voluptātem capiēbant.
Hāc in rē nōnne cernēbatur bellicōsum populī Rōmānī ingenium?
Nōn tam bellicōsum populī Rōmānī ingenium quam prāva volgī
indolēs.
Quā dē causā prīmō pūgnae gladiātōriāe ēdēbantur?
Prīmō inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur.
Posteā quī haec spectācula ēdēbant?
Ei quī magistrātum petēbant.
Quot paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsit?
Trecenta vigintī paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsit.
Quae genera hominum fērē adscribēbantur gregī gladiātōrum?
Ferē barbarī captīvi et servi sed multī etiam aliī.
Quālia arma eīs erant?
Varia et multa.
Sine dubiō permultī miserē periērunt.
Periērunt,1 sed nōn nūllī divitiās hōc tam atrōcī quaestū cōnsecūti
sunt.

1 Yes, or they did.
Colloquial Exercises.

Quibus verbis salūtābant Caesarem gladiātōrēs?
"Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant."

4. The Horse and the Ass.
Quae nova fābula est haec?
Dē equō et asinō haec fābula est.
1 Quid erat asinō?
Onere pressus asinus erat.
Cūr nōn equum rogāvit ut aliquā oneris parte sē levāret?
Rogāvit, sed ille repudiāvit comitis precēs.
Quid tum accidit?
Asinus paulō post languōre consūmpτus in viā conruit et efflāvit animam.
Quid dē sārcinīs quās asinus portāverat?
Sārcinīs agitātor equum onerāvit atque īnsuper pelle asinō dētrāctā.
2 Quō animō equus hoc ferēbat?
Ille dēplōrāns fortūnam suam, "Quam stultē," inquit, "contempsi·
comitis precēs!"
Quid si asinō obtemperāvisset?
Tum nōn gravissimum onus portāvisset coāctus.

1 What was the matter with? etc. 2 Freely, How did the horse like that?

5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.
Quis erat Simōnidēs?
Poēta Graecōrum ēgregius Simōnidēs erat.
Ubi habitābat Simōnidēs?
Diū Cranōne in Thessaliā habitābat, et ibi aliquandō apud Scopam

cēnābat.

Eratne Scopās quoque poēta?
Minimē, sed fortūnātus homō quī paulō ante in pugilum certāmine
māgnam victoriām reportāverat.

Nōnne carmen cantāvit poēta in laudem victōris?
Cantāvit, et piō animō etiam Castorem et Pollūcem, certāminum
patrōnōs, celebrāvit.

Nōnne Scopās voluptātem ē carmine cēpit?
Minimē, sed improbāvit, invidiā commōtus, carmen, et recūsāvit
dīmidium praemī prōmissī.
Second Year Latin.

Nōnne īra poētam mōvit?
Mōvit, sed is cēlāvit īram, et paulō post duo iuvenēs eum ēvocāvē-
runt.
Quī erant ĕi iuvenēs?
Castor et Pollūx; sed ille eōs nōn vīdit.
Quā rē nōn? Nōnne ante īānuam erant?
Nēminem ante īānuam invent, sed iam vērō horribili post ergum
fragōre conturbātur.
Quid acciderat?
Obprivus erat tyrannus cum convīvis omnibus trīstissimā ruinā, sed
mirificē servātus est pius poēta.

6. The Roman Dinner.

1. Ubi prīscī Rōmānī cum familiā cēnābant? 2. Quando mōs
erat dominō cum hospitibus in trīcliniō cēnāre? 3. Quid rē vērā
erat trīcliniō? 4. Quot convīvae in trīcliniō accumbēre poterant?
Quod prōverbium erat Rōmānīs dēductum ab mēnsae mōribus?
Rōmānī cībūm digitīs capiēbant?

1 Just as nōnne puts a question in the form for an affirmative
answer, — "Is he not?" 'Do they not?' etc., — so num usually looks to a negative reply, — "He is not,
is he?" 'They don't, do they?' etc.; see notes, 527.

7. Augustus and the Veteran.

1. In equō an pedibus per urbem īre solēbat Augustus? 2. Quō
auxiliōm ab Imperātōre petīvit? 5. Quem patrōnum ēlēgit Augustus?
Imperātor? 8. Quis dēmum patrōnus veterānī factus est?

8. The Wolf and the Dog.

Num famē canis ēnecābātur? 4. Nōnne lupō licuit ēadem fēlicītāte

9. The Lion and the Mouse.


1 See 6, foot-note 1.

10. The Dancing Horses.


11. Augustus and the Raven.


1 Perf. partic., but in English was won.


1 In English do with, or to.

14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.


15. The Fox and the Monkey.


Second Year Latin.

8. The trees did not afford shade to the youth. 9. So taught he sat down in the shade of the animal. 10. But the driver forbade this. 11. 'You hired the ass,' said he, 'but not the shadow.' 12. A quarrel arose between them. 13. They fought even with their fists. 14. At last they went to court." 15. The jury was now listening attentively. 16. But Demosthenes suddenly left the stand. 17. The jury asked for the rest of the story. 18. The orator did not tell it to them. 19. They were not willing to listen to the case of a man in danger of his life.

1 Latin, 'was being carried by.' 2 Itaque. 3 Form of velō with the complementary infin.

19. The Death of Pompey. (Oral.)

Ablative Absolute Denoting Time, § 419 (255); B. 227; G. 409–10; H. 489 (431); H–B. 421.
Ablative of Degree of Difference, § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H–B. 424.

1. Pompey, after giving up his plan of going to Syria, put a vast sum of money aboard his ships. 2. When he had put two thousand armed men on board, he came to Pelusium. 3. King Ptolemy was a boy in years. 4. He was waging war with his sister Cleopatra. 5. She was a few years older (senior). 6. A few months before, he had driven her from the throne. 7. The camp of Cleopatra was not far distant from his camp. 8. Ptolemy, the king, did not receive Pompey, his father’s friend. 9. Pompey’s messengers, after their duty was done, talked very kindly to the soldiers of the king. 10. When this was known, the king’s friends began to fear Pompey. 11. They commanded Pompey to come to the king. 12. A few hours later Pompey was killed.

1 Latin, 'a great weight of bronze.' 2 Latin, 'older by a few years.' 3 Latin, 'afterwards (post) by a few hours (hora).'

20. Niobe and her Children. (Written.)

1. Niobe, a most beautiful woman, was the wife of Amphion, the king of Thebes. 2. She was not only very beautiful, but also very proud, because she had seven sons and seven daughters. 3. Once, when the Thebans were preparing sacrifices to Latona, the mother
of Apollo and Diana, Niobe said, "Latona has only two children, I have fourteen. Why don't you make sacrifice to me?" 4. On hearing these words, Latona, roused to anger, besought her children to avenge the insult. 5. And so all of Niobe's fourteen children were killed, and she herself was turned to stone.

1 Latin, 'these words having been heard.' 2 Latin, 'by anger.' 3 An ut-clause of purpose. 4 ipse.

21. CRÆSUS, King of Lydia. (Oral.)

I. Subjunctive of Purpose: Pure Purpose with ut or mē, § 530 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2; Purpose Expressed by the Supine, § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

1. Crœsus was king of the Lydians. 2. The fame of his riches had filled both Europe and Asia. 3. Many came to see the king. 4. Among these was Solon, who was counted among the seven sages of Greece. 5. Crœsus asked him: "Am I not the most blest of all men?" 6. "No one is happy before he is dead," said Solon. 7. Soon after, the king found out that this was true. 8. Cyrus, the king of the Medes and Persians, was at that time terrifying the neighboring nations by his victories. 9. In order to check him, Crœsus was preparing for war. 10. At the same time he sent messengers to Delphi to ask about the issue of the war. 11. The god replied: "Crœsus will destroy a great empire."

1 Express the purpose in two ways. 2 An infinitive clause.


Subjunctive of Pure Result with ut and ut mēn, § 537 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 1. 2, 519. 2. 3. a.

1 Upon obtaining this reply, Crœsus hoped for victory. 2. He invaded the kingdom of Cyrus in order to fight with him. 3. But the issue of the battle was such that neither was victorious. 4. In the second battle, however, Cyrus won the victory from the Lydians. 5. Then Crœsus, being taken captive, is condemned to be burned. 6. The wood is brought and he is bound. 7. Suddenly he called "O Solon!" in a loud voice. 8. And told Cyrus about the words of the Athenian. 9. Cyrus was so moved that he set Crœsus free.
10. And before his death he advised his son to preserve the old man's friendship.

1 abl. abs. 2 See text. 8 Latin, 'by another battle.'

4 antem, always postpositive. 6 subj. of purpose.

22. An Epitome of Roman History. (Oral.)

Accusative of Extent and Duration, § 423, 425 (256–7); B. 181; G. 335–6; H. 417 (379); H–B. 387.
Ablative of Time, § 423 (256); B. 230–1; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H–B. 439.

1. Rome was founded in the 753d year before Christ. 2. Kings ruled the state for about 250 years. 3. In the 509th year two consuls were chosen. 4. There were two, in order that one might check the power of the other. 5. The Romans kept up this custom for nearly five centuries. 6. Learned men divide this period of time into two equal parts. 7. In the middle of the third century the Romans had subdued the nations of Italy. 8. They declared war upon the Carthaginians in the year 264. 9. The First Punic War was finished in the 241st year. 10. The Second Punic War began in the 218th year. 11. It lasted 18 years. 12. The Third Punic War lasted only 2 three years. 13. Carthage was destroyed in the 146th year before Christ. 14. Corinth was destroyed in the same year. 15. Cæsar was killed in the 44th year. 16. The empire was established by Augustus in the 31st year.

1 durō. 2 tantum.

23. The Omen of the Puppy. (Written.)

1. Æmilius Paulus, the consul, whose father fell at Canna, obtained Macedonia as his province. 2. At that time Perses was king there, and had renewed the war against the Romans which his father had begun many years before. 3. Tertia, Paulus's little daughter, had a puppy which she called Persa. 4. When Paulus was about to set out against Perses, Tertia was so sad that her father noticed it. 5. When he asked the cause, she replied: "My father, Persa is dead." 6. Paulus thought this chance remark an omen of his triumph, and straightforwardly set out for the enemy.

1 Latin, 'near.' 2 Cf. paucis ante mensibus, p. 12, l. 19. 3 animad.

4 pred. acc. 5 tam. 6 Latin, 'to whom asking,' dat. indir. obj.
24. Scipio Æmilianus. \textit{(Oral.)}

Temporal Clauses with \textit{cum}, § 545–6 (235); B. 288–9; G. 580, 585; H. 600–1 (521); H–B. 524, 550. \textit{a}.

1. When Scipio was serving as a soldier in Spain, he was under Lucullus, the general. 2. When a very strong city was being besieged, Scipio \textsuperscript{1} was the first to mount its walls. 3. There was no one in that army whose life \textsuperscript{2} was more precious. 4. But at that time the most illustrious youths undertook \textsuperscript{3} the greatest perils. 5. Scipio demanded this military service for himself. 6. He did this in order that he might not be surpassed by others in valor.

\textsuperscript{1} See text. \textsuperscript{2} Latin, 'ought to be looked out for more.' \textsuperscript{3} Latin, 'the most of peril.'

25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. \textit{(Oral.)}

1. The Complementary Infinitive, § 456 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607 (533); H–B. 586. \textit{a}.

1. The Greeks could not defend the passes of Thessaly. 2. They determined to seize Thermopylæ. 3. They sent 8000 men to hold \textsuperscript{1} that place. 4. King Leonidas wished to fight. 5. When he had led forth his forces, he waited for the approach of the Persians. 6. Xerxes at first began to laugh, when he saw the Greeks. 7. Then he ordered \textsuperscript{2} them to lay down their arms. 8. Will not the Persian arrows hide the light of day? 9. Yes, but the Greeks will fight in the shade.

\textsuperscript{1} Not infin. \textsuperscript{2} \textit{tutel} with infin.

2. Ablative of Agent, § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i, 397); H–B. 406. \textit{i}.

Partitive Genitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367–72; H. 440. 5, 441–4; H–B. 346.

1. Many thousand men waited. 2. Xerxes waited four days. 3. The troops were not withdrawn by Leonidas. 4. On the fifth day Xerxes joined battle. 5. A great number of Persians was killed by the Greeks. 6. There were ten thousand \textsuperscript{1} picked men. 7. The Immortals were thrown into the pass by the king. 8. Ephialtes had been bribed by the Persians. 9. He had been bribed with money.\textsuperscript{2} 10. He pointed out the pass to the Persians. 11. Then Leonidas
sent back a great part of his army. 12. He, with his three hundred Lacedaemonians, remained. 13. After fighting a long time, they were all killed by the Persians.

1 See text. 2 Note that this is means, not agency; hence use no preposition. 3 Latin, 'when they had fought.'

26. A Roman Maiden. (Written.)

1. Pliny has written a very sad letter concerning the death of the younger daughter of Fundanus, who was so lovely that she seemed almost worthy of immortality. 2. She was not yet fourteen when she died, but already had the dignity of a matron, combined with the sweetness of maidenhood. 3. She loved her nurses, attendants, and teachers, each according to his service, and was loved by all. 4. She bore her last illness with remarkable fortitude and self-control, in order that she might encourage her father and sister. 5. Truly her death was sad and bitter. 6. Her wedding day had already been set. 7. To what sorrow was this joy changed when Fundanus spent on spices and perfumes what he had intended to pay out for dresses and jewelry!

1 tam. 2 Subjv. of result. 3 Latin, 'was to her,' dat. of possessor. 4 Omit. 5 mirabilis. 6 What = that which.

27. Æmilius Paulus and his Sons. (Oral.)

Substantive Clause of Purpose, § 563 (331); B. 295-6; G. 546-9; H. 564. 1, 3, 565 (498, 499. 3); H-B. 502. 3: a, 511. 2, 530. 2.
Ablative of the Gerund, § 507 (301); B. 338. 4; G. 431, 433; H. 629-30 (542. iv); H-B. 612. iv.

1. Paulus made over two of his four sons to the Cornelian and Fabian families. 2. Two fortune took from him. 3. One of these died three days before his father's triumph, the other two days after. 4. So he was suddenly left childless. 5. He bore this calamity with a courageous heart. 6. He made a speech to the people concerning his exploits. 7. He made his spirit clear to all by adding the following closing words. 8. 'I feared that some evil threatened the Roman people. 9. I prayed the gods to turn it all against my house.
10. By granting my prayers, they have brought this to pass. 11. You are grieving for my calamity, not for your own.”

1 Not abl. 2 Note the idiom of the text. 3 Latin, ‘strength of heart.’ 4 Latin, ‘doubtful to no one.’ 5 One word. 6 Latin, ‘assenting to,’ hence followed by the dat. 7 Abl. of cause.

28. Androclus and the Lion. (Oral.)

I. Ablative of Accompaniment, § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1, 474 (419. i. and 1); H-B. 418–19.
Ablative with ex instead of the Partitive Genitive, § 346. c (216. c); B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. 2; H. 444 (397. n.8); H-B. 346. c.

1. The Romans used to provide splendid shows to amuse the people. 2. Often men fought with wild beasts. 3. Once a Roman general ordered some wretched slaves to fight with lions. 4. One of these was Androclus. 5. He, with the rest of his companions, was led into the arena. 6. One of the beasts, a huge lion, chose out Androclus from the rest. 7. He was so frightened that he expected sure death. 8. Suddenly the lion stopped. 9. And threw himself at his feet. 10. The general called Androclus to him to ask him about this wonderful event.

1 Imperf. ind. 2 òlim. 3 nón nálīf. 4 Not infin. 5 certus, -a, -um. 6 rès.

2. Ablative of Means, § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.

1. Androclus had once committed a fault. 2. He fled to escape punishment. 3. He entered a cave to conceal himself. 4. He was seized with great fear when a lion entered it. 5. There was no chance of escaping. 6. Androclus thought the lion would attack him. 7. But the lion by pitiful moaning gave evidence of great pain. 8. His foot had been pierced by a great thorn. 9. Androclus pulled this out. 10. The grateful lion regarded him as a friend. 11. Daily he provided food by hunting. 12. One day he was off hunting. 13. Androclus determined to depart. 14. Three days later he was captured by soldiers. 15. After a short time he was condemned to death. 16. But the grateful lion knew him. 17. The general was moved by this
wonderful event. 18. Not only liberty, but also the lion was given to Androclus.

1 One word. 2 Not infin. 3 transfoidiō. 4 álim. 5 Latin, 'in order to hunt.'

29. Cicero’s Letters. (Oral.)

The Roman Calendar, § 424. E, 631 (259. e, 376); B. 371-2; G. p. 491; H. 754 ff. (641 ff.); H-B. 664-8.

1. Paulus sends greetings to his Tertia. 2. I want you to write1 to me on the 17th of May. 3. On the 2d of June he informed me of the fever. 4. Take good care of your health. 5. They expect to arrive on the 1st. 6. See to it that all things necessary be ready. 7. I think that several friends will come on the 9th of October.

1 Subjv. of purpose with ut omitted, as usual after forms of volo.

30. A Roman Ultimatum. (Written.)

1. When Popilius, the Roman ambassador, came to Antiochus, who was harassing Ptolemy with war, he handed over to him a decree of the senate. 2. This decree forbade1 the war. 3. Antiochus read the tablets and said he would consult his friends. 4. But Popilius marked off the ground on which the king was standing and said,2 "Give me an answer before you move from this circle." 5. The king was so terrified by his3 abrupt and impressive manner that he immediately gave assurance4 that he would abstain from war with Ptolemy.

1 vetō. 2 inquam: note its position. 3 abscessa gravitās. 4 Subjv. of result.

31. The Haunted House. (Oral.)

Ablative of Quality or Description, § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443.

The Historical Infinitive, § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595.

1. In a large house at Athens there was a ghost. 2. The ghost was a1 very gaunt old man. 3. The ghost2 had a long beard. 4. The ghost had3 shaggy hair. 5. The inhabitants left the house through
6. Athenodorus, the philosopher, came to Athens. 7. After hearing the price of the house, he became suspicious because of its cheapness. 8. He learned everything, but none the less rented the house. 9. Was he not a man of great courage? 10. When it began to grow dark, he dismissed all his companions. 11. He turns his attention to writing, that he may not imagine vain fears. 12. At first there was silence. 13. Then iron was shaken, and chains rattled. 14. He neither raised his eyes nor dropped his pen. 15. Then the noise increased, drew near, and was now heard within the threshold. 16. He looked round and saw the ghost. 17. It stood and beckoned with its finger. 18. Athenodorus, without delay, followed it to the courtyard of the house. 19. Suddenly it disappeared. 20. Athenodorus marked the spot with leaves. 21. The next day he advised the magistrates to dig up that spot. 22. Bones were found bound with chains. 23. After these had been buried, the house was free from ghosts.

1 Latin, 'used up by leanness.' 2 Latin, 'was of;' abl. of description. 3 Abl. abs. 4 Latin, 'he suspected the cheapness.' 5 Latin, 'mind.' 6 Hist. infin. 7 designata, -are. 8 Abl. abs.

32. An Eclipse Foretold. (Oral.)

Causal Clauses with quod, quia, quoniam, quando, § 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539-42; H. 588 (516); H-B. 535. 2. a. n. 1.

1. Gallus called the soldiers to an assembly. 2. He called them together because he wished to foretell the eclipse of the moon. 3. An eclipse can be known beforehand, because it takes place at stated intervals. 4. The moon goes into an eclipse because it is concealed by the shadow of the earth. 5. Do you count it a prodigy that the moon shines now with full orb and now with a small crescent? 6. When was this eclipse? 7. It was on the night preceding the 4th of September. 8. To the Romans the wisdom of Gallus seemed almost supernatural, because he had foretold the eclipse.

1 That is, 'he wished, as he said,' the reason being on the authority of Gallus and not on that of the speaker. 2 defectus, -ūs, m. 3 Perf. ind. 4 See text. 5 Give as on the authority of the Romans.
33. Anthony and the Usurer. \textit{(Oral.\text{)}

Relative Clauses of Purpose, § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H–B. 502. 2, ftn.8 4.
Ablative with \textit{opus} and \textit{usu}, § 411 (243. e); B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. iv); H–B. 430. 1.

1. Anthony met one or two jolly fellows. 2. The priest was in need of money. 3. There was no provision for a feast. 4. There was need of ready wit. 5. \textsuperscript{1} After he had taken one of the money-lender’s kettles, he ordered the meat and broth to be poured out. 6. He sent a servant \textsuperscript{2} to polish the kettle. 7. Then he sent him \textsuperscript{2} to borrow two francs from the usurer. 8. The usurer could not recognize the kettle. 9. The pledge was received and the money counted out. 10. With this money they bought the wine \textsuperscript{3} which they needed. 11. \textsuperscript{4} The cook was scolded because the kettle was missing. 12. What is the need of many words? 13. Men were sent \textsuperscript{2} to search Anthony’s house. 14. In the presence of many witnesses, Anthony showed his receipt.

\textsuperscript{1} Change the voice and use the abl. abs. \textsuperscript{2} Relative clause of purpose. \textsuperscript{3} Latin, ‘of which there was need.’ \textsuperscript{4} Note the idiom in the text.

34. A Practical Joke. \textit{(Written.\text{)}

1. \textsuperscript{1} Maccus had the habit \textsuperscript{2} of making himself known by a joke. 2. \textsuperscript{8} Once he walked into a shoemaker’s shop. 3. By simply \textsuperscript{4} casting \textsuperscript{6} his eyes upon some leggings and shoes, and by nodding assent \textsuperscript{4} to the shoemaker’s questions, \textsuperscript{6} both shoes and leggings were given to him for nothing, \textsuperscript{7} for neither \textsuperscript{8} of them made any mention of price. 4. After he was thus equipped for running, he took to his heels. 5. The shoemaker chased him with all his might, but could not catch him. 6. Afterwards, when an action for theft was brought against Maccus, he \textsuperscript{9} said that he had touched nothing belonging to another \textsuperscript{10} against the owner’s will.

\textsuperscript{1} Latin, ‘the custom was to,’ etc. \textsuperscript{2} Gen. of gerund. \textsuperscript{3} aliquando. \textsuperscript{4} tantum. \textsuperscript{5} Abl. of gerund. \textsuperscript{6} quaestio. \textsuperscript{7} gratis. \textsuperscript{8} neuter. \textsuperscript{9} Latin, ‘denied that he had touched a thing.’ \textsuperscript{10} Latin, ‘the owner being unwilling.’
Exercises for Oral and Written Translation. 485

35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor. (Oral.)

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 568 (332); B. 297; G. 553; II. 571 (501);
H-B. 521. 3. a.

1. An impostor caused 1 a priest to lose 2 a purse full of money. 2. Priests wear a sacred robe when they make 3 sacrifice. 3. Did the citizens send the impostor to buy a robe for the priest? 4. There is no doubt 4 that they did not send him. 5. The vender caused the priest to put on a robe. 6. It happened 6 that the robe fitted wonderfully. 7. But the impostor looked at it in front and behind. 8. And pretended that it was too short in front. 9. Then the vender feared that the bargain would fall through. 10. "The full purse 6 makes it look short," said he. 11. He asked the priest to lay 7 aside the purse. 12. 8 When the priest's back was turned, the thief seized the purse. 13. The thief took to his heels and escaped.

1 efficiō. 2 perdō. 3 Perf. ind. 4 quin, clause of result. 5 fiēbat. 6 Latin, 'causes the shortness to offend.' 7 Not infin. 8 Abl. abs.; see text.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

The Dative with Special Verbs, § 367 (227); B. 187. ii; G. 346; H. 426 (385);
H-B. 362.

1. Astyages had a grandson whose name was Cyrus. 2. Astyages feared 1 that his grandson would be king in his 2 place. 3. Cambyses, the Persian, had married Mandana. 4. Astyages ordered Harpagus to kill 8 his grandson. 5. Harpagus was moved with pity for 4 the boy's fate. 6. He did not obey the command of the king. 7. 5 He gave the same orders to the king's shepherd that the king had given him. 8. The king's shepherd did not obey the orders of Harpagus. 9. He kept the boy and brought him up. 10. Once the son of a noble Mede did not obey Cyrus. 11. Cyrus, with the shepherd, was led 6 into the presence of the king. 12. The face of Cyrus was 7 like that of Mandana, and the king recognized him. 13. Astyages took vengeance on Harpagus by a very cruel punishment, because he had not obeyed his orders. 14. But Cyrus he kept with 6 him.

1 A nā-clause of purpose. 2 suus, as indir. reflex. 3 Not infin. 4 Latin, 'because of,' hence abl. 5 Latin, 'he ordered the same to.' 6 apud. 7 Latin, 'like Mandana.' The redundant 'that of' in such expressions is regularly omitted in Latin.
Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, § 574 (334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 507, 507. 3.

1. Harpagus brought it about that Cyrus was very well liked both by Medes and Persians. 2. He often asked Cyrus why he did not drive his grandfather from the throne. 3. Did Cyrus obey this counsel? He did. 4. Astyages ordered the Persians to obey Cyrus in all things. 5. Cyrus asked them whether they chose hardships or pleasures. 6. Then he urged them to attack Astyages and declare their independence. 7. Astyages placed Harpagus in command of all the forces. 8. We know how Astyages had once aroused the bitterest hatred in him. 9. Harpagus urged Cyrus to join battle without fear. 10. The Medes fled, and Astyages was captured. 11. After this victory he conquered and captured Croesus, the king of the Lydians. 12. Don't you wish to know in what year he began the war with the Babylonians?

1 Not infin. 2 quod modo. 3 Latin, 'set him on fire with,' etc. 4 acire.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Demonstrative Pronouns, § 146, 296–8 (100–2, 195); B. 246; G. 305–11; H. 505–9 (450–2); H-B. 271–4.

1. Babylon, that famous and powerful city, had great walls. 2. By means of a stratagem Cyrus made a way into that city for his soldiers. 3. Cyrus took possession of the gates and walls by night. 4. Those who dwelt in the middle of the city did not hear about that event. 5. He allowed the Jews to rebuild the temple. 6. Revolts of the same tribes called Cyrus into those parts a second time. 7. Among those barbarians were the Massagetae and their queen Tomyris. 8. Cyrus determined to marry her. 9. But she spurned his offer of marriage. 10. And invited him to cross the Araxes river for a battle. 11. Cyrus himself did not know what to do. 12. He asked Croesus what he advised. 13. "I advise you to do what Tomyris has asked," said Croesus. 14. By following this advice, Cyrus killed a great part of them and captured the queen's son.

1 For idiom, see text, 37 21. 2 Gen.; see text. 3 Latin idiom, 'the middle city.' 4 múntium accipere. 5 rés. 6 Omit 'offer of.' 7 Latin, 'for fighting,' gerund of purpose. 8 átor; use abl. of gerund.
Exercises for Oral and Written Translation. 487

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chap. 7. (Written.)

1. After Cyrus had invaded the territory of Tomyris, a very brave woman, and had defeated a large force and captured her son, the queen advised Cyrus to send back her boy and lead away his army. 2. Cyrus did not obey these words, but collected his forces and joined battle. 3. The captive son, meanwhile, had seized a sword and killed himself. 4. In a bloody battle, both Persians and barbarians fought bravely, the former for life, the latter for freedom; but finally Cyrus was killed, and a large part of his army fell with him. 5. Tomyris cut off his head and threw it into the gore, because she had promised to give him all the blood he wanted.

1 ingredior. 2 interim. 8 Forms of ille and hic; see grammar. 4 dēnique. 5 Follow the idiom of the text. 6 Write the reason as on the authority of Tomyris. 7 Fut. infin. Follow idiom of the text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

Accusative of Limit or End of Motion, § 427. 2 (258. 8); B. 182; G. 337; H. 418 (380); H-B. 385. 8.
Ablative of Place from which, § 426. 1 (258); B. 229; G. 390-1; H. 462 (412); H-B. 408.

1. The city of Troy was besieged for ten years. 2. From Troy the Greeks hastened to return home. 3. They set sail with great joy, for they were wearied with the long war. 4. Ulysses wished to return to the island Ithaca. 5. A very beautiful wife was waiting for him at home. 6. He had married her before he set out for the war. 7. A storm carried the ship of Ulysses to the south. 8. Some ships were carried in one direction, and others in another. 9. In ten days the ship of Ulysses was carried from the coast of Troy to the coast of Libya. 10. He put some of his companions ashore. 11. They met some of the inhabitants. 12. The food of the inhabitants consists almost entirely of the lotus. 13. Those who eat the lotus wish to remain in that land forever. 14. The Greeks forgot their fatherland and companions.

1 exspectō, with acc. 2 Gen.; see text.
The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Reflexive Pronoun, § 299, 300 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502-4 (448-9); H-B. 260-4.

1. Ulysses fears that his companions are in danger. 2. Some of the remaining companions are put on shore. 3. They go to a village and find the others drunk as if with wine. 4. They were unwilling to return with them to the ship. 5. Ulysses himself in vain attempted to persuade them. 6. Finally he carried his companions back against their will and set sail as quickly as possible. 7. They cried out that they would never leave that spot of their own accord. 8. The next day Ulysses and twelve of his companions disembarked upon an unknown shore. 9. Soon they perceived the fortified entrance of a huge cave. 10. "I wonder who inhabits this abode," said Ulysses. 11. A giant of immense size lived there. 12. He was of human form, but had only one eye. 13. Ulysses had already heard about the Cyclops, but had never seen one of them.

1 Distinguish carefully between reperió, to find by seeking, and inveníō, to come upon by chance. 2 mólo. 3 tandem. 4 Latin, 'unwilling.' 5 Latin, 'go from.' 6 Remember to insert this phrase in the quotation. 7 M.
despair of safety. 13. There is no doubt that the gods will give us aid.

1 Latin, 'it had to be replied by Ulysses.' Do not forget that the second periphrastic is always passive, and with intrans. verbs impersonal. 2 occasió. 3 rei gerenda. 4 in eo ut. 5 Latin, 'not even in,' etc., nē . . . quidem, putting the emphatic word or phrase between.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Written.)

1. At daybreak Polyphemus, in the same way as before, seized and ate two of the remaining Greeks. 2. When he removed the great stone from the door, the Greeks 1 had great hopes of escaping, 2 but after all his sheep had gone forth, he put the stone back into its place. 3. The situation was critical, but Ulysses did not give way to tears. 4. He sharpened a great stake and awaited the return of the giant. 5. At evening, when the giant had returned home, Ulysses filled a great bowl with wine and invited him to drink. 3 6. Polyphemus thanked him for the wine and asked him 4 what his name was, and soon thereafter was overcome by sleep. 7. Ulysses thought that so favorable an opportunity for action should not be let slip.

1 Latin, 'came into great hope.' 2 Gen. of the gerund. 3 Latin, 'for drinking,' gerund with ad, expressing purpose. 4 See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 9 and 10. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with postquam, ubi, ut, etc., § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561–3; H. 602 (518); H–B. 557.

1. After the Greeks 1 had bored out the giant's eye with the end of a stake, they hid. 2. Polyphemus, as was to be expected, raised a frightful outcry. 3. When the other Cyclops heard the noise, they came to the cave from every side. 4. They asked Polyphemus what the matter was. 5. He replied that violence had been done him by nobody. 6. After the Cyclops 1 heard that, they thought that Polyphemus had become insane. 7. When his friends had gone away, Polyphemus tried to lay hands on Ulysses. 8. After he had removed the stone from the entrance, the sheep went out to pasture. 3 9. Polyphemus had to sit 4 at the entrance. 10. He felt of each
sheep’s back, in order that Ulysses might not escape. 11. Ulysses so tied his friends to the sheep that they were completely hid. 12. After Polyphemus had allowed all the sheep to pass by, Ulysses himself escaped last.

1 The common subj. of a principal and a subordinate clause usually stands before both. 2 Note the idiom in the text. 3 Latin, ‘to the fields.’ 4 ‘Sit’ being intrans., will of course be impersonal in the passive.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 11 and 12. (Oral.)

Ablative of Specification, § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.
Partitive Genitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 441-3 (397); H-B. 346.

1. Some 1 of the Greeks had been left behind 2 to guard the ship. 2. They received Ulysses with great joy. 3. They feared that Ulysses had fallen into serious danger. 4. Ulysses determined to hasten from the shore as quickly as possible. 5. Polyphemus paid the just penalty for his cruelty. 6. After the Greeks had sailed a few thousand feet into the deep, Polyphemus hurled a huge rock in that direction. 7. The Greeks 8 did not lack much of being drowned. 8. They sailed a few miles 4 to a certain island. 9. This island was Αεολία by name. 10. The Greeks tarried there a few days. 11. Were they not desirous of seeing their native land? 12. Αεολος shut up all the winds but Zephyrus in a bag. 13. The Zephyrus was a favorable wind for sailing. 14. At midday Ulysses tied the bag to the mast. 15. When all was prepared, he sailed from the harbor.

1 nōn nālliī. 2 Latin, ‘for a guard to the ship.’ 3 Note the idiom in the text. 4 Latin, ‘thousands of paces.’

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 13 and 14. (Oral.)

Accusative of the Gerund and the Gerundive, § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628 (542. iii; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. iii.

1. On the ninth day he came in sight of his native land. 2. His native land was an island, Ithaca by name. 3. Ulysses lay down to rest. 4. His companions thought that gold was shut up in that bag. 5. Ulysses was worn out with fatigue. 6. This was a favorable opportunity 1 for opening the bag. 7. A great storm aroused Ulysses from sleep. 8. The daughter of the sun, Circe by name, lived on an
island. 9. Ulysses and his companions approached this island to get supplies. 10. He brought the ship to land for the purpose of disembarking. 11. All remembered the cruelty of the Cyclops. 12. No one could be found who was willing to disembark on Circe's island. 13. Finally they cast lots, and Eurylochus was chosen to make this venture.

1 ad with the gerundive. 2 ad with the gerund, or as in the text. 3 Subjv. in relative clause of characteristic. 4 deligō. 5 See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 15 and 16. (Written.)

1. Eurylochus and his twenty-two companions, who had been chosen by lot, did not at all doubt that they were going to meet death. 2. When they came to Circe's house, they heard a voice of such sweetness that they could in no way be restrained from entering. 3. Circe set a magnificent banquet before them, but after she had touched their heads with her golden wand, they were suddenly all changed to pigs. 4. Eurylochus, who was waiting outside, finally returned to the ship alone, so alarmed that he could hardly tell what he had seen. 5. He begged Ulysses not to expose himself to danger, and said, "If anything serious happens to you, the safety of all will be in the greatest peril." 6. But Ulysses replied, "I will take no one with me against his will," and set out alone.

1 nihil. 2 Pluperf. subjv. with cum. 3 quin with imperf. subjv. 4 Dat. with compound. 5 Fut. perf. ind. 6 Latin, 'unwilling.' 7 See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 17 and 18. (Oral.)

The Interrogative Particles -ne, nonne, num, § 332. a–c (210. a. c); B. 162. a; G. 454−6; H. 378 (351. 1. 2); H−B. 231. 1. b−d.

1. When Ulysses was on the point of entering Circe's house, Mercury stood before him. 2. 1Mercury said, "Don't you know that this is Circe's house?" 3. Did Circe change Ulysses's friends into pigs? She did. 4. Ulysses did n't wish to suffer the same fate, did he? No. 5. "I will give you a drug which is very powerful," said Mercury. 6. Was not Ulysses prepared to meet all dangers? 7. Circe did everything just as before. 8. Matters often come out quite differently from what we expect. 9. Circe could n't change Ulysses
into a pig by her golden wand, could she? 10. Neither by her poison
nor by her words could she accomplish anything. 11. Will not
Ulysses make an attack upon Circe with drawn sword? 12. Yes,
and she will beg him with many tears not to take her life.

1 Latin order, "Don't you know?" said Mercury, etc. 2 Latin, 'come into.'
8 omnino aliter atque. 4 quidquam: learn to use this word in neg. clauses.
6 ne with pres. subjv.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 19 and 20. (Oral.)

Ablative of Separation, § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408 ff.

1. Mercury informed Ulysses that his companions had been changed to pigs. 2. Unless Circe restores them to human form
without delay, Ulysses will inflict merited punishment. 3. "I will
do all that you have asked," said Circe. 4. The pigs recognized
their leader. 5. But could not inform him of their misfortunes. 6. In a short time, however, they were set free from their great
sorrow. 7. Ulysses spent a whole year with Circe. 8. He could
not be persuaded to stay longer. 9. His ship, battered by the storms,
was almost useless for sailing. 10. Within three days everything
which is of use for refitting ships was prepared. 11. Ulysses
intended to sail as soon as possible. 12. Circe took it ill, but could
not persuade Ulysses to give up that design. 13. Ulysses set sail,
that he might not be cut off from navigation by the time of the year.
14. It would be tedious to tell about his other adventures.

1 The fut. perf. ind. in a vivid fut. cond. 2 omnia quae.
res. 4 liber, are. 5 apud. 6 Latin, 'it could not be persuaded to him.'
See notes, 18 17. 7 Dat. of service. 8 Latin, 'desist from.' 9 longum est,
an idiomatic use of the present ind. where the subjv. might have been
expected. 10 reliquus, -a, -um.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

The More Vivid Future Condition, § 516 (307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508);
H-B. 579. a.

1. Marius was dear to Scipio, though born in a lowly station.
2. If Scipio wishes to inspect the horses, he will find the horse of
Marius well cared for. 3. If anything serious happens to Scipio,
the republic will have Marius. 4. Marius was the lieutenant of Metellus, who had been sent against Jugurtha. 5. Marius said, "If the Romans make me consul, I will subdue Jugurtha in a short time." 6. After Marius had been elected consul, Jugurtha fled to Bocchus. 7. Bocchus was persuaded to give up Jugurtha to Sulla, the questor. 8. Marius, in his triumph, drove Jugurtha in chains before his chariot. 9. Jugurtha called his prison a cold bath-room.

1 Omit. 2 The English pres. may express fut. or even fut. perf. time. 3 Translate the relative clause by the perf. pass. partic. 4 Fut. perf. 5 Latin, 'it was persuaded to, etc., that he,' etc. 6 Latin, 'triumphing.' 7 nómino, are.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Written.)

1. The Cimbri and Teutons, wanderers from the frontiers of Germany, had been shut out from Gaul and Germany, and so asked the Romans to give them some land. 2. Marius first crushed the Teutons, and the slaughter was so great that there was more blood than water in the river between them. 3. The Cimbri did not know of the calamity of their brethren and entered Italy from another direction. 4. As soon as the Cimbri came up, they demanded land for themselves and their brothers. 5. "Never mind your brothers," said Marius, "they have already received land from us." 6. The Cimbri thought that they were being held in derision, but soon thereafter the chief of the Teutons were led out in chains.

1 itaque. 2 Latin, 'something of land,' partit. gen. 3 medius, -a, -um. 4 post breve tempus.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

Construction after peto, § 396. a (239. c. n.1); G. 339. r.1 and n.1; H. 411. 4 (374. 2. n.4); H-B. 393. 6. c.

Causal Clauses with cum, § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

1. The Cimbri then went forth from the camp. 2. They asked Marius, the Roman general, to set a time for battle. 3. The next day Marius destroyed the Cimbri with terrible slaughter. 4. There was a great battle with the women, since they fought from the wagons as if from towers. 5. The conquered women hung themselves on the trees, since they could not obtain liberty from Marius. 6. The chief men of the state had envied Marius. 7. Now they confessed
that he had saved the state. 8. He presented two cohorts with the
citizenship. 9. At that time Sulpicius asked 7 the people to depose
Sulla from the chief command. 10. Marius hid in a swamp, but
was seized and put in prison. 11. They sent a Cimbrian slave to
kill him. 12. 9 When he saw Marius, he did not dare to kill him.

1 deinde. 2 petō. 8 May be omitted. 4 Imperf. subjv. of possum. 5 ab.
6 Not acc. 7 peto. 8 Note the idiom in the text. 9 The idea of time is here
combined with that of cause as an added circumstance; see notes, 7 5.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 7, 8, and 9. (Oral.)

The Gerundive, in Agreement with the Object, to Express Purpose, § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N. 2); H-B. 605. 2.
1. After Marius was let out of prison, he went to Africa. 2. He
expected kindness from the Roman prætor, since he had never done
him injury. 3. ‘Depart from the province,’ said the lictor. 4. The
lictor reported to the prætor that he had seen Marius sitting on the
ruins of Carthage. 5. We have these two very conspicuous exam-
plees of the fickleness of human fortune 1 to place before our eyes.
6. Marius was more enraged than subdued by misfortune. 7. After
he returned to Italy, he gave 2 Rome up 3 to destruction by murder
and robbery. 8. The houses of the slain he gave to the mob 4 for
plunder. 9. It is not easy to say whether Marius was better in war
or more dangerous in peace. 10. Marius despised the artists of
Greece, since he was too rough for the pursuits of culture. 11. He
had the temple of Honor built of common stone.

1 Gerundive. 2 trado. 8 Latin, ‘to be destroyed,’ gerundive. 4 Latin, ‘to be
plundered.’ 5 ‘Had... built’; note the idiom in the text.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

Two Datives,—to which and for which, § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433
(390); H-B. 360.
1. Did not Cæsar lose his father in his sixteenth year? 2. Cæsar
married the daughter of Cinna. 3. Cæsar was stripped of his posses-
sions 1 because he would not divorce her. 4. He escaped from the
city by night. 5. He was seized by a freedman of Sulla, although he
changed his hiding place almost every night. 6. The most distin-
guished men pleaded for Cæsar. 2 7. He will be 3 the cause of their
Exercises for Oral and Written Translation. 495

destruction. 8. "Have your own way! there are many Mariuses in Cæsar," said Sulla. 9. Cæsar wished to attend upon Apollonius, the teacher of oratory. 10. He crossed to Rhodes and was captured by pirates. 11. He was a source of terror to them. 12. He sent servants to get money. 13. He threatened the pirates with punishment.

1 Latin, 'because he was unwilling to,' etc. 2 Dative. 3 Latin, 'for destruction to them.' 4 operam dare. 5 Cf. 7th sentence. 6 Latin, 'punishment to the pirates.'

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

Simple Conditions, § 515 (306); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579.

1. Cæsar had rather be first in a small village than second at Rome. 2. If Cæsar is greedy for power, he covets the sovereignty. 3. Cæsar groaned at the sight of a statue of Alexander. 4. If he violated the law, he did it for the sake of sovereignty. 5. He wasted his patrimony on hunts and games. 6. I need a hundred million sesterces to have nothing. 7. I will make an alliance with Pompey and Crassus. 8. Cæsar wished to divide the Campanian land among the people. 9. If he proposed the law, the senate opposed it. 10. Bibulus had his fasces broken for him. 11. After that, Cæsar was consul alone. 12. The wags used to write in jest, "In the consulship of Julius and Cæsar."

1 Express by abl. abs., as in the text. 2 Repeat the first verb. 3 Latin, 'to.' 4 Omit. 5 Latin, 'the fasces of Bibulus were,' etc. 6 Imperf. tense.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

Ablative with ator, fruor, etc., § 410 (249); B. 218. i; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

1. Cæsar was in command of Gaul for nine years. 2. He was the first of the Romans to attack the Germans. 3. This he did after he had completed his consulship. 4. When the army waivered in flight, Cæsar seized a shield from the hand of a fleeing soldier. 5. In another battle he drew a fleeing standard-bearer in the opposite direction. 6. By using such exhortations he taught those how to conquer who were ready to be conquered. 7. A hostile rivalry
arose between Cæsar and Pompey. 8. The former could not bear a superior nor the latter an equal. 9. Since Cæsar was detained in Gaul, he was not allowed to seek a second consulship. 10. He crossed the Rubicon with an army to make war. 11. After he had crossed this stream, he could not turn back. 12. Pompey and the consuls used Brundisium as a refuge.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Written.)

1. After Cæsar had followed Pompey into Epirus, his troops delayed to follow. 2. Impatient of the delay, he performed a deed of remarkable daring; for he secretly embarked on a little skiff, and, though the sea was raging with a wild tempest, he ordered the trembling skipper to steer his craft out to sea. 3. After the battle of Pharsalia, Cæsar first made war upon Ptolemy and then upon Pharnaces, the son of Mithradates, whom he destroyed in a single battle in four hours. 4. In his Pontic triumph Cæsar used only three words to recount this victory: "I came, I saw, I conquered."

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 9, 10, and 11. (Oral.)


1. The son of Magnus had aroused a great and terrible war in Spain. 2. Those who followed the lustre of his father's name came together from every quarter. 3. When the conflict became fierce and doubtful, he declared to his soldiers that he would never retreat. 4. If Cæsar is victorious, he will pardon all that have borne arms against him. 5. Then he will turn his attention to ordering the condition of the state. 6. Those convicted of extortion were removed from the senate. 7. Cæsar made more and greater plans daily for the beautifying of the city. 8. While he was doing these and other things, death prevented him. 9. After he had been chosen dictator, he received the senate sitting. 10. Antony placed a crown on Cæsar's
head as he was sitting on a golden chair. For these reasons a conspiracy was made against him.

1 Pres. partic. 2 Latin, 'from the whole world.' 3 Fut. in force. 4 Express by a partic. 5 Latin, 'planned more and greater things.' 6 Latin, 'it was conspired.'

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 12 and 13. (Oral.)

Infinitive with Subject Accusative, § 452, 459 (272, 330); B. 329 ff.; G. 527, 532-3; H. 414, 613, 614 (534, 535); H-B. 585 ff.

1. Spurinna, the soothsayer, warned Cæsar to beware of the Ides of March. 2. Cæsar said that the Ides had already come. 3. Spurinna replied that they were not yet past. 4. One of the conspirators seized Cæsar's toga by the shoulders. 5. Cæsar cried out that this was violence. 6. Then he saw daggers drawn against him on every side. 7. It is said that he was pierced with twenty-three wounds. 8. Cæsar read in Xenophon that Cyrus had given certain orders about his own funeral. 9. Nearly all agree that Cæsar wished for a quick and unexpected death. 10. All the conspirators died in less than three years. 11. None of them died a natural death. 12. They perished by different fates.

1 Dat. 2 Latin, 'from each shoulder.' 3 See text. 4 Use the personal construction, 'he is said,' etc. 5 constat, impers. 6 Abl. 7 See idiom in text.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 14 and 15. (Oral.)

Genitive with Adjectives, § 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 (399); H-B. 354.

1. The rarer moderation is in kings, the more it should be praised. 2. Cæsar used to forget nothing excepting injuries. 3. Cæsar was of tall stature, and had bright black eyes. 4. He was bald-headed, a defect which annoyed him. 5. He received from the senate the right of wearing a laurel wreath constantly. 6. Cæsar was very temperate in his use of wine. 7. He was very skilful in his use of weapons and in horsemanship. 8. He could endure hardship beyond belief. 9. He was eager for power, but used his victory very mercifully.

1 The imperf. ind. expressing customary action. 2 Continue the construction of the first clause. 3 Latin, 'which defect'; see note, 178. 4 Latin, 'he bore ill.' 5 avidus, -a, -um.
Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Written.)

1. No one doubts that\(^1\) Hannibal excelled all other generals in skill, for as often as he contended with the Romans, he always left the field victorious. 2. He was crippled by the envy of his countrymen at home, and finally\(^2\) driven from his fatherland, but he never gave up his design of carrying on war with the Romans. 3. He was so desirous\(^3\) of fighting that he made both Philip and Antiochus enemies to Rome.\(^4\) 4. \(^5\) When he was a little boy not more than nine years old, his father, Hamilcar, \(^6\) who was just leaving Carthage for Spain, took him to the altar and ordered him to swear that he would never be friendly to the Romans.

\(^1\) q\(\text{uin}\) with subjv.; see note, \(44\) 14. \(^2\) d\(\text{emum}\). \(^3\) cupidus. \(^4\) Latin, 'to the Romans.' \(^5\) May be expressed by an appositive, 'him a little boy;' etc. \(^6\) Pres. partic. \(^7\) Latin, 'in friendship with.'

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Locative Case, § 427. 3 (258. c. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 484, 485. 2 (425. ii, 426); H-B. 449.

1. Hamilcar set out from Carthage for Spain. 2. Hannibal did not remain at Carthage,\(^1\) but went with his father. 3. After the death of Hasdrubal, the supreme authority was conferred upon Hannibal. 4. He got together three very large armies. 5. One went to Africa. 6. One remained in Spain with his brother. 7. He led the third into Italy across the Pyrenees and the Alps. 8. The inhabitants tried to prevent him from crossing. 9. At Rome there was great terror. 10. At Clastidium, on the Po, he fought with Scipio. 11. He defeated the same man at the Rhone and at the Trebia. 12. After his journey to Etruria through the Apennines, he never\(^2\) had perfect use of his right eye. 13. At Cannae\(^3\) two consuls came to meet him.

\(^1\) Loc., Carth\(\text{agas}\)inl. \(^2\) See text. \(^3\) Cannae, -arum.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Supine in \(n\), § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1 (547); H-B. 619.

1. He pitched his camp in the mountains near Rome. 2. He delayed several days at Capua. 3. He escaped from Fabius by a
stratagem without any loss to his army. 4. The cattle caused great terror in the Roman army. 5. Minucius was master of horse, with the authority of dictator. 6. It would be tedious to recount all the victories of Hannibal. 7. Many armies were sent to fight with him. 8. But, wonderful to tell, no one could resist him in the battle line. 9. He was called back to Africa to defend his fatherland. 10. This was hard to do, for the resources of his country were exhausted. 11. Incredible to relate, he was defeated by Scipio near Zama. 12. Zama is about three hundred miles from Hadrumetum. 13. At Hadrumetum he gathered together many soldiers in a few days.

1 Objective gen.; see note, 37 12. 2 Supine of purpose. 8 Supine in ì.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Oral.)

Conditions Contrary to Fact, § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

1. Hannibal and Mago, his brother, were busily engaged in making preparations. 2. Ambassadors came to thank the Romans. 3. They will ask that their hostages be kept at Fregellae. 4. The Romans would have let the captives go, if Hannibal had not had command of an army. 5. The Carthaginians called Hannibal home and made him king. 6. There will be money to pay the Romans according to the treaty. 7. Ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage to demand Hannibal. 8. The Carthaginians would have caught him, if they had been able. 9. If they had been roused to war, Antiochus would have set out for Italy with his armies. 10. Some write that Mago was killed by shipwreck, others by his slaves. 11. If Antiochus had obeyed Hannibal's counsel, he would have carried on the war nearer to the Tiber.

1 Omit. 2 Relative clause of purpose. 8 Gerundive construction with gratia. 4 See note, 75 8. 6 Note the difference between means and agency here.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 9 and 10. (Written.)

1. Since Hannibal was carrying a large sum of money with him to Crete, he feared that he would be in great danger, because of the avarice of the Cretans. 2. He therefore placed some amphorae full of lead in the temple of Diana, pretending that they were full of gold.
3. The Cretans would not have guarded the temple so carefully, if they had known what he carried in the bronze statues. 4. From Crete he went to Prusias in Pontus, where he carried on war against Eumenes, who was very friendly to the Romans. 5. In a naval battle he promised his seamen a great reward, if they should capture or kill him.

1 Imperf. subjv. in a cum-clause of circumstance. 2 Cf. ne dederetur of text. 3 itaque. 4 Latin, 'with such great care,' abl. of manner. 5 Latin, 'into.' 6 Express by adj. apposition. 7 Fut. infin. with two datives, as in the text. 8 Pluperf. subjv. for fut. perf. ind. of the direct form.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 11, 12, and 13. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with antequam and priusquam, § 551 (327); B. 291–2; G. 574–7; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. a–d, 550. b, 561.

1. Before the battle began, Hannibal sent a letter to Eumenes. 2. The letter carrier made it clear where the king was. 3. 1 After opening the letter, Eumenes did not hesitate to join battle. 4. The jars aroused laughter among the soldiers before they saw the serpents. 5. While they were dining at the house of Flaminius, mention was made of Hannibal. 6. Ambassadors were sent to demand Hannibal from the king. 7. The king said, 'Catch him, if you can.' 8. If Prusias had surrendered Hannibal, it would have been contrary to the law of hospitality. 9. The boy did not see the armed men before they had surrounded the house. 10. Hannibal took poison because he was mindful of his former heroic deeds.

1 Abl. abs. 2 Pres. tense; see note, 41 2. 3 A simple condition. 4 Plural of virtus.
VOCABULARY
### SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a., act.</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs.</td>
<td>absolute (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb, adverbially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borr.</td>
<td>borrowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cog.</td>
<td>cognate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>composition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compar.</td>
<td>comparative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conn.</td>
<td>connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decl.</td>
<td>declined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def.</td>
<td>definite, defective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim., dimin.</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distrib.</td>
<td>distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emph.</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end.</td>
<td>ending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng.</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f., fem.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. p., fut. p.</td>
<td>future participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig.</td>
<td>figurative (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inv.</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increased</td>
<td>indicates the addition of a letter or letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insep.</td>
<td>inseparable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens.</td>
<td>intensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interr.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literal (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masc.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter (intransitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N., neut.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opp.</td>
<td>opposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orig.</td>
<td>originally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>present participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perh.</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl., plur.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. p.</td>
<td>perfect participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob.</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun, pronominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reduced</td>
<td>indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redupl.</td>
<td>reduplicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex.</td>
<td>reflexive (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sk.</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st.</td>
<td>stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subst.</td>
<td>substantive (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superl.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term.</td>
<td>termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transf.</td>
<td>transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unc.</td>
<td>uncertain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weakened</td>
<td>indicates a change of vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wh.</td>
<td>which, whence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(−). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+) A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in small capitals.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(*) An asterisk is prefixed to a word not found in classical Latin.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4 refer to conjugations of verbs.
V O C A B U L A R Y.

---+

A

ā, see ab.

ab (ā, abs) [akin to Eng. off, of], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl., away from, from (cf. ex, out of). — Of place, with idea of motion, from: ab Arari iter convertere. — Of time, ab hora quarta. — Fig., from, with more or less feeling of motion: ab cohotatione prefectus; ab ramis from the branches (as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of: a miliibis passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in Eng.: oriri ab, begin with; vacuum ab, destitute of; ab tanto spatio, so far off. — Esp. with passives and similar notions, by. — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), on the side of, on, at, in, on the part of: a fronte; a tergo; ab infimo; ab altero latere; a re fragmentaria (in respect to). — In comp., off, away, apart; not, dis-, un.

abditus, -a, -um, p. p. of abdo.

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ab-do, put], 3. v. a., put away, remove, hide. — With reflex., conceal one’s self, hide. — With in and acc., hide in, withdraw to (take refuge among), withdraw and hide away. — abditus, -a, -um, p. p., hidden, remote, removed.

abduco, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus [ab-duco], 3. v. a., lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abēō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus [ab-eo], irr. v. n., go away, go off, retire, go (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ab-ia-cio], 3. v. a., throw away, throw down, throw (away from one’s self), throw aside.

abiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of abiciō.

abiēs, -etis [?], F., fir or spruce (tree or wood).

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ab-rogo (in its political sense)], 3. v. a., pass a vote to annul, annul, take away.

abs, see ab.

abscēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [abs-cedo], 3. v. n., withdraw, de-part.

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [abs-caedo], 3. v. a., cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away. — Fig., p. p. as adj., abrupt, rough, severe: dignitas.

abscisus, -a, -um, p. p. of abscīdo.
abseunditus, -a, -um, p. p. of abseundo.
abseundo, -dere, -didi, -ditus [abseundo], 3. v. a., hide away, hide, conceal.
absēns, -entis, see absum.
absimilis, -e [ab-similis, like], adj., unlike.
absistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [absto], 3. v. n., stand off, stand away, withdraw. — Fig., leave off, keep aloof.
abstinentia, -ae [abstinent- (cf. abstinere) + ia], f., self-restraint (abstaining from gratifying one’s passions), self-control.
abstineō, -tinēre, -tini, -tentus [abe-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold (one’s self) off. — With se, keep away. — Fig., refrain, spare: proelio (refrain from giving); mulieribus (spare).
abstrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of absitraho.
abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [abe-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, drag away.
abstulī, see aufero.
absum, -esse, -fui (āfui), -futūrus [ab-sum], irr. v. n., be away, be absent, be off (at a distance), be distant. — Fig., non multum aberat (not far away); ab eo quin (be far from being); multum quin (lack much of, etc.); minimum quin (came very near being); a bello (keep aloof, take no part in). — absens, p. as adj., away, absent, in one’s absence.
absūmō, -sūmare, -sūmpsi, -sūmpitus [ab-sumo], 3. v. a., (take away), consume.
abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [1 aboundō, lost adj. st., abounding; cf. abunde, abundantly], 1. v. n., overflow. — Fig., abound. — Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), be strong in, be rich in, abound in.
āc, see atque.
accēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessūrus [ad-cedo, go or come], 3. v. n., move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come (to), advance to, advance. — Fig., come to: Remis studium (be inspired in; cf. discendo). — Esp., be added, where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: huc accedere, be in addition to this; huc accedebat ut, there was also this (disadvantage) that; so with quod, there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that, or simply moreover, then again.
accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-celero, hasten; cf. celer, swift], 1. v. a. and n., hasten.
accendō, -cendere, -cendi. -census [ad-ćando, cf. candeō, glow, burn], 3. v. a., kindle, light: ignem.
acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of accipio.
acciō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [ad-cado], 3. v. n., fall to, fall upon, fall: tela gravius (strike). — Fig., hæpetum, befall, occur, present itself, turn out, arise. — Often euphemistically for death, defeat, etc.: si quid gravius ei.
accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ad-capio], 3. v. a., take, receive: exercitum (take command of). — Less exactly, volvo; incommodum (suffer, meet with). — Fig., accept, learn, hear, get, take: usus (acquire); aliquid fama (hear of). — acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., acceptable.
acclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-clamo, shout], 1. v. n., shout, call to, exclaim at, exclaim.

acclivis, -e [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis; aditus.

acclīvitās, -ātis [acclivi- + tas], F., slope (upward), inclination, steepness.

Accō, -ōnis [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p. of accommodate.

accommodō (adc.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [accommodō, fitting, or ad-commodo], 1. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust); annum ad cursum solis (adjust, adapt). — accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accumbō, -umbere, -cubui, -cubitus [ad-ćumbo, cf. cubo], 3. v. n., recline (esp. at table).

accūrātē [old case-form of accurratus, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-ćauso (cf. causor), assign as a reason or charge], 1. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, -cris, -cre [AC, sharp (cf. acus, needle) + ria], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitās, -ātis [acerbō- + tas], F., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel, distressing.

ācerrümē, superl. of ācriter.

acervus, -i [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], M., (pointed ?), a heap, a pile.

Achillās, -ae [Gr.], M., one of the murderers of Pompey.

acīēs, -ēī [AC (sharp) + ies (cf. materies)], F., point, sharp edge, edge. — Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks), battle, engagement: acie instructa de-pugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acinus, -i (um, -i) [Gr.], M. (N.), a berry. — Also, a seed or stone.

ācriter [acri- + ter], adv., sharply. — Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit, keenly, actively: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

Actiacus, -a, -um [Actiō- + acus], adj., of Actium (a promontory and town of Greece, off which the great victory of Octavius over Antony was gained, b.c. 31).

āctiō, -ōnis [prob. ācti + o, but as if AG + tio], F., a doing (including all the activities expressed by ago).

— Esp., a civil action (cf. ago, plead), a prosecution, an action (at law).

āctor, -ōris [AG + tor], M., a doer (cf. actio). — Esp., a pleader, a plain-tiff, a prosecutor.

āctuārius, -a, -um [actu-, movement (AG in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars).
actus, -a, -um, p. p. of ago.

actus, -a, -um, p. p. of ago.

acuō, -ure, -ui, -itus [acu-, sharp (in acus, needle)], 3. v. a., sharpen.
-actus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.

actus, -a, -um, p. p. of acuo.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.) — Prep. with acc. — With idea of motion, to, towards, against. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, by, in regard to. — Of time, till, at, on: ad diem, ad.

ademptus, -a, -um, p. p. of aduco.

adeō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itus [ad-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to (a place), get in (to a place), advance (someplace), attack, approach (speak with), accost: with ad, come into the presence of.

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras; auxilium (render). — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce.

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

additus, -a, -um, p. p. of addo.

addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ad-de (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to. — Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely), attach, put on (pedibus).

adduco, -dúcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ad-duco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force: secum (take). — Fig., induce, drive, influence.

adductor, -a, -um, p. p. of adduco.

adeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adipiscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [adequito, ride, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras; auxilium (render). — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce.

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras; auxilium (render). — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce.
adfigō

afflicted by, suffer from: magno dolore adēci, be greatly distressed, be in great pain.

adfigō (aff.), -figere, -fixi, -fixus [ad-fīgō, fīx, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfigō (aff.), -figere, -finxi, -ficitus [ad-fīngo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinis (aff.), -e [ad-finis, limit], adj., bordering on. — Fig., akin to (by marriage). — As noun, a kinsman, a relation (by marriage).

adfinitus (aff.), -ātis [adfinis- + -tas], p. f., nearness. — Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatibus coniuncti (marriages).

adfirmātiō (aff.), -ōnis [adfirmā- (cf. adfirmo) + -tio], F., assurance. — Concretely, an assertion.

adfirmō (aff.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [adfirmo], 1. v. a., (establish by assertion), declare, assert.

adfixus (aff.), -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adfectō (aff.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [adfecto, cf. adfigo], 1. v. a. freq., dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground. Hence, overthrow, overwhelm, wreck.

adfectus (aff.), -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adligō (aff.), -ligere, -lixi, -lictus [adligo], 3. v. a., dash upon. Hence, overthrow, wreck, overturn: navis (shatter, damage); arboreas (throw down).

adfore (aff.), see adsum.

adgredior (agg.), -gredi, -gressus [ad-gradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., go towards, go to, come to, approach, march against, attack, assail.

adgregō (agg.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [adgrego, flock, cf. grex, flock], 1. v. a., unite in a flock, gather: se (gather around, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attack one's self to).

adhibēō, -ēre, -ūl, -itus [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., have in. Hence, call in, admit, bring with (one), invite. — Fig., employ, use.

adhibitus, -a, -um, p.p. of adhibeo.

adhortātiō, -ōnis [adhortā- (cf. adhortor) + -tio], F., encouragement, exhortation, an address.

adhortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of adhortor.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [adhortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, address, urge, rally (soldiers).

adiciō (adiic-), -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ad-iacio], 3. v. a., throw to, hurl, fling: telum adici (be thrown to, i.e. reach); aggerem (throw up). — Fig., join to, add.

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, drive up (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus [ademō, take], 3. v. a., take away (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.). — Fig., destroy, cut off: sper; prospectum (intercept, cut off).

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus [ad-apisor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., obtain, secure.
aditus, -ús [ad-itus, cf. adeo, go to], m., approach, arrival, coming, access: defugere (contact, intercourse). — Concretely, an avenue (of approach), access (excuse for approaching), admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach (in military sense).

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio.

adiungō, -iungere, -iünxi, -iünctus [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., join to, unite to, attach, unite with, add. — Fig., win over: imperium (unite, attach, enforce).

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtus [ad-iuvo, help], 1. v. a., assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to.

adlātus (all-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfero.

adligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-ligo], 1. v. a., bind, tie up.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-maturō, cf. maturus, early], 1. v. a., hasten: defectionem (bring to a head more quickly).

administer, -trī [ad-minister, serv-ant'], m., servant, minister: ad sacri-fi-cia (priest, celebrant).

administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-ministro, serve], 1. v. a., carry into execution, perform, execute, manage, carry out, carry on (war), attend to (duties): imperia (give, carry out the duties of a commander).

admiror, -ārī, -ātus [ad-miror, wonder], 1. v. dep., be surprised, wonder at, admire. — admirandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising.

admissus, -a, -um, p. p. of admitto.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go to), let go: admissus equo, at full speed. — Fig., allow (cf. com- and per-mitto): in se facinus (commit); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur). — Also, pass. without in se, be committed.

admodum [ad-modum, measure, limit], adv., to a degree. Hence, very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much.

admolior, -iri, -itus [ad-molior, struggle], 4. v. n., strive for: ut faceret (exert one's self).

admonēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [ad-moneo], 2. v. a., warn, urge, remind.

adnuō, -nuere, -nui, no p. p. [ad-nuo], 3. v. n., nod to, nod assent, assent.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultus [ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., grow up (to maturity), mature. See also adulescens.

adoptō, -ōnis [ad-optio, cf. adopto], f., a taking as a child, adoption.
ador (nom. and acc.) [?], n., a grain, spell.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack, assail.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of adorior.
adpareō (app-), -pareō, -parī, -parīturus [ad-pareō, appear], 2. v. n., appear.

adparō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-parō, make ready, cf. pareo, be on hand], 1. v. a. and n., prepare, get ready, make preparations.
adpellō (app-), -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., land (ships), bring to land, come to land, put in.
adpetō (app-), -petere, -petivi (ii), -petitus [ad-peto, aim at], 3. v. a. and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. — Abs., approach.

adplicō (app-), -plicare, -āvi (uī), -plicatus (-plicitus) [ad-plico, fold'], 1. v. a., (bend towards). — With reflex., lean against.

adpōnō (app-), -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ad-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before (of food), serve up.

adportō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-porto, carry], 1. v. a., bring in, bring (to some place).

adprehendō (app-), -hendere, -hendi, -hēnus [ad-prehendo, seize], 3. v. a., seize: manum (grasp, take).

adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus, good], 1. v. a., approve of, agree with (an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (app-), -āre, -āvi, no p. p. [ad-propinquo, cf. propinquus, near], 1. v. n., approach, come nearer, come near.

adpusus (app-), -a, -um, p. p. of adpello.

adquiēscō (aq-), -quiēscere, -quiēvi, -quiētūrus [ad-quisco], 3. v. n., become quiet. Hence, go to one's rest, die.

adrēpō (arr-), -rēpere, -rēpsi, no p. p. [ad-repo], 3. v. n., creep to, creep up, steal up.

adrēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adripio.

adrigō (arr-), -rigere, -rēxi, -rectus [ad-rego], 3. v. a., set up, raise. — Fig., arouse, excite.

adrīpiō (arr-), -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ad-rapiō], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize, grasp.

adscendō, see ascendo.

adscensus, see ascensus.

adsciscō (asc-), -sciscere, -scivī -scitus [ad-scisco, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., attach (by formal decree). — Less exactly, attach to (one’s self), unite with (one’s self).

adscribō (asc-), -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [ad-scribo], 3. v. a., write down (somewhere), enroll, assign.

adsequor (ass-), -sequī, -secūtus [ad-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow after, follow up, overtake.

adsīdō (ass-), -sīdere, -sēdi, -sesīurus [ad-āido], 3. v. n., sit down (near or by something).

adsiduō (ass-), see adsiduus.

adsiduus (ass-), -a, -um [ad-siduus (SED in sedeo, sit, + uus)], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant: adsiduō, abl. as adv., continually.


adspectus (asp-), -ūs [ad-спектus, cf. adspicio, look at], M., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adspiciō (asp-), -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [ad-спектio], 3. v. a. and n., look upon, behold, see, observe.

adstō (ast-), -stāre, -stīti, no p. p. [ad-stō], 1. v. n., stand by, stand near.

adsuēfaciō (ass-), -facere, -fēci, -facitus [ad-suē- (cf. suesco, become accustomed) -faco, make], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed.

adsuēfactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuēfacio.
aduēscō (ass.-), -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [ad-suēsco, become accustomed], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [ad-sum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be here, be there, appear.

adsurgō (ass.-), -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus [ad-surgo], 3. v. n., rise up. Esp., rise up, rise (to show respect).

adtiūlī, perf. of adfero.

Aduatuci, -ōrum [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later Tongri).

adulēscēns (adol.-), -entis [p. of adulesco, grow up], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (fr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēcentia (adol.-), -āe [adulescent- + ia], f., youth.

adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ad-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come up, arrive.

adventō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-vento, through advenio], 1. v. n. intens., come (to), approach.

adventus, -ūs [ad-ventus, cf. advenio, come to], m., a coming, arrival, approach.

adversārius, -a, -um [adversō-reduced (reduced) + arius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.

adversus, -a, -um, p. p. of adverto, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ad-vertō], 3. v. a., turn towards:

animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadverte), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, unfavorable, in the face of: hostibus adversus occurrabant (right against, in their front); res adversae, adversity, want of success. — Neut. as noun, a calamity, a misfortune. — adversus, adversum [petrified as adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc., against.

advesperāscit, -ere [ad-vesperascit], 3. v. impers., grow dark, approach evening.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [advolo], 1. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less exactly, of cavalry, rush at, fly at, charge upon.

aedēs (-is), -is [AID (cf. aestus) + es], f., (hearth, fireplace), temple. — Also (only in the plur.), a house, a dwelling.

aedificium, -i [aedific- (cf. aedifico) + ium], n., building. — Esp., buildings standing singly, opposed to villages, farm houses.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedific- (aedes, house, FAC in facio)], 1. v. a., build (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

aedilis, -is [aedili- (as st. of aedes) + lis], m., (belonging to a temple?), an aedile, an officer at Rome.

Aegaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj. Aegean (of the Aegian Sea): mare Aegaeum, the Aegian.

aegerrimē, superl. of aegrē.
aeğrê [old case-form of aeger], adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Aegyptus, -i [Gr., F., Egypt.

Aemiliánus, -i [Aemiliô (reduced) + anus], M., surname of P. Cornelius Scipio, who was the adopted son of one of the Scipios, and son of L. Aemilius Paulus.


aemulātiô, -onis [aemulā- (st. of aemulor, rival) + tio], F., rivalry, competition.

aemulus, -a, -um [? cf. aequus], adj., rivalling, emulous. — Esp., masc. or fem. as noun, a rival.

aēneüs, -a, -um [aenō- (reduced) (cf. aes) + eus], adj., of bronze, of copper, bronze (adj.), copper (adj.).

Aeolidēs, -ae [Greek patronymic from Aeolus], M., son of Aeolus. — Esp., Sisyphus.

Aeolius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., belonging to Aeolus. — Fem. as noun, Aeolia, the country of the winds, a group of islands near Sicily (now Lipari Islands).

Aeolus, -i [Gr.], M., Aeolus, the god of the winds.

aequālis, -e [aequō- (reduced) + alis], adj., equal.

aequāliter [aequali- (fr. aequus, even) + ter], adv., evenly, uniformly, equally.

aequē [old case-form of aequus], adv., equally, in like manner, to the same extent.

eaquinoctium, -i [as if aequinoct- (indirectly fr. aequo-, equal, nox night) + ium], N., the time of the equinox, the equinoct.

aequītās, -ātis [aequō- (even, equal) + tis], F., evenness. Hence (cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi, evenness of mind, contentment, resignation.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aequō-, equal], 1. v. a., make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um [?], perh. akin to unus, formed with -cus instead of -nus], adj., even, level, equal. Hence, fair, just, equitable: mentem (unruffled); aequo Marte, on equal terms, with equal success.

Æer, -ēris [Gr.], M., the air.

aerārius, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + arius], adj., (having to do with copper). — Neut. as noun, the treasury.

aereus, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + eus], adj., of copper, copper (adj.).

aes, aeris [?], N., copper (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, money. — Esp., aes alienum, debt (another man’s money).

aestās, -ātis [st. akin to aedēs (hearth) + tas], F., (heat), summer (the season for military operations).

aestimātiô, -onis [aestimā- (st. of aestimo, value) + tio], F., valuation, estimation, value.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aestimō-, assayer], 1. v. a., value, estimate. — Less exactly, regard: gravius (consider more serious, of calamities).

aestuārius, -a, -um [aestu- (cf. aestus, tide) + arius], adj., (relating
to the tide). — Only in neut., as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.

aestus, -ūs [AID (in aedes, hearth) + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.

aetās, -ātis [for aevitas, fr. aevō-(st. of aevum, age) + tas], F., age (of old or young): prima aetate, in childhood; aetate confectus, oppressed with years. — Also, an age (time, generation).

aeternus, -ā, -um [aevō- (st. of aevum, age) + ternus], adj., (relating to age), eternal, lasting: aeternum, in aeternum, forever.

Aetna, -ae [Gr.], F., Mt. Aetna, the famous volcano in Sicily.

aevum, -i [I (cf. eo, go) + vum (neut. of vus)], N., age (young or old), life: aevi brevis, short-lived. — Esp., old age, age.

aff-, see adf-.

Afrīcānus, -a, -um [Africō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of Africa, African.

Africus, -a, -um [Afrō- (st. of Afer, African) + cus], adj., of Africa. — Esp., sc. ventus, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy). — Fem. as noun, the country or province of Africa.

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum.

agāsō, -onis [?], M., a driver.

Agēdincum, -i [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.

ager, agrī [AG in ago (drive?) + rūs, akin to Eng. acre], M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).

agg-, (except agger), see adg-.

agger, -eris [ad-ger (for gēs in gero, as st.)], M., (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): cotidianus (daily addition to the dike or walls).

agitātor, -ōris [agitā- + tor], M., a driver.

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tagitō- (as if st. of ago, put in motion)], I. v. a. freq., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble. — Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.

agmen, -inis [AG (in ago, put in motion) + men], N., a moving, a march. — Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train, a fleet. — Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear; claudere (bring up the rear); conferto agmine, in close order; agmine facto, in column (of attack); agmine, on the march; agmen legionum (the main column); extremo agmine, in the rear.

āgnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nitus [ad-(g)noscō], 3. v. a., recognize (in some relation to one's self, cf. cognosco).

āgnus, -i [?], M., a lamb.

agō, agere, ēgi, ēctus [AG, put in motion], 3. v. a., drive (apparently
agrestis, -e [unc. stem (from agrō-) + tis (cf. caelestis)], adj., (of the fields), belonging to the country (as opposed to the town), country, rustic. — As noun, a rustic, a peasant.

agricola, -ae [agrō- + cola, cf. incola], m., a husbandman, a farmer.

agricultūra, see cultura.

alio [?], 3. def. v. n., say, assert.

alacer, -cris, -cre [?], adj., active, eager, spirited.

alacritās, -ātis [alacri- (eager) + tas], f., eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.

alacriter [alacri- + ter], adv., eagerly.

albus, -a, -um [?], cf. Alpes], adj., white (pale, opp. to ater, cf. candidus, shining white, opp. to niger): plumbum album, tin; pōpus, hoary).

alēs, -is [Teutonic, cf. elk], f., the elk (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

alēa, -ae [?], f., a die (for playing).

Alesia, -ae [Gallic], f., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise-St.-Reine.

Alexander, -drī [Gr.], m., a common Greek name. — Esp., Alexander the Great, son of Philip of Macedon.

Alexandria, -ae [Gr.], f., Alexandria, the famous city built by Alexander the Great on the coast of Egypt.

alīās [unc. case-form of alius, but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time: alīas . . . alīas, now . . . now (cf. alius . . . alius).

alīēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of alieno.

alīēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [alienō-, another's], i. v. a., make another's. — Also, make strange, alienate, estrange.

alīēnus, -a, -um [unc. st. akin to alius, other (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + nus], adj., of another, another's, of others, other people's: fines (others'); aes alienum, debt. Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable (cf. suus), foreign to the purpose.

alīō [old case-form of alius], adv., elsewhere, elsewhere (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [aliquam-diu, cf.quam diu], adv., for some time, some time, a considerable time.

aliquandō [ali- (in alius, other) -quando, when], at some time, once. — Emphatically, at last (at some time, though not before), at length: tandem aliquando, now at length.

aliquantō, see aliquantus.

aliquantus, -a, -um [ali- (in alius, other) -quantus, how great (cf. aliqua)], adj., considerable. — Neut.
as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal.

aliquis (−qui), -qua, -quid (−quod) [ali- (in alius, other) -quis, any], indef. pron. (more forcible than quis; not universal, like quisquam), some, any. — Emphatically, some (considerable), any (important). — As noun, some one, any one, something, anything.

aliquot [ali- (in alius, other) -quot, how many], indecl. adj., several, some (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [ali- (in alius, other) + ter], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context: aliter se habere ac, be different from what, etc.

alius, -a, -ud [unc. root (cf. else) + ius], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one . . . another, one another, one one (thing), another another: alius alio casu, one by one fate, another by another: alius atque (see atque).

all-, see adl-.

alō, alee, alii, altus [AL, nourish], 3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse, support (supply with food), foster, raise, keep (of animals and gladiators): staturam (increase). — Fig., foster, foment, feed.

Alpēs, -ium [Celtic form (cf. albus) + is], F. plur., the Alps, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

Alpīcus, -a, -um [Alpi- + cus], adj., of the Alps. — Esp., m. plur. as noun, the inhabitants of the Alpine region.

alter, -era, -erum [AL- (in alius, other) + ter (for -terus, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., the other (of two) — In plur., the other party. — Repeated (cf. alius), one . . . the other, one another (of two). — In plur., one party . . . the other. — Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second). — Also (esp. with negatives), another (besides one’s self, where all are conceived as two parties, one’s self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um [alter- (as st.) + nus], adj., alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.

altitūdō, -inis [altō- (high) + tudo], F., height, depth (cf. altus), thickness (of timber).

altus, -a, -um [p. p. of alo (nourish) as adj.], (grown high by nourishing), high, lofty. — From opposite point of view, deep. — Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep: in alto, in deep water; ex alto, from the sea; exstructis in altum, high-piled.

alūta, -ae (?), cf. alumen, alum], F., leather (of a fine sort, like morocco?).

amābilis, -ē [amā- + bilis], adj., lovable.

amanter [aman- (p. of amo) + ter], adv., lovingly, affectionately.

amb- [akin to ambo, both], prep. only in comp., about, round, about.

ambactus, -i [prob. German], m., a retainer, a vassal.
Ambiānī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name Amiens.

Ambibarīi, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., an Aremorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

ambiguus, -a, -um [amb-taguus (AG + vus), through ambigo, plead on both sides], adj., in doubt, doubtful, dubious.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the Ambibarii).

Ambiorīx, -igis [Celtic], m., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

ambītīō, -ōnis [amb-titio, cf. ambiō], F., a going round. — Esp., a canvass for office. Hence, ambition.

Ambīvareti (Ambila-), -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambīvarītī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, ō (-ōrum) [akin to amb-, round about], num. adj., both (together, cf. uterque, both separately).

ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ambulō (fr. amb-, round about)], 1. v. n., walk, take a walk: in ius (go to law).

āmentia, -ae [ament- (mad') + ia], F., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

amīcē [old case-form of amicus], adv., friendly, in a friendly manner: cogitare (have kind thoughts).

amicitia, -ae [amicō- + tia], F., friendship, friendly relations, alliance, personal friendship (opp. to hospitium).

amicus, -a, -um [unc. st. fr. AM (in amo, love) + cus], adj., friendly, well-disposed.—Masc. as noun, a friend, an ally.

āmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of amitto.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., love, be fond of.

amoenus, -a, -um [stem akin to amo + nus, cf. amicus], adj., lovely, pleasant, charming: rosa.

amor, -ōris [AM (in amo) + or (for os)], M., love, affection.

āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [ab-moveō], 2. v. a., move away, take away, remove.

Amphiōn, -ōnis [Gr.], m., a king of Thebes, husband of Niobe, famous for his performances on the lyre.

amphora, -ae [Gr.], F., (a large oblong vessel with two handles), a jar, an amphora.

amplē [old case-form of amplus], adv., widely, largely. — amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplus quingenti, five hundred and more; amplius obsidum (see amplus).

amplificātus, -a, -um, p. p. of amplificō.

amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ampli-
Andocombogius, -i [Celtic], m., a chief man of the Remi.

Androclus, -i [Gr.], a slave who cured the foot of a lion, and was afterwards recognized and spared by him.

angulus, -i [prob. ancō- (st. of ancus, bent + lus)], m., (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [old case-form of angustus], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — Fig., sparingly [cf. ample], in small quantity.

angustiae, -ārum [angustō- + ia], f. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrows), a narrow pass, a pass: itinerum (a narrow pass); locorum (narrow defiles). — Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties.

angustus, -a, -um [angor (squeezing) + tus], adj., narrow, confined: angustiora castra (less extensive); angustior fastigio (narrowing, sloping, drawing in). — Fig., in angusto res est, the position is critical (cf. “in a tight place”).

anhelus, -a, -um [an- (?) halus (cf. halo, breathe)], adj., panting, puffing.

anillis, -e [anu- (reduced, cf. anus, an old woman) + illa], adj., of an old woman, an old woman’s, an old lady’s.

anima, -ae [ani- (treated as root, fr. an, blow) + ma (f. of mus], cf. animus], f., breath. Hence, soul, life. — Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).

animadvversus, -a, -um, p. p. of animadvertō.

animadvertō, -vertēre, -vertī, -versus (also animum advertō) [ani-
animal

annōtinus, -a, -um [some form of annō- (year) + tinus (cf. diutinus)], adj., last year’s, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -i [?], M., a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um [annō- + us], adj., annual: magistratus creatur (annually).

änser, -eris [for hänser, akin to goose], M., a goose.

ante [old case-form], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously);
ante habuerat (formerly, once); iam ante, already before, already; paucis ante diebus, a few days before; ante quam, before (with clause).— Prep. with acc., before (of place or time).—
In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before).— In comp., before (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante ea, case-form of is], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

antecōdō, *-cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [ante-cēdō], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, surpass (in size, etc.), exceed, preceede, go in advance of.

anteē, -ire, -ivi (-ii), no p. p. [ante-ēo], irr. v. n., go before, go ahead, precede.

antemna, -ae [?], F., a yard (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ante-pono], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antequam, see ante.
antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ante-vertex], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepono), prefer, get the start, get ahead.

Antiochus, -i [Gr.], m., the name of several Eastern potentates.— Esp., Antiochus the Great, King of Syria, conquered by the Scipios in B.C. 190.

antiquitus [antiquō- (ancient) + tus], adv., from ancient times, from early times. — Less exactly, long ago, in early times, ancienlty.

Antistius, -i [antiati- (antistes, overseer) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caesius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Caesar.

Antōnius, -i [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul. — 2. Antony, a priest.

antrum, -i [Gr.], N., a cave.

anxiētās, -ātis [anxiō- + tas], F., anxiety, solicitude.

anxius, -a, -um [anxō- (p. p. of angō, throttle) + ius], adj., anxious, troubled, fearful.

Ap., for Appius.

apage [Gr.], interj., begone! away with you!

aperiō, -perire, -perufi, -pertus [appario, get off, cf. operio, cover], 4. v. a., uncover, open. — apertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); collis (without trees); loca (open country); impetus maris (unbroken).

apertē [old case-form of apertus], adv., openly.

apertus, -a, -um, p. p. of aperio.

Apollō, -inis [?], m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

Apollōnius, -i [Gr.], surnamed Molon, a distinguished rhetorician of Rhodes.

apparō, see adparo.

1 appellō, see adpello.

2 appellō (adp.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tad-pellō-, cf. compello], 1. v. a., call, name, address, call upon, style (declare one something or address in a certain character).

Appius, -i [?], a Sabine word [?], m., a Roman prænomen.

aptus, -a, -um [AP (in apiscor, lay hold of) + tus], adj., (fitted to). suited, adapted, fit, apt.

apud [akin to ab]. prep. with acc., at, among, with, near, before, on one's part, in relation to (a person); at the house of, in one's house (company, possession): apud Xenophonem, in (the works of) Xenophon.

Apūlia, -ae [Apulū- + ia, f. of adj.], f., a division of Southern Italy east of Campania and Samnium, and north of Lucania.

aqua, -ae [?], f., water, a water-course, a spring: mensurae ex aqua, by the waterclock (a contrivance like an hourglass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātiō, -onis [aquā- (st. of
aquor, fetch water) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).

aquila, -ae [F. of aquilus, dark gray, perh. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

aquilifer, -eri [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, fer (in fero, bear) + us)], M., a standard-bearer (of the eagle).

Aquitania, -ae [F. of adj. developed fr. Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean. (See Caesar, i. 1.)

Aquitania, -a, -um [?], adj., of Aquitania. — As noun, an inhabitant of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.

āra, -ae [?], F., an altar.

Arar, -aris [?], M., the Sabine, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

Araxēs, -is [Gr.], M., the Araxes, a river in Persia.

arbiter, -trī [stem akin to ad-bito (go) + true, cf. -trum], M., (a bystander), a witness. — Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.

arbitrium, -i [arbitrō - umpire, judge] + ium (cf. iudicium)], N., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fit to do).

arbiter, -āri, -ātus [arbitrō - umpire, judge], i. v. a. and n., think, judge, suppose.

arbor, -oris [?], F., a tree.

arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītus [akin to accedo, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., summon, invite, send for, call in.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārśi, ārsus [prob. aridō - dry], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire.

— Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.

ārdor, -ōris [ard- (as if root of ardeo) + or], M., heat, flame. — Fig., fire, fury, eagerness, zeal.

Arduenna, -ae [?], F., the Ardennes, a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um [?], adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent). — Fig., difficult: arduis rebus, hardships.

ārea, -ae [?], F., a court, a courtyard.

Arecomici, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a branch of the Volcae.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea], adj., only F. plur., Aremoricus (of the states of Gaul near the ocean in Normandy and Brittany).

argenteus, -a, -um [argentō -eus], adj., of silver, silver (adj.).

argentum, -i [akin to arguo, make bright], N., (the shining metal), silver. — Also, of things made of the metal, silverware, silver.

argūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of arguo, make bright], adj., sharp, shrill: pecten (ringing).

āridus, -a, -um [ārō - wh. areo, be dry] + dus], adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land.

ariēs, -ietis [?], M., a ram. — Fig., a battering ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, a buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who con-
quered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

arma, -ōrum [AR, fit (cf. armus, the shoulder joint) + mus], N. plur., arms, equipment: in armis esse, to be under arms, to be ready for service, to be in service; parati in armis, armed for war; in armis, in battle; arma inferre (war); armis congressi (in battle), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum [armā- (st. of armo) + mentum], N. plur., (fittings), implements. — Esp., rigging, tackle.

armātūra, -ae [armā- (st. of armo) + tura], F., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of armo. Armenia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Asia.


arr-, see adr-.

ars, artis [AR (fit) + tis (reduced)], F., (skill in fitting), skill, art. — Plur., the arts, the useful arts.

artē [old case-form of artus], adv., closely, tightly.

articulus, -ī [artu- (joint) + clusus], M., a little joint. — Less exactly, a joint.

artifex, -icis [tartī- (ars) -fex (fac as st.)], M. and F., an artist.

artificium, -i [articī- (artificer) + ium], N., a skilful contrivance, an artifice, a trick. Also, a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art).

artus, -a, -um [p. p. of arCEO (shut up)], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick). — Fig., frugal, straitened, narrow.

Arvernus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Arverni.

arvum, -i [AR (in aro, plough) + vum], N., land (cultivated), a field.

arx, arcis [ARC (in arCEO, shut up) + is (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel.

ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendi, -scēnus [ad-scano, climb], 3. v. a. and n., climb up, climb, ascend: val­lum (mount, scale); navem (go on board).

ascēnsō (ads-), -onis [ad-†ascensio, cf. ascendo], F., (a climbing up), an ascent: ascensionem facere, climb up.

ascēnsum (ads-), -ūs [ad-†ascensus, cf. ascendō], M., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up. — Concr., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensum (from climbing up).

asciscō, see adsiscō.

Asia, -ae [Gr.], F., the country now called Asia Minor. — Esp., the Roman province of Asia, embracing Phrygia, Caria, Mysia, and Lydia.

asinus, -i [?], M., an ass.

aspectus, see adspectus.

asper, -era, -erum [?], adj., rough, harsh. — Fig., fierce, violent, rude, ascetic.

aspernātus, -a-um, p. p. of asper­nor.
aspermor, -äri, -ätus [†aspermō- (st. akin to ab-sperno), i. v. dep., disdain, spurn, despise.

ass-, see ads-.

Astyagēs, -is [Gr.], m., king of Media, father of Mandana, and grandfather of Cyrus, by whom he was deprived of his throne.

at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, but yet, at least.

ater, -tra, -trum [?], adj., black, dark, opp. to albus (dead white), cf. niger (jet black).—Fig., black, dark, gloomy, dismal.

Athēnae, -ārum [Gr.], f. plur., Athens, the great city of Attica.

Athēniēnais, e [Athena- + ensis], adj., of Athens, Athenian.—Plur. as noun, the Athenians.

Athēnōdōrus, -i [Gr.], m., an Athenian philosopher.

Athesis, -is [?], m., a river in upper Italy (now the Adige).

atque (āc) [ad-que], conj., and (generally introducing some more important idea), and even, and especially, and what is more.—Also, as, than: par atque, idem atque, the same as; simul atque, as soon as; aliter ac (atque), otherwise than, different from what, etc.; aliud atque, different from, etc.

atqui [at-qui (old abl. or instr.)], conj., (but somehow), but yet, but still.

Atrebās, -ātis [Celtic], adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one.—Plur. as noun, the Atrebates.

atrium, -i [atrō- (st. of ater) + lūm], n., the atrium, the main room, the hall, of a Roman house.

Atrius, -ī [atrō- (st. of ater) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name.

—Esp., Quintus Atrius, a soldier in Caesar’s army.

atrōx, -ōcis [st. akin to ater + cus (reduced), adj., savage, cruel. — Also, of things, atrocious, inhuman, monstrous: proelium (fierce).

attendō (adt-), -tendere, -tendi, -tensus [ad-tendo], 3. v. a. and n., (stretch towards).—With or without animus, attend, notice, listen.—

attentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., attentive: quae sit (devoted to his gains).

attentus, -a, -um, p. p. of attendo.

atterō (adt-), -terere, -trive, -tritus [ad-tero], 3. v. a., rub against, rub. — From the effect, rub off, wear away.

Atticus, -ī [Gr.], m., surname of Titus Pomponius Atticus, a Roman historian, a great friend of Cicero. He lived chiefly in Athens, whence his surname.

attineō (adt-), -tineère, -tini, -tensus [ad-teneneo], 2. v. n., (hold out towards).—Fig., pertain, relate.

attingō (adt-), -tingere, -tigē, -tactus [ad-tango], 3. v. a., touch upon, touch, reach, join (of a nation’s boundaries).

attionitus, -a, -um [p. p. of attono, strike with a thunderbolt ], adj., thunderstruck, spellbound, awestruck.

attribuō (adt-), -buere, -buī, -büus [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., allot to, assign.

attulī, see adfero.

auctor, -ōris [AUG (in augeo, increase) + tor], m., a voucher (for any act or statement), an authority, an adviser, an author, a promoter: victo-
riae (a cause or source); auctor esse, approve, advise.

auctòritās, -ātis [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], F., influence, prestige, authority (not military or political, cf. imperium and potestas), dignity.
auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of augeo.
audācia, -ae [audac- (bold) + ia], F., daring, boldness, effrontery, audacity.
audācter [audac- (bold) + ter], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but used of an enemy): audacissime, with the greatest daring.
audeō, audère, ausus [prob. avidō-, eager], 2. v. a. and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do).—ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, daring.
audīō, -ire, -ivī, -itus [prob. akin to aurīs, ear], 4. v. a., hear, hear of, listen to.
audītiō, -ōnis [audī- (st. of audio) + tio], F., a hearing, hearsay, report.
audītus, -a, -um, p. p. of audio.
auperō, auperre, abstuli, ablatūs [ab(s) -fero], irr. v. a., take away, carry off, remove.
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-st.)], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, enhance, add to (something).—Pass., increase, grow.

Augustus, -ī [augustus, venerable, august'], M., a title (used as a surname) of Octavius Cæsar.

Aulercus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Auleri (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul).—Plur. as noun, the Auleri.
aura, -ae [AU (blow) + ra (F. of rus)], F., air (in motion), a breeze — More gen., the air.

Aurēlius, -i [for Auselius, akin to aurum, Aurora, and uro], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Cains Aurelius Cotta, a consul in Hannibal's time.
aureus, -a, -um [aurō- + eus], adj., of gold, golden.
aurīga, -ae [poss. akin to aurīs and ago, cf. aurea, headstall], M. and F., a charioteer, a driver.
auris, -is [akin to ear (cf. audio)], F., an ear: auris mihi praebete, give attention to me, “lend me your ears.”
aurum, -ī [akin to uro, burn], N., gold.

Aurunculēius, -ī [Aurunculē- (dim. of Auruncus, name of an Italian tribe) + eius], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculēius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.
auscultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ausculta-], for auricula, I. v. n., hear with attention, listen.

Auster, -tri [us (burn) + ter (f-tro, cf. -trum)], the south wind (dry and hot). — Personified, Auster, the god of the South Wind.
ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of audeo.

aut [?, but cf. autem], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. vel). — Repeated, either . . . or.
autem [?, akin to aut], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding), however.

autumnus (auct-), -i [for autu-
auxiliar

tominus, ταυκτό- (cf. augeo, increase) + minus], autumn (the season of increase).

auxiliar, -āri, -ātus [tāuxiliō-, help], i. v. dep. give assistance.

auxilium, -i [tāuxili- (akin to augeo, increase) + ium], n., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extremum (the last resource); ferre (to assist, to aid); auxilio (as a reinforcement); quos auxili causa habebat (as auxiliaries, etc.— Plur., auxiliaries (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry), reinforcements: auxilia tardare, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricum, -i [Celtic], n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae [avarō- (greedy) + tia], f., covetousness, greed, avarice.

avārus, -a, -um [tāvā- (st. akin to aveo) + rus (cf. gnarus)], adj., avaricious, covetous, greedy.

avē [inv. of aveō, be happy], farewell, hail (in salutations).

avēna, -ae [?], F., oats, oat straw.

aveō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [prob. tāvō- (av (desire) + us)], 2. v. a., desire earnestly, be eager.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of avertō.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn away, turn off, push aside.— āversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away. Hence, flying, also, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).

avia, -ae [avē- + ia], F., a grandmother.

avidus, -a, -um [tāvō- (cf. aveo and avarus) + dus], adj., eager, desirous.

avis, -is [unc. root + is], F., a bird.

avus, -i [?], M., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).

B

Babylōn, -ōnis [Gr.], F., an ancient and renowned city on the Euphrates river, taken by Cyrus the Great.

Babylōnicus, -a, -um [Babylōn- + icus], adj., Babylonian, Babylonic.

Babylōnus, -a, -um [Babylōn- + ius], adj., Babylonian. — M. plur. as noun, the Babylonians.

Bācenis, -is [Teutonic], F., with silva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

baculum, -i [?], n., a staff, a sceptre, a wand.

Baebius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Cnāus Babius Tamphilus and Marcus Babius Tamphilus, consuls in Hannibal's time.

Baleāris, -e [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Bālearis insulae, in the Mediterranean, now Ibiza, Majorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).
balneum, -i (plur. -æ or -a) [Gr.], N. and F., a bath, a bath-room.

barba, -ae [?], F., the beard.

barbarus, -a, -um [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus, stammering], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians.
— Masc. plur. as noun, barbarians, the barbarians or savages.

Basilus, -i [?], M., agnomen of Lucius Minicius Basilus, an officer in Caesar's army.

Batavī, -ūrum [Celtic], M. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

beātus, -a, -um, p. p. of beo.

Belgae, -ārum [?], M. plur., the Belgae or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -i [Belga + ium], N., the country of the Belgæ.

bellē [old case-form of bellus], prettily, neatly, finely, well.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellicus- (of war) + osus], adj., warlike.

bellicus, -a, -um [bellī- (war) + cus], adj., of war, in war.

bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bellē-, war], 1. v. a. fight, make war.

Bellovacī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -i [old duellum (fr. duo), a strife between two], N., war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum defendere, defend one's self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations, prepare for war.

bellus, -a, -um [contr. from bennus, from bonus (cf. bene)], adj., pretty, handsome, agreeable, lovely.

bene [old case-form of bonus, good], adv., well: bene habet, it is well.

beneficium, -i [beneficē- (reduced) (cf. bene, fac in facio) + ium], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, a kindness, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered.

benignē [old case-form of benignus, kind], adv., kindly, generously.

benignitās, -ātis [benignō- (kind) + tas], F., kindness, courtesy.

beō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], I. v. a. bless, make happy, gladden.— beātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., happy, fortunate, blessed.

bēstia, -ae [?], F., a brute (as opposed to man, cf. belua, a monster or ferocious beast), a beast, an animal.

bēstiola, -ae [bestia- + ola (fem. of olus, dim. ending)], F., a little animal, a "beastie."

bibliothēca, -ae [Gr.], F., a library.

bibō, bibere, bibi, bibitus [redupl. unc. root, cf. potus], 3. v. a., drink.

Bibracte, -is [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Haudii (Mont Beauvray) near Autun, which was founded later.

Bibrax, -ctis [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

Bibulus, -i [bibō- (drinking) +
bi'duwm · 25 · Brütus

lus], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus (Calpurnius) Bibulus, Cæsar's colleague in the consul-

ship.

* biduwm, i [bi- (for dvi-, akin to duo) - duum (akin to dies)], n., two days' time, two days.

bini, -ae, a [bi- (for tivi-, akin to duo) + nis], distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipedālia, e [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., of two feet (in measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., twice.

Bithynii, -ōrum [Gr.], m. plur., the Bithynians, people of Bithynia in Asia Minor.

Bituriges, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Blannovii, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Blithô, -onis [?], m., a Roman family name. See Sulpicius.

Bocchus, -i [?], m., a king of the Gaetuli, conquered by Marius.

Boduōgnātus, -i [Celtic], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōia, v. sing. of Bōii, Boia.

Bōii, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

Boiorix, -īgis [Celtic], m., a leader of the Cimbri, conquered by Marius.

bonus, -a, -um [?], adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well disposed; dapis meliora (the better parts); optimum est, it is best. — Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property, estate.

bōs, bovis [akin to cow], c., a bull, a cow, an ox. — Plur., cattle, oxen.

* brabēum, -i [Gr.], n., a prize.

bracchium (brāch-), -i [?], n., an arm.

Brannovices, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hædui.

Bratuspantium, -i [Celtic], n., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e [for tregus (bragh, break + us)], adj., short (of space or time): dominus (short-lived); brevi, in a short space.

brevitās, -ātis [brevi- + tas], f., shortness, short stature: brevitās temporis, want of time.

Britanni, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae [†Britannō- + ia (f. of ius)], f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um [†Britannō- + cus], adj., of Briton, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

brūma, -ae [brevi- (short) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], f., the winter solstice.

Brundisium, -i [?], n., a port of Apulia (now Brindisi).

Brütus, -i [brutus, heavy], a family name at Rome. — Esp.: 1. Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus
of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Junius Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.—2. Marcus Junius Brutus, mentioned above.

caelum, -i [?], n., the sky, the heavens, heaven.

cænosus, -a, -um [caenō- + osus], adj., filthy, foul.

cænum, -i [?], n., dirt, filth, mud, mire.

caerimonia, -ae [?], f., a rite, a ceremony.

Caerōsi, -ōrum [?], m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

cæruleus, -a, -um [perh. akin to cæsius, bluish], adj., dark blue.

Cæsar, -aris [?], m., a family name in the gens Julia.—Esp., Caius Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries.

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo.

calamitās, -ātis [?], f., disaster, (orig. to crops ?), defeat, misfortune, loss.

* calceārius, -i [calcō- + arius], m., a shoemaker, a dealer in shoes.

calceus, -i [calc- (calx, heel) + eus], m., a shoe.

calculus, -i [calc- (calx, lime) + ulus (as if calcō- + lus)], m., a pebble, a stone for reckoning. Hence, fig., a reckoning, ad calculus revaluation, support to an account, reckoning, calculation.

calefaciō, -ōri, -ōre, -ōritus, -ātus, f., heat, make hot.
Caletes, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe in Normandy on the Seine.

Caleti, -orum, same as the preceding.

callidē [old case-form of callidus], adv., shrewdly, craftily.

callidus, -a, -um [tcallō- (cf. callum, thick skin) + dus], adj., (tough?), shrewd, cunning, skilful.

cālō, -onis [?], m., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.

Calpurnia, -ae [?], f., Cæsar’s wife.

calumnia, -ae [fcalumnō- (cf. calvōr, deceive) + Īa], f., a false prosecution.

calvītium, -ī [calvō- + ītum], n., baldness.

calvus, -a, -um [?], adj., bald.

Calvus, -i [calvus], m., a Roman surname. — Esp., Cæius Licinius Macer Calvus, a poet and orator.

Cambysēs, -is [Gr.], m.: 1. The father of Cyrus the Great. — 2. Son of Cyrus.

Cameras, -ertos [?], adj., of Camerinum, Camertian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Cameritians.

Campānus, -a, -um [campō- (reduced) + anus], Campanian, of Campania, a district of southern Italy.

campester, -tris, -tre [campō- + ster, as if tcampet- + tris (cf. equestris)], adj., of the plain: loca (level plains).

 campus, -ī [?], m., a plain, a field.

candeo, -ere, -ēre, -ēre [t candō- (Ca in Cærus, white)], 1. v. n., be brilliant, shine, glow (with a gleaming color).

candidus, -a, -um [t candō- (whence candeo) + dus], adj., shining, white, bright.

Caninius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Cæius Caninius Rēbilus, a legatus of Cæsar.

canis, -is [?], m. and f., a dog.

canistrum, -i [Gr.], n., a basket.

Cannae, -ārum [?], f. plur., a town of Apulia in Italy, where Hannibal totally defeated the Romans.

Cannēnsia, -e [Canna- + ensia], adj., of Cannae.

Cantium, -i [Celtic], n., Kent, the southeast corner of Great Britain.

cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cantō-, song], 1. v. a., produce melodious sounds, sing, sound, play (an instrument).

cantus, -ūs [CAN (sing) + tus], m., a song, melody, music.

cappāx, -ācis [CAP (in capio) + ax (as if, perh. really, tcapā- + cus reduced)], adj., wide, capacious.

capillus, -i [adj. form akin to caput, head], m., the hair (collectively).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus [CAP], 3. v. a., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: arma (take up). — Less exactly, choose, select: locum. — So also (esp. of ships, etc.), reach: portus (arrive at, make). — Fig., take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, experience (dolorem): consilium (adopt); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to).

capitālia, -e [capit- + alis], adj., (relating to the head or life), capital, involving life: causa.

Capitōlium, -i [developed from capi-], n., the Capitol at Rome.
capra, -ae [?], F., a she-goat.
captivus, -a, -um [as if "capti- 
(imaginary st. of capto, fr. capio) + 
vus], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, 
a captive, a prisoner.
captō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [captō- (cf. 
capio)], 1. v. a freq., seize eagerly, 
catch at, watch for.
captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.
captus, -ūs [CAP (in capio) + 
tus], m., a seizing. Hence, what one 
can grasp. — Fig., capacity, charac-
ter, nature.

Capua, -ae [?], F., the chief city 
of Campania in Italy, famed for its 
wealth and luxury.
caput, -itis [?, akin to head], n., 
the head: capite solo ex aqua extare, 
have only the head above water. — 
Less exactly, person (cf. "head of 
cattle"), mouth (of a river). — Fig., 
life: poenam capitis (of death); capi-
tis periculo (of life); capitis damnare 
to death).
carcer, -eris [Gr.], m., a prison.

careō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus [?], 2. v. n., 
be without, go without, be free from, 
keep away from.
carina, -ae [?], F., a keel, the bot-
tom (of a ship).
carmen, -inis [akin to cano], n., 
a song, music, a poem, a magic for-
manda, an incantation, a charm.

Carnutes, -um [Celtic], m. plur., 
a Gallic people between the Loire 
and the Seine, about Orleans.
carō, carnis [akin to crudus and 
raw], F., flesh, meat. — Plur., pieces 
of meat.
carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus [akin to 
harvest'], 3. v. a., pluck: viam (take).
carrum, -i [Celtic], n., a cart (of 
the Gauls).
carrus, -i, m., another form for 
carrum.

Carthāginiēnns (Kar-), -e [Car-
thagin- (as if -ini-) + ensis], adj., 8 
of Carthage, Carthaginian. — Masc. 
as noun, a Carthaginian.

Carthāgō (Kar-), -inis [prob. Gr.], 
F., Carthage, the famous city in 
Africa once the rival of Rome.
cārus, -a, -um [?], adj., dear, 
precious, valuable.

Carvilius, -i [?], m., a Roman gen-
tile name. — Also, a king of part of 
Kent.

casc, -ae [?], m., surname of C. 
Servilius, one of Caesar's assassins.
cāseus, -i [?], m., cheese.

Cassii, -ōrum [Celtic, cf. Velio-
casses and Cassivellaunus]. m. 
plur., a British tribe.

Cassius, -i [?], m., a Roman gen-
tile name. — Esp., Caius Cassius Lon-
ginus, one of Caesar's assassins.

Cassivellaunus, -i [Celtic], m., a 
British chief ruling north of the 
Thames, who took command of the 
general resistance of his countrymen 
to Caesar, but was finally reduced to 
submission.

castellum, -i [castrō- (fortress) 
+lum (n. of lus)], n., a fortress, a 
stronghold, a fort, an outwork, a 
redoubt.

Castor, -oris [Gr.], m., twin 
brother of Pollux, son of Jupiter 
and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, 
along with his brother, by the 
Greeks and Romans.

castrum, -i [SKAD (cover) +
cásus, N., a fortress. — Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move.

cásus, -ús [CAD (in cadó, fall) + tus], M., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a fate, a mischance, a misfortune, a downfall: casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quaram rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); ad omnes casus, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

catellus, -i [catulō- (whelp) + lus], a puppy.

catēna, -ae [?], F., a chain (for prisoners), a cable.

Catō, -onis [prob. catō- (cat) + ō (cf. Catulus)], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Porcius Catō Uticensis, famous for the constancy (perhaps obstinacy) of his character and for his death at Utica, which he sought with his own hands rather than submit to Cæsar.

Catullus, -ī [dim. of Catulus], M., Valerius Catullus, one of the greatest of Roman lyric poets.

causa, -ae [?], F., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, an occasion, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything). Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; praedandi causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa, for an ambuscade; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy. — Also, a cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial. Hence, also, a situation, a case: in eadem causa, in the same situation, on the same side.

causor, -ārī, -ātus [causa-], I. v. dep., assign or give as a reason (real or feigned), pretend, allege.

cautē [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautēs, -is [akin to cos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, -a, -um, p. p. of caveo.

caveō, cāvere, cāvī, cautus [perh. skv, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one’s guard, guard against (something), take or give security, beware of.

cavum, -i [N. of cavus, hollow, as noun], N., a hole, a cave.

CC, for ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.

CCCC, for quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus [?], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction). — Esp., give way, retreat, retire, depart: cedentes, the flying. — Fig., yield: fortunae.

cedrus, -ī [Gr.], F., cedar, juniper tree.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [celebri- (reduced)], I. v. a., crowd, throng, frequent. Hence, celebrate, extol, praise.

celer, -eris, -ere [CEL (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

CELERITAS, -ātis [celeri- (in celer) + tas], F., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).
CELERITER [CELER- (in celer) + TER], adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, akin to clam, secretly, and caligo, mist], i. v. a., conceal, hide: arma. — Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celtae, -ārum [Celtic], m. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain.— More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

cēna, -ae [?], F., a dinner, a meal, a repast, a banquet.

Cēnabēnsis, -e [Cēnabō- + ensis], adj., of Cēnabum, of the Cēnabenses, the people of Cēnabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i [Celtic], n., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, urbs Aurelianensis).

Cēnimāgni, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a British tribe.

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cena-], i. v. n., dine.

Cēnomāni, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci.

cēnēsō, cēnēre, cēnsul, cēnus [?], z. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. — Less exactly, give one’s opinion, advise, determine.

Centēnius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Centenius, a Roman praetor, conquered by Hannibal.

centēsimus, -a, -um [centō- + esimus], num. adj., the hundredth.

centum (C) [akin to hund-red], indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

certūriō, -ōnis [centurio- (century) + o], m., a centurion. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a ‘century,’ originally a hundred men.

cēra, -ae [Gr.], F., wax, a writing tablet (covered with wax):

cerevisia, -ae [Celtic], F., beer.

cerno, cernere, crēvi, crētus (sifted, separated), certus (determined) [cēr-, separate], i. v. a., separate. Hence, distinguish, see, behold, descry, discern. — Also, determine.

certāmen, -inis [cērta- (in certo, cf. cerno) + men], n., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

certē [old case-form of certua], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [certē-], 1. v. n., strive, contend, fight.

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno, as adj., determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), definite, sure, established, regular: certiorem facere, inform, order; dies certa, an appointed day or time; certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular.

cervīx, -icis [akin to cerebrum, the brain], F., the neck.

cervus, -i [root of cornu (horn) + vua], m., a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stag’s horns), chevaux-defrisc.

cessō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cessō- (p. p. of cedo)], 1. v. n. freq., linger, delay.

cēterus, -a, -um [cē (in ecce,
Cethêgus

behold, hic, this) + terus (cf. alter)],
adj., the other, the rest of (cf. alius,
other, not including all). — Usually
plur., the rest, the remaining, the
others; frumento ceterisque rebus
(everything else necessary, where
aliis would mean some other things).

Cethêgus, -i [?], m., a Roman
family name. — Esp., Publius Cor-
nelius Cethêgus, a Roman consul in
Hannibal’s time.

Cevenna, -ae [Celtic], f., the
Cevennes, a woody mountain region
on the west side of the lower Rhone
valley.

Chêruscî, -orum [?], m. plur., a
tribe of the Germans between the
Weser and the Elbe.

chirographum, -i [Gr.], n., a
handwriting, hand, a writing, a re-
sceipt.

Christus, -i [Gr.], m., Christ.

cibârius, -a, -um [cibō-, food (re-
duced) + alius], adj., pertaining to
food. — Neut. plur. as noun, pro-
visions.

cibus, -i [?], m., food.

cicâtrix, -icis [?], f., a scar.
cicer, -eris [?], n., the chickpea,
chickpease.

Cicero, -ônis [cicer (chickpea) + o,
orig. a nickname, possibly from ex-
crescences on the nose], m., a name
of a Roman family from Arpinum.
— Esp.: 1. Marcus Tullius Cicero,
the great orator. — 2. Quintus
Tullius Cicero, his brother, in
Cæsar’s service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimber, -bris [?], adj., Cimbrian.
— As noun, a Cimbrian, one of a
German tribe living in Jutland, who
overran Gaul and made a successful
inroad into the Roman dominions
in the second century B.C. They
were conquered at Aqua Sextiæ and
Vercellæ by Marius and Catulus,
b.C. 102 and 101.

Cingetorix, -iges [Celtic], m.: 1.
A leader of the Treveri, brother-
in-law of his rival, Indutiomarus. —
2. A British prince in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctus [?],
3. v. a., surround, encircle. — Less
exactly, man (occupy in a circuit,
of walls).

Cinna, -ae [?], m., a Roman fam-
ily name. — Esp., L. Cornelius Cinna,
a colleague of Marius, and one of his
adherents in the civil war with Sulla.

cippus, -i [?], m., a stake, a pillar,
a post. — Plur., apparently jocosely
used of a peculiar form of palisades,
boundary posts (?), chevaux-de-frise.

Circaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of
Circe.

Circē, -ès (ae) [Gr.], f., a daughter
of the sun, said to have fled from
Colchis to Circei in Italy. She was
famous for her sorceries, by which
she changed her guests into beasts.

circiter [circē- (around) + ter],
adv. and prep. with acc., about. —
Fig. (of time, number, and quantity),
about (in the neighborhood of), near,
not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumeo.
circuitus, -ûs [circumitus], m.,
a circuit (a going round), a circui-
tous route, a circumference: in cir-
cuitu, all around.

circulus, -i [circō- (cf. circum) +
lus], m., a circle.
circum [acc. of circē-, around (cf. curvus)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum-cludo], 3. v. a., enclose around, encircle, place a band around.
circumdatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of circumdo.
circumdō, -dare, -dēdi, -datus [circum-ndo], 1. v. a., put around: murus circumdatūs, (encircling, thrown around). — By a confusion of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem redis.
circu(m)eō, -ire, -iī, -itus [cicum-eo], irr. v. n., go around. — Becoming active, visit, make a tour of: hiberna; make the round of: foris.
circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour around. — Pass. (as reflexive), pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides. — Also (cf. circumdo), surround: multitudine praesidia (surround with a swarming multitude).
circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., throw around. — Esp., in a military sense, hurl around, throw around: circumiecta multitudine (assailing on all sides).
circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumicio.
circummēniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [circum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect (by a fortification).
circummēnitūs, -a, -um, p. p. of circummunio.
circumplector, -plecti, -plexus [circum-plecto, twine], 3. v. dep., embrace, surround.
circumsedeō, -sedere, -sēdi, -ses-
sus [circum-sedeo], 2. v. a., sit around, surround. Hence, blockade, besiege.
circumsiliō, -silire, no perf., no p. p. [circum-salio, leap], 4. v. n., jump or hop around.
circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, no p. p. [circum-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. a., stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset.
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p. [circum-sto, stand], 1. v. a., surround, stand around.
circumvālō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [circum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., surround with walls, blockade, invest.
circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-
tus [circum-venio, come], 4. v. a., surround. — Fig. (cf. "get round"), impose upon, defraud, betray, circumvent.
circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumvenio.
circus, -i [?], m., a circus (a building, orig. oval, for races, contests, etc.), an arena.
cis [case-form of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, this side of.
Cita, -ae [perh. ci (in cieo) + ta (cf. nauta)], m., a Roman family name. — Only, Caius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.
citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cito.
citer, -ra, -rum [ce (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated). — Usually citerior (compar.), nearer,
kither (as adj.): Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul).


cito [abl. of citus (fr. cieō, put in motion)], adv., quickly: citissimē, very rapidly.

citrā [case-form, F. of citer], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, within (as opp. to beyond).

civicus, -a, -um [civi- + cus], adj., of a citizen, pertaining to a citizen (more literal than civilis), civic.

civilis, -e [civi- (lengthened) + lis], adj., of a citizen (or citizens), courteous, civil, polite: bellum (civial); ius (civial, as opp. to natural).

civiliter [civili- + ter], adv., as becomes a citizen, courteously, politely.

civis, -is [ci (in quies, rest) + vis (weakening of -vus)], M. and F., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

civitas, -ātis [civi- + tás], F., the state of being a citizen, citizenship.—Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise.—Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one’s fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellit ex civitate (from the country).

cládēs, -is [?], F., a disaster, a defeat.

clam [case of st. akin to caligo, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly: fore clam, will not be found out.

clámitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of clamo], 1. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out, shout.

clámo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [noun st. akin to calendae], 1. v. n., shout, exclaim.

clámor, -ōris [clam (as if root of clamo) + or], M., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

clandestinus, -a, -um [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from clam) + tinus], adj., secret, clandestine.

clārus, -a, -um [CLA (in clamo) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous, conspicuous.

classiārius, -a, -um [classi- + iarius], adj., belonging to a fleet.— Masc. plur. as noun, naval forces, seamen.

classicum, -ī [classi- + cum (N. of cus)], N., (belonging to the army, see classis), a signal for battle, a trumpet-call.

classis, -is [CLA (in clamo) + tis], F., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army called out for duty at sea, a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Clastidium, -ī [?], N., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudia, -ae [F. of Claudia], F., a Roman female name.

Claudius, -ī [claudō- (lame) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.: 1. Appius Claudia, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54. — 2. Marcus Claudia Marcellus, see Marcellus.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus
[of unc. form., akin to clavis, key],
3. v. a., close, shut, fasten, shut in.—
Esp., claudere agmen, close the line
of march, bring up the rear.

clausula, -ae [clausō- (cf. claudio) + ula, dim. ending], F., a conclusion
(of a speech).

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of claudo.
clāvis, -is [CLAV (fasten) + is],
F., a key.
clāvus, -i [akin to clavis and claudio], M., a nail, a spike.
clementer [clement- (gentile) + ter], adv., mildly, mercifully, with
forbearance.
clementia, -ae [clement- (gentile) + ia], F., kindness, gentleness, hu-
manity, clemency.

Cleopātra, -ae [?], F., the famous
queen of Egypt, who with Mark
Antony was defeated at Actium by
Octavius Cæsar, B.C. 31.

clīēns, -entis [= cluens, p. of clu-
eo, hear, obey], M. and F., (a hearer),
a dependent, a vassal, a retainer.

clientēlia, -ae [client- + ēlia (imi-
tating suadela, etc.)], F., vassalage
(as condition of a clīēns). Hence
(viewed fr. the other side), protection.—Phrases: magnae clientelae,
many vassals (extensive relations of
"clantage"); Remis in clientelam
se dicaverunt (surrendered them-
selves as vassals to, etc.).

clipeus, -i [?], M., a shield (round,
as opp. to scutum).

clitellae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a
pack-saddle.

Clōdius, -ī [the popular form of
Claudius], M., a Roman gentile
name, belonging to the plebeian
branch of the gens Claudia.—Esp.,
Publius Clodius, a most bitter enemy
of Cicero. He was killed in a fray
by T. Annius Milo, who was de-
defended by Cicero in a famous oration
still extant.

Cn., for Gnaeus.

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-
acervo], 1. v. a., heap up, mass to-
gether, heap on top (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo.
coagmentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [coag-
mentō, joint], 1. v. a., fasten to-
gether.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus
[con-arto, bind], 1. v. a., press to-
gether, confine.

coccum, -i [Gr.], N., a berry
yielding a scarlet dye, scarlet.

coccus, -a, -um, p. p. of coquo.

Cocytus, -i [Gr.], M., a fabled
river of the lower world.

cœmō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēmpetus
[con-emo], 3. v. a., buy up, purchase.

coēmpetus, -a, -um, p. p. of cœmo.

cœo, -īre, -īvi (-ī), no p. p. [con-
eco], irr. v. n., come together, unite,
meet.

cœpi, -isse, coeptus [con-ēapi
(perf. of ēapi, cf. apiscor), def. v. a.,
have taken hold of), began, under-
took, started.—coeptus, -a, -um, p. p.
used in the active sense with pass.
infinities.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coeipi.

coeerceō, -ercère, -ercui, -ercitus
[con-arceo], 2. v. a., confine, keep in
check, hold in check, restrain.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-agito
(in sense of revolve, discuss)], 1. v.
a., consider, think over.—Esp. (as
to some plan of action), think about, ponder, reflect, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): idem cogitare, have the same idea or feelings.

cognatiō, -ānis [con-(g)natio, birth], v., connection by birth.—Concretely, a family, a clan.
cognitus, -ā, -um, p. p. of cognoscō.
cognōmen, -inis [con-(g)nomen], n., a family name, a surname.
cognoscō, -gnosere, -gnōvi, -gnitus [con-(g)noso, learn], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware.—Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study.—In perf. tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known).
cōgō, cōgere, cōgēi, cōactus [con-ago], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, drive, force, compel, oblige.

cohībeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [con-habeō], 2. v. a., hold together, hold back, check, restrain.

cohors, -hortis [con-hortis (reduced), akin to hortus, garden], v., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortatiō, -ānis [con-hortatio, cf. cohortor], v., an encouraging, encouragement.—Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -āri, -ātus [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander): cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another.

collāre, -is [N. of adj. collaria (cf. collum), as noun], n., a collar.
collis, -is [?], m., a hill.
collum, -ī [?], n., the neck.
colō, colere, colui, cultus [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate.—Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), cherish, honor, pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae [colonō- (cf. colo) + ia], v., (state of a colonist).—Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupant of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

colōnus, -ī [colō- (old st. akin to colo) + nus], m., a farmer, a peasant.

color, -ōris [prob. akin to caligo (mist) as opp. to white], m., color.
columba, -ae [?], f., a dove, a pigeon.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as cum], adv. in comp., with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ērēre, -ussī, -ūstus [con-buro (?), relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum, funeral pyre], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis [con-tmitis (MA in meo, go, + tis)], c., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower), a comrade.
cōmitās, -ātis [comi- (courteous) + tas], F., courtesy, affability.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitīum, -ī [?, perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium)], N., the Comitium, a part of the Forum at Rome.

comitor, -āri, -ātus [comit-, companion], I. v. dep., accompany. — comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, accompanying.

commēātus, -īs [com-meatus, cf. commoeo, go to and fro], M., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communica- tions (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commemorō, call to mind], I. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commendō, commit], I. v. a., intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.

commentum, -ī [com-mentum (p. p. of memorī)], N., thing thought up, a fiction, a pretense.

commoeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [commoeo], I. v. n., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to.

commilitō, -ōnis [com-milit- + o], M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

commissūra, -ae [com-missura (cf. committō)], F., a joint, a seam.

committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence, join, unite, attach: proelium (join, engage, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one’s self in the hands of, etc.) ; nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.); in periculum se committere (expose). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admissus), perpe- trate: committere ut possit, leave it possible.

Commius, -ī [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebates.

* commodātum, -ī [p. p. of commodus as noun], N., a loan.

commodē [old case-form of commodus], adv., conveniently, fittingly, readily, advantageously, to advantage: satis commod, to much advantage; non satis commod, not very easily.

commodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commodō-], cf. commodus], I. v. a., lend, loan, give. —

commodum, see commodus.

commodus, -a, -um [com-modus, measure], adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous, agreeable: incessu commod, of gentle mien; commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one’s property; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience).

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoror.

commoror, -āri, -ātus [con-moror], I. v. dep., delay, stay, linger.

commotus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoveo.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-
commūnicātus [con−moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate: bellum (begin). — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir. — Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, move, arouse, influence (with idea of violent feeling).

commūnicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commūnicō− (st. of commūnicus, commūni− + cus)], 1. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

commūnis, -e [con−munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: consilium (general plan, concerted action).

commūtātiō, -ūnis [con−mutatio (cf. commuto)], F., change: aestūs (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commuto], 1. v. a., change, exchange: studium belli agricultura (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of 1 comparo.

1 comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [comparo], 1. v.−a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): his rebus comparatis, having made these arrangements.

2 comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [comparo], 1. v. a., (pair together), compare.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [con−pello], 3. v. a., drive together (or altogether), drive in, force, drive, compel.

compendium, -i [com−pendium, cf. pendo, weigh], N., (a weighing in, cf. expendo, weigh out), a saving, profit, gain.

comperīō, -perire, -peri, -pertus [con−pario], 4. v. a., (get together), find out (by inquiry), ascertain, find out, discover, learn of. — compertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., certain (cf. exploratus).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of comperto.

1 compēs, -edis [con−pes, foot], F., generally plur., fetters, shackles.

compēscō, -ere, -ui, no p. p. [?], 3. v. a., restrain, confine.

complector, -plecti, -plexus [con−plecto, fold’], 3. v. dep., embrace, include, enclose.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [con−pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill. — With a different conception of the action from Eng., cover, man (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of complector.

complūres, -plūra (-ia) [con−plus], adj. plur., very many, a great many, a great number of.

compōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [con−pono, put], 3. v. a., (put together), settle: bellum.

comportō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [comporto], 1. v. a., bring together, collect.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnus [con−prehendo], 3. v. a., seize,
catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of comprehendo.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-probo], i. v. a., prove, approve: consilium fortuna (justify).

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of compello.

cōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conor.

conātus, -ūs [conā- (st. of conor) + tus], m., an attempt, an effort.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., (give up a thing to one), allow, grant, assign (leave, where the rest is taken away); permit, yield the palm (to a superior), yield, make a concession.

concipō, -cere, -crēsi, -crēptus [con-carpo], 3. v. a., pluck, pull: folia.

concessus, -a, -um, p. p. of concedō.

concessus, -ūs [con-cessus (cf. concedo)], m., a concession, a permission.

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdi, no p. p. [con-cado], 3. v. n., fall down, fall.

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdi, -cīsus [con-caedo], 3. v. a., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries).

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concilīō, assembly], i. v. a., bring together. Hence, win over, secure (even by force), win, gain.

concilium, -i [con-cilium (perh. cal (call) + ium, cf. Kalendae)], n., a meeting. — Esp., an assembly (of war or state), a council, a conference: per concilium, in council.

concipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [con-capio], 3. v. a., take up, take on, conceive.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of concīdo.

concītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of concito.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concito, cf. cieo, stir]. i. v. a. freq., arouse, stir up, instigate, call out (and so set in motion), cause (stragem).

conclamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conciamo, cry out], i. v. n., cry out, shout.

conclave, -is [con-clavis, key], n., a chamber, a room (originally locked): per totum clavel, all over the room.

concludō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [con-clando], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose, confine: mare conclusum (enclosed, inland).

conclusus, -a, -um, p. p. of concludo.

Conconneto (conclusus, -i [Celtic], m., a leader of the Carnutes.

concordia, -ae [concord- (harmonious) + ia], F., harmony, concord.

concrepō, -crepare, -crepuī, -crepitūrus [con-crepo], i. v. n., rattle, clash: armis (clash their arms, of soldiers).

concupiscō, -cupiscere, -cupīvi (-iī), -cupitus [con-cepisco (cf. cupio, desire)], 3. v. a., desire earnestly, strive after, long for, aspire to.

concurrō, -currere, -curre(-currī), -cursus [con-curro], 3. v. n., run together, rush up, rush in, rush (advance), flock to, hasten in, make an attack: concursum est, there was a rush.
concurro, m., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision). — Esp., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [condamno, condemn], i. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condiciō, ōnis [condico, agree], f., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms of fighting, state (of slavery): ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

condītus, -a, -um, p. p. of condo.

condō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditus [condo], 3. v. a., (put together). — For preservation, put away, lay away, store. — For concealment, cover, hide. — So also, bury, lay to rest.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [condono], i. v. a., give up, give, grant.

Condūsī, ĕrum [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [conduco, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire.

conductus, -a, -um, p. p. of conduco.

conectō, -nectere, -nexuī, -nexus [connecto], 3. v. a., bind together, bind, fasten.

confectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficio.

conficiō, -fercire, -fersi, -fertus [conficere], 4. v. a., crowd together.

confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [confirmo, make firm], i. v. a., strengthen.

confirmatur, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

confirmō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect, bestow. — With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. — With reflexive, betake one’s self, proceed, remove, take refuge. — So with other words: fortunas (remove, transfer).

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficere.

confirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conferro.

confirmatio [acc. of confertas (cf. festino, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [conficere], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform. — Also, make up, write, write up (of a document), work up, dress (of skins): e corio (make). — Also (cf. Eng. “done up”), finish up, exhaust, wear out.

confidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum [confido, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured. — confidere, -fīsus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

conficō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [conficere, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

confirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of confirmo.

confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [confirmo, make firm], i. v. a., strengthen.

confirmatur, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

confirmō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect, bestow. — With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. — With reflexive, betake one’s self, proceed, remove, take refuge. — So with other words: fortunas (remove, transfer).

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficere.
cönflusus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido.
cönflusus, -a, -um, p. p. of confluō.
cönflēgō, -ēgere, -ēxī, -ēactus [con-īgō, strike], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, contend, fight.
cònflēō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-īō, blow], 1. v. a., blow up (of a fire). — Fig., excite, kindle, stir up: aes alienum (contract).
cönflēūns, -entis [pres. p. of confluō], m., a meeting of two rivers, a confluence.
cönfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fōsus [con-īdīō, dig], 3. v. a., (dig up). Hence, stab, pierce.
cönfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of confodiō.
cönfugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [con-fugīō], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge, flee for refuge.
cönfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [con-fundō], 3. v. a., pour together. — Less exactly, mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine.
congregō, -gregari, -gressus [con-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., come together. — In peace, unite with. — Esp., in war, come in contact with, engage, fight.
congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of congregō.
congressus, -īs [con-gressus, cf. congregō], m., an engagement, an encounter.

coniciō (-iiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [con-iaciō], 3. v. a., throw together, throw, hurl, cast, discharge: oculos (cast); se concere, throw one’s self, rush; concicet se in pedes, took to his heels. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (in vincula), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into, etc.), force. — Fig., put together (of ideas).
coniectūrā, -ae [con-īactura, cf. conicō], F., a guess (“putting two and two together”), a conjecture, a conclusion.
coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniciō.
coniūnctim [acc. of coniunctis (iung as root) + tis, cf. coniungo], adv., unitedly, in common, all together.
coniūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo.
coniungo, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūncitus [con-īungo, join], 3. v. a., unite, join, connect, fasten together. — In pass., or with reflexive, unite (neut.), connect one’s self, join. — coniūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely connected.
coniūnx, -iugis [con-īnx [iugis [iugis]] [iugis]], M. and F., a spouse. — Esp., F., a wife.
coniūrātiō, -onis [con-īuratio, cf. coniuro], F., conspiracy, a confederacy.
coniūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniuro.
coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-
coniātus, i. v. n., swear together, take an oath (together), swear mutual oaths. Hence, conspire, plot.—coniūrātī, p. p. m. plur. as noun, conspirators.

conītus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of confero.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlaudo.

conlaudō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-laudo], i. v. a., praise (in set terms).

conlēctus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conlēga (coll-), -ae [con-lēga (LEG + a)], m., a colleague (one of two or more persons holding an office with equal powers).

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [con-lego], 3. v. a., gather together, gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation).—With reflex., collect one’s self, recover.

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conloco.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-locō, place], i. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius militēs (stow, in a vessel).—Fig., settle: Boioe ibi.

conloquium (coll-), -ī [con-lioquium, cf conloquor], n., a conference, an interview, a parley, a conversation.

conloquor (coll-), -loqui, -locūtus [con-locōr], 3. v. dep., (talk together), confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conōr, -ārī, -ātus [con-, st. akin to onus, burden], i. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quīsitus [con-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conquisītus, -a, -um, p. p. of conquirō.

conreptus (corr-), -a, -um, p. p. of conripio.

conripiō (corr-), -ripere, -ripūī, -reptus [con-rapio, seize], 3. v. a., seize, snatch up.

conrōdō (corr-), -rōdere, -rōsī, -rōsus [con-rodo, gnaw], 3. v. a., gnaw, gnaw to pieces.

conrūo (corr-), -ruere, -rūfī, no p. p. [con-ruo, fall], 3. v. n., fall down, sink to the ground.

consanguineus, -a, -um [con-sanguin- (blood) + eus], adj., akin (by blood).—As noun, a kinsman.

consendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [con-scando, climb], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board); moenia (scale).

conscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [con-scribo], 3. v. a., write down. — Esp., enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist.—conscripī, p. p. m. plur. as adj., conscript (fathers).

conscripītus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

consēcūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

consēcrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-sacro, make sacred], 1. v. a., hallow, consecrate.—consēcūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., consecrated, sacred.

consēctor, -ārī, -ātus [con-sector, cf. consequor], 1. v. dep. freq., overtake, follow up.

consēcūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.
cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis [con-+sensio, cf. consentio], F., agreement, unanimity.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [con-sensus, cf. consentio], m., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [con-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

cōnseguor, -sequī, -secūtus [con-seguor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake, pursue. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose). — Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

cōnserrō, -serere, -serui, -sērurus [con-sero, bind together], 3. v. a., join: manum conserere, join battle, engage.

conservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con servo, save], 1. v. a., save, preserve, keep, spare. — Also, observe (law, right), regard.

considerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., consider, reflect.

considō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus [con-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place). — Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

consilium, -ārum [con+silium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], n., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — Esp., wise counsel, advice, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose, ability, strategy. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Esp., quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation;

commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action.

consimilis, -ē [con-similia], adj., very like, just like.

consistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p. [con-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — With in, occupy, rest on. — Fig., depend on, rest on.

consobrinus, -ī [con-sobrinus, cf. soror, sister], m., first cousin (on the mother's side). — Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

consociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con socio, bind together], 1. v. a., unite, connect, join together.

consōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.


conspectus, -ūs [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], m., sight: in spectu, in one's presence.

conspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor.

conspicīō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [con-spectio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, espy, see, behold.

conspicor, -āri, -ātus [cont conspic-, cf. spec, see, and auspex], 1. v. dep., catch sight of, espy, see.

consipīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-sipiro, breathe], 1. v. n., sound to
getter. — Fig., harmonize, agree. — Also, conspire, league together.

cōnstanter [constant- (standing firm) + ter], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

cōnstantia, -ae [constant- (standing firm) + ia], F., firmness, constancy, undaunted courage, heroism.

cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.

1 cōnsterneō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†consterneō (cf. sterno and sternax, prostrating)], i. v. a., overwhelm. — Fig., dismay, alarm. — cōnsterneātus, -a, -um, p. p., stricken with fear.

2 cōnsterneō, -sterneere, -strāvī, -strātus [con-stermo], 3. v. a., strew over (both of the thing thrown and that over which).

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [con-статuo], 3. v. a. and n., set up, raise, put together, make up. Hence, establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem). — Fig., determine, resolve, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praemia (offer).

cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus [con-сто], i. v. n., stand together. — Fig., agree (esp. of accounts), consist (e fructu). Hence, be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident, be known. — Esp., constat, it appears, etc. — Also (from accounts), cost. — Also (with in), depend upon.

cōnsequēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [†consequ-, (cf. suesseco, become accustomed) facio, make], 3. v. a., accustomed, habituate.

cōnsequēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, suē-
tus [con-suesco], 3. v. n., become accustomed. — In perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont.

cōnsuēstūdō, -inis [con-†suetudo (prob. †suetu- + do), cf. consuesco], r., habit, custom, habits (collectively), manners, customs, practice: itineris (usual manner of marching).

cōnsul, -ulis [con-sul (cf. praesul, exsul), root of salio in some earlier unc. meaning], m., a consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consilium). — With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus, in the consulship of, etc.

cōnsulāris, -e [consul- + aris], adj., of a consul, consular. — Esp., masc. as noun, an ex-consul.

cōnsulātus, -us [†consulā- (cf. consul) + tus], m., consulship.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulūi, -sultus [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide. — With acc., consult, take the advice of. — With dat., take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae (spare).

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [consult-, decision], i. v. n., consult: de bello (take measures for).

cōnsultō [prob. an abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., with deliberation, purposely, designedly.

cōnsultum, ī [N. p. p. of consulō], N., a decision, an order, a decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate.
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sū mpi, -sūmptus [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (take out of the general store). Hence, waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.

cōnsūmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of consumo.

cōnsūrgō, -sūrgere, -surrēxi, -surrēctus [con-surge, rise], 3. v. n., rise, rise up.

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-tabulo, cf. tabula, 'board'], 1. v. a., build up (with floors in stories), floor with planks. — Also, build up (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contāgiō, -ānis [con-ταγιο, fr. tag in tango, touch, cf. contingō], F., contact. — Esp., with something noxious, implying contagion.

contēgō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [con-tego], 3. v. a., cover up, cover.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempī, -tempus [con-tempno, slight], 3. v. a., despise, disregard, hold in contempt, make light of, defy.

contemplātus, -a, -um, p. p. of contemplor.

contemplor, -āri, -ātus [+contem-\l ̃plō- (con-templo, place of observation)], 1. v. dep., view attentively, survey.

contemptor, -ōris [con-temptor (through contemno)], M., a scorners, a despiser.

contemptus, -ūs [con-temptus, cf. contemno], M., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule.

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [con-tendo, stretch], 3. v. n., strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous, insist, entreat. — Also, with verbs of motion, press on, hasten. — Also, fight, contend, wage war. — With ad and in like constructions, hasten, march, start to go (in haste): vi contendere, to force a passage; petere contendit, seek earnestly.

contentiō, -onis [con-τεντιο, cf. contendo], F., struggle, efforts. — Esp., contest, fighting, dispute, strife.

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of contendō and continēo.

conterritus, -a, -um [p. p. of contereo, alarm greatly], much frightened.

contextō, -texere, -texti, -textus [con-texto], 3. v. a., interweave, weave together. — Also, weave (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of contextō.

continēns, -entis, p. of continēo.

continentia, -ae [continent- (holding together) + ia], F., self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [con-teneo], 2. v. a., hold together, hold in, contain. Hence, in many fig. meanings, restrain, hold in check. keep (within bounds), hem in, rejoin (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in (be contained in). — Also, hold on to, join.

— continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous: continenti impeta, with one continuous rush. — Also, restraining one's self, continent. — As noun, the continuous land, the continent. — contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, content.
contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [con-tango, touch], 3. v. a. and n., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen.

continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [continuō-], 1. v. a., prolong, make continuous: dapes (serve dish after dish).

continuus, -a, -um [con-tenuus (ten in teneo (hold) + uus)], adj., continuous, successive.

contio, -ōnis [prob. for conventio], F., an assembly.

contrā [unc. case-form (instr. ?) of †conterus (con- + terus, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contra atque, contrary to what, etc.

contrāctus, -ūs [con-tractus (cf. contrahō)], M., (a drawing together).

— Late, a contract, a bargain.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together, collect, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass. — Less exactly, bring about.

contrarius, -a, -um [†contrōri- (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex (e) contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam patrem, in the opposite direction.

contrēctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [contracto, handle], 1. v. a., touch. — Fig., take by stealth, appropriate.

contrōversia, -ae [contrōversō- (opposite) + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae [unc. adj. stem (cf. crudelis) (akin to tumeo, swell) + ia], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves), buffeting.

contumēliōsē [old case-form of contumeliosus (cf. contumelia)], adv., abusively, insolently.

conturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conturbō, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, confound.

contus, -i [Gr.], m., a pole, a pike. convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of convēho.

convehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [con-vehō], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -venī, -ventus [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.) : convenit (impers.), it is agreed.

conventus, -ūs [con-ventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], M., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assize, court (the regular assembly of Roman citizens on stated occasions, in a provincial town at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of convertō.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [con-vertō], 3. v. a., turn about, turn: se convertere, turn. — Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.; in fugam conversa, put to flight; contra vim fluminis, against the current.
convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-
vinco.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus 
[con-vincō, conquer], 3. v. a., prove, 
make good (a charge, etc.). — Also, 
find guilty, convict.

convivā, -ae [con-īviva (cf. agri-
cola)], m., a guest.

convīvium, -ī [conviva- (reduced) 
+ ium (n. of -īus)], n., (a meal in 
company), a feast, a banquet.

convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-
 voco], 1. v. a., call together, summon, 
call (a council).

cōrīor, -orīri, -ortus [con-orior, 
rise], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., arise, spring 
up, break out (of a war).

cōrītus, -a, -um, p. p. of cōrīor.

cophinus, -ī [Gr.], m., a basket.

cōpia, -ae [tōipi- (con-ops, aid) 
+ ia, cf. inopia and inops], f., abun-
dance, plenty, supply (both great 
and small), quantity, number.— 
Esp., luxury (abundance of every-
thing). — Plur., (esp. of forces), 
forces, resources, supplies: magna 
copia locorum (choice); copia atque 
usu, necessary supplies.

cōpula, -ae [con-tapula (from AP, 
lay hold of)], f., (holding together), 
a grappling-hook.

cōqua, -ae [f. of coquus (cf. 
coquo)], f., a cook.

cōquō, coquere, coxī, coctus [coc], 
3. v. a., cook.

cor, cordis [root as st. (akin to 
Eng. "heart")], n., the heart: cordi
esse, be dear.

cōram [unc. case, formed from con 
and os, face], adv., and prep. with 
abl., face to face, present, in person.

Corinthius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj.
of Corinth, Corinthian.

Corinth, -i [Gr.], f., Corinth, a 
city of Greece.

Coriosolites, -um [Celtic]. m. plur., 
a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -i [?], n., a hide, a skin, 
leather.

Cornēlia, -ae [f. of Cornelius]. f., 
Caesar's first wife, the daughter of 
(Cornelius) Cinna.

Cornēlius, -i [?], m., a Roman 
gentle name. — Esp.: 1. L. Cor-
nelius Cinna (see Cinna). — 2. L. 
Cornelius Sulla (see Sulla). — 3. P. 
Cornelius Scipio (see Scipio). — 4. 
P. Cornelius Cethegus (see Cethe-
gus).

Cornēlius, -a, -um [same word as 
the preceding], adj., of Cornelius, 
Cornelian.

cornū, -ūs [?], n., a horn. — Fig., 
a wing (of an army), a horn (of the 
moon).

corōna, -ae [?], f., a garland, a 
wreath, a crown. — Fig., a circle 
(line, of soldiers): sub corona, at 
auction (the garland being the 
symbol of a captive for sale at 
auction).

corpus, -oris [unc. root + os], 
n., the body, the person. — Also, a 
body (dead), a corpse: magnitudo 
corporis, size, stature.

corrīgō (cor-), -rigere, -rēxī, 
-rēctus [con-rego, direct], 3. v. a., 
straighten. Hence, correct, reform: 
trepidationem (calm).

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus 
[con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., spoil, 
ruin, bribe, buy over.
corruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of corrupted.
cortex, -icis [?], m. (also f.), bark.
Côrus (Caurus), -i [?], m., the northwest wind.
corvus, -i [?], m., a raven.
côtês (cava-), -is [akin to cos, whetstone], f., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.
cotidiánus (quo-), -a, -um [cotidi- (reduced) + unus], adj., daily.
cotidiē (quo-) [old case-form of quot (how many) -die, loc. of dies], adv., daily, every day.
Cotta, -ae [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.
Cotuâtus, -i [?], m., a chief of the Carnutes.
Cranôn, -ônís [Gr.], f., a town in Thessaly.
crassitūdō, -inis [crasso- + tudo (as if crassitu- + do)], f., thickness.
Crassus, -i [crassus, fat], m., a Roman family name.—Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, b.c. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry.
crâtêra, -ae [Gr.], f., a bowl.
crâtēs, -is [?], f., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).
crētus, -a, -um, p. p. of creo.
crēber, -bra, -brum [crē- (in creo, bring forth) + ber], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arborea (thickly growing).
crēbrēscô, -brēscere, -bruī, no. p. p. [tcrebrē- (cf. creber) + sco], 3. v. n., become frequent, increase.
crēdô, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus [tcred-, faith (of unc. formation) + do, place]. 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose, think: mihi credo, take my advice.
cremô, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [?], i. v. a., burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death.
crēô, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [st. tcrē, akin to cresco], i. v. a., (cause to grow), create, bring forth, give birth to.—Esp., elect, choose, appoint.
Crēs, Crētis [Gr.], m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan.
crēscô, crēscere, crēvi, crētus [st. crē- (also in creo, bring forth) + sco], 3. v. n., grow, increase.
Crêta, -ae [Gr.], f., Crete, a large island south of the Aegean Sea.
Crētēnsis, -e [Creta- + ensis], adj., of Crete, Cretan. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Cretans.
crimen, -inis [cri- (as root of cerno, sīf) + men], n., (a decision). — Less exactly, a charge, a fault, a crime.
criminor, -āri, -ātus [crimin-, charge], i. v. dep., charge, accuse of.
crīnis, -is [?], m., the hair (of the head).
Crîtognâtus, -i [Celtic], m., a chief of the Arverni.
crocitō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [crocitō- (cf. crocio, croak as a raven)], i. v. n., freq., croak aloud.
CROEUS

48

cupidus

CROEUS, -t [Gr.], M., a king of Lydia, proverbial for his wealth.

CROTÖNIÀTÈS, -æ [Gr.], M., an inhabitant of Croton, a town in southern Italy.

CRUCIÅTÜS, -ūs [cruciā- (st. of crucio, torture) + tus], M., crucifying. Hence, torture. — With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).

CRUDELIÀS, -tātis [crudele- + tas], F., cruelty.

CRUENTUS, -a, -um [†cruent- (partic. st. akin to cruor) + us], adj., bloody, blood stained.

CRUMÊNA, -ae [?], F., a money-bag, a purse.

CRUOR, -ōris [crū- (in crudas, bloody) + or], M., blood, gore.

CRUS, CRūRIS [?], N., the leg.

CRUX, CRUCIS [?], F., a gallows, a cross.

cubīle, -is [†cubī- (st. akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crueldis), N. of adj.], N., a couch, a resting place, a bed, a lair.

cubō, -āre, -uī, -itus [CUB (bend)], 1. v. n., lie, recline.

CULINA, -ae [perh. for ūcolina (cf. COQUO, COOK)], F., a kitchen.

CULPA, -ae [?], F., a fault, blame, guilt.

CULTūRA, -ae [cultu- (cf. colo, till) + NA (F. of rus)], F., cultivation, culture: agri cultura, or agricultura, the cultivation of the soil, agriculture.

CULTUS, -ūs [COL (in colo, till) + tus], M., cultivation. — Esp. of one's self, care. Hence, civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.

CUM [?], prep. with abl., with.

CUM (quam) [case-form of qui], conj., when, while, whenever. — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possent, not being able; cum prohibent, while defending. — Of logical relations (usually with subj.), when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: cum ... tum, not only ... but also, while ... so also; cum primum, as soon as.

CUMBA (cym-), -ae [Gr.], F., a boat, a skiff.

CUMULUS, -i [†cumō + ius], M., a mass, a heap, a pile.

CUNCTOR, -āri, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., hesitate, hang back, be reluctant.

CÚNCUS, -a, -um [for CONIÚNC-TUS ?], adj., all, all together.

CUNÉÆTIM [Cuneœ- wedge (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of †cuneatis], adv., in the shape of a wedge. — Esp. of soldiers, in (a peculiar wedge-shaped) column of attack.

CUNICULUS, -i [Gr.], M., (a cony). — Transf., a burrow. Hence, a mine (esp. in a military sense).

CUPA, -ae [?], F., a cask, a barrel.

CUPIDÉ [old case-form of cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly!

CUPIDITĀS, -ātis [cupidō- + tas], F., desire, eagerness, greed.

CUPIDŌ, -inis [†cupi- (cf. cupio) + do], F., desire, longing, eagerness. — Personified, CUPID, the god of love.

CUPIDUS, -a, -um [noun-st. akin to cupio + dus], adj., eager, desirous,
longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itus [partly root verb, partly from *tupi-, cf. cupidus], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo). — With dat., wish well to, be zealous for.

cupressus, -i [Gr.], F., the cypress, a tree sacred to Pluto, and a sign of death and mourning.

cūr (quōr) [perh. for qua re], adv., why (rel. and interr.).
cūra, -ae [akin to caveo, beware], F., care, anxiety, attention.
cūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of curō.
cūria, -ae [?], F., a senate-house.
— Esp., the curia Hostilia, the senate-house. — Fig., the senate.

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cura-], 1. v. a. and n., take care, provide for, care for. — With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done): cura ut, see that.

currō, currere, cucurrē, cursūrus [?], 3. v. n., run, scamper.
currus, -ūs [CUR (?) + us, cf. currō, run], M., a chariot.

cursitō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [tursitō- (as if p. p. of cursō)], 1. v. n. freq., run hither and thither, bustle about.

cursus, -ūs [CUR (?) + tus, cf. curro, run], M., a running, running, speed, a run (in concrete sense), a course (space or direction run): cursum adaequare (keep up with); cursu incitato or magno, at full speed; in hoc medio cursu, midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland; cursu, on the run; certamen cursūs, a running-match.

custōdia, -ae [custod- (guard) + ia], F., custody, guard (state of being guarded). — Concretely, a guard-house, a prison. — Plur., guards, keepers.

custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [custod-, guard, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

custōditē [old case-form of custōditus], adv., carefully.

custōs, -ōdis [unc. st. + dis (cf. merces, -ēdis, palus, -ūdis)], M. and F., a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy.

Cyclops, -ōpis [Gr.], M., a Cyclops, one of the fabled giants who had one eye in the middle of the forehead.

Cyrenaeus, -a, -um [Cyrenā-(Cyrene) + eus], adj., of Cyrene, a town of northern Africa. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Cyrenaeans.

Cyrrus, -i [Gr.], M., Cyrus, the Great, the most famous king of Persia.

D [half of Clō = M], for quingenti, -ae, -a, five hundred.

D., for Decimus, also for dicit or data (in letters).

Dācus, -a, -um [?], adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Moun-
tains, occupying parts of Hungar
damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [damnō-, loss], 1. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

dannum, -ī [?, DA (give) + menus (syncopated, cf. alumnus)], n., (fine), loss.

Danaus, -ī [Gr.], m., a mythic king of Egypt who settled in Argos, father of the Danaides, and king of Argos.

Danuvius (-bius), -ī [?], m., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

†daps, dapis [?], v., a feast, a banquet.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

DCCC, for octingenti, -ae, -a, eight hundred.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.), and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de consilio (by, cf. ex). — Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris. — Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning; for: de vita desperare; de inuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de medio nocte. — Phrase: de improviso, of a sudden, unexpectedly. — In comp., down, off, away, through (cf. debeō, decerto).

dēbeō, -ère, -uī, -itus [de-habeō], 2. v. a., (have off of one's possessions), owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help: iudicari debere (might well be, etc.). — Pass., be due, be owing. — débitus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., due, appropriate, deserved.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-bilitō, fr. debilis, weak], 1. v. a., weaken.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [de-cedo], 3. v. n., (make way off, cf. cedo), retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun. — Esp. (from life), depart, die.

decem [?], indecl. num. adj., ten.

dēcennō, -cennere, -crēvī, -crētus [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (decide off, so as to clear away), decide, determine, decree, assign (by decree), order (as a result of determination). — Esp. in a contest, contend, fight.

dēcērto, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-certo, fight], 1. v. a. and n., contend (so as to close the contest, cf. "fight it out"), decide the issue, try the issue (of war), carry on war, fight (a general engagement): risk a decisive battle (with or without pugna).

dēcessus, -ūs [de-ceesus, cf. de-cedo and incessus], m., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall).

dēcidō, -ciderē, -cidī, no p. p. [de-cedo], 3. v. n., fall off (or down).

decimus, -a, -um [†deci- (as st. of decem) + mus], num adj., tenth.

— Masc. as noun, a Roman praenomen (see Brutus).

dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-claro], 1. v. a., (clear off), make plain, point out, declare (decide and state).

dēclīvis, -e [de-clivis (or-clivus, slope), adj., sloping down, inclined.

— Plur. as noun, slopes.

dēclīvitās, -ātis [declivi- + tas].
décrētum 51 déficiō

F., slope: ad declivitatem, downward.

décrētum, -ī [prop. N. of decretus], N., a decree, a decision.

décrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.

decumānus, -a, -um [decumĕ- (reduced) + anus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

décūrrō, -currere, -currī (-cūrri), -cursūrus [de-cūrrō], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

dēdecus, -oris [de-decus, honor], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēdictīcius, -a, -um [deditō- + cius], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.

dēdictō, -ōnis [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., surrender: in dēditionem accipere, receive one's surrender: in dēditionem venire, to surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [de-dō], 3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one's self, submit: lamen-tia (give way to). — dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., devoted.

dēducō, -dūcere, -düxi, -ductus [de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, conduct, draw off (praesidia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation). — Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of ships, launch (draw down); of women, marry (lead home, used of the man, cf. nudo); of things, bring, draw, turn. So, raise (a man to fortune). — Also, re in controversiam deducta (brought to, come to, etc.).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

dēfatiγātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatigo.

defatiγō (-fet-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [defatigo], i. v. a., wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.

defectīō, -ōnis [de-factio, cf. deficio, fail], F., falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.

defectūrus, -a, -um, p. p. of deficio.

defendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensus [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, defend one's self against. — Also, with changed relation, defend, protect.

defensīō, -ōnis [de-fensusio, cf. defendo], F., a defence.

defensor, -ōris [de-fensor, cf. defendo], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.

defensus, -a, -um, p. p. of defendo.

deferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [defero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry away, carry off, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside: delati in acrobis (falling). — Fig., confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, offer, report, lay before.

defessus, -a, -um, p. p. of defetiscor.

defetiscor, -fetisci, -fessus [defatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., crack open.

— Fig., become exhausted. — defes-sus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted; as noun, an exhausted man.

deficiō, -ficere, -fécī, -fectus [defacio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, run
out, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): animo (despond); luna (be eclipsed).

dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [de-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant, set, fasten, drive down.

dēfiniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [de-finio, end], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of defigo.

dēfectō, -fectere, -flexi, -flexus [de-flecto], 3. v. a., turn aside.

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

dēfore, see desum.

dēformis, -e [de-forma, shape, weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad looking. — Fig., unbecoming, humiliating, unseemly.

dēformitās, -ātis [deformi- + tas], v., deformity, disfigurement.

dēfricō, -fricare, -fricui, -fricātus [de-frico], 1. v. a., rub down, rub hard, polish.

dēfungiō, -fungere, -fügī, no p. p. [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

dēfunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of defungor.

dēfungor, -fungi, -functus [defungor], 3. v. dep., (perform to the end), dic. — P. p. as adj., dead.

dēiciō (dēici-), -icere, -icēi, -icētus [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce.

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deicio.

dēiectus, -ūs [de-ictus, cf. iacio, throw], m., a declivity, a slope.

dēin, see deinde.

dēinceptus [dein- (cf. deinde) + cepa, CAP in capio], adv., in succession.

dēinde (dein) [de-inde, hence], adv., then, next, afterwards.

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of delero.

dēlectātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēlecto.

dēlecto, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [dē-lecto, cf. delicio], 1. v. a., delight, please, entertain. — Pass., take delight, delight in, enjoy.

dēlectus (dē-), -ūs [de-lectus, cf. deligo, select], m., a levy, a conscription.

dēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus [de-leo (akin to lino)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of deleo.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-libero, perh. akin to librā, balance], 1. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberate, after discussing the matter.

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†delibrō, barkless], 1. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

dēliciae, -ārum [perh. st. akin to delinquo (cf. delicus, cosset) + ia]. F. plur., delight, pleasure. — Concretely, a delight, a darling.

dēlicitum, -i [N. p. p. of delinquo]. N., thing left undone, failure, offense.

dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [dē-lego], 3. v. a., choose out, select. —
dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.

dēligō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ligō, bind], i. v. a., tie down, moor, tie, fasten.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -litui, no p. p. [de-lateisco (cf. lateo, hide)], 3. v. n., hide away, hide, skulk, lurk.

Dellius, -i [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Q. Delliūs, to whom Horace addressed an ode.

Delphicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Delphi (the seat of the famous oracle of Apollo in Greece), Delphic.

dēmentia, -ae [dement-(mad)+ia], f., madness, folly.

dēmergō, -mergere, -mersl, -mersus [de-mergo], 3. v. a., sink, plunge.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of demeto.

dēmetō, -metere, -messi, -messus [de-meto, reap], 3. v. a., reap, cut down.

dēmigrō, -ēre, -āvī, -āturus [de-migro, depart], 1. v. n., move away (change residence), move one's effects, emigrate.

dēminūō, -uere, -uē, -ūtus [de-minuo, cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract.

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of deminuo.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mitto), let down, throw down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch). — In pass. or with reflex., let one's self down, descend, set one's self down. — Fig., despond (see animo), be discouraged: animos (lose).

dēmonstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of demonstrō.

dēmonstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-monstrō, show], 1. v. a., point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known.

Dēmosthenēs, -is [Gr.], m., the most celebrated of Greek orators.

dēmum [acc. of tōdēmus (superl. of de), nethermost, last], adv., at last, at length (not before), only.

dēnegō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātus [de-negō], 1. v. a. and n., deny, refuse, say not.

dēnī, -ae, -a [for decnī, decem reduced + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten).

dēnique [tōdenō- (de + nus, cf. de-mum)-que], adv., at last. — Of order, finally, in a word, in short. — Of preference, at any rate (if nothing better, etc.).

dēnotō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātus [de-notō], 1. v. a., mark out, mark off.

dēns, dentis [?, cf. tooth for tōnth], m., a tooth.

dēnsus, -a, -um [?], adj., thick, crowded, dense.

dēnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-nuntio], 1. v. a., announce (with notion of threat), threaten, declare, warn, order.

dēnūō [for de novo, new], adv., anew, again.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [de-pello], 3. v. a., drive off, drive (away), dislodge, avert: famem (appease, satisfy).

dēperēō, -perire, -perī, -perītūrus [de-pereo, perish], irr. v. n., be lost.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ploro, lament], 1. v. a., lament, deplore.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus
dépopulátus, 3. v. a., lay down, take down, lay aside, deposit. — Fig., lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign, give up.

dépolopulátus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépopulor.

dépopulor, -āri, -ātus [de-populor], i. v. dep., ravage, lay waste. — P. p. as pass., laid waste.

déportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-porto], i. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.

déposcō, -poscere, -poscī, no p. p. [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim.

dépositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépono.

déprecor, -āri, -ātus [de-precor], i. v. dep., pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech.

déprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hensus [de-prehendo, grasp], 3. v. a., capture, catch, seize, take possession of.

déprehensus, -a, -um, p. p. of déprehendo.

dépuñgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-pugno], i. v. n. (and a.), fight decisively, fight it out.

dépulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépello.

dērectē (dī-) [old case-form of dērectus], adv., straight: ad perpendicularum (perpendicularly).

dērectus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of dērigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [de-rego], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct, steer: opera (set in order, arrange). — dērectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, straight up and down, perpendicular.
dēsītō, adj., foolish.—As noun, a crazy man.

dēsītō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitūrus [de-sītō], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).

dēspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

dērespectus, -ūs [de-†spectus, cf. despicio], m., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectus (sheer precipices).

dēspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spero.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-spero, cf. speer, hope], 1. v. n., (but see below), cease to hope, despair.—
dēspērātus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of.—Also as adj., (hopeless?, perh. orig. despairs of, hence), desperate.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [de-spicio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon.—Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), look down upon, despise.

dēspolīō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-spolio], 1. v. a., strip off.—With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).

dēstinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of destino.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [perh. dēstina-, a prop (fr. de-STA-nus)], 1. v. a., fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly. Hence, fig., fix upon, appoint, choose, purpose, design, destine.

dēstītūdō, -tuere, -tui, -tūtus [de-stātuo], 3. v. a., set apart (from one's self), abandon, leave, desert.—P. p. as adj., destitute of.

dēsitrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of destituo.

dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of stringo.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictus [de-stringo], 3. v. a., strip off.—Also (cf. despolio), strip, draw (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dēsum, -esse, -sui, -sūtūrus [des-sum], irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail.—Esp., fail to do one's duty by, etc.—Often, lack (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), be without, not have.

dēsuper [de-super], adv., from above.

dētēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detego.

dētegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [detego, cover], 3. v. a., uncover.

dēterreō, -terreō, -terruī, -territus [de-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten off, deter, prevent (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [de-tineo], 2. v. a., hold off, detain, delay, stop.

dētrāctō (-tracto), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-tracto], 1. v. a., (hold off from one's self), avoid, shun.

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detraho.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trahī, -trāctus [de-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away).—With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).

dētrectō, see detracto.

dētrimentum, i [de-†trimentum (tri- in tero, rub, + mentum), cf. detero], n., (a rubbing off), loss, injury.—Esp., defeat, disaster.
detruō, -trüdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [de-truō], 3. v. a., thrust out, drive out.
dēturō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-turō, disturb'], 1. v. a., drive off (in confusion).
dēurō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [de-uro], 3. v. a., burn off, burn up.
deu̱s, -ī [akin to divus, Iovis, dies], m., a god.
dēustus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.
dēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).
dēvexus, -a, -um [prop. a p. p. of devehō, carry down], adj., sloping.
  — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes, hillsides.
dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco.
dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [de-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., conquer (so as to prostrate), subdue (entirely), overcome.
dēvorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-voro], 1. v. a., swallow up, devour, gulp down.
dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away).
  — Less exactly, devote, consecrate.
dexter, -era, -erum (-ra, -rum) [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus ?) + terus], adj., right, in (on) the right hand. — dextra (-era), F., (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).
Diablentes (-tēnes), -um [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.
diadēma, -atis [Gr.], N., a royal crown, a diadem.

Dīāna, -ae [perh. akin to Ianus]. F., the goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo.
dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dīcō- (cf. causi-dicus)], 1. v. a., adjudge, assign (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign, make over: se in clientelam (bind one’s self, attach one’s self); se in servitutem (surrender).
dīcō, dicere, dixi, dictus [dic, in dico and -icus], 3. v. a. and n. (point out ?), say, speak, name, call, tell. — Esp., with authority, name, appoint, fix: ius (administer, cf. dico); sententiam (give). — Special uses: dicent, they say; ius dicere, administer justice; magister dicendi, teacher of oratory. See also dictum.
dictātor, -ōris [dictā- (dictate) + tor], m., a dictator (a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger, and possessing absolute power).
dictō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dictō- (cf. dico)], 1. v. a. freq., declare, prescribe, dictate.
dictum, -i [N. p. p. of dico]. N., a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command, a word: fortuito dictum, a word accidentally spoken.
dīdūco, -dūcre, -dūxi, -ductus [dīs-duco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide: os (open wide).
dīēs, -ēī [prob. for dives, diū + as, cf. -us], m. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). — Also,
time: in dies, from day to day, with
idea of increase or diminution;
ad diem, on the day.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātus
[dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear
apart, spread.—Also, postpone, de-
fer, differ.

dificilis, -e [dis-faciles, easy],
adj., not easy, difficult.

dificilītās, -ātis [dificili- (weak-
ened) + tās], F., difficulty: magna
dificilitate adscribatur, was much
troubled; rei frumentariae (difficulty
of supplying grain).

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus
[dis-fundo], 3. v. a., spread out.

digitus, -i [?] M., a finger: pollex
(the thumb).—As in Eng., a finger's
breadth, a finger (as a measure).

dignitās, -ātis [dignō- + tās],
F., worthiness, worth, dignity, pres-
tige, distinction, position (superior);
tribuere (have respect for).

dignus, -a, -um [?, perh. Dic (root
of dico) + nus], adj., worthy.

digredior, -gredi, -gressus [dis-
gradior, step], 3. v. dep., step aside,
go away, depart.

digressus, -a, -um, p. p. of di-
gredior.

dilābor, -lābi, -lāpsus [dis-labor,
slide], 3. v. dep., glide away, slip
away, vanish.

dilānīo, -ūre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-lanlo,
tear], 1. v. a., tear to pieces.

dilēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of diligo.

diligenter [diligent- (careful) +
ter], adv., carefully, diligently, with
care, with exactness, exactly, with
pains: conservavit (took pains to
save).

diligentia, -ae [diligent- (careful)
+ ia], F., care, pains, painstak-
ing, diligence, earnestness: remittere
(cease to take pains, take less care).

diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctus [dis-
lego], 3. v. a., (choose out), love, be
fond of.

dimēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of di-
motor.

dimētor, -mētirī, -mēnsus [dis-
motor], 4. v. dep., measure (in
parts), measure out (esp. of camp).
—dimēnsus, -a, -um, measured.

dimicātiō, -ōnis [dimicā- + tio], F.,
a fight, a contest.

dimicō, -are, -āvī, -ātūrus [dis-
mico], 1. v. n., (brandish swords to
decide a contest?), fight (a decisive
battle), risk an engagement.

dimidius, -a, -um [dis-medius],
adj., (divided in the middle), half.
—Neut. as noun, the half.

dimittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus
[dis-mitto], 3. v. a., let go away, let
slip, let pass, let go, give up, re-
linquish, abandon: oppugnationem
(raise).—Also, send in different di-
rections, send about, despatch, detail,
disband, dismiss, send away.

directus, -a, -um, see rectus.

direptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio.

dirigō, see derigo.

diripīō, -ripere, -ripūi, -reptus
[dis-rapio], 3. v. a., seize (in dif-
ferent directions), plunder, pillage,
ravage.

diruō, -ruere, -rūi, -rutus [dis-
ruo], 3. v. a., tear asunder, over-
throw, destroy.

dirūs, -a, -um [DI (fear) + rus],
adj., dreadful, awful, frightful.
dis-, di- (dir-, dif-) [akin to duo?], insep. prep. (adv.), in comp., apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un.— Cf. discedo, discerno, dirimo, diffundo.

Dis, Ditis [akin to dives, rich, as the earth is the source of riches], m., Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [disc-cedo, go], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away, come off: locus unde discesserant, the place which they had left; spee hostibus (forsake, fail); ab signis (leave the ranks).

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus [disc-erno, separate], 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

discussus, -ūs [disc-tcessus, cf. discedo], m., a departure, a withdraw.

disciplina, -ae [discipulō- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], f., (pupilage?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [disc-cludo], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

disclusus, -a, -um, p. p. of disculdo.

discō, discere, didici, no p. p. [for t dicisco (dic + sco)], 3. v. a. and n., learn: descendī causa, for instruction.

discordia, -ae [discord- (at variance) + ia], f., discord, dissension.

discordō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [discord- (at variance)], 1. v. n., be at variance, differ, quarrel.

discrīmen, -inis [disc-crimen, cf. discerno], n., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [disc-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away, clear away.

discardō, -ire, -iciō, -iectus [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, scatter, tear off (yards): domum, (raze, destroy).—
disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder.

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio.

dispalātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispalor.

dispālor, -arī, -ātus [dispalor, wander], i. v. dep., wander about, straggle.

dispār, -paris [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill matched, different.

disparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [disparo], 1. v. a., scatter, separate (cf. disiuingo).

dispermō, -spargere, -spersi, -persus [dispargo, scatter], 3. v. a., scatter, disperse.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of disperso.

displicēo, -plicēre, -plicui, -plicitus [disp-placeo, please], 2. v. n., disp联络, be unsatisfactory.

dispōnō, -ponere, -posuit, -positus [disp-pono], 3. v. a., place about (in various places), station (variously), array (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispono.
disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [disputo, reckon], i. v. n. and a., discuss, investigate.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dis-ōnsensio (cf. dissentio)], f., difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -entire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [dis-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., differ in opinion (cf. sentio), be at variance, disagree (ab, with).

disserō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [dis-serō], 3. v. a., plant here and there, place at intervals.

dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, no p. p. [dis-sedeo], 2. v. n., (sit apart).—Hence, disagree, have a dissension.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-simulo, make like], i. v. a. and n., (pretend something is not), conceal (what is), dissemble.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dissipō.

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-tupō, throw], i. v. a., scatter, disperse, spread abroad: dissipati, straggling troops.

dissuādeo, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., advise to the contrary, oppose (in argument), dissuade.

distincēo, -tinēre, -tinūi, -tentus [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off (in military sense), isolate.

distō, -stāre, no perf., no p. p. [dis-stō], 1. v. n., stand apart, be distant: quantum iunctura distabat (as far as the distance between, etc.); quantum summa labra distabat (the width [of the ditch], at the top).

distrabō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [dis-traho], 3. v. a., drag asunder, separate.

distribuo, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus [dis-tribuo, assign], 3. v. a., assign (to several), distribute, divide.

districtus, -a, -um, p. p. of distingo.

distringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [dis-stringo, draw], 3. v. a., (draw apart), engage, occupy.

diū [prob. acc. of st. akin to dies], adv., for a time, a long time, for some time, long: tam diū, so long; quam diū, how long, as long, as long as; diūtius, (any) longer, too long; diūtissime, for the longest time, longest.

diurnus, -a, -um [†dius (akin to diu and dies) + nus], adj., of the day, daily (as opposed to nightly): diurnis nocturnisque itineribus (by night and day).

divēllō, -vellere, -vellī, -volsus (vul-) [dis-vello, tear], 3. v. a., tear asunder, tear apart.

diversus, -a, -um, p. p. of divertō.

divertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate. — diversus, -a, -um, p. p. 'as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different, opposite.

dives, -itis [?], adj., rich, wealthy.

Diviciācus, -i [Celtic], m.: i. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix. — 2. A leader of the Suesiones.

dividō, -videre, -visi, -visus [dis-tvīdo, VIDH (?), cf. vidua, widow], 3. v. a., divide, separate, sever, distribute. — divisus, -a, -um, p. p. as
divinus, adj., divided: Gallia divisa est. — Also, spread out.

divinus, -a, -um [divē- (as if divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divine: res divinae, matters of religion, religion.

divitiae, -ārum [divit- (cf. dives) + ia], F. plur., wealth, riches.

divolvus, -a, -um, p. p. of divello.

divus, -a, -um [DIV (akin to deus) + us], adj., (of a god). — Neut., as noun (only with sub), the sky: sub divo, in the open air, in the light of day.

1 dō, dare, dedi, datu [da, give, cf. 2 do], i. v. a., give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant: responsum (answer, reply); mella (yield); nullo dato respondō, making no reply; se vento (run before the wind); se in viam (set forth); hostes in fugam (put to flight); operam (devote one's self, take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.); negotium uti (employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.); arbitros (assign referees, a judicial function).

2 do [dia, place], confounded with 1 do, but appearing in comp., place, put, as in abdō, condō.

doceō, docere, doceui, doctus [unc. formation, akin to dico and disco], 2. v. a., teach, show, inform, represent, state (in the course of the narrative), show how. — doctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., learned.

doctor, -ōris [doc- (in doceo) + tor], M., a teacher.

doctus, -a, -um, p. p. of doceo.

documentum, -i [docu- (?) (as st. of doceo) + mentum], N., a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.

doleō, dolere, dolui, dolitūrus [perh. dol- (st. of dolus, craft) + or], M., pain (physical or mental), distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation, sorrow, grief: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant, feel much chagrin; almost concrete, a grievance. See addicio.

dulōs, -i [perh. akin to doleo, originally stroke?], M., an artist, deceit, treachery, tricks, a stratagem, a trick.

domesticus, -a, -um [domē- (as if domea, - cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (of the house), of one's own, at home, private, personal: bellum (domestic, internal, intestine). — Plur. as noun, the inmates of a house.

domicilium, -i [perh. domē- (fr. root of colo)], N., an abode, a dwelling place, a house (as a permanent home).

domina, -ae [fem. of dominus], F., a mistress.

dominātiō, ēonis [dominā- + tie], F., mastery, rule, dominion, supremacy.

dominātus, -ōris [dominā- + tus]. M., mastery, rule, sovereignty.

dominor, -āri, -ātus [dominō-], i. v. dep., rule, be master.

dominus, -i [domē- (ruling) + nus], M., a master, an owner.

Domitius, -i [domitiō- (reduced) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in B.C. 54.

domitus, -a, -um, p. p. of domo.
domō, -āre, -ūi, itus [DOM, tame],
1. v. a., tame, subdue.

domus, -ī (-ūs) [DOM (build?)+us (-ōe and-us)], F., a house, a home: domī, at home; domum, home, to one’s home; domo, from home; domo excedere, go away, emigrate.

dōnec [?], conj., as long as, until.

dōnū, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [donū-],
1. v. a., present, give (as a gift).—
Also, honor with a gift, present (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare, give one the rights of citizenship.

dōnum, -ī [DA (give) + num (N. of nus)], N., a gift.

dormīō, -ēre, -īvī (-ii), -ītus [?], 4.
v. n., sleep.

dorsum (-us), -ī [?], N. (and m.),
the back. — Less exactly, a summit (of a long ridge), a ridge.

dōs, dōtis [DA (give) + tis (reduced)], F., (a gift).—
Esp., a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion (given at marriage).

drachma, -ae [Gr.], F., a drachma
(a Greek coin worth 19 cts.), a franc.

druides, -um [Celtic], m., the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion.

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†dubitō-
(partic. of lost verb dubō? cf. dubius)], 1. v. n., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful. — Also (absolutely, or with infin., rarely with quin), hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.

dubius, -ā, -um [dubō + ius, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful, uncertain: est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful; sine dubio, without doubt; dubio Marte, the contest doubtful.

ducentēsimus, -a, -um [ducenti-
(reduced) + esimus], num. adj.,
two hundredth.

ducenti, -ae, -a [duō-centi (plur. of centum)], num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus [duc
(in dux)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring
(of living things), take, conduct: pri-
num pilum (be first centurion); ensem
(make, fashion). — Esp. of a general,
lead, march. — With or without in
matrimonium, marry (of the man, cf.
nubō). — Less exactly, run (a
line, ditch), dig, draw, make. —
Fig., prolong, drag out. — As mercan-
tile word, and so fig., reckon,
consider.

dulcēdō, -inis [dulci- (reduced) +
edo, as if †dulcē- + do], F., sweetness.

dulcis, -e [?], adj., sweet.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf.
tum], conj., at that time. — Also,
while, so long as. Hence, till, until:
dum modo or dummodo, so long as,
provided. — With negatives, yet, as
yet.

dummodo, see dum.

Dumnorix, -igis [Celtic], m., a
leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o [dual of st. †dvo-, cf.
bis], num. adj., two.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl.
um. adj., twelfth.

duodecimus, -a, -um [duo-de-
cimus], num. adj., twelfth.

duodēni, -ae, -a [duo-deni], num.
adj., twelve (in a set).

duodētrigintā [duo-de-triginta],
indecl. num. adj., twenty-eight.

duodevīcēsimus, -a, -um [duo-de-
duodéviginti, 62
effectus

vicesimus, twentieth], num. adj., eighteenth.

duodévigintī [duo-de-vigiati, twenty], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.
duplex, -plicis [duo-plex, cf. plico, fold'], adj., twofold, double.
duplicātus, -a -um, p. p. of duplico.
duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [duplic-],
1. v. a., double, increase twofold.
dūritia, -ae [durō- + tia], F., hardness, hardship.
dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [durō-],
1. v. a. and n., harden, toughen, make hardy.—Also, (harden one's self), hold out, persevere, last, remain.
dūrus, -a, -um [?], adj., hard.—Fig., hard, harsh, severe, difficult.—Also, rough, uncultivated.

Dūrus, -i [durus], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Quintus Lāberius Dūrus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.
dux, ducis [duc (lead) as st.], M. and F., a leader, a guide, a commander, a general.

Dyrrachium, -ī [Gr.], N., a town in Illyria, nearly opposite Brundisium in Italy.

E

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), wh. see.
eā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter, there.
ēhrius, -a, -um [?], adj., drunk.
eburnum, -a, -um [ebor (ivory) + nus], adj., of ivory, ivory (adj.).
Eburōnes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.
Eburowcēs, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerici living in the region of modern Perche.

equis (-qui), -qua, -quid (quod) [en-quis], indef. interr. pron., (whether) any? does (is, etc.) any?—Esp., equid, N. acc. as adv., at all: equid scis, pray, do you know?
ediscō, -discere, -disci, no p. p. [ex-discō], 3. v. a., learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.
edītus, -a, -um, p. p. of ēdō.
edō, edere (ēsse), ēdi, ēsus [ēd].
3. v. a., eat.
edō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ex-dō], 3. v. a., put forth, utter, give forth, announce: pugnas (ludos) (bring out, exhibit); facinus (do, perpetrate).—edītus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.
edoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -docutus [ex-doeo, teach], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.
educātus, -a, -um, p. p. of edūco.
educō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [edic- (cf. redux), 1. v. a., bring up, rear, educate.
edūco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [ex-dūco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, bring out (a baggage-train).
eductus, -a, -um, p. p. of edūco.

effarciō (-ferc-), -farcire, -farsi, -fertus [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).
effectus, -a, -um, p. p. of efficio.
effeminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-
femino, or perh. *feminō- (or -ī), in either case from femina, woman], i. v. a., make into a woman. — Less exactly, (make like a woman), enervate, weaken.
efferātus, -a, -um, p. p. of 1 effero.
1 efferō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [effēro- (st. of effērus, savage), i. v. a., make savage, brutalise.
2 efferō, effere, extuli, élātus [ex-
fero], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away. — Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad.
efficāx, ācis [effic- (as st.) + ax], adj., effectual, powerful.
efficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [ex-
facio], 3. v. a., make out, make, effect, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish), make up, complete: ut praebent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together, construct).
effigies, ēī [ex- tāgies (FIG (cf. fingo, fashion) + iēs)], F., an image, a figure.
effigito, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-
flagito], i. v. a., demand urgently, request.
eflō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-flō, blow],
i. v. a., breathe out: animam
(breathe one’s last).
effodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus [ex-
fodio], 3. v. a., dig out, gouge out.
effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio.
effugīō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugītūrus
[ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (ab-
solutely), fly from.
effundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [ex-
fundō, pour], 3. v. a., pour out, empty. — Fig., squander, spread abroad.
effūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of effundo.
egēnōs, -entis, p. of egeo.
egēō, egēre, egūi, no p. p. [?, (cf. indigus, in want)], 2. v. n., want, need, be in want. — egēnōs, -entis, p. as adj., needy, destitute.
egestās, -āsis [unc. st. (perh. egent-) + tas]. F., poverty, destitution.
I (me, etc.). — Plur., nōs, us, us, etc.
egredīōr, -grediō, -gressus [ex-
gradiō, step], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond); navi or e navi (land, disembark, go ashore); ex oppido (evacuate).
egregiō [old case-form of egre-
gius], adv., remarkably, finely, ex-
tremely well, excellently.
egregius, -a, -um [e grege (out of the herd) + ius], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excel-
cient, uncommon, special, renowned.
egressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egre-
dior.
egressus, -ūs [e-gressus, cf. in-
gressus and egredior], m., a landing.
ēheu [?], interj., alas! alack!
eiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ex-
iciō], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. eōd). — With reflex., rush out, rush.
eictus, -a, -um, p. p. of eiciō.
ēiusmodi [eius modi], as adj.
phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature.
Élabor, -lābī, -lāpsus [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., stilis, ust, escapă.

Élāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of élabor.

Élēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligō.

Élegāns, -antis [p. of élego (cf. eligō, choose out)], adj., fastidious, nice.

Éleganter [elegant- + ter], adv., neatly, elegantly.

Elephantus, -ī [Gr.], m., an elephant.

Éleutētī, ēorum [Celtic], m. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.

Élidō, -lidere, -līsī, -līsus [ex-laedo, strike], 3. v. a., dash to pieces, crush.

Éligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [ex-lego], 3. v. a., pick out, choose, select, appoint (dies). — Élēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).

Élidō, -ludere, -lūsī, -lūsus [ex ludō, play], 3. v. a., escape, avoid, elude.

Émergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [ex-mergo, plunge], 3. v. n., rise (from under water), come forth, arise, emerge.

Émineō, -minère, -minūī, no p. p. [ex-émineō, project], 2. v. n., stand out, project, tower above. Hence, be conspicuous.

Éminus [ex manu, hand, cf. cominus], adv., at a distance, at long range.

Émittō, -mittere, -missī, -missus [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, let out, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge, let loose: vocem (utter). — Pass., or with reflex., rush out.


Émtor, -ōris [EM (cf. emo) + tun, m., a buyer, a purchaser.

ēn [?], interj., lo! behold!

ēnārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-nam, tell], 1. v. a., tell, relate, recount.

ēnācor, -nāsci, -nātus [ex-nascor], 3. v. dep., grow out, spring out.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enācor.

ēnāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-navigo, sail], 1. v. a., sail over, traverse, pass over.

ēnecō, -necāre, -necuī (-āvī). nectus [ex-necō, kil], 1. v. a., exhaust, wear out.

ēnim [prob. e (in en, ecce) + nam] (always postpositive), conj. really. — Esp., as explanatory, for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not.

ēnsis, is [?], m., a sword, a blade.

ēō, ire, iti (ii), īturus [root 1], irr. v. n., go, pass, march, advance, proceed: itum est, they went; dies (go by). — Pass. infin. īrī used with verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.

ēō [old dat. of is], adv., thither. there (in sense of thither). — Often translated by more def. expressions in Eng., to the place (where, etc.), on them (it, him, etc.) : usque eo ut, to that degree that, so far that.

ēō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of degree of difference. See is.

ēōdem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo, thither], adv., to the same place, in the same place (cf. eo), there also: eōdem illo pertinere . . . ut, favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that.

Éphialtēs, -ae [Gr.], m., the be-
trayer of the Greeks at Thermopylae.

ephippiatus, -a, -um [ephippiat- (as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus, see ephippium], adj., saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship).

ephippium, -i [Gr.], N., a horse-cloth, caparison, housing.

epigrama, -atis [Gr.], N., an epigram.

Epirus, -i [Gr.], F., a province in northern Greece.

epistula (epistola), -ae [Gr.], F., a letter, a note, a message (in writing), a despatch.

Eporédorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Hædui.

epulum, -i, plur. -ae, -ärum [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.

eques, -itis [equō- + tis (reduced)], M., a horseman, a rider. — Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). — So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).

equester, -tris, -tre [equit- + tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.

equidem [e (in en, ecce) -quidem], adv., certainly, surely, truly, at least, to be sure.

equitātus, -ūs [equitā- (as st. of equito, ride) + tus], M., cavalry, horse (troops serving on horseback).

equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [equit-], I. v. n., ride.

equus, -i [AK (swift) + vus], M., a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born b.c. 276.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of feeling and conduct).

ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ex-rego, make straight], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise up. — With reflex., get up. — ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, high and straight.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch away, take away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue.

ērogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-rego, ask], I. v. a., appropriate (orig. from the public treasury), pay out, expend.

erō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [?], I. v. n., wander, meander (of a river), go astray, err, be mistaken.

error, -ōris [ERR (as if root of erro) + or], M., a mistake, an error.


ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, break out, sally out, make a sally.

ēruptiō, -ōnis [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., a breaking out, a sally, a sortie.

ervum, ī [?], N., vetch (a kind of pulse).
esse&b, -ae (-um, -i) [Celtic], F. (and N.), a war chariot (of the Gauls).

essedarius, -i [essedō- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., a charioteer (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuvii, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and. — With emphasis, and also.

etiam [et iam], conj., also, too, even, even now, yet, and also, besides: quin etiam, nay more; etiam tum, even then, till then.

etiam tum [etiam-tum], adv., even then.

Etruria, -ae [?], F., a division of Italy north of the Tiber and west of the Apennines.

etsi [et si], conj., even if, although, though.

Eumenēs, -is [Gr.], M., king of Pergamum, B.C. 198-158, a friend and ally of Rome.

euntia (gen. of iens), p. of eo.

Euphrates, -is [Gr.], M., a river of Asia, rising in Armenia and joining the Tigris near Babylon.

Euripides, -is [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek tragic poet.

Europa, -ae [Gr.], F., Europe.

Eurylochus, -i [Gr.], M., one of the companions of Ulysses.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape: evadere ad, arrive at.


ēvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eveho.

ēvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [exveho, carry], 3. v. a., (carry out). — Also, bear aloft, raise, elevate.

ēvenīō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, turn out, happen, fall out.

ēventus, -ūs [ex-ventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., result, issue, fate, success.

ēvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [ex-vero, turn], 3. v. a., turn upside down, overturn, overthrow.

ēvīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-vito, shun], 1. v. a., avoid, escape.

ēvocabatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-voco], 1. v. a., call out, call forth, summon.

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -āturos [ex-volo], 1. v. n., fly out, rush out.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away from), out. — Less exactly, from (lit and fig.), of (made of): facilia ex difficillimis redegereat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were. Hence, after. — Also, on account of, in accordance with, by means of. — Also, above (raised from). — Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march, starting from it; ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there; ex fuga, in their flight; ex ordine, in order. — Other phrases: magna ex parte, in a great degree, for the most part; ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e fillis (one of, etc.); ex Hispania (a man from); ex usu, for the advantage, cf. "of use"; ex planitie editus (above, raised out of); e regione, opposite; ex litteris (in
accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex (e) contrario, on the contrary. — In comp., out, completely (cf. “out and out”), off, up, after, from, un-.

exaequō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [ex-aequo (cf. aequus, equal)], 1. v. a., make equal, equal.

exagitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exagito.

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], 1. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examingo.

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, ātus - [ex-amin- (st. of examen, tongue of the balance)], 1. v. a., weigh. — Fig., examine, test.

exanimōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of exanimo.

exanimitas, -e [ex-animas, decl. as adj.], adj., (out of breath), breathless (from fear), in dismay, half dead.

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [exanimō-], 1. v. a., deprive of breath or life, kill. — exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., (out of breath, weakened, exhausted.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārī, no p. p. [ex-ardesco, cf. ardeo, burn], 3. v. n., blaze up, be kindled. — Fig., become enraged, become excited, burn.

exaudiō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [ex-audio], 4. v. a., hear (from a distance), hear distinctly, distinguish.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire. — Absolutely, leave the fight.

excellō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus [ex-tcello], 3. v. a. and n., raise, rise, surpass, excel. — excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, elevated, tall.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excello.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of excipio.

excidium (excsc-), -i [ex-iscidium (scid + um, cf. excindo, cut off)], N., downfall, overthrow.

exciō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [excio, fall], 3. v. n., fall down, fall out: ei (from his hand).

exciō (-cieō), -cire, -civi (-ii), -citus [ex-cio (cieo, stir)], 4. v. a., call forth, summon.

excipiō, -ciper, -cēpi, -ceptus [ex-capio], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, intercept, receive, catch (of animals), welcome (of persons). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluminis (break); alios aliī (succeed); hunc aliī (follow, take up the cry, in shouting). — Also, meet, befall.

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excito.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [ex-cito, cf. excio, call up], 1. v. a., call out, arouse, rouse, excite, stimulate (induce). — Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).

exclamō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [ex-clamo], 1. v. a. and n., cry out, exclaim.

exclūdō, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsus [ex-cludo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.

exclusus, -a, -um, p. p. of excludo.

excogitō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [excogito], 1. v. a., think out, devise.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excrucio.
excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-
crucio, cf. crux, cross], i. v. a.,
torture, torment.

excubitor, -ōris [as if ex-+cubitor, cf. excubo], m., a sentinel (as lying
out of the camp or tent).

excubo, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubitūrus
[ex-cubo], i. v. n., lie outside. —
Esp., of camp, stand guard, keep a
night watch, watch.

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-calco],
i. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excursiō, -ōnis [ex-+cursio, cf. ex-
curro, run out], F., a salary, a sortie.

excusō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-+causo,
 cf. causa, reason], i. v. a., give as an
excuse. — Also, with change of rela-
tion, excuse, exculpate.

excutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus
[ex-quatio], 3. v. a., shake out: risum
(force).

exedō, -edere, -ēdi, -ēsus [ex-edo,
eat], 3. v. a., (eat out), devour. —
Less exactly, wear away.

exemplum, -i [ex-templum, EM
(in emo, take) + lus with parasitic
p], n., (something taken out), a sam-
ple, a copy, a precedent, an example,
an instance, a case.

exēō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -itus [ex-ēo],
irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, go out,
emigrate, march out, remove: fama
(go abroad, spread).

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus
[ex-arceo], 2. v. a., (drive off hu-
mors of the body), train, practise,
exercise. — Of persons, worry, ex-
asperate: legem (administer, carry
into effect); rura (till, cultivate).

exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitā- (st. of
exercito) + tio], F., practice, exercise.

exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
cercito.

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exercitō,
 cf. exerceo], i. v. a., train, practise.
— exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.,
trained.

exercitus, -ūs [as if ex-arctitus, cf.
exerceo], m., (a training). — Con-
cretely, (a body trained or in train-
ing), an army (large or small, act-
ing independently), a force.

exēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of exedo.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hauisi, -haus-
tus [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off.—
Also, wear out, exhaust.

exhaustus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
haurio.

exhibēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus
[ex-habeo], 2. v. a., hold out, show,
 exhibit.

exiguē [old case-form of exiguus],
adv., scantily, meagrely: exigene
habere frumentum (have a scanty
supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -ātis [exiguō- + tas],
F., scantiness, meagreness: tempori
(short time, want of time); pellium
(small size); castrorum (narrowness,
small size).

exiguus, -a, -um [ex-tangus (ag
+ uus), cf. exigō], adj., (exact?),
narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius, -a, -um [ex-imius, EM
+ ius, cf. eximo, take out], adj.,
taken out), exceptional, remarkable,
very high (opinio), extraordinary.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-
eastimo, reckon], i. v. a. and n., esti-
mate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.

exitium, -i [ex-+tium (ittō + ium),
cf. exeo], N., destruction, ruin.
exitus, -ús [ex-itus, cf. exeō, m., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely), an outlet. Hence, an end, the last part. — Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), lot, fate, an issue.


— expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., unencumbered, easy (iter), not difficult, quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order (of troops without baggage), mobile (of troops), ready.

expeditio, -onis [expedit- + tio, cf. expidio], F., (light-armed service?), a getting ready, a despatching. Hence, an expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached).

expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. of expedio.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out.

experior, -periri, -pertus [ex-tperio, pass. of pario, get], 4. v. dep., (get for one's self?), experience, try: fortunam (risk, try, bear, endure).

expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [expleo], 2. v. a., fill out, fill up, make up (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -ōris [as if ex-þplorator, cf. explorō], m., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, a spy).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.
exsiliō

(sequo- + ia), cf. exsequor, follow out], F. plur., obsequies, funeral rites.

exsiliō, -siliēre, -siluī, no p. p. [ex-salio, jump], 4. v. n., spring out, start up from.

exsiliūm, -i [exsul- + ium, cf. exsilio], n., exile.

exsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue); cornu (grow out, project).

exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see (si, whether, etc.), expect, anticipate.

exspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exspiro], 1. v. n., breathe out (esp. the last breath), expire.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exspolio], 1. v. a., strip off. — Also, strip of (cf. despolio). — Fig., deprive, rob (of; abl.).

exstō, -stāre, -stiti, no p. p. [exstato], 1. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).

exstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstruo.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus [ex-struo], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up. — exstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., well filled.

exsul, -ulis [ex-sal (of salio), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul], m. and f., an exile.

extemplō [ex templō (cf. templum, place of the augur)], adv., immediately, forthwith, at once.

exter, -tera, -terum [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside. — Compar., exterior, -us. e.sterior. — Superl., extrēmus, -a, -u.s.1, farthest. extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; in extremis lingulias (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum, till the last, to the end, at last; ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity); ab extrema parte, at the very end; in extremo specie, almost in despair; in extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity; extrema fames, the last extremity of hunger.

externus, -a, -um [extrō- (in exterus, outer) + nus], adj., from abroad, foreign.

exterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of exterreo.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, no p. p. [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.

extrā [abl. or instr. (? of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out, draw out, pull out: multum aestatis (drag out, waste).

extrēmus, see exter.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsus [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, push out, shut out (by dikes): mercis (dispose of, cf. “shove off”).

extrūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of extrudo.

exuō, -vere, -ui, -ūtus [ex., unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despolio), strip, deprive. despoil: Romanos impedimentis.
faber, -bri [fa (in facio) + ber (for brus)] (m. of faber, skilful), m., a mechanic, an engineer (in an army), an artisan, a workman, a smith.


fabricatus, -a, -um, p. p. of fabrico.

fabricō, -āre, āvī, ātus [fabrica- ([fabricō + cus]), i. v. a., fashion, make, build.

fābula, ae [fa (in for, speak) + bula (f. of bulus)], f., a myth, a fable, a story.

faciēs, -ēi [facē- (reduced, cf. facio) + ias], f., form, shape. — Concretely, face.

facilius, -e [facē- (cf. beneficus) + ius], adv., easy (to do, cf. habilius), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally). — facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently, readily, without difficulty.

facinus, -oris [facin- (as if root of facino, longer form of facio) + us], n., a deed (of any kind). — Esp. (as in Eng.), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct. See admitto.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus [fac + iō], 3. v. a. and n., make, do, act. — Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: coniuratioem (form); proelium (bring on); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem epistulae (bring to a close); verba (speak, act as spokesman); potestatem (give an opportunity, permit, allow). — Esp. with clause of result, cause (to), do (omitting in Eng. the connective that, and expressing the thing done in the indicative): facies ut sciam, you will let me know. — So in pass., be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be, become: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that; fieri posse, be possible; quid fit, what is going on; fit gratulatio, one is congratulated. — Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), make, render. — Esp.: certiorem facere, inform. — So with pred. gen.: nihil reliqui, leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility; sui commodi naves (make for his convenience). — factum, -i, n. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, fact, etc.: id factum graviter tuli, took this action much to heart; recte factum, good conduct (but notice the adverb); factum male, a woful deed. — fiō, fieri, as pass. in all senses.

factō, -onis [prob. facti + o, but treated as fac + iō, cf. co-
factum, -i, see facio.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of facio.

facultās, -ātis [facul (for facil- cf. simul) + tas], F., ease, facility. — So, chance, power, opportunity: quantum facultaties dari potuit, so far as opportunity was offered; sui conligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navium.

faenerātor, -ōris [faenerā- (lend on interest) + tor], M., a usurer.

faenus, -ōris [unc. st. fr. FE (produce) + nus, cf. facinus], N., interest, usury.

fāgus, -i [prob. bhag (eat) + us, from the fruit], F., a beech, beech (of the timber).

Falernus, -a, -um [?], adj., generally with ager, the Falernian territory, in Campania, famous for its wine. — Also, neut. (sc. vinum) as noun, Falernian (wine).

fallo, fallere, fefelli, falsus [? sphal, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: spee aliquem (disappoint); fallendo, by deceit. — falsus, -a, -um, p. p., deceived. — Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of fallo.

falx, falcis [?], F., a sickle, a pruning-hook. — Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae [FA (in for, speak) + ma], F., speech, common talk, reputation. — Concretely, a rumor, a story, a report, fame, reputation.

famēs, -is [?], F., hunger, starvation.

familia, -ae [famulō- (servant), reduced, + ia], F., a collection of attendants, a household, a family: gladiatorum (a gang, a troop). — Applied to Gauls, a clan, retainers.

familiāris, -e [prob. familiā- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., of the household: res (estate, property). — Esp. as noun, a friend.

familiāritās, -ātis [familiari- + tas], F., intimacy (with, gen.).

fāmōsus, -a, -um [fama- + osus], adj., slanderous, scandalous.

famula, -ae [F. of famulus, servant], F., a maid-servant.

fās [FA (in for, speak) + us], indecl. N., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fās (permitted, allowed).

fascis, -is [?], M., a bundle. — Esp. in plur., the fasces, the bundle of rods with an axe, carried by the lictor before the higher magistrates.

fastīdiūm, -i [akin to fastus, scorn], N., squeamishness. — Plur., want of appetite.

fastigātē [old case-form of fastigatus], adv., sloping.

fastigātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -i [fastigō- (unc. form, akin to fastus, scorn, cf. castigo) + ium, cf. fastigo], N., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fastigō- (cf. fastigium)], 1. v. a., bring to a point. — Esp., fastigātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., inclined, sloping: leniter (with an easy slope).

fāstus, -a, -um [fas + tus], adj., secular (of days when the courts,
fatales

etc., could rightly be held). — Masc. plur. as noun, the fasti (the list of such days), the calendar.

fatales, -e [fatō- (fate) + alis], adj., fated, fatal. — Hence, dangerous.

fateor, -ēri, fassus [perh. akin to fatigo], 2. v. dep., confess, acknowledge.

fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fatigō- (fatī-agus, cf. prodigus), 1. v. a., tire out, weary.

†faux, †faucis [?], F. (only abl. sing. and plur.), the throat, the jaws. — Fig., appetite. — Also, voracity, greediness: fauce improba.

faveō, favēre, favī, fautūrus [?], 2. v. n., favor, be favorable to.

fax, facis [?], F., a torch, a fire-brand, fire (lighted missiles).

febrīa, -is [akin to ferveo, be hot], F., a fever, fever.

felicītās, -ātis [felicī- (as if felici-) + tas], F., good fortune, good luck, lucky.

feliciter [felicī- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.

fēlīx, -icus [akin to feo, produce], adj., (fruitful). Hence, happy, fortunate, lucky, successful.

fēmina, -ae [FE (nurse) + mina, cf. alumna], F., a woman, a female.

femur, -orris (inis) [?], N., the thigh.

dera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis [reduced noun-st. (akin to ferō) + ax, as if fērā + cus (reduced)], adj., fertile.

ferculum, -i [FÉ (in ferō) + culum], N., (a means of carrying, a dish). — Transf., a dish, a mess, a course.

ferō [?], old case-form of st. fērō- (akin to ferō), adv., almost, about. — Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

ferō, ferre, tull, lātus (for lātus) [BHAR, bear, and TOL (TLA) in tolo], irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, to erate, suffer, stand, withstand, carry off, win. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer, bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magnum cum dolore ferre, be much pained or ignignant at: molestē (graviter, aegre) ferre, be annoyed at, take hard, be ignignant at, take to heart. — Special uses : auxilium (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); condicionem (propose); legem (propose, carry, pass); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferebat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo fert (is), opinio fert (goes); fertur, it is said.

ferōx, -ōcis [akin to ferus], adj., fierce, savage, insolent.

ferrāria, -ae [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferō- + eus], adj., of iron, iron (as adj.).

ferrum, -I [?], N., iron, steel, sword: ad ferrum et manus, to close quarters.

fertilis, -e [fertū- + lis (as if FAER + tullis)], adj., fertile, fruitful.
fertilitas, -atis [fertili- + tas], F., fertility, productiveness.

ferus, -a, -um [FER (rush) + us, cf. deer], adj., wild, ferocious.— Masc. or fem. as noun, wild beast, game.

fervefacio, -facere, -feci-, -factus [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo, be hot) + facio], 3. v. a., heat, heat red-hot (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.

fessus, -a, -um [?], adj., wearied, tired, worn out.

festivus, -a, -um [festē- + ivus], adj., festive, gay.— Also, agreeable, pleasur.

festus, -a, -um [?], adj., festive, festal, happy: dies.

fibula, -ae [FIG (in figo, fasten) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictilis, -e [fictē- (cf. fingo, fashion) + lis], adj., of earth, earthen (as fashioned by the potter).

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e [fidē- (st. of fides or kindred st.) + lis], adj., faithfui.

fidēs, -ei [FID (bind) + es], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere, give assurance; fidem praestare, keep faith, perform one’s duty.— Also, good faith, fidelity: bona fide, in good faith, with sincerity.— Transf., confidence, faith (in), credit, belief.— Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, alliance: quorum in fide (under whose protection); Caesarius fidem sequi (come under, surrender one’s self to); in fide sem permittere (venire), place themselves under protection of.

fidūcia, -ae [†fiduc- (†fidu-, faithful, + cus, reduced) + la], F., confidence, reliance.

figō, figere, fixi, fixus [FIG]. 3. v. a., fix, fastem (in the ground). Hence, erect, set up.

figūra, -ae [†fīgū- (FIG, in fingo, + us) + ra (F. of rus)], F., shape, form, appearance.

filia, -ae [F. of filius], F., a daughter.

filiola, -ae [filiō- + la (F. of lus, dim. ending)], F., a little daughter.

filius, -i (?), M., a son.

filum, -i (?), N., a thread.

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus [FIG, cf. figura], 3. v. a., mould.— Fig., invent, contrive, imagine, feign, pretend.— fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. plur., fictions: facta respondeant, make up answers.

finiō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itus [fini-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, bound, measure (ending a division).— Also, finish, end.

finis, -is (?), M., a limit, a boundary, an end: finem facere, put an end to, cease, bring to a close (epistulae); quem ad finem, as far as.— Plur., boundaries, limits, territories, country.

finitimus (-umus), -a, -um [fini- + timus], adj., on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors (of).— Plur. as noun, neighbors.

finitus, -a, -um, p. p. of finio.

fīō [FU in fui], as pass. of facio, wh. see.

firmiter [firma- + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadily.

firmitūdō, -inis [firma- + tude]. F., solidity, strength (of resistance),
fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fīrmō-],
i. v. a., make strong, strengthen, forti fy.

fīrmus, -a, -um [dhār (hold) + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady.

fīstūca, -ae [?], F., a pile-driver.

fīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of fīgo.

fīgītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [as if fīgītō-], p. p. of fīgō, akin to fīgro, blaze], i. v. a., ask (in heat?), demand earnestly.

fīagro, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [fīagro-(flag, blaze)], i. v. n., burn, be on fire.

Flāmininūs, ἱ [Flaminīō- + ius], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Quintius Flamininus, envoy of the Romans to King Prusias to demand the surrender of Hannibal.

Flāminius, ἰ [fla-min- (priest) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Flāminius, a Roman consul, who commanded the Romans at the Battle of Lake Trasumenu s.

flamma, -ae [flag (blaze) + ma], F., flame, fire.

flavus, -a, -um [?], adj., yellow.

flectō, flectere, fłēxi, fłexus [?],
3. v. a., bend, turn.

fleō, flēre, fľēvi, fľētus [?], 2. v. a.
and n., weep: flentes, in tears.

fleōs, -ūs [ae- (st. of fleo as root) + tus], m., weeping, lamentation.

fīō, flāre, flāvi, flātus [?], i. v. n.
and a., blow.

flōrens, -entis [p. of flōreo, bloom],
as adj., blooming. — Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential (juvenis).

flōs, flōris [?], m., a flower, a blossom. — Fig., the flower (of troops).

fluctus, -ūs [flug (in fluo, cf. fluxi) + tus], m., a wave.

flūmen, -inis [flug (in fluo, flow) + men], n., a river, a stream, a current.

fluvius, i [fluō- (cf. fluidus) + ius], m., a river, a stream.

fōdiō, fōdere, fōdī, fossus [?],
3. v. a., dig.

foederātus, -a, -um [p. p. of foedere], adj., allied, federated.

foedus, -eris [fid (in fides, cf. fidus) + us], n., a treaty, a league, a compact.

folium, -i [?], n., a leaf.

fōns, fontis [?], m., a spring.

forās [acc. plur. of fora, cf. foris], adv., (to the doors), outdoors, out of the door (as end of motion).

fore, for futurum esse; see sum. 
forem, for essem; see sum.

foris, is [for (akin to Eng. “door”) + is], F., a door. — Plur., doors, a door (double).

foris (abl. plur. of fora), adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae [dhār (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form. — Esp., fine form, beauty. — Concretely, a shape, a form.

formica, -ae [?], F., an ant.

formidō, -inis [formīdō- (unc. st., cf. formīdō, perh. akin to formus, warm) + o], F., fear (generally violent), dread, terror.

formōsus, -a, -um [forma- (reduced) + osus], adj., beautiful, lovely.
fors, fortis [FER (in fero) + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.

fortasse [?, akin to forte], adv., perhaps, possibly.

forte, see fors.

fortis, -e [akin to firmus], adj., strong, stalwart, brave, courageous: vir fortis, a man of courage.

fortiter [forti- + ter], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly.

fortitudo, -inis [forti- + tudo], F., bravery, prowess.

fortuitus, -a, -um [p. p. of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adj., casual, accidental. — fortuitō, abl. as adv., by chance, casually, accidentally.

fortuna, -ae [fortu- (FER + tus, cf. fortuito) + na (F. of nus)], F., fortune, chance, fate, lot (one’s fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources, chances (means) of success. — Esp., good fortune, success: fortunam temptare, try one’s chances. — Personified, Fortune, the goddess.

fortunātus, -a, -um [p. p. of fortune], adj., fortunate, prosperous.

forum, -ī [akin to ōfora], N., (an open place), a market-place. — Esp., the Forum (the great market-place at Rome, used also for all public purposes).

fossa, -ae [F. of fossus, p. p. of fodio, dig], F., a ditch, a trench.

fovea, -ae [?, perh. akin to fo-veo, as orig. a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.

fractus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.

fragor, -ōris [FRAG (cf. frango) + or], M., (a breaking), a crack, a din, a noise.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus [FRAG], 3. v. a., break (as a solid body). — Esp., of ships, wreck: fractis fluctibus (breaking).

frater, -tris [prob. FER + ter, akin to tor, cf. pater], M., a brother.

fraus, fraudis [?, akin to frustra], F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.

Fregellae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a town of Latium.

fremitus, -ūs [fremi- (st. of fremo, roar) + tus], M., a murmur, a confused noise, a roar.

frēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [frenō-], 1. v. a., bridle, curb, check, restrain.

frēnum, -ī (plur. also -ī, -ōrum) [root or verb-st. (akin to firmus) + num], N. and M., a bridle, a curb, a bit.

frequēns, -entis [orig. p. akin to farcio, stuff], adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers.

frequenter [frequent- + ter], adv., often, frequently.

frigidus, -a, -um [†frigō- (whence frigio, be cold) + dus], adj., cold.

frigus, -ōris [FRIG (in frigio, etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold (cold “snaps,” frosts).

frōns, frontis [?, akin to brau̯]. F., brow, face: media frontis, the middle of the forehead. — Less exactly, front, brow: a fronte, in front.

fructus, -ūs [FRUG + tus], M., enjoyment. Hence (what one enjoys), fruit, crops, income, profit, interest (from money): victoria (advantages of victory).

frumentārius, -a, -um [frument-
fulmen, -inis [FULG (in fulgeo) + men], N., a thunderbolt, a lightning flash.

fümō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fumō-], r. v. n., smoke.

fūmus, -i [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dūst'], M., smoke.

fungo, fungi, functus [fundo-], 3. v. dep., forage, gather grain, get supplies.

fundamentum, -i [fundā- (set fast) + mentum], N., a foundation: a fundamentis, to the ground, utterly.

Fundānus, ī [Fundō- (st. of Fundī, a town of Latium) + anus], M., a Roman family name.

fundiōr, -ōris [funda (as if verb-st.) + tor], M., a slinger.

fundiō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — Neut. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungo, fungi, functus [fundo-], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fungo, fungere, fūgi, fugitūrus [FUG (in fugā)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away, flee. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugā, fugācī [fugā- + ax, prob. fuga + caus. (reduced)], adj., fleeing, fleeing, swift.

fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus [FUG (in fugā)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away, flee. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fugā-], 1. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fulgō, fulgère, fulsī, no p. p. [FULG, blaze], 2. v. n., shine.
furor, -ōris [FUR (cf. furo, rage) + or], m., madness, frenzy, fury.
fūrtum, -i [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to fur, thief], n., theft, a theft.

G

Gabali, -orum [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gādēs, -ium [?], f. plur., a town in southern Spain, now Cadiz.

Gaetilius, -a, -um [?], adj., of the Gatulians or Getuli, a tribe of northern Africa. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Gatulians.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -i [?], m., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae [Celtic, meaning fat], m., a Gallic and Roman family name. — Esp., a king of the Sueviones.

Galea, -ae [?], akin to galerus, leather cap], f., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae [F. of adj. in -ius (Gallī- + ius)], f., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallī- + cus], adj., of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, -ae [galleo- (cock) + ina], f., a hen.

gallus, -i [?], m., a cock, a rooster.

Gallus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of Gaul, Gallic. — As noun, a Gaul, the Gauls. — Also, as a Roman family name. See Trebius.

Garumna, -ae [Celtic], c., a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne.

gaudēs, gaudère, gāvisus [tgavidī-, cf. avidus], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.

gaudium, -i [tgavidī- (reduced) + ium, cf. gaudēo], n., joy, delight, pleasure.

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of gaudeo.

Geminius, -i [?], m., a Roman family name. See Servilius.

gemitus, -ūs [tgemi- (as st. of gemo, groan) + ius], m., a groan, a roar, a roaring: gemitus iraeque, angry roaring.

gemma, -ae [?], f., a gem, a precious stone.

gener, -eri [?], m., a son-in-law.

generātim [as if acc. of /gene-

ratis (genera- + tis)], adv., by tribes.

genitus, -a, -um, p. p. of gigno.
gēns, gentis [GEN (beget) + tis (reduced)], f., a family, a tribe, a clan, a people, a nation, a race.

genus, -eris [GEN (beget) + us], n., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe. — Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class. — Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum, the character of the inhabitants.

Gergovia, -ae [Celtic], f., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germania, -ae [F. of adj. in -ius,
fr. Germanus], F., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germanicus, -a, -um [Germānō- + cus], adj., of the Germans, German, Germanic.

Germanus, -a, -um [], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, the Germans.

gerō, gerere, gessē, gestus [ces, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than ferō), carry on, accomplish, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business), wear (chains): see gerere, conduct one's self, act, behave. — Pass., be done, go on (of operations): reminere (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); occasio rei bene gerendae (for striking a successful blow); his rebus gestis, after these operations; rea gestae, exploits, operations, a campaign; gesta, events.

Gērōn, -onis [Gr.], M., a famous monster in Spain, whose oxen were carried off by Hercules.

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gesto-, cf. gero], 1. v. a., bear, carry, wear.
gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero.
gigās, -antis [Gr.], M., a giant.
gignō, gignere, genui, genus [Gen, redupl.], 3. v. a., beget, give birth to, produce.
glaber, -bra, -brum [], adj., smooth.

Gladiātor, -ōris [gladiā- (cf. gladius) + tor], M., a gladiator.

gladiātorius, -a, -um [gladiator + ius], adj., gladiatorial.
gladius, -ī [?], M., a sword.
glāna, glandis [?], F., a nut, an acorn. — Also, a ball (for shooting).

glēba (glae-), -ae [?], F., a clod (of earth), a lump.
glōria, -ae [akin to inclutus, renowned], F., fame, glory.
glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [gloria-], 1. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).

Gnaeus (Cnēius, Cn.), -i [akin to guavus, active], M., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitō, -onis [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hāedui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Gortynius, -a, -um [gortyna- (reduced) + ius], adj., Gortynian, of Gortyna, a city of Crete. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Gortynians.

Gracchus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

gradus, -ūs [grad (cf. gradior, step) + us], M., a step.

Graecia, -ae [Graecō- + ia (F. of ius)], F., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Grāius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Graian, referring to a section of the Alps.

grāmen, -inis [akin to germen,
grandis, -e [?], adj., large, of great size.

graphium, -i [Gr.], N., a pen, a style (for writing).

gratia, -ae [gratī- (reduced) + ia], F., "gratefulness" (in both Eng. senses of grateful), gratitude (that one has from others or towards others), good will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship. — Also, a return, a recompense. — Esp.: gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, return thanks, pay off an obligation, requite. — grata, with gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, to (for the purpose of).

gratulatio, -onis [gratulā- + tio, cf. frumentatio], F., a congratulation (of others or one’s self), rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing.

gratulor, -āri, -ātus [gratulō-(gratā + lua)], I. v. dep., congratulate.

gratus, -a, -um [p. p. of lost verb], adj., pleasing, acceptable, grateful. — Also, pleased, thankful: gratum facere, do a favor.

gravatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of gravo.

gravīs, -e [for ĭgarīs, ĭgarus], adj., heavy. — Fig., serious, severe, hard, dangerous. — Also, weighty, strong (causa, imperium); gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid accideret, if anything serious should occur; caerimonias (solemn, binding).

gravitas, -ātis [gravi- + taas], F., weight. — Fig., importance, power, dignity.

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart, suffer from; premere (press hard); multo gravius exarēt (more violently); gravius consulere, take severer measures.

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gravi- (as if grava-)], I. v. a., make heavy (cf. levo), load, burden, oppress, overcome, press, upbraid. — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one’s self), be reluctant, be unwilling, be vexed.

gremium, -i [?], N., the lap, the bosom.

grex, gregis [?], M. (rarely F.), a herd, a flock. — Also, a gang, a band, a troop.

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernā- (steer) + tor], M., a pilot, a helmsman.

gubernō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [Gr.], I. v. a., steer, pilot.

gustō, -āre, āvi, ātus [gustō; (st. akin to gustus, Eng. "choose")], I. v. a., taste, eat.

gustus, -ūs [unc. root + tus], M., a tasting. — Esp., a light dish beginning a meal, a relish.
habeo, habère, habui, habitus [?], 2. v. a. and n., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: aditum (have in itself, and so offer); castra (occupy); se habere, be; secum or apud se habere, have with him, also detain; censum and the like (hold, conduct); in animo habere, intend; orationem (make, deliver); bene habet, it is well.—Esp., with p. p. as a sort of continued perf. (whence the perf. of modern languages), have, hold, keep: equitatum coactum (get and keep).—Also, treat: ludibriō, pro amico. Hence, consider, regard (cf. hold).—Esp.: rationem habere, keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of; habere quemadmodum oppida defendent- (have any means of, etc.).

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [habitō-, cf. habeō]. 1. v. a. and n., dwell, live, dwell in, inhabit.

hāctenus [hac tenua], adv., thus far, to this point.

Hadria (Adr-), -ae [Gr.], m., the Adriatic Sea.

Hadrūmētum, -i [?], n., a town on the coast of Africa.

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Haudusans, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, a Hauduan, the Haudusans or Haudui.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [freq. of haereo, stick, cf. dictito], i. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

Hamilcar, -aris [?], m., the father of Hannibal.

hāmus, -i [?], m., a hook.

Hannibal, -alis [?], the great general of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War.

harēna (arēna), -ae [tarē- (st. of areo, be dry) + na (f. of nus)], f., sand, an arena, an amphitheatre.

harpagō, -onis [Gr.], m., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling iron.

Harpagus, -i [?], m., a Median nobleman who is said to have preserved the infant Cyrus. He was afterwards one of Cyrus’s generals.

haruspex, -icus [unc. st. + spec (see) as st.], m., a soothsayer, a diviner.


hau, same as haud.

haud [?], adv., not (negating single words), not at all.

hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustus [cf. haustus], 4. v. a., drain, drink, drink off.

haustus, -ūs [haus (in haurio) + tus], m., a draught, a drinking: ad meos haustus, to me to drink, to my lips.

Helvēticus, -a, -um [Helvetiō- (reduced) + cus], adj., Helvetic (see Helvetius).

Helvētius, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — Plur. as noun, the Helvetii or Helveti- tians.
Helvii, -orum [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.
herba, -ae [?], F., an herb, a plant grass. — Also (from plants), a drug.
Hercle [contr. voc. of Hercules], interj., indeed! bless me! at any rate!
Hercules, -is [Gr.], m., the famous demigod, renowned for his strength and for his services to mankind.
Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).
herēditās, -ātis [hered-, heir (as if hered-), + tas], F., inheritance, an inheritance.
herēs, -ēdis [?], m. and F., an heir.
herōs, -ōis [Gr.], m., a demigod, a hero.
hesternus, -a, -um [heasi- (cf. heri, yesterday) + ternus], adj., of yesterday, yesterday’s: hesterno die, yesterday, the day before.
Hibernia, -ae [?], F., Ireland.
hibernus, -a, -um [hiem- + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (adj.). — Neut. plur. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.
hic [ṭhi- (loc. of hi-c) + ce], adv., here, in this place, there (of a place just mentioned), at this point.
hic, haec, hicīus [hi- (pron. st.) + ce, cf. ecce, cetera], dem. pron. (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is). — Less commonly, of what follows: his mandatis (the following, as follows; these). — Esp.: haec memoria, the present generation; tempus (the present); his paucis diebus within a few days. — hoc, n. abl. used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much the (emph. with comparatives). — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: his ita respondit (to this embassy). — Often hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off), this last (nearer on the page) . . . the other, the latter . . . the former.
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [hiem- (as if hiema-)], I. v. n., winter, pass the winter.
hiems (-mps), -emis [?], F., winter, a storm.
hinc [ṭhim (loc. of thi) + ce], adv., from here, hence.
hirundinīnus, -a, -um [hirundin- + inus], adj., of a swallow, a swallow’s.
hirundō, -inis [?], F., a swallow.
Hispāniēnsis, -e [Hispania- + enia], adj., of Spain, Spanish.
historia, -ae [Gr.], F., a story, an account.
historiola, -ae [historia- + ola, dim. ending], F., a little story.
hodiē [ṭho- (abl. of hic) -diē], adv., to-day. — Weakened with negs., now, surely: numquam hodie.
hodiernus, -a, -um [hodie- + ernus], adj., of to-day, to-day’s.
homō, -inis [prob. humō- (the
homunculus, i [homun- (for homin-) + culus, dim. ending], m., a little man. — Late, a fine fellow.

honestus, -a, -um [honos- (orig. st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.

honore- (ōe), ōris [unc. root + or], m., honor, respect: honoris causa, out of respect. — Also, of honors conferred by the people, an honorable position, an honor, an office. — Personified, Honor.

hōra, -ae [Gr.], f., an hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

hōrnus, -a, -um [Gr., cf. hora, season], adj., of this season, this year's.

horreō, horrēre, horrui, no p. p. [horrō- (HORR, orig. HORS, bristle, + us), prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], 2. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at, dread.

horreum, i (?), n., a storehouse, a granary.

horribilis, -e [horri- (as if st. of horreo) + blis], adj., to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um [horrō- (cf. horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor.

hortor, -āri, -ātus [for horitor, freq. of old thorior, urge], i. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address. — Less exactly, of things, urge, move, prompt.

hortus, -i [?], m., a garden.

hospes, -itis [prob. Ghas-patis, orig. host (lord of eating)], m., a host. — Also, a guest, a stranger, a visitor. Hence, a guest-friend (in the peculiar relation of hospitium, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), a friend (of the kind above mentioned).

hospitālis, -e [hospit- + alis], adj., (relating to a guest or host). Hence, hospitable, friendly, inviting.

hospitium, -i [hospit- + ium], n., the relation of host (or guest). Hence (cf. hospes), friendship: hospitium atque amicitia, alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship, hospitality: in hospitium, to a hospitable reception.

hostia, -ae [prob. hosti- (st. of hostis, reduced) + ia], f., a victim (for sacrifice).

hostiliter [hostilli- (hostile) + ter], adv., as an enemy.

hostis, -is [Ghas (cf. hospes) + tis], c. (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [hō- (dat. of hi-, see hic) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo): huc accedebant, to these [ships before mentioned], were added (see accedo); accedebat huc, to this was added the fact that, etc.
hūiusmodī, see hic and modus.

hūmānitās, -ātis [humanō- + tas], F., humanity (as opp. to brutishness), civilisation, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

hūmānus, -a, -um [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined, human.

humilis, -e [humō- (ground) +

I., for unus, etc., one.

iacēō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus [? , cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: iacentes, p. as noun, the slain.

iacēō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [? , cf. iaceo], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up); ancoras (cast, drop).

iactūra, -ae [iactu- + ra (f. of rus)], F., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iam [acc. of pron-st.], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length, presently, at once: iam non, no longer; iam ante, some time before, even before; iam utebatur, was getting to use; iam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.); nihil iam, no longer; also with no idea of time, even, in fact; iam dudum, iam pridem, now for a long time, long ago, long since.

iamdūdum, see iam.

iānua, -ae [akin to Ianus, the god of openings], F., a door.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., there (in a place before mentioned), in it, thereupon.

ibit, ibat, see eo.

Iccius, -i [?], M., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs [1C (in ico, strike) + tus], M., a stroke: ictus scorpionis (a shot of, etc.).

Īd., for Ídus.

idcirco [id (N. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as circa, circum)], adv., for that reason, for this reason, therefore.

Ídem, eadem, idem [is dem, cf. dūm], dem. adj. pron., the same.— Often as noun, the same thing (things), the same: idem imperavit, gave the same command: idem castellum, this very fort.

identidem [cf. idem and word akin to tandem], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

ideō [id- eo, this for this reason]. adv., therefore, for this reason.

idēlon, -ī [Gr.], N., a spectre, an apparition, a ghost.

idōnus, -a, -um [? , akin to idem?], adj., fit, suitable, adapted:
**homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).**

**İđūs, -uum [?, perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).**

**igitur [perh. unc. st. + tūs (cf. divinitus)], conj., therefore, then, accordingly.**

**ignārus, -a, -um [in-gnārus (GNA, know, + rus)], adj., ignorant, not knowing.**

**ignāvia, -ae [ignavō- (reduced) + ia], F., inactivity, idleness, sloth.**

**ignis, -is [?, same word as Sk. agnis, the god of fire], M., fire. — Plur., camp-fires.**

**ignōminia, -ae [tignomin- (in- (g)nomen, name) + ia], F., want of fame, disgrace. — Almost concr., disgraceful defeat.**

**ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ignarō-, ignorant], I. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of.**

**ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in- (unc. which meaning) -(g)nōscō, know], 3. v. n. and a., overlook, pardon.**

**ignōtus, -a, -um [in- (g)nōtus], adj., unknown, strange.**

**İII, for quattuor, four.**

**İlias, -adis [Gr.], F., the Iliad.**

**İlicō [in-loco], adv., at once, immediately.**

**ille, -a, -ud [old ollus, fr. pron. root + lus (?)], dem. pron., that (of something remote, cf. hic). — Also, the well-known, the famous. Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they; hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former.**

**illac [loc. of ille + ce, cf. hic], adv., there (more remote, opposed to hic, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): illac . . . quo, in the place to which (but with more emphasis than ibi . . . quo).**

**illō [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way.**

**illac [illo- (cf. eo) -ce (cf. hic)], adv., thither, to that place, there (in the sense of thither).**

**İlllyricum, -i [?, N. of adj.], N., Illlyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Cæsar’s province along with the two Gauls).**

**imāgō, -inis [akin to imitōr], F., (an imitation, a copy). — Concretely, a statue, a bust, a picture. — Esp., a phantōm, a ghost, an apparition.**

**imbēcillis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [?], adj., weak.**

**imbēcillitās, -ātis [imbēcillō- + tās], F., weakness, feebleness: animi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).**

**imber, imbris [?], M., a rain-storm, a rain.**

**imitōr, -āri, -ātus [timitō-, p. p. of tīmo (cf. imago)], I. v. dep., imitate, copy.**

**immānias, -e [in-tamanus, good ?], adj. (“uncanny” ?), monstrous, huge, enormous.**

**immānītās, -ātis [immāni- + tās], F., cruelty, barbarity, ferocity.
immensus, -a, -um [in-mensus, measured], adj., (unmeasured), vast, immense, boundless.

immergo, -mergere, -mersi, -mersus [in-mergo, plunge], 3. v. a., plunge in. — With reflex. or in pass., plunge (one’s self) in.

immineo, -minere, no perf., no p. p. [in-mineo], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

immissus, p. p. of immitto.

immitis, -e [in-mitis, gentle], adj., ungentle, fierce, cruel.

immittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus [in-mitto], 3. v. a., let in, drive in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against, let loose.

immō [abl. of imus (in-mus, superl. of in), adv., (in the lowest degree), may, may rather, may more.

immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [timmola-(in-mola, meal)], 1. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

immortalis, -e [in-mortalis], adj., immortal. — Plur. as noun, the immortals.

immortalitās, -ātis [immortali-+ tas], F., immortality.

immūnia, -e [in-temunia, cf. communis and munia], adj., free from tribute.

immūnitās, -ātis [immuni-+ tas], F., freedom from public burdens.

impatiens, -entis [in-patienis], adj., impatient.

impedimentum, -i [impedi-+ mentum], N., a hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp., in plur., baggage, a baggage-train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impedīō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [timped-(in-pes, foot, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede.

impeditus, -a, -um, p. p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigatio), impassable (loca): esse victoribus nihil impedimentum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impeditus, p. p. of impedio.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel, move.

impendō, -pendere, -pendi, -pensus [in-pendo, weigh], 3. v. a., lay out, expend, apply, devote. — impensus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., expensive, very high (of price). — Fem. as noun (sc. pecunia), expenditure, outlay.

impensus, -a, -um, p. p. of impendo.

imperātor, -ōris [impera-+ tor]. M., commander (in chief), general, emperor.

imperātum, -i [N. p. p. of impero], N., an order, a command.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta, without accomplishing one’s purpose, unsuccessful.

imperitus, -a, -um [in-peritus, skilled], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.

imperium, -i [impero- (whence impero, cf. pario, get) + ium], N., command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both
imperŏ, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [im-
perō (in-tparus, cf. pario, get)],
i. v. a. and n., demand (make re-
sition for, prob. orig. meaning), re-
quire (in same sense). Hence, or-
der (in military sense), rule, com-
mand, give orders, control: illo
imperante, under his command.

impetō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [im-
patro, bring to pass], i. v. a., accom-
plish (anything by a request),
succeed in (obtaining), obtain, gain
(a request): impetō a, prevail upon,
persuade; ab eis impetrae ut, they
be persuaded to; impetō ut, etc.,
obtain a request to, be allowed to,
etc., succeed in having.

impetus, -ūs [in-tpetus (cf. peto,
aim at)], m., a rush, an attack, an
onset, a charge, an assault, violence,
fury: facere (inroad, charge, in-
vasion); is impetus, such fury, etc.

impiger, -gra, -grum [in-piger,
slow], adj., active, energetic.

impius, -a, -um [in-pius], adj.,
impious (offending divine law).

impleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [in-
pleo, cf. compleo], 2. v. a., fill, fill
up, cover, complete.

implicatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of im-
plico.

implico, -äre, -āvī (-ui), -ātus (-itus)
in-plico, fold], i. v. a., entangle, in-
terweave, entwine, encircle.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [im-
plorō, cry out], 1. v. a., implore,
beseach.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus
[in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, place:
in navis (or dat.) (put on board).—
Fig., impose, impose upon.

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
importo.

importō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [im-
portō, carry], i. v. a., import.
impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of im-
pono.

* impositor, -ōris [in-tpositor (po-
sitor, fr. pono)], m., a deceiver, an
impositor.

impraesentiārum [for in praes-
entia rerum], adv., for the present.
imprimis [in primis], adv., among
the first, especially, particularly
(more than anything else).
improbō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [im-
probō], i. v. a. (hold as bad), disap-
prove, blame, censure.
improbus, -a, -um [in-probus,
good], adj., bad, wicked, unprin-
cipled, impious. — Also, cruel, greedy,
voracious (fauce).
imprōvius, -a, -um [in-pro-
visus], adj., unforeseen: improviso
(de improviso), on a sudden, un-
expectedly, unaware.
imprūdēns, -entis [in-prudens,
foreseeing], adj., not expecting, in-
cautious, unsuspecting, off one's
guard, unguarded, not being aware.
imprudenter [imprudent- + ter],
adv., unwisely, imprudently.
imprūdentia, -ae [imprudent-
+ ia], f., ignorance, want of con-
sideration, want of forethought.
impūbēs, -eris (-is) [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.

imus, -a, -um [in + mus], superl. of inferus.

1 in [cf. Eng. "un-"]], neg. particle, only in comp. with nouns and adj.s., not verbs.

2 in [?], cf. Eng. "on"; cf. also inde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad, among). — Of time, for, to, till. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon. — Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvis, hide in the woods; in conspectum venire (in sight). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: in altitudinem, in height, cf. to the height of. — Esp.: in horas, from hour to hour; in Morinos (into the country of, etc.); in fugam concerere, put to flight.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in Meldis (in the country of); in ancors, at anchor; in praesentia, for the present; in potestate, under the power; in operes esse, to be engaged in the work; in proverbio esse, be a common saying, proverb; in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inaccessus, -a, -um [in-accessus], adj., (unapproached), inaccessible.

Inachus, -i [Gr.], M., the son of Oceanus and Tethys, the mythic founder of Argos, and father of Io.
inānis, -e [?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.


incată [old case-form of incatustus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incatustus, -a, -um [in-catus, p. p. of -caveo], adj., incautious, off one's guard, careless.

incendium, -i [in-tcadium, cf. incendo], N., a burning, a fire: incendia aedificiorum, the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning.

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnus [in-tcando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a. set fire to, set on fire, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite, fire, inflame.

incēnus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo.

incertas, -a, -um [in-certus], adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy (rumores): ordinibus (in disorder).

incessus, -ūs [in-tcessus, cf. incedo], M., a gait, a walk, bearing, mien.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [incaedo], 3. v. n., fall upon, fall. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet. occur, happen: in morbum (fall sick): in insaniam (become insane).

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cēsus [incaedo], 3. v. a., cut into, half cut down (trees).
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in-capio, take], 3. v. a. and n., begin, undertake.

incisus, -a, -um, p. p. of incido.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cito], 1. v. a., set in motion (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse, incite. — incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., excited to anger, angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — Esp.: se aestus incitare (rush in).

includō, -clüdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [in-claudio, close], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose, confine.

incognitus, -a, -um [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.

incola, -ae [in-tcola (COL + a), cf. agriculta], m. and f., an inhabitant.


incolumis, -e [?], adj., unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.

incommodus, -a, -um [in-commodus], adj., inconvenient, unfortunate. — Esp., incommodum, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm.

inconstantia, -ae [inconstant- + iā], F., inconsistency, changeableness.

incrēdibilis, -is [in-credibilis], adj., incredible, marvellous, extraordinary.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [increpito (cf. increpo)], 1. v. a. freq., upbraid, taunt, revile.

increpō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitus [in-crepo], 1. v. a., rattle, sound. Hence, chide, rebuke.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie upon. — Esp. fig., bend to, bend one’s energies to: animo et opibus in (bend one’s mind and energies to).

incursiō, -onis [in-fcursio, cf. incurrō, rush upon], F., an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid.

incusō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cause, cf. causa, cause], 1. v. a., upbraid, rebuke, chide.

inde [tim (loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc) - de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in)], adv., from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then.

indiciūm, -i [indic+ium], N., information. Hence, an indication, a sign.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [indic-, an informer], 1. v. a., point out, reveal, show, indicate.

indicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus [indico, say], 3. v. a., order, proclaim, appoint: bellum (declare).

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [indigo, needing], 2. v. n., (need, want), be dependent on.

indignātiō, -onis [indignā- + tio], F., displeasure, indignation.

indignitās, -ātis [indignō- + tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace, outrage, an indignity.

indignor, -āri, -ātus [indignō-], 1. v. dep., be indignant (deem unworthy of one’s self).

indignus, -a, -um [in-dignus], adj., unworthy, intolerable.
indiligēns, -entis [in-diligēns], adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

indiligenter [in-diligenter, cf. indiligens], adv., carelessly, negligently.

indiligentia, -ae [indiligent- + ia], F., carelessness, want of care, want of energy (application).

indolēs, -is [indu- (old form of in)-tales (OL, grow, cf. olesco)], F., nature, natural disposition, character.

indomitus, -a, -um [in-domitus], adj., (untamed). — Less exactly, indomitable, inexorable.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [induco], 3. v. a., draw on, try on (ocreas). Hence, cover: scuta pellibus. — Also, lead on, draw in, draw over. Hence, induce, instigate, impel: animum inducere, conclude.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

indūō, -duere, -dui, -dūtus [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., put on, clothe, dress. Hence, fig. with reflex., pierce, impale (one’s self): se vallis; se stimulēs (be pierced by).

indūtiae (indūc-), -ārum [?], F. plur., a truce, an armistice.

Indūtiomārus, -i [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus [in-eo], irr. v. a., enter upon, go into. — Fig., adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — Esp.: inita aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, take an account, adopt a scheme; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate.

inferius, -a, -um [unc. st. + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low. — inferior, lower: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the hill.


inera, -eris [in-era, skill], adj., shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly.

infāmia, -ae [infami- (disreputable) + ia], F., dishonor, disgrace: latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable).

infāmis, -e [in-fama, infl. as adj.], adj., (of ill report), infamous, notorious.

infāns, -antis [in-fansa, p. of for, speak], M. and F., (not speaking), a child, an infant, an infant child.

infantia, -ae [infant- + ia], F., infancy.

Infectus, -a, -um [in-factus], adj., not done. — Esp.: re infecta, without success, cf. imperfectus; re infecta discedere, redire (without accomplishing one’s purpose).

infēlix, -īcis [in-felix], adj., unlucky, unhappy.

inferior, compar. of inferus.

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus [in-fero]. irr. v. a., bring in, import, put upon: bellum (make, of offensive war); signa (make a charge, advance); volnera (inflict). — Fig., cause, inflict, commit: periculum (create, cause); spem (inspire); causam (advocate, assign, allege, get up).

inferus, -a, -um [unc. st. + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low. — inferior, lower: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the hill.
infestus — Fig., most ignoble. — Neut. as noun, the bottom.

inféstus, -a, -um [in-fé-stus, conn. unc.], adj., hostile, in hostile array.

inificiō, -ficere, -ficī, -fectus [i-, in-faciō], 3. v. a., (work into?), dye, stain.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [² in-fí-go], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.

infímus [inér- + mus], superl. of inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um [in-finitus], adj., unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.

infermitās, -ātis [in-firmā- + tas], F., feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy, fickleness.

infírmus, -a, -um [in-ārmus, strong], adj., weak, feeble: arbores (unsound, weakened); infírmior, less powerful; naves (unseaworthy).

infítior, -āri, -ātus [in-ātīa- (st. akin to fāteor, confess)], 1. v. dep., deny.

infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of infīgo.

infíatus, -a, -um, p. p. of infīlo.

inflectō, -flectere, -fīxi, -flexus [in-flectō], 3. v. a., bend down. — Pass., become bent.

inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflectō.

inflo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-flo], 1. v. a., blow upon, blow into, inflate.

influō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus [in-fluō], 3. v. n., flow into, empty into.

infodiō, -fodere, -fdī, -fossus [in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infrā [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than.

infringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [in-frango], 3. v. a., break, shatter. — Fig., break down, crush, overcome.


ingenium, -ī [in-īgenium (GEN + ium, cf. genius)], N., inborn nature, character, nature, natural bent.

ingenīus, -entis [in-gens, not belonging to the kind (!)], adj., huge, great, very large, mighty, immense.

ingenuus, -a, -um [in-īnīmus (GEN + uus)], adj. (inborn, free-born). Hence, noble, liberal.

ingrātus, -a, -um [in-grātus], adj., unpleasing.

ingravēscō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [in-gravesco, be weighed down], 3. v. n., grow serious, become oppressive.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus [in-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

inhabitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-habito], 1. v. a., dwell in, inhabit. — p. as noun, an inhabitant, an inmate.

inhaereō, -ere, -sī, -sūrus [in-haereō], 2. v. n., stick to, cling to.

iniciō, -icere, -icī, -iectus [in-iæcio], 3. v. a., throw into, throw in, throw upon, put upon, lay upon. — Less exactly, place in, put on. — Fig., inspire.

inimicitia, -ae [in-imicō- + tia], F., enmity, hostility.

inimicus, -a, -um [in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As noun, an enemy (personal, or not in war.
iniquitas

---

cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent: inimicissimus, worst enemy.

iniquitas, -ātis [iniquō - tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.

iniquus, -a, -um [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., iniquior locus, less favorable position.

initium, -i [initium (itē + ium), cf. ineo], N., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, facere, begin, start; transeundi (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); initium fit ab, the start is first made at (also by); fugae factum (the first tendency to fly was shown); retinendi (the first detention); silvarum (the edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.) — initio, abl. as adv., in the beginning, at first.

initius, -a, -um, p. p. of ineo.

iniungō, -iungere, -iünxi, -iünctus [in-iungo], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutem).

iniūria, -ae [in-ius (right) + ia, cf. iniurius], F., injustice, outrage, injury, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniustus, -a, -um [in-iustus], adj., unjust.

inlacrimābilis (ill-), -e [in-lacrimābilis, tearful], adj., (not moved by tears), pitiful.

inlātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of infero.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inligo.

inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvi, åtus [inligo, bind], 1. v. n., bind on, attack, fasten to.

inlūdō (ill-), -ludere, -lūsī, -lūsus [in-ludo, sport], 3. v. a., make sport of, mock at, deceive.

inlūstris (ill-), -e [in-lustrō- [or kindred st.], cf. lustro, light], adj., distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: inlustriore loco natura, of any prominence.

inlusus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inludo.

innitor, -nīti, -nisus (-nixus) [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one’s self on. — innexus, -a -um, p. p. in present sense, leaning on, supported by.

innixus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor.

innoccēns, -entis [innocens, p. of noceo, injure], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent. — Plur. as noun, the innocent.

innotēscō, -notēscere, -notuī, nō [in-notesco], 3. v. n., become known, make one’s mark.

innūō, -nuere, -nūi [in-nuo], 3. v. n., nod, give a sign.

inopia, -ae [inop- (needy) + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopināns, -antis [in-opinans], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.

inopinātus, -a, -um [in-opinatus], adj., unexpected.

inops, -opis [in-ops, help], adj., without resources, poor, needy.

inquam [?], def. v. n., say.

inrētiō (irr-), -ire, -īvi, -itus [inreti- (in-rete, net)], 4. v. a., entraps, ensnare.
inrīdeo (irr-), -ridēre, -rīsī, -risus [in-rīdeo, laugh], 2. v. n., ridicule, laugh at, make sport of.

inrumpō (irr-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.

inruō, -ruere, -ruī [in-ruo], 3. v. n., rush in, rush upon.

inruptiō (irr-), -ōnis [in-ruptio, cf. eruptio and inrumpo], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion.

insānia, -ae [insanō- (unsound) + ia], F., insanity, madness.

insatiābilis, -e [in-satiābilis (cf. satio, satisfy)], adj., insatiable.

insciēns, -entis [insciens], adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge.

inscientia, -ae [inscient- + ia], F., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.

inscītus, -a, -um [in-scitus, clever], adj., silly, stupid.

inscius, -a, -um [in-scius, cf. conscient and scio], adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

inscūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of insequor.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus [insequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, follow.

inerō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [insero, join], 3. v. a., insert, stick in, mingle with.

insertus, -a, -um, p. p. of insero.

insidiae, -ārum [insid- (cf. inideo, sit in, and obses) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, a surprise: per insidias, with deception, treacherously.

insidior, -ārī, -ātus [insidia-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against.

insignis, e [in-signō-, mark, decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal, conspicuous. — insignis, N. as noun, a signal, a sign, a decoration (of soldiers), a mark, an honor, a distinction. — Also, a memorable act.

insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.

insimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [insimulo, make like], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.

insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in. — With reflex., work one's way into, slip in.

insistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p. [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum).

insolēns, -entis [in-solēns, cf. soleo, be wont], adj., unusual, excessive, arrogant.

insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, be wont) + ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently, arrogantly.


inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes.

inspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [in-specio], 3. v. a., look upon, inspect, examine.

instābilis, -e [in-stabils, cf. sto],
Instar: unsteady. — Fig., changeable, uncertain.

Instar [instār, - ris (? , reduced)], n. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.

Instituō, -ere, -uí, -ütus [in-statuō], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (finish). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot, establish, fix, arrange. — So, teach, train, habituate.

Institūtum, -ī [n. p. p. of instituō], n., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.

Institutus, -a, -um, p. p. of instituō.

Instō, -stāre, -stī, -stāturus [in-sto, stand], 1. v. n., be at hand, press on. — Fig., threaten, impend, menace: instans senecta (advancing).

Instruēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruō.

Instruō, -struere, -strüī, -strüctus [in-struō, build], 3. v. a., build, fit up, fit out, array, furnish, draw up (of troops), provide, prepare.

Insuēfactus, -a, -um [p. p. of insuefacio], trained.

Insuētus, -a, -um [in-suētus], adj., unaccustomed, unused.

Insula, -ae [akin to in-salio ?], f., ("tussocks" in a swamp), an island.

Insum, -esse, -fuī [in-sum], irr. v. n., be in.

Insuper [in-super, above], adv., on the top, above, at the top. — Also, besides.

Integer, -gra, -grum [in- teger

(Tag, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh. — Plur. as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.

Integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [in-tego], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turrīs coriis).

Intellegerent [intelligent- + ter], adv., intelligently, appreciatively.

Intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [inter-legō], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.

Intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain, direct, bring against, bring forward. — Esp., of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed.

Intentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of intento.

Intentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-tentō, cf. intendō], 1. v. a. freq., direct, aim at, threaten.

Inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., between, among, amid, at, during (epulas), in the midst of: arbitros inter civitatis (referees to decide between).

— Of time, within, for. — Often in a recip. sense: inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another, together; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obseides inter se dare, to exchange hostages.

Intercalārius, -a, -um [intercalari- (cf. intercalo) + us], adj., intercalary.

Intercalō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [inter-
Intercatia

intermittō, -ae [?], F., a town in Spain.

intercédo, -cédere, -cessī, -cessū-rus [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time), come in: mentionem (be made).

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interceptio.

interciπo, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clū-sus [inter-claudo, shut], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).

interdicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictus [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to.

interdiū [inter diū (acc. or abl. ?), akin to dies], adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter dium (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.

intereā [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interimo.

interē, -īre, -īvi (-ii), -ītūrus [inter-ee (go into pieces? cf. inter-ficio)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.

interesse, see interesum.

interfectore, -ōris [inter-factor, cf. interificio], M., a slayer, a murderer.

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericio.

interficiō, -ficere, -ficēi, -fectus [inter-facio], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces, cf. intereo), kill, put to death.

intericiō, -icere, -īcī, -iectus [inter-iacio], 3. v. a., throw in (between).

— Pass., lie between, intervene:
spatio interiecto (intervening), i.e. leaving a short interval; portus interiectis (lying at intervals);
agitariis (thrown in at intervals).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericio.

interim [loc. of interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.

interimō, -imere, -ēmi, -emptus [inter-emo, take], 3. v. a., kill, slay, put to death.

interior, -us [compar. of interus (in-terus, cf. alter)], adj., inner, interior: nota (older, as more remote in the wine-cellar).— Masc. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town. — Neut. plur. as noun, the inner part.

interitus, -ūs [inter-itus, cf. intereo], M., destruction, death.

intermissus, see intermittō.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: spatio intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; subeuntes non interminserunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; intermissae trabes (separated); inter-
missis magistratibus, passed over for a year; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

interneció, -onis [inter-necio, same root as neco, kill], F., extermination, annihilation (exercitus).

interpöño, -pönerae, -posui, -positus [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): moram; nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder; fidem interponere, pledge one's honor.

interpretor, -āri, -ātus [interpret-], 1. v. dep., interpret, explain.

interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogó.

interrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [interrogō], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate, ask.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges), destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

intersum, -esse, -suī, -sūtūs [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplius intersit, there is an interval of not more than, etc.; proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in). — Also, be different, differ. — Esp., impers., it is of importance, it interests, it concerns; with neg., it makes no difference.

intervallum, -ī [inter-vallus, distance between stakes in a rampart], N., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.

interveníō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [inter-venio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -ūs [inter-ventus, cf. eventus and intervenio]. M., a coming (to interrupt something), intervention.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus [intexo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intexo.

intrā [instr. (? of tinterus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., into, within, inside, in.

intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [inter-ō], 1. v. a., enter, go in.

intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [intro-duco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

introitus, -ūs [intro-itus, cf. introeo], M., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in. — With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intromissus, p. p., rushing in.

intrōrsus [intro-versus (petrified nom., p. p. of verto, turn)], adv., into the interior, inside, within.

intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus (-tūtus) [intueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon.
intulī, see infero.

intumēscō, -tumēscere, -tumui, no p. p. [in-tumesco, swell], 3. v. n., be swollen, swell, swell with rage, rage.

inūsitātus, -a, -um [in-úsitatus], adj., unwonted, unaccustomed: in-utilitar, less familiar.

inūtilis, -e [in-ūtilis], adj., of no use, unserviceable, useless. — In a pregnant sense, unfavorable.

invehō, -vehere, -vēxi, vectus [in-vēho], 3. v. a., carry in. — Pass., sail in.

inveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus [in-venio], 4. v. a., find (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -ōris [in-ventor, cf. invenio], m., a discoverer, an inventor.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvi, -ātus [in-veterascō], 3. v. n., grow old, become established in.

invicem (often as two words) [in-vicem], adv., by turns, in turn.

invictus, -a, -um [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vidus [in-video, see], 2. v. n. and a., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of, grudge. — invīsus, -ā, -um, p. p. as adj., hated, hateful, detested, odious.

invidia, -ae [invidō- (envious) + ia], f., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable, sacred.

invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of invideo.

invitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of invitō.

invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], i. v. a., invite, request, attract.

invitus, -a, -um [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one's will.

iō [Gr.], interj., ah! ok!

iocus, -ī [?], m., also n. in plur., a jest, a joke: inter (per) iocum, in jest.

Iovem, see Juppiter.

ipse, -a, -um [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc., in person, very: hic ipse tempore, at this very time; ipsi inter se (see sui), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.

ira, -ae [?], f., anger, wrath.

irātus, -a, -um [p. p. of irascor, be angry], adj., angry, in anger.

īrem, etc., see eo, go.

is, ea, id [pron. 1], dem. pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it, such: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; in eo erat ut, was on the point of. — eō, n. abl., the (old Eng. instr.), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more.

iste, -a, -ud [is-te (cf. tum, tautus, etc.)], dem. pron., that, of yours.

ita [i + ta (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut . . . ita, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; ita . . . ut, in propor-
Italia, ae [†Italō- (reduced) + ia (F. of -ius)], F., Italy.
Italus, -a, -um [prob. Gr.], adj., Italian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Italians.
itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.
item [i-tem (acc.?, cf. idem)], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned), likewise.
iter, itineris [st. fr. i (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in itinere, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.
iterum [i (in is) + terus, cf. alter], adv., a second time, again.
Ithaca, -ae [Gr.], F., an island in the Ionian Sea, the home of Ulysses.
Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), the port where Caesar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.
itum, see eo, go.
Iuba, -ae [ʔ], M., a king of Numidia, who was defeated by Julius Caesar at Thapsus, B.C. 46.
Iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus [prob. ius-habeō, cf. praebēō], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.
iūcundus, -a, -um [perh. akin to iuvo, aid'], adj., pleasant, agreeable.
Iūdaeī, -ōrum [ʔ], M. plur., the Jews.

Iūdex, -icus [ius- †dēx (DIC, as st.)], M. and F., a judge.
Iūdicium, -i [iudic- (in iūdex, judge) + ium], N., a judgment (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice; often translated by court.
Iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iudic- (in iūdex, judge)], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider.
iugulum, -i [iugō- + ium], N., the collar-bone (forming a kind of yoke). — Less exactly, the throat, the neck.
iugum, -i [iug (in iungō) + um], N., a yoke. Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills).
Iugurtha, -ae [ʔ], M., a king of Numidia, who was defeated and captured by Marius.
Iūlia, -ae [F. of Iulius], F., Caesar’s daughter, who was married to Pompey.
Iūlius, -i [ʔ], M., a Roman gentile name. See Caesar.
iūmentum, -i [iug- (?) + men- tum], N., a beast of burden, a packhorse, a horse.
iūntūra, -ae [iunctū- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quantum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.
iūntus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungō.
iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus [iug], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together: sociātem (form). — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one’s self to.
iūnior, compar. of iuvenis.
Iūnius, -i [ʔ, prob. iuveni- + ius.
but cf. Iuno, m., a Roman gentile name. See Brutus.

Iūnius, -a, -um [see the foregoing], adj., of June.

Iūnī, -ōnis [prob. for Iovina, akin to Iuppiter], f., the queen of the gods, wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis [Iovis-pater], m., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

Iūrgium, -ī [tiurgē- (iue-agua, cf. prodigus) (reduced) + ium], n., a quarrel, a complaint, a reproach.

Iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [iur- (st. of ius)], i. v. n., swear, take an oath.

1 iūs, iūris [-?], n., broth, soup.

2 iūs, iūris [yu (akin to iug) + us], n., justice, law, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims: in ius vocare (into court).—
iūre, abl. as adv., rightly, justly.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [see the two words], n., an oath.

Kal., for Kalendae and its cases.

Kalendae (Cal-), -ārum [f. plur. of tcalendarus, pass. p. of calo, call], f. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

K

L., for Lucius.

L (ψ) [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation, prop. ψ], a sign for quinquāgintā, fifty.

Labēō, -ōnis [-?], m., a Roman family name. See Fabius.

Laberius, -i [-?], m., a Roman gentile name. See Durus.

Labiēnus, -i [-?, perh. labia (lips) + enus], m., a Roman family name.
labor, -ōris [rabh (seize) + or (for -os)], m., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble, hardship.

lābor, lābī, läpsus [unc., cf. lābō, totter], 3. v. dep., slip, slide, fall: annua (glide by).—Fig., commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed.

labōrōsse [old case-form of laboriosus, toilsome], adv., laboriously, industriously.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labor-], 1. v. n., toil, exert one's self, struggle.
—Also, suffer labor, be hard pressed; labor, suffer, be afflicted.

labrum, -ī [lab (in lambo, lick, cf. labia, lips) + rum], n., the lip.
—Less exactly, the edge (of a horn, of a ditch), the rim (of a cup).

lābrum, -i [akin to lavo, wash ?], n., a basin, a tub.

lāc, lactis [?], n., milk.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Lacedaemonian, Spartan.—Plur. as noun, the Lacedaemonians, the Spartans.

lacerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of lacerō.

lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lacerō-, torn], 1. v. a., tear to pieces, tear.—Fig., slander, abuse.

laccēsō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus [st. akin to lacio (entice) + unc. term.], 3. v. n., irritate, provoke.—Esp., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with.

lacrima, -ae [†drakru- + ma], f., a tear.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus [unc.], 3. v. a., wound, injure.—Esp. fig., break (one's word, etc.), violate.

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.

laetitia, -ae [laetī- + tia], f., joy, gladness, pleasure (cf. laetus), exultation.

laetus, -a, -um [unc. root (perh. akin to glad) + tus], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing, glad.—Also, pleasing, agreeable.

lamentum, -ī [unc. root + mentum], n., a shriek, a lament, a lamentation.

lāna, -ae [?], f., wool: lanam facere, spin wool.

lancea, -ae [prob. Gr.], f., a spear, a lance.

languidē [old case-form of languidus], adv., with little energy, feebly.

languidus, -a, -um [cf. langueo, be weary], adj., spiritless, listless, languid.

languor, -ōris [lang (in langueo, be weary) + or], m., want of spirit, listlessness, weariness.

lāniger, -era, -erum [lana- (weakened) -ger (cf. gero)], adj., wool-bearing, fleecy.—As noun, a fleecy sheep, woolly-back.

lapis, -idis [?], m., a stone (to throw, etc.).—Collectively, stone, stones.

läpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

laqueus, -ī [lac (in lacio, entice) + eus], m., a slip-noose, a snare, a trap.

lārdum (-idum), -ī [akin to Gr.], n., bacon, lard.
largior, -īrī, -ītus [largō-, abundant'], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with.

lassitūdō, -inis [lassō- (weary) + tuō], F., weariness, exhaustion.

lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: lātius, too far; longe latēque, far and wide.

latebra, -ae [latē- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lateō, latēretē, latēui, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.

Latinus, -a, -um [Latīn- (or simpler st.) + inus], adj., of Latium, Latin.

lātītūdō, -inis [latō- + tuo], F., breadth, width.

Latōna, -ae [Gr.], F., the mother of Apollo and Diana.

latrō, -onis [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek +o], M., a mercenary (?), a robber, a brigand.

latrócinium, -i [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um [prob. for t·platus, cf. Eng. "flat"], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

latus, lateris [prob. latō-], N., the side (of the body). — Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um [for tlatus, TLA (cf. tollo, tulī) + tus], p. p. of fero.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laud-, i. v. a., praise, commend, approve.

laurea, -ae [laurō- + eā (F. of eus)], F., laurel, a laurel crown.

laus, laudis [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

lauṭē [old case-form of lautus, splendid'], adv., splendidly, sumptuously.

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvi (lavī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus) [?], i. v. a., wash, lave. — In pass. used reflex., bathe.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laxō-, loose], i. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.

lectīca, -ae [lectō- + ica, F. of icus], F., a litter, a sedan.

lēctītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [lectō-, cf. legeō, read], i. v. a. freq., read often, read.

lectus, -i [?], M., a bed, a couch.

lēgātiō, -onis [legā- (despatch) + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -i [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or engaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the quaestor composed a kind of staff.

legiō, -onis [LEG (select) + io], F., (a levy). Hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um [legiō- + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus [LEG,
gather], 3. v. a., collect, choose, pick out. Hence, read.

Lemovices, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

lênis, -e [?], adj., gentle, smooth, soft, calm.

lêniter [leni- + ter], adv., gently: lenius, with less vigor.

lentus, -a, -um [perh. akin to lenis], adj., sluggish, slow.

leq, -ônis [poss. Gr.], m., a lion.

Leônidas, -ae [Gr.], m., a Spartan king, commander of the famous three hundred at Thermopylae, B.C. 480.

lepidē [old case-form of lepidus], adv., wittily, ingeniously.

lepidus, -a, -um [lępś- (LAP, shine) + dus], adj., pleasant, agreeable, charming, witty.

Lepontii, -orum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -onis [?], m., a hare.

lētum, i [?], n., death.

levīs, -e [for leghvis, LACH (jump) + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis)], Eng. "light"], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight.—Also, quick, nimble.—Also (cf. gravis), inconstant, fickle, wanting in character.

levītās, -ātis [levī- + tas], F., lightness.—Also (cf. levis), inconstancy, fickleness.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levī- (as if levō-)], i. v. a., lighten. Hence, free from a burden, relieve.

lēx, lēgis [LEG (in lego, select)], F., a statute, a law.

Lexovii, -orum [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

*Leydēs, -is [?], F., Leyden.

libēnas, see libet.

libenter [libent- + ter], adv., willingly, with pleasure, gladly.—With a verb, be glad to, etc.

liber, -bri [?], m., a book.

liber, -era, -erum [libē- (whence libet, it pleases) + rus (reduced)], adj., free (of persons and things), unrestricted, undisturbed, unencumbered.

liberaliter [liberali- + ter], adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratioe prosecutus (addressing in generous language).

liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of libero.

liberē [old case-form of liber], adv., freely, boldly, without restraint: liberius, with too little restraint, rather freely.

liberī, -orum [prob. m. plur. of liber, the free members of the household], m. plur., children.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liberō-], i. v. a., free, set free, relieve (from some bond); liberare se, secure one's freedom.

libertās, -ātis [liberō- (reduced) + tas], F., liberty, freedom, independence.

libertua, -ī [liberō- (reduced) + tus], m., a freedman.

libet, -ēre, -ērit (-itum est) [?, cf. liber], 2. v. impers., it pleases, one desires. — libēnas, -entis, p. as adj., willing, glad.

librīlis, -e [libra- (pound) + illis], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders).
Libya, -ae [Gr.], F., a region of Africa.

licentia, -ae [licent- (cf. licet) + ia], F., lawlessness, want of discipline, liberty, license.

licet, -ère, -uit (-itum est) [†licē-, cf. delicus, reliquus], 2. v. n., be allowed, be permitted, one may (might): id sibi, etc. (that they be allowed); licet conspicari, one can see; pетеre ut liceat, to ask permission.

lictor, -ōris [?], M., a lictor (the attendant of the higher Roman magistrates).

Liger, -eris [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the Loire.

lignum, -i [?], N., a piece of wood, a log.

ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., bind, tie, fasten.

Ligures, -um [?], M. plur., the Ligurians, a people of Cisalpine Gaul.

lilium, -ī [?], N., a lily. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of chevaux-de-frise.

limen, -inis [unc. root (in limus, aslant, and limes, boundary) + men], N., a threshold. — Less exactly, an entrance, a portal.

linēa, -ae [linē- (flax) + ea (F. of eus)], F., a line.

Lingones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mountains.

lingua, -ae [?], F., tongue. Hence, language.

lingula, -ae [lingua- + la (F. of lus)], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linquō, -ere, liqui, lictus [liquō], 3. v. a., leave, forsake.

linteum, -ī [linē- (through st. in -to) + eus], N., a curtain.


liquor, -ōris [liquō- (reduced, cf. liquidus) as root + or], M., a fluid, a liquid, water.

lia, litis [for †stlia, cf. locus and Eng. “strife”], F., a suit at law. — Also, the amount in dispute, damages.

littera (lit-?) [?], akin to lino, smear], F., a letter (of the alphabet). — Plur., letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter (an epistle), records. — Also, letters, literature.

litus, -orius [?], N., a shore, a beach.

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [locō-], 1. v. a., place, put, lay. — Hence, let (for hire), contract for.

loculi, -ōrum [locō- + ulus, dim. end.], M. plur., (a receptacle with compartments), a coffer, drawers, a pocket.

locuplēs, -ētis [?], locō-ples (ple + tus, reduced)], adj., (with full coffers?), rich, wealthy, well-stored.

locuplētō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [locu-plet-], 1. v. a., enrich.

locus, -i [for †stlocus (stlā, place + cus)], M. (sing.), N. (commonly in plur.), a place, a spot, a position, a region (esp. in plur.), a point, the ground (in military language), space, extent (of space), room. — Fig., position, rank, a point, place (light, position, character), a situation, an opportunity, a chance: obsidium loco, as hostages; in loco, instead; in loco amici, as a friend.
locútus, -a, -um, p. p. of loquor.
lo líum, -i [?], N., darnel, a weed.
longē [old case-form of longus],
adv., far, too far, absent, far away,
far off, distant: non longius mille
(not more than); longius aberat,
was rather far away; errat longe,
is much mistaken.
longinquus, -a, -um [case-form
of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj.,
long, distant.
longitūdō, -inis [longō- + tudo],
F., length.
longurius, -i [longō- + urius], M.,
a long pole.
longus, -a, -um [?], adj., long (of
space and time); navis longa, a ship
of war, a war galley (opposed to
the broader naves onerariae); longum
est, it would take too long (with
infin.).
Longus, -i [?], M., a Roman family
name.—Esp., Tiberius (Sempronius)
Longus, a consul defeated by Han-
nibal at the Trebia.
loquor, loqui, locútus [?], 3. v.
dep., speak, talk, converse.
lórīca, -ae [lorē- (strap) + ica], F.,
a coat of mail (orig. of leather
thongs).—Also, a breastwork, a
rampart (on a wall).
lórūm, -i [?], N., a thong, a strap.
lōtus, -i [Gr.], F., water-lily, lotus.
Lūcānī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., the
Lucanians, a people of lower Italy.
lúcidē [old case-form of lucidus,
bright], adv., clearly.
Lúcius, -i [luc- (in lux) + ius],
M., a Roman praenomen.
lucrum, -i [?], N., gain, wealth.
Lucterius, -i [?, perh. Celtic], M.,
a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from
the Romans.—Esp., Lucterius Ca-
dureus, a commander under Ver-
cingetorix.
lúctor, -ārō, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep.,
struggle, strive, contend.
lúctus, -ās [LUG (cf. lugeo) +
tus], M., mourning, lamentation,
grief, distress.
Lúcullus, -i [?], M., a Roman
family name.—Esp., Lucius Lucul-
lus, consul in B.C. 151.
lūcōs, -i [prob. LUC (shine) +
us (orig. opp. to thick, dark
woods)], M., a grove.
lūdibrium, -i [ludibri- (cf. ludus
and ludicer) + ium], N., sport.—
Transf., a laughing-stock, a butt.
lūdicrum, -i [N. of ludicer, sport-
ive], N., sport, jest.—Also, a show,
a public game.
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [LUD], 3. v.
n., play, sport.
lūdus, -i [LUD + us], M., a sport,
a game: ludos facere, play tricks
upon, mystify.
lūgeō, -ère, lūxī, lūctus [?], 2. v.
n., mourn, lament.
Lugotorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., a
British prince.
lūmen, -inis [LUC (shine) + men],
N., a light (also fig.).—Also, a
lamp.
lūna, -ae [LUC (in luceo, shine)
+ na], F., the moon. Also personi-
fied, Luna, the Moon.
lupus, -i [?], a wolf.
lūx, lūcis [LUC, shine, as st.], F.,
light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce,
or luce, at daybreak.
lūxurīa, -ae [luxurō- (luxu-
Lydi, Οὐρ [Gr.], M. plur., the Lydians, a people of Lydia in Asia Minor.

M., for Marcus.

M [corruption of CION (orig. Φ) through influence of imle], 1000.

Maccus, -i, M., a family name.

Macedones, -um [Gr.], M. plur., the Macedonians, people of Northern Greece.

Macedonia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Northern Greece.

maceria, -ae [macerē - (reduced) (cf. macerō, soften) + ia], F., (mortar ?), a wall.

mēchnatō, -onis [machinā - tio], F., contrivance (mechanical). — Concretely, a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.

māciēs, -ēs [mac (cf. macer, lean) + ies], F., leanness, emaciation.

maesor, -ōris [mae- (cf. maestus) + or], M., grief, sorrow, sadness.

maestus, -a, -um [p. p. of maeuro, mis (in miser, wretched) + tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

magicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of magic, magic (adj.).

magis [mag (in magnus) + ius (n. compar.)], adv., more, rather, more and more: eo magis, so much the more, all the more. See also maxime.

magister, -tri [magis (for magius) + ter (for terus)], M., a master, a teacher, a commander.

lympha, -ae (?), F., clear water, water.

LX, for sexagintā, sixty.

LXX, for septuagintā, seventy.

LXXX, for octogintā, eighty.

magistrātus, -ūs [magistrā - (as if st. of tmagistro, cf. magister) + tus], M., an office, a magistracy (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, a magistrate (cf. “the powers that be”).

magnificē [old case-form of magnificus], adv., splendidly, grandly.

magnificentia, -ae [magnificent - (as if p. stem) + ia], F., splendor, magnificence.

magnificus, -a, -um [magnificus (fac (in facio) + us)], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, -inis [magnō - tudo], F., greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force (venti), severity (coppli): corporum (size, stature).

māgnopere, see opus.

māgnus, -a, -um [mag (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to value highly, make much account of: magni interest, it is of great importance. — māior, compar. in usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without natu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — māximus [mag- + timus], superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by
forced marches. See also Maximus.

Mágō, -onis [?], m., a brother of Hannibal.

māiestās, -ātis [maicō- (orig. st. of maior) + tas], f., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

māior, see magnus.

malacia, -ae [burr. fr. Greek], f., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old case-form of malus], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully, barely, scarcely: male sit, ill betide. — peius [see malus], compar. — pessime, superl.

maleficō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dīctus [male- (ill), dicō (say)], 3. v. a., revile, abuse.

maleficium, -ī [maieficō- (mischiefous) + ium], n., harm, mischief.

mālō, mālle, mālui, no p. p. [mage-(for magis)-volo], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather.

mālum, -i [Gr.], n., an apple.

malus, -a, -um [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill, wicked. — peior [?], compar. — pessimus, superl. — Neut. as noun, an evil, a mischief, a misfortune, a punishment.

mālus, -i [Gr.], m., (cf. the meaning apple tree), mast, beam (upright).

Mandana (ē), -ae [Gr.], f., mother of Cyrus the Great.

mandātum, -ī [N. p. p. of mando], n., a trust (given to one), instructions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], tmandō- (akin to manu-do), 1. v. a., put into one’s hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), order, command, enjoin, commit: se fugae (take to); quaedam mandare, give certain instructions.

Mandubii, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubracius, -i [Celtic], m., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.


māneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsōra, 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor).

mānēs, -iūm [cf. immanis], m. plur., departed spirits, a ghost, a shade.

manipulus, -i [manu- + pulus (ple + us)], m., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Mānius, -ī [?], m., a Roman genteile name.—Esp.: 1. Lucius Mānius, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78. — 2. Cnaeus Mānius Volso, a Roman consul in Hannibal’s time.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [tmanse- (cf. manusescio, grow tame, and calefacio) -facio], 3. v. a., tame. — Pass., mānsuēfīō, be tamed.

mānsuētūdō, -inis [tmanse- (cf. manusafacio) + tudo], f., tameness, gentle disposition, kindness.

manubiae, ārum [akin to manus], f. plur., booty, prize money, spoils.

manus, -ūs [?], f., the hand: in manibus nostris, just at hand, within reach; manu defendere (by arms). — Also (cf. manipulus), a company,
Mārcellus, -i [Marculo- (Marco- (hammer) + ius) + ius, second dim. of Marcus], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a famous Roman general, five times consul, conqueror of Syracuse in B.C. 212. — 2. M. Claudius Marcellus, a Roman consul in B.C. 183.

Mārcus, -i [the hammer, akin to marco, be soft, and morior, die], m., a Roman prænomen.

mare, -is [?], n., the sea: mare oceanum, the ocean: nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean).

margaritum, -i (-a, -ae) [Gr.], n. (f.), a pearl.

maritimus (-umus), -a, -um [mari- + timus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore).

maritus, -i [st. akin to mas (male) + tus], m., a husband.

Marius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

marmor, -oris [?], n., marble.

Mārs, Mārtis [?], perh. mar (in morior, die) + tas, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], m., Mars, orig. prob. a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with Gr. "Ἀπόσι and worshipped as the god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic Hesus. For phrases, see aequus and dubius.

Mārtius, -a, -um [Mart- + ius], adj., of Mars. — Esp. (sc. mensis), of March.

mās, maris [?], adj., male. — As noun, a male.

Massagetae, -ārum [Gr.], m. plur., a people of Scythia.

māter, -tris [?, prob. MA (create) + ter], f., a mother, a matron.

māter familīās (old gen. of familia), f., a matron.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ei) [?, prob. mater + ia (f. of ius)], f., wood (cut, for material), timber (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

māterior, -āri, -ātus [materia-], 1. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Matisco, -onis [Celtic], f., a city of the Hædui, now Macon.

mātrimōnium, -ī [mater- (as if matri) + monium], n. (motherhood), marriage, matrimony.

Matrona, -ae [Celtic], m., the Marne, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris.

mātrōnalis, -e [matrona- + -alis], adj., of a matron, a matron’s.

mātūrē [old case-form of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūrī, no p. p. [maturē- (cf. maturō) + sco], 1. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [maturō-], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.

mātūrus, -a, -um [mātūro- (MA (in mane) + tus) + rus], adj., early.

māximē [old case-form of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree,
máximus, -a, -um [méli- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., honey-sweet. — Fig., darling.
membrum, -i [prob. formed with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], N., a limb, a part of the body.
memini, -isse [perf. of man, in mens, etc.], def. v. a., remember.
Memmius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Caius Memmius, an opponent of Cæsar.
memor, -oris [prob. SMAR (think), redupl. as st.], adj., remembering, mindful.
memorābilis, -e [memorā- (cf. memoro, mention) + bilis], adj., worth telling, remarkable.
memoria, -ae [memor- + ia], F., (mindfulness), memory, recollection, power of memory. — Also, time, period of recollection: duplex memoria, two accounts; Romanorum (history); memoria tenere, remember; memoriam prodere, hand down the memory (of something just mentioned); memoriae proditum, handed down by tradition; memoriae mandare, relate, tell; supra hanc memoriae, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memoria, within our memory, in our own time.
Menapii, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
mendāx, -ācis [st. akin to menda, a fault (cf. also mentior, lie) + ax], adj., false, lying, deceitful.
mēns, mentis [man + tis (reduced)], F., (a thought?), the intellect (as opposed to the moral powers,
menusa

cf. animus), the mind, a state of mind, feeling, temper, disposition.

mensa, -ae [F. of p. p. of metior (measure), sc. tabula, a board], F., a table.

mensis, -is [unc. form fr. MA, measure (cf. moon, month)], M., a month.

mensura, -ae [mensu- (MA, measure, as if man- + tu) + ra (F. of rus)], F., measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerem (accurate length).

mentio, -onis [as if MAN (in memini) + tio (prob. tamenti + o)], F., mention.

mercator, -oris [†mercā- (cf. mercor, trade) + tor], M., a trader (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercatura, -ae [†mercatu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.

mercator, -ārī, -ātus [merc-, goods], I. v. dep., buy, purchase.

Mercurius, -ī [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], M., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Caesar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.

merior, -ēri, -itus (also mereo, act.) [?], 2. v. dep., win, deserve, gain. — Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of.

mergō, -ere, mersi, mersus [MERC, dīp], 3. v. a., sink.

meridiānus, -a, -um [meridiē- + anus], adj., of midday: tempus (noon).

meridiēs, -ēs [prob. medio- (reduced) -dies], M., midday, noon. — Also, the south.

meritum, -i [N. p. p. of mereo], N., desert, service. — meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis . . . quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fieri, that he deserved that he should do it, “served him right.”

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of mereo, both act. and pass.

merus, -a, -um [?], adj., pure, unmixed. — Neut. as noun, sc. vinum, unmixed wine, wine.

merx, mercis [perh. root of mereo + cus (reduced)], F., goods, merchandize.

-met [?], intens. enclitic particle, used with prons., self.

Metellus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Quintus Metellus (Numidicus), consul B.C. 109, superseded by Marius in the Jugurthine War.

mētior, mētīri, mēnsus [†meti- (MA + tis ?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out, deal out (rations), distribute.

metō, metere, messui, messus [?], 3. v. a., cut, reap, gather.

metuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [metu-], 3. v. a. and n., fear.

metus, -ūs [unc. root + tus], M., fear. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territare, terrify. — Esp.: hoc metu, fear of this.
meus, -a, -um [MA (in me) + ius], possess. adj. pron., my, mine.
mi, voc. of meus.
mihī, see ego.
miles, -itis [unc. st., akin to mille as root + tis (reduced), not fr. eo], c., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service).—Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiery.
Mīlētus, -i [Gr.], F., a city of Asia Minor.
mīliēns (-ēs) [mille- + iens], num. adv., a thousand times.
militia, -ae [milit- + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).
militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [milit-], i. v. n., be a soldier, serve as a soldier, serve.
mille, indecl. mīlia, -ium [akin to miles], adj. (apparently in sing., noun in plur., a thousand: mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile.
minātus,-a, -um, p. p. of minor.
Minerva, -ae [unc. form, akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.
minimē [old case-form of minus], adv., in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.
minus, -a, -um [lost st. (whence minuo) + mus (cf. infimus)], used as superl. of parvus, adj., smallest, least.—Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little.
ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ministr-, servant], i. v. 2., serve, supply.
minitor, -āri, -ātus [minitō-, as if p. p. of minor], i. v. dep. freq., threaten, menace.
minor, -āri, -ātus [mina-, st. of minae, threats], i. v. dep., threaten.
minor,-us [lost st. (cf. minus) + ior (compar. end.)], adj. (used as compar. of parvus), smaller, less, younger: dimidio minor, half as large.—Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus, in order that... not; si minus, if not; minus valebat, was not so strong, was less, etc.; minus uti (not so well): minus magnum fluctus (less violent, smaller).
Minturnae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a city in Campania.
Minucius (Minut-), -i [perh. akin to minus], M., a Roman gentile name. See Basilus and Rufus.
minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [tminus- (cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken: diminuere: aestus (ebb); vim (break 'he force, etc.); controversiarum (settles): desidiam (cure, correct).
mirabilius, -e [mirā- + bilis], adj., wonderful: survellous.
mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. of miror.
mire [old case-form of mirius], adv., wonderfully.
mirificē [old case-form of mirificus], adv., wonderfully.
miror, -āri, -ātus [mirō-, i. v. dep., wonder, wonder at, admire, be surprised.—mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised.
mīrus, -a, -um [?, SMī (cf. smile)
misceō, ére, -uí, mixtus (mistus) [tīmiscēr, cf. promiscus, in common], 2. v. a., mix, mingle.

missellus, -ā, -um [miserō- (reduced) + ellus, dim. end.], adj., (rather wretched): passer, poor little.

miser, -era, -erum [MIS (cf. mæreo) + rus], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

miserābilis, -e [miserā- + bilis], adj., pitiable, miserable, wretched.

miserābiliter [miserābili- + ter], adv., pitifully, pitifully.

miserē [old case-form of miser], adv., wretchedly, miserably.

misericordia, -ae [misericord- + ia], F., mercy, pity, clemency.

misericors, -cordis [miserō-cor (heart), decl. as adj.], adj., merciful, compassionate.

miseror, -āri, -ātus [tmiserō-], 1. v. dep., bewail, complain of, pity: nil miserans, unpitying, pitiless.

missiō, -onis [mit- (as root of mitto) + tio], F., a release, a discharge from service.

missus, -ā, -um, p. p. of mitto.

Mithradātēs (-idātēs), -is [Gr.], m., a name of several kings of Pontus in Asia.—Esp., Mithradates VI, called the Great, with whom the Romans were at war B.C. 88-61.

Mithradāticus, -ā, -um [Gr.], adj., of Mithradates, Mithradatic.

mittō, mittere, misi, missus [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omittō), send, despatch, discharge, shoot.

Mitylēnae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., Mitylene, a famous city on the island of Lesbos in the Ægean Sea.

mōbilis, -e [prob. movē- (as if st. of moveo) + bilis], adj., easily moved, movable, mobile, fickle, hasty.

mōbilitās, -ātis [mobilī- + tās], F., mobility, activity (of troops), inconstancy, fickleness.

mōbilter [mobilī- + ter], adv., easily (of motion), readily.

moderātiō, -onis [moderā- + tio], F., self-control, moderation.

modestē [old case-form of molestus], adv., modestly.

moderor, -āri, -ātus [tmoder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], 1. v. dep., control, regulate, restrain.

modo [abl. of modus], adv., (with measure ?), only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo (just, a very); non modo, not only; modo ... modo, now ... now; aspectum modo, the mere sight.

modus, -ūs [MOD (cf. moderor) + us], M., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, kind, style, method, way. — Also, a code: ad hunc modum, after this fashion; nullo modo, in no way; in modum, after the manner; quo modo, how, as. See eiusmodi.

moenia, -ium [MI (distribute ?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens ?)], N. plur., fortifications, walls of a city.

mōlēs, -is [?, cf. molestus], F., a mass.—Esp., a dike, a dam.

molestē [old case-form of molestus], adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take hard, be vexed at.

molestus, -ā, -um [moles (a burden) + tus], adj., troublesome, irksome.
mollis

mollis, -īrī, -ītus [moli- (as st. of moles)], 4. v. dep., (struggle with a mass), attempt, contrive, plan.

mollis, -e [?], adj., soft. — Fig., weak, feeble: litus (gently sloping).

mollitiēs, -ēī (also, -a, -ae) [moll- + ties (cf. -tia)], F., softness. — Fig., weakness, feebleness (animi).

Molō, -ōnis [Gr.], m., see Apollo

Molossus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of the Molossi, Molossian.

mōmentum, -ī [movi (as st. of moveo, move) + mentum], N., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence, vigorous action: habere (be of importance).

— Also, moment, instant.

Mona, -ae [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [causative of man (in memini) or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mōns, montis [man (in mineo, project) + tis (reduced)], m., a mountain, a mount, a height.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mōnstrō-], 1. v. a., point out, show.

mōnstrum, -i [mon- (as root of moneo) + trum (the of doubtful origin)], N., a prodigy, a supernatural appearance, a monster.

mōra, -ae [prob. root of memor (thoughtful) + a], F., delay, grounds of delay: in mōra est, hinders.

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror.

morbūs, -ī [MAR (in morior, die) + bus, cf. turba, probus], m., sickness, illness, disease.

mordeō, -ère, momordī, morsus [?], 2. v. a., bite: tēnes (champ).

Morinī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae on the coast of modern Picardy.

morior, morī (morīri), mortuus (mortūrus) [MAR (cf. mors)], 3. v. dep., die. — mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., dead. — Plur. as noun, the dead.

moritūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of morior.

moror, -āri, -ātus [mora-], 1. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay, linger.

— With neg., care for, desire, prize.

— Also, nec moratus, without delay.

mors, mortis [MAR (cf. morior) + tis (reduced)], F., death: sibi mortem conaciscere, commit suicide.

morsus, -ūs [mord- (as root of mordeo) + tus], m., a biting, a bite, a sting. — Fig., jaws, teeth.

mortālis, -e [mort- (shorter st. of mors) + alis], adj., mortal, human, of men. — Masc. plur. as noun, mortals.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.

mōs, mōris [?], m., a custom, a usage, a way (of acting), a manner: more fulminis, like a thunderbolt. — Plur., customs, habits, character (as consisting of habits, cf. ingenium and indoles, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae [Celtic], m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse or (Flemish) Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtus, -ūs [movi- (as st. of moveo) + tus], m., a movement, a disturbance, an uprising: expeditior (movement of ships); celer atque instabils (changes, of the passage of events
in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus [?],
2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir,
affect, cause, produce, occasion.—
Also, remove, expel: castra (move
from a place to another; also, abso-
lutely, break camp, cf. Eng. "move").

mox [?], adv., presently, soon,
hereafter, later.

mulier, -eris [?], F., a woman.
multiplex, -icis [multō-plex (cf.
duplex)], adj., many fold, manifold.
multiūdō, -inis [multō + túdo],
F., a great number, a multitude, many
numbers, number (generally).—Esp.,
the multitude, the common people.

multus, -a, -um [?], poss. root of
mille (and miles) + tus], adj.,
much, many: multō die, late in the
day; ad multam noctem, till late at
night.—multum, neut. as noun and
adv., much.—Also, plur., multa,
many things, much, a great deal.—
multō, abl. as adv., much, long,
far.—Compar., plūs, plūris [akin
to pleō], N. noun and adv.; plur.
as adj., more, much, very: as noun,
several, many.—As superl., plūri-
mus, -a, -um [st. of plus + mus],
most, very many, very much: quam
plurimi, as many as possible; quam
plurimos possess, the most they can;
plurimum possesse, have most power, be
very strong or influential; plurimum
valere, have very great weight.

mūlus, -i [?, perh. akin to molo,
grind'], M., (the mill-beast?), a mule.

mundus, -i [?], M. (orig. adj., well
ordered), the universe, the world.

mūnimentum, -ī [muni- + mentum], N., a fortification.—Plur., a de-
fence.

mūniō, -īre, -iōvi (-iī), ītus [muni-
(st. of moenia, orig. shares, cf.
country highway laws)], 4. v. a. and
n., fortify.—Less exactly, protect, de-
defend, furnish (by way of protection),
make (by embankment), construct:
castra; iter; viam; so munitissimum
oppidum (very strongly fortified).

mūnītīō, -ōnis [muni- + tio], F.,
fortification (abstractly).—Con-
cretely, a fortification, works, forti-
fications, defences.

mūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio.
mūnus, -eris [min (as if root of
moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moe-
nia)], N., a duty, a service, a task:
munus militiae, military service.—
Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a
gift, a present, bounty.

mūrālis, -e [mūrō + alis], adj.,
of a wall, wall: -īn (pila (heavy jave-
lins for service in siege opera-
tions).

mūrus, -ī [?], M., a wall (in itself
considered, cf. moenia, defences).
mūs, mūris [mus, steal ?], M. and
F., a mouse.

musca, -ae [cf. preceding word],
F., a fly.

mūsculus, -i [mus + culus, dim.
end.], M., (little mouse), hence, from
fancied resemblance, a shed (small
and very strong, for covering be-
sieging soldiers).

mūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of muto.
mutilus, -a, -um [?], adj., muti-
lated: cornibus (with short broken
horns, of the elk).
mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [perh. †mūtō- (for movitō-)], cf. moveo and mutuus, i. v. a., change, turn.

mutuō [old case-form of mutuus], adv., in exchange, in return.
mutuus, -a, -um [akin to muto], adj., mutual, in return.

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
nam [old case-form, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.
Nammetês, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.
namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam, cf. etenim).
nanciscor, -cisci, nactus (nancitus) [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain, meet with, secure.
nancitus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
Nantuâtès, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.
Narbō, -ōnis [Celtic], m., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.
nārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [for old gnārigo, †gnārigō- (gnārō-, knowing, + ṭagus, cf. prodigus)], i. v. a., tell, relate, recount.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus [GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum).—nātus, -a, -um, p. p., sprung, born.—As noun, a son: natus ab, a descendant of.
nātālia, -e [natur- (reduced) + alia], adj., of birth: dies natalis, a birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.].
F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.
nātivus, -a, -um [natur- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.
nātūra, -ae [natur- + ra (F. of -rās)], F., (birth), nature, character (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea rerum natura, such the state of the case; secundum naturam fluminis, down stream; natura triquetra (in form); de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organisation); natura loci, nature of the ground.
nātūralis, -e [natura- + lis], adj., of nature, natural.
nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nascor.
nātus, -ūs [GNA (cf. nascor) + tūs], m., birth: maiores natu, elders.

naufragium, -i [naufragō- (shipwrecked) + ium], N., a shipwreck.
nauta, -ae [bör, from Gr.], m., a sailor, a boatman, a mariner.
nauticus, -a, -um [nauta- + cūs], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.
nāvālis, -e [nāvi- (reduced) + alia], adj., of ships, naval: navalis pugna, sea-fight.
nāvícula, -ae [navi- + cula], F., a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.
navigātiō, -onis [navigā- + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, sailing, a trip (by sea).

navigium, -i [ tánvigō- (navi- + tagus) + ium], N., a vessel (general), "a craft," a boat.

navigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ tánvigō- (cf. navigium)], I. v. n. n., sail.

nāvis, -is [(s)nu, float (increased), with added i], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egredi, land; naven apdellere, put in.

nāvita, -ae, same as nauta.

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [(g)navō, busy], I. v. a., do one's best: operam (do one's best).

nē [na, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that . . . not, for fear that. — After verbs of fearing, that. — Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nē, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc. See also necne, neque.

tas], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

necō, -āre, -āvi (-uli), -ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of nēx, death)], I. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

nēfārius, -a, -um [nēfas + ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.
	neglegō (negcl-), -legere, -lexī, -lec-tus [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?, poss ne-aio], I. v. a. and n., say no, say . . . not, refuse, deny.
	negotīrō, -āri, -ātus [negotīr-], I. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtium, -i [negotium, case], N., business, occupation, an undertaking. — Less definitely, a matter, a charge, a thing. — Also, difficulty, trouble: dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to.

Nemetes, -um [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, tnēminis [ne-homo, man], M. and F., no one, nobody: aon nemo, many a one.

nemus, -oris [nem (assign) + us], N., (assigned pasture land), a wooded pasture. — Less exactly, a wood, a grove.

nepōs, -ōtis [?], M., a grandson.

nēquam [?], adj., indecl., worthless, good for nothing, vile. — Superl., nequissimus.
nēquāquam [ne-quaquam, anyway (cf. eā, quā)], adv., in no way, by no means.

neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., and not, and yet . . . not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

nequeō, -quīre, -quīvī, -quītus [ne-queō, be able], 4. v. n. def., cannot, be unable.

nēqui(d)quam (nēquic-) [ne . . . qui(d)quam, anything], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.
nēquissīsumus (-imus), -a, -um, see nequam.

Nervius, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., Nervian. — Masc. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī [prob. for τνερβας], m., a sinew. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.

nescīō, -scīre, -scīvī (-iī), -scītus [ne-sciō], 4. v. a., know not, know not how: nescio quo modo, in some way or other.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter, which (of two)], adj. pron., neither.— Plur., neither party, neither side.

nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis [?], f., death, violent death, execution.

nī, for nisi.

nidus, -ī [?], m., a nest.

niger, -gra, -grum [?], adj., black, dark.

nihil, see nihilum.

nīhildum [nīhil-dum], n., indecl., nothing as yet.

nīhilum (nihil), -ī [ne-hilum, trifle, whit?], n. (also indecl.), nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil dubitare, have no doubt.— nīhilō, abl. as adv., none, no.— nīhil, acc. as adv., not at all: nōm nīhil, something, somewhat.

nil, same as nihil.

nimius, -a, -um [nimi- (?) st. of nimiis, too much) + ius], adj., too much, too great, excessive. — Neut. as adv., too, too much. — nimiō, abl. as adv., by far.

Nībē (-a), -ēs (ae) [Gr.], f., daughter of Tantalus and wife of Amphiion. Her children were killed by Apollo and Diana, and she became a rock dripping with water.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (not . . . if), unless, if not, except, except in case: nisi cum, until; nihil nisi, nothing but.

niteō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., shine, glisten.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nītor, nīti, nīsus (nīxus) [prob. genu, knee], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one’s self, rely upon.

nīx, nīvis [?], f., snow.

nō, nāre, nāvī, no p. p. [akin to nāvis], 1. v. n., swim.

nōbilis, -e [as if (g)mo (root of nosco, know) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. “notable”). — Plur. as noun, the nobles.

nōbilitātis, -ātis [nōbilis + tās], f., nobility, excellence, superiority. — Concretely, the nobility, the nobles.

nōceō, nocēre, -uī, no p. p. [akin to nec, death], 2. v. n., do harm to,
injure, harm, harass. — nocēns, -entis, p. as adj., hurtful, harmful, guilty (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of tnoctus (noc- + tus)], as adv., by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um [noc- + urnus, cf. diurnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus (night time).

nōdus, -i [?], m., a knot, a joint: nodi et articuli, protuberant joints.

nōlē, nōlēi, nōlūi, no p.p. [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: noli (nolite), do not (with infin.).

nōmen, -inis [(c)nO (as root of nosecō, know) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, an account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account.

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed tnominitis (nominā- + tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nomin-], 1. v. a., name, mention, call by name, call.

nōn [ne-euenum (unum)], adv., not.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., ninety.

nōndum, not yet. See dum.

nōnne [non-ne], adv., is not? does not? etc.

nōnnullus, some. See nullus.

nōnnumquam, sometimes. See numquam.

nōnus, -a, -um [tōnvi- (?) + nus (mus)], num. adj., ninth. — Esp., nōnæ, F. plur. as noun, the Nones (the ninth day before the Ides, falling either on the fifth or seventh of the month).

nos, see ego.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus [(G)nA, know], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with. — In perf. tenses, know. — nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadian (being acquainted with, etc.).

noster, -tra, -trum [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + ter], possess. adj. pron., our, ours. — In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nota, -ae [GNO (know) + ta], F., a mark, a brand.

nōtitia, -ae [notō- + tis], F., acquaintance with, knowledge.

nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of nōsecō.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., nine.


novitās, -ātis [novō- + tas], F., novelty, strangeness, strange character.


— novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear, the last to come into the fight).

nox, noctis [NOC (in nosecō, harm) + tis], F., night: multa nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae [NOC (in nosecō, harm) + unc. term.], F., harm, crime, guilt.

nūbēs, -is [NUB (cf. nubo) + es], F., a cloud.
nūbilus, -a, -um [nubi- (cf. nubes) + ius], adj., cloudy. — Fig., dark, gloomy.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus [akin to nubes, cloud], 3. v. n., veil one’s self (of a bride), be married, marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nudo.

nūdō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [nūdō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose, strip. — Less exactly, clear (murum denso-ribus).

nūdus, -a, -um [?; root (akin to naked) + dus], adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um [ne-ullus], adj., not any, no, none, not one. — As noun, no one. — nōn nūllus, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons.

num [pron. NA, cf. tum], adv., interr. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, does, is, etc., it is not, is it? and the like. — In indir. question, whether.

nūmen, -inis [NU (in nuo, nod’) + men], N. (a nod’), will, power. Hence, divinity.

numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [numerō-], 1. v. a., number, reckon, count, pay.

numerus, -i [tūmō- (cf. nummus, Numus) + rus], M. a number, number: totidem numero, the same number; impedimentorum (quantity, i.e. number of pack-horses); ad numerum, to the required number; aliquo numero, of some account. — Also, musical measure, time, tune, music, strains.

Numidae, -ārum [?], M. plur., the Numidians, a people of northern Africa, famous as archers.

Numidia, -ae [?], F., a country of northern Africa.

Numidicus, -a, -um [Numida- + ius], adj., of Numidia, Numidian.

nummus, -i [akin to numerus].

m. a coin: pro nummo, for coin.

numquam (nun-) [ne-unquam].

adv., never. — Less exactly, not.

nunc [num-ce, cf. hic], adv., now (emph., as an instantaneous now, cf. iam, unemph. and continuos): nunc . . . nunc, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another.

nuntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nuntio.

nuntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nuntiō-], 1. v. a., send news, report, make known, announce: nuntiatum est ei . . . ne (he was ordered not to, etc.).

nuntius, -i [tūnvent- (p. of tūoveo, be new) + ius], M., (newcomer), a messenger. Hence, news, a mes-sage: nuntium mittere (send word).

nūper [for novi-per, cf. parumper], adv., lately, recently, not long ago.

nuptiae, -ārum [nuptae- + ius], F. plur., a wedding, a marriage.

nuptus, -a, -um, p. p. of nubo.

nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., nowhere, in no case (almost equal never).

nūto, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [nūtō-], 1. v. n., nod, totter, waver.

nūtrix, -icis [akin to nutrio, nurse], F., a nurse.

nūtus, -ūs [NU + tus], M., a nod, a sign: ad nutum, at one’s beck, at one’s command.
obsidio

ō, interj., oh! O!

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., (near), against. Hence, on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account.—In comp., towards, to, against, over.

obdūcō, -dūcre, -dūxī, -ductus [ob-duco], 3. v. a., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along).—Also, cover, overspread.

obductus, -a, -um, p. p. of obduco.

obiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [obiacio], 3. v. a., throw against, throw in the way of, present, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, offer, expose. — objectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way.

objectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obiciō.

obitus, -ūs [ob-itus, cf. obeo], m., a going to. — Esp., a going to death (cf. obire mortem), destruction, annihilation, death.

obīurgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-iurgo, scold'], 1. v. a., blame, chide, rebuke.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

oblīnō, -linere, -lēvi, -litus [oblino, smear], 3. v. a., smear, besmear, defile.

oblīquē [old case-form of obliquus], adv., obliquely, slanting.

oblīquus, -a, -um [ob-tliquus, cf. li(c)mus, aslant], adj., slanting, winding.

oblītus, -a, -um, p. p. of oblīno.

oblītus, -a, -um, p. p. of oblīvīscor.

oblīvīscor, -livīscī, -litus [obl-
līvī- (cf. liveo) + sco], 3. v. dep., (grow dark against?), forget.

obnoxius, -a, -um [ob-noxius], adj., (guilty towards). Hence, liable to, exposed to.

oboediō, -ire, -īvi (-ii), -ītus [obaudio, hear], 1. v. n., give ear to. Hence, obey, be subject.

obruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [ob-rūo, full'], 3. v. a., bury, overwhelm, cover.

obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [obscūrō, dark'], 1. v. a., darken, obscure, hide.

obsequrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manufactured from ob sacrum (near or by some sacred object)], 1. v. a., entreat, adjure, implore.

obsequentia, -ae [obsequent- (yielding) + ia], f., compliance, deference: nimia obsequentia, too ready compliance.

obsequor, -sequi, -secūtus [ob-
sequor, follow], 3. v. dep., yield, submit, comply.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
serve.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-
serve], 1. v. a., (be on the watch towards?), guard, maintain, keep, observe: dies natalis (keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis [ob-tses, cf. præses and obsideo], c., (a person under guard), a hostage.

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.

obsideo, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [ob-
sideo], 2. v. a., (sit down against), blockade, beset, guard, besiege.

obsidiō, -onis [ob-sidīō- (reduced)
obstāō, v., a siege (cf. obsessio), a blockade: obdidone liberare (from besetting enemies). — Also, the art of siege.


obstinātūs [old case-form of obstinatus, fr. obstino, persist], adv., persistently.

obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstruo.

obstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus [ob-struō, pile], 3. v. a., block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [ob-tego, cover], 3. v. a., cover over, protect.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (conform to), comply with, submit to, yield to, attend.

obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of obtestor.

obtestor, -āri, -ātus [ob-testor, cf. testis, witness], 1. v. dep., implore (calling something to witness).

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., hold (against something or somebody), retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam (have control of as praetor).

obtingō, -tingere, -tīgī, no p. p. [ob-tango, touch], 3. v. n., fall (to one’s lot), befall, happen.

obrectātiō, -ōnis [obrectā- (dis-parage) + tio], F., detraction, disparagement.

obrectātor, -ōris [obrectā- (dis-parage) + tor], M., a detractor, a traducer.

obtulī, perf. of offero.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ob-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come in one’s way, fall to (by lot).

obviam [ob viam], adv., in the way of, before, to meet (any one): obviam venire, come to meet; obviam ire, go to meet; obviam facti, having met.

obvius, -a, -um [ob-via (decl. as adj.)], adj., met in the way, met: obvia ferre, offer, present.

obvolūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of obvolvo.

obvolvō, -volvere, -volvi, -volvūtus [ob-volvo, roll], 3. v. a., wrap up, cover.

occāsiō, -ōnis [ob-†casio, cf. occidō], F., opportunity.

occāsus, -ūs [ob-casua, cf. occidō], M., a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west). — Also, a downfall.

occidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cāsūrus [ob-cado], 3. v. n., fall, be slain, set: sol occidens, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsus [ob-caedo, cut], 3. v. a., kill, slay. massacre: occisus, p. p. as noun plur., the slain.

occīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of occidō.

occultātiō, -ōnis [occulta- + tio], F., concealment.

occultē [old case-form of occultus], adv., secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [occultā-], 1. v. a., conceal, hide.

occultus, -a, -um [p. p. of occulto], as adj., concealed: in occulto, in secret; in occulto se se continuum, keep themselves hidden.

occumbō, -cumbere, -cubulī, no
occupātiō

p. p. [ob-cumbo, lie down], 3. v. n., fall, die, perish.

occupātiō, őnis [occupā- + tio], F., occupation (engagement in business), business affairs (of business): occupationes tantularum rum, engagement in such trifling matters.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [occupō- or occup- (ob and st. akin to capio)], 1. v. a., seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy (only in military sense): regna (usurp); occupati in (engaged, employed).

occurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurri?), -currūrus [ob-curro], 3. v. n., run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with. Hence in pregnant sense, thwart, baffle, frustrate: eo (run to meet an enemy); ad animum (occur).

Ūceanus, -i [Gr.], M., the ocean (with or without mare).

ocellus, -i [dim. of oculus], M., a little eye, a pretty eye.

ōcius [N. of ocior, swifter], adv., more quickly, sooner.

ocrea, -ae [?], F., a greave, a legging, orig. of metal. — Later, a legging, a gaiter.

ocreatūs, -a, -um [ocrea- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., furnished with leggings, gaited.

Octaviānus, -i [octaviā- + anus], M., Octavianus, Octavian, a surname of Octavius Cæsar after his adoption by Julius Cæsar.

octāvus, -a, -um [octo + vus, poss. octau + us], num. adj., eighth.

octingenti, -ae, -a [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., eighth hundred.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., eight.

Octōber, -bris, -bre [octo- + ber, cf. saluber], adj., of October, the eighth month.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

octōgintā [octo + ?], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octōni, -ae, -a [octo + nus], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -i [octō- (cf. AK, see + lus], M., the eye: sub oculis, in sight, before the eyes; ex oculis, from sight.

ōdī, ōdisse [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to odium], def. v. a., hate, detest.

odiōsus, -a, -um [odiō- + oeus], hateful, odious, offensive.

odium, -i [VADH (spurn) + ium], N., hatred.

odor, ōris [OD (smell) + or], M., a perfume, perfumery, spices.

odorātus, -a, -um [p. p. of odorō], adj., sweet-smelling, fragrant.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, hit, hurt. Hence, offend, be displeasing.

offēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of offendō.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [obfero], irr. v. a., (bring to), throw in one's way, offer: se hostibus (throw themselves upon); se morti (expose one's self to); quos sibi oblatos (placed in his power).

officīna, -ae [for opificina (opificē- + ina)], F., a workshop, a shop.

officiōsus, -a, -um [officiō- + oeus], adj., dutiful, obliging, polite.

officium, -i [ob-facium, cf. beneficium], N., (doing something to one),
a service, performance of a duty, official duty, business. — Transf., a duty, a favor, allegiance, an obligation.

offirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-ārmo], 1. v. a., keep fixed.

oleum, -ī [akin to olea, olive], N., oil.

ōlim [case-form of ollus (ille)], adv., once upon a time, once, formerly.

ōlla, -ae [?], F., a pot, a jar, a kettle.

ōmen, -inis [?], N., an omen, a portent.

omittō, -mittere, -mītis, -missus [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, disregard, neglect, say nothing of, not mention: consilium (leave untried, neglect).

omnīnō [abl. of tominus (omni- + nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).

omnis, -e [?], adj., all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers; omnibus rebus, everything, everything else; per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for all others; omnia, all things, everything.

onerārius, -a, -um [oner- (as st. of onus) + arius], adj., for burdens: naves (transports).

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [oner- (as st. of onus)], 1. v. a., load: celeritas onerandi (of ships), facility of loading.

onus, -eris [unc. root + us], N., a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. — Abstractly, weight. — Esp.: tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.

onustus, -a, -um [onus- + tus], adj., laden, loaded.

opera, -ae [oper- (as st. of opus) + a (F. of us)], F., work, pains, attention, aid, help, agency: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains, give attention, listen; opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera, through whose means, agency; tuā opera, by your means, on your account.

operiō, -perire, -perī, -pertus [ob-pario, procure], 4. v. a., cover over, conceal.

opinīō, -onis [opinō- (cf. nec-opinus) + o], F., notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huīs belli (impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinione-nem pugnantium praebere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.

oporet, -āre, -uit, no p. p. [noun-st. from ob and st. akin to portus, cf. opportunus], 2. v. impers., it behooves, it ought, it is best.
oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a (the) town. — Plur. as noun, the townspeople.

oppidum, -i [ob- tepedum (a plain?)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).

oppignerō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [ob-pignero, cf. pignus, a pledge], 1. v. a., pledge, pawn.

oppleō, -père, -plēvī, -plētus [obpleo, fill], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.

oppletus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppleo.

oppōnō, -pōnerē, -posūi, -positus [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositis legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy. — oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposed, opposing, lying in the way, opposite.

opportūnē [old case-form of opportunus], adv., opportune, seasonably.

opportūnitās, -ātis [opportunō- + tas], F., timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), favorable chance, convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um [ob-portunus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portunus], adj., (coming to harbor?), opportune, advantageous, lucky.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppono.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo.
much, very, greatly, urgently, how
much, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere,
quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessity: regi opus
est, a king needs; haud mihi opus,
I have no desire.

ōra, ae [??], F., a shore, a coast.
ōrāculum, -ī [ōrā- (speak) + cul-
um], N., (an announcement). — Esp.
of the gods, a response, a prophecy, an oracle.

ōrātiō, -ōnis [ōrā- (speak) + tio],
F., speech, words, talk, address, dis-
course, argument, a remark.

ōrātor, -ōris [ōrā- (speak) + tor],
M., a speaker, an ambassador, an
envoy, an orator.

orbis, -is [??], M., a circle (a cir-
cular plane): orbis terrarum (orbis),
the circle of lands, the whole world.
— Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language), a circle.

orbitās, -ātis [orbō- (bereaved) +
tas], F., bereavement.

Orcus, -ī [perh. akin to arceo, en-
close], M., a god of the lower world
identified with Pluto, Death. —
Also, the world below, Hades.

Orcynia, -ae [Teutonic or Celtic],
F., see Hercynius.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ordin-],
I. v. a., set in order, arrange, ad-
just.

ōrdō, -inis [akin to ordior, begin
(i.e. a web)], M., a series, a row, a
tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of
centurions, as commanding special
ordines of soldiers, also the cen-
turions themselves), an arrangement,
an order, a body (senatorius): per-
turbatis ordinibus, the ranks being
broken; ratio ordoque agminis, the
plan and arrangement of the march;
ordines servare, to keep their places
(of soldiers, also of anything laid in
rows or tiers, preserve the arrange-
ment, not deviating from it).

orior, orīrī, ortus [??], 3. (and 4.)
v. dep., arise, spring up: orta luce, at
daybreak. — Fig., begin, start, spring
from, arise, be started, have its
source. — oriēns, -entis, p. as adj.,
rising: sol (sunrise, the east).

ōrnāmentum, -i [ōrnā- + men-
tum], N., an adornment. — Fig., an
honor (an addition to one's dignity),
a source of dignity.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of oreno.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [unc. noun-
st.], I. v. a., adorn, equip, furnish.
— Fig., honor. — ērnātus, -a, -um,
p. p. as adj., furnished, adorned,
well-equipped, honored. — Also, emi-
nent, illustrious.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [or- (as st. of
os, mouth)], I. v. a. and n., speak.
— Esp., pray, entreat, beg, sue for.

ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior.

ortus, ēus [or (in orior) + tus],
M., a rising.

ōs, ōris [??], N., the mouth, the face.

ōs, ossis [??], N., a bone.

ōsculōr, -ārī, -ātus [osculō-, mouth],
I. v. dep., kiss.

Osismi, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur.,
a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tensus
[obs-tendo], 3. v. a., (stretch towards)
present, show, point out, make known.

state, declare: sse (discover, unmask).
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ostentō-], 1. v. a. freq., display, exhibit.

ōstium, -ī [perh. akin to ōs, mouth], N., a door, an entrance.

ōtium, -ī [?], N., repose, inactivity, quiet (freedom from disturbance):

per otiōn, at ease.


ōvum, -ī [perh. āvī + um] (belonging to a bird?), N., an egg.

P.

P., for Publius.

pābulātīō, -ōnis [pabulā- + tīō], F., a foraging, getting fodder.

pābulātōr, -ōris [pabulā- + tōr], M., a forager.

pābulor, -āri,-ātus [pabulō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather fodder.

pābulum, -ī [PA (in pascō, feed) + bulum], N., fodder (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), green fodder.

pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paco.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pac-, in pax, peace], 1. v. a., pacify, subdue. — pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet, subject (as reduced to peace).

pāctum, -ī [N. p. p. of paciscor, agree], N., (a thing agreed), an agreement, an arrangement. Hence, a method, a way (of doing anything): quo pacto, in what way, how.

Pādus, -ī [Celtic], M., the Po, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).

paedagogus, -i [Gr.], M., a governor, a preceptor, a pedagogue (a slave to guide and attend children).

Paemāni, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, -ēre, -uīt [paenitē- (perh. p. p. of verb akin to punio, punish)],

2. v. a. impers., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.

pāgius, -i [PAG (in pango) + us (with unc. connection of ideas)], M., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. clam], adv., openly, publicly, without concealment: palam facere, make clear, disclose.

pala, -ae [perh. akin to palor, wander], F., chaff.

palliātus, -a, -um [palliō- + atus], adj., dressed in a pallium, with the surplice on.

pallium, -ī [?], N., a cloak, a mantle. — Late, pallium sacrum, a priest’s robe, a surplice.

palma, -ae [Gr.], F., the palm (of the hand). — Also, a palm-branch (symbol of victory), a prize (of victory).

pālius, -ī [PAG (fix, cf. pango) + lus], M., a stake, a bar, a post.

palūs, -ūdis [?], F., a marsh, a swamp.

palūster, -tris, -tre [palud- + tre], adj., marshy, swampy.

Pamphyliaus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a country of Asia Minor.

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus [akin to pandus, bent], 3. v. a,
spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus, with outstretched hands.

pār, paris [perh. akin to paro, pario (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like, right, proper: par ac, equal with; intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for. — As noun, m., an equal, n., a pair. See refero.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paro.

parce [old case-form of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally, cautiously.

parco, parcerce, peperci (parsi), parsūrus (parcitūrus) [akin to parcus], 3. v. n., spare, preserve. — Esp., save alive: parendo, by economy, by frugality.

parcus, -a, -um [akin to parco], adj., sparing, frugal.

parēns, -entis [par (in pario) + ens], c., a parent.

parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [parent-], 1. v. n., make a funereal offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pārēo, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus [parē- (cf. opiparus)], 2. v. n., be prepared, appear, obey, submit to, yield to, follow.

pariō, parere, peperī, partus (paritūrus) [par, procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)], 3. v. a., produce, bring forth, bear.

Parisii, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims (Remi), Trèves (Treveri).

pariter [pari- (as st. of par) + ter], adv., equally.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [parō-, cf. opiparus and pareo], 1. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, begin, be about to, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parati (with mind resolved), resolve, determined; paratus in armis, armed for war.

parochus, -i [Gr.], m., a purveyor. — Late, a priest, a vicar.

Parrhasius, -i [Gr.], m., a famous Greek painter.

pars, partis [par + tis (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par, through idea of barter], F., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share, a party (also plur.). — Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; ex utraque parte, on both sides; sinistra pars, the left flank; pars fluminis (bank). — Fig.: omnibus partibus, in all respects; in neutris partibus, on neither side, neutral. — Esp.: ad inferiorem partem fluminis, down the river; ab inferiore parte fluminis (further down, etc.). — partim, acc. as adv., in part, partly, some ... others.

Parthī, -ōrum [Gr.], m. plur., the Parthians, a warlike people of Scythia, famous as archers.

partim, see pars.

partior, -īri, -ītus [partī-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitis temporibus, alternately.

partitus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.
parum [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., not very, not much, not sufficiently, but little.

parvulus, -a, -um [parvō + lus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulis, from infancy.

parvus, -a, -um [perh. for paurus, cf. paucus], adj., small, slight, little.

passer, -eris [?], m., a sparrow.

passim [acc. of passis (pad in pando, spread) + tis], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -ūs [pad (in pando) + tus], m., (a spreading of the legs), a stride (of both feet), a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet; passum retinere, stop.

pāstor, -ōris [pas- (as if root of pasco) + tor], m., a shepherd, a herdsman.

patefaciō, -facere, -ficī, -factus [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open, open up.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

patefīō, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, -ēre, -ū, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open.—pātēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris [PA (in pasco?) + ter], m., a father.—Plur., ancestors.

paternea, -a, -um [pater- (as st. of pater) + nus], adj., paternal, of one’s father.

patienter [patient- + ter], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae [patient- + ia], F., patience, endurance.

patior, pati, passus [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempestatis (endure, stand).—patiēns, -entis, p. as adj., enduring, patient, contented.

patria, see paterius.

patrimōnium, -i [patri- (as if st. of pater) + monium], N., an ancestral estate, a patrimony.

paterius, -a, -um [pattr- + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one’s fathers: hoc patriumst, this is a father’s (duty).—patria, -ae, fem. as noun (sc. terra), fatherland, native country, country.

patrōnus, -i [fr. pater (for form cf. colonus) + nus], m., a patron, a protector.

patrius, -i [pat(e)r- + vus ?], m., an uncle (on the father’s side; cf. avunculus, on the mother’s).

paucidās, -ātis [pauco- + tas], F., small number.

paucus, -a, -um [PAU (cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-neg. sense).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of paulāsis (paulā + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus?) per], adv., a little while.

paululum [acc. of paululus, dim. of paulus], as adv., a very little.

paulus, -a, -um [?, akin to paucus], adj., small, little, a trifle.—Esp., paulum, acc. as adv., a little, a short
distance, somewhat, a little way, a little while.—paulō, abl. as adv., a little, slightly.

Paulus, -i [paulus], m., a Roman family name. See Aemilius.

pauper, -ĕris [?], adj., poor, in humble circumstances, lowly.

paveō, -ère, no perf., no p. p. [prob. _armor- (cf. pavidus)], 2. v. n., be in terror, be afraid, tremble.

pavidus, -a, -um [prob. _armor- (cf. pavo) + dus], adj., terrified, frightened, in alarm.

pavimentum, -i [pavi- (beat) + mentum], n., (a beaten surface), a pavement.

păx, păcis [pac (fix) as st.], f., (a treaty ?), peace, favor.

peccō, -ère, -āvi, -ātūrus [?], 1. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault, err.

pecten, -inis [pect- (as root of pecto, comb) + en], m., a comb.—Esp., a sly or reed, by which the thread is pushed into place in a loom.

pectus, -oris [perh. pect- (as root of pecto, comb) + us, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. pectinatus], n., the breast.

pecūnia, -ae [peconut- (pecu- (cattle) + nus, cf. Vacuna) + ia], f., money (originally cattle), a sum of money, wealth.

pecus, -oris [PEC (tie?) + us], n., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle).—Plur., cattle, flocks, flocks and herds.

pedālis, -e [ped- + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.

pedes, -itis [ped- (as if pedi) + tis (reduced)], c., a footman, a footsoldier.—Collectively, the infantry peaster, -tris, -tre [pedit- + tris], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot: itinera (journeys on foot, marches, land routes); proelium (on land); copiae (the foot, the infantry).

pedītātus, -ūs [pedit- +atus, cf. consulatus], m., foot, infantry.

Pedius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus’s patronage.

pēior, see malus.

pēius, see male.

pellis, -is [?], f., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal).

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus [?], 3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, drive out, expel, defeat, repulse, route.—Also, affect, impress.

Pellūsium, -i [Gr.], n., a city of Egypt.

pendedō, -ère, pependī, no p. p. [pended- (PEND + us, cf. pendulus)], 2. v. n., hang, be suspended, hang one’s self.

pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnus [?], 3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out.—Esp. with words of punishment, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment, cf. dare and capere).

Pēnelopē, -ēs [Gr.], f., the wife of Ulysses.

penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os, akin
to penitus], prep. with acc., in the power of.

penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [penetrō-
(pene + trus, cf. penes, penitus)],
1. v. a., (set within). — Without immediate object, penetrate, enter, go in.

penitus [st. akin to penes, penus, etc., + itus, cf. antiquitus], adv.,
far within, deeply, entirely, utterly: penitus ad extremos finis (clear to, all the way to).

pēnsilis, -e [pensō- (cf. pendo) + ilia], adj., hanging.

pepuli, see pello.

per [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., through, along, in, over, among. — Fig., through, by means of (cf. ab, by, directly), by the agency of, on account of. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: per anni tempus potuit, the time of the year would allow; per aetatem non poterant (on account of). — Of time, through, for: per singulas noctis, every night. — Often in adv. expressions: per concilium, in council; per cruciatum, with torture; per vim, forcibly; per casum, by chance; per ludicrum, in sport.

perangustus, -a, -um [per-
angustus], adj., very narrow.

percipió, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus
[per-capio, 3. v. a., take in (com-
pletely), learn, acquire, hear, feel. — Esp. of harvests, gather. Hence, fig., reap: fructum victoriae.

percontātiō, -onis [percontā- (in-
quire) + tio], p., inquiry, inquiries (though sing. in Latin).

percontor, -āri, -ātus [percontā-
(per-contus, a pole)], 1. v. dep.,
 inquire, make inquiries, investigate.

percurreō, -currere, -cucurri (-cur-
ri), -cursus [per-curro], 3. v. n. and
a., run along, run over or through.

percussor, -ōris [per- + quassor, cf.
percutio], m., a murderer, an assas-
sin.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
cutio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus
[per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., hit,
strike, run through.

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, no
p. p. [per-discō], 3. v. a., learn
thoroughly, get by heart.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.

perdēre, perdere, perdidī, perditus
[per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. in-
terficio), ruin, lose, waste. — per-
ditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ruined,
desperate, abandoned.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus
[per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through,
lead along, conduct, bring over, carry
along, make (foassam). — Fig., pro-
long, win over, bring.

peregrinus, -a, -um [peragrō- (cf.
peregre, abroad) + inus], adj., for-
eign, from abroad.
pereō, -ēre, -ī (īvī), -ītūrus [1 pere- eo, go], irr. v. n., perish, be killed (in battle), be dead.

perequītō, āre, -āvī, -ātus [1 pere- equito, cf. eques], i. v. a. and n., ride over (or around).

perexisquus, -a, -um [2 pere- exigus], adj., very small.

perficetus, -a, -um, p. p. of perficio.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [1 perforo], irr. v. a., carry through or over: opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring).
— Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [1 perfacio, make], 3. v. a., accomplish, complete, finish, make (complete).

perfīdia, -ae [perfīdō- (false) + ia], v., perfidy, treachery, faithlessness.

perfō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [1 per-fō], 1. v. a., blow over.

perfractus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfringo.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [1 per-frango], 3. v. a., break through, break in pieces, shatter, wreck.

perfuga, -ae [1 per-tfuga (FUG + a, cf. scriba)], m., a refugee, a fugitive, a deserter.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fugi, no p. p. [1 per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, flee (to a place), escape to.

perfugium, i [1 per-tfugium, cf. perfugio]. n., a place of refuge, refuge.

perfunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfungor.

perfungor, -fungi, -fūctus [1 perfungor], 3. v. dep., fulfill, perform (to the end).

Pergamēnus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Pergamum (a city of Mysia), Pergamenian. — Plur. as noun, the Pergamens.

pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrettus (? [1 perf-rego, keep straight], 3. v. n., (keep one’s direction ?), keep on, continue to advance, advance, proceed.

periclītor, -āri, -ātus [† periclīto- (as if p. p. of † periculor, cf. periculum)], i. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril, be in peril.

periculōsus, -a, -um [periculō- + osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -i [† peri- (cf. experior, try) + culum], n., a trial, an attempt. Hence, peril, danger, risk.

peritus, -a, -um [† peri- (cf. experior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlego.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [1 per-lego], 3. v. a., read through, read (aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus [1 per-luo], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as reflex.), bathe.

perlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [1 per-lustro], i. v. a., (wander all through).

Hence, examine carefully, survey.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsūrus [1 per-maneo], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).
permìssus, -ūs [per-mìssus (cf. permitto)], m., leave, permission.

permìssus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permìttō, -mittere, -mìsi, -missus [′per-mìtto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortune (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.).

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permōveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [′per-mōveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect. — permōtus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus [′per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

permultus, -a, -um [′per-multus], adj., very, very much.

permūnīō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -ītus [′per-munio], 4. v. a., fortify thoroughly.

pernegō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [′per-nego], 1. v. a., deny stoutly.

perniciēs, -ēi [?, akin to nex, death], v., destruction, ruin, death.

perniciōsus, -a, -um [pernicī- + osus], adj., ruinous, dangerous, pernicious.

perpaucus, -a, -um [′per-paucus], adj. — Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -i [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], n., a plumb line: ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly.

perpeṭiōr, -peti, -pessus [′per-patior], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um [′per-petueus (pet (aim) + vus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent, perpetual; paludes (continuous); in perpetuam, forever, permanently. — perpetuō, abl. as adv., forever, constantly, continually.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [′per-quaero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [′per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one’s way through, break, force a passage.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perrumpo.

Persa, -ae [Gr.], m., a Persian.

— Also, the name of a puppy. — Plur., the Persians.

persaepe [′per-saepe], adv., very often, many times.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [′per-scribo], 3. v. a., write ous (in full).

persecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of persequor.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus [′per-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, attack. — Also, avenge, punish.

Persēs (-a), -ae [Gr.], m., a king of Macedonia, conquered by Aemilius Paulus, B.C. 168.

Persicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Persian.

persōna, -ae [′per-sona (cf. sonus, sound)], f., a mask. Hence, a character, a personage, a person.

personō, -āre, -ūi, -itus [′per-sono], 1. v. n., resound, resīcho.

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perspiciō.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus
perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [per-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.

pervagor, -āri, -ātus [per-vagor]
1. v. dep., roam about, scatter.

perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus [per-venio], 4. v. n., (come through to), arrive at, get as far as, reach, come. — Fig., arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); para (of property, come, fall).

pēs, pedis (PAD, tread, as st.), m., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp.: pedem referre, draw back, give way; pedibus proeliari (ire) (on foot); ad pedes desillire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); pedibus aditus, approach by land.

pestilēns, -entis [akin to pestis, plague], adj., unhealthy, infected.

petitiō, -onis [peti- (as st. of peto) + tio], f., (a seeking), a canvass, (for office), a candidacy.

petō, -ere, -iē (-ii), -ītus [pet-].
3. v. a. and n., (fall ?, fly ?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, seek for, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request, look for, get: fugam (take to).

Petrocorīi, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord).

petulāns, -antis [p. of tpetulo (cf. peto)], adj., wanton, impudent, saucy.

Pharnacēs, -is [Gr.], m., a king of Pontus, son of Mithradates, conquered by Cæsar, B.C. 47.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Pharsalus or Pharsalia.
Philippus, -I [Gr.], m., Philip (V), king of Macedonia, father of Perses. He formed an alliance with Hannibal.

Philemela, -ae [Gr.], f., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a nightingale.

philosophus, -I [Gr.], m., a philosopher.

Phrygia, -ae [Gr.], f., a country of Asia Minor.

pica, -ae [?], f., a magpie.

Pictones (Pect-), -um [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

pictor, -ōris [PIG (in pingo, paint), + tor], m., a painter.

pictūra, -ae [†pictu- (cf. pingo, paint) + ra (F. of rus)], F., a picture.

pietās, -ātis [piō- (dutiful) + tēs], v., filial affection, affection (for the gods or one's country, etc.), patriotism, piety.

pignus, -oris [prob. pang- (as root of pango, fasten) + us], N., a pledge, a security.

pilum, -i [?], N., a pestle. — Also, a javelin (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): pilum murale, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pilus, -i [?], m., a hair.

pilus, -ī [pilum], m., a century (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see centurio). — Also, a centurion (of a particular rank): primus pilus.

pingō, -ere, pīnīxi, pīctus [PIG], 3. v. a., paint.

pinguis, -e [?], adj., fat.

pinna, -ae [= penna, feather (PET (fly) + na)], F., an artificial parapet (of osier or the like, run along the top of a wall).

pinus, ī (-ūs) [akin to pix, pitch], F., a pine tree, a pine. — Fig., a ship, a vessel.


pirāta, -ae [Gr.], m., a pirate.

Pirīstae, -ārum [?], m. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is [?], a fish. — Collectively, fish.

Pisō, -ōnis [pisō- (pease) + o], m., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. Cicero), a Roman family name. — Esp., Piso, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by a Roman of the name).

pius, -a, -um [?], adj., dutiful, pious, devout, good.

pix, picis [?], F., pitch.

placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [†placō- (cf. placus and placidus)], 2. v. n., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines, one decides. — placēns, -entis, p. as adj., pleasing, agreeable.

placidus, -a, -um [†placō- (cf. placeō) + dus], adj., calm, quiet, placid, mild.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [st. akin to placeō], 1. v. a., pacify, appease.

plāga, -ae [Gr.], f., a blow, a wound.
plānē [old case-form of planus], adv., flatly, clearly, entirely, utterly, absolutely.

plānitiēs, -ēi [planō- + ties, cf. -tia], F., a plain.

plānus, -a, -um [unc. root + nus], adj., flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding).

plaustrum, -ī [PLAUD (clap) + trum], N., a wagon, a cart.

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēi) [PLE (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turbā)], F., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnum, -a, -um [PLE (in pleo, fill) + nus], adj., full: luna.

plērumque, see plerusque.

plērusque, -aque, -umque [PLE (in pleo, fill) + rus-que (cf. pletus, plenus)], adj. only in plur., most of, very many. — plērumque, N. acc. sing. as adv., generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

plumbum, -ī [?], N., lead.—plumbum album, tin.

plūrīmus, see multus.

plūs [akin to pleo, fill], see multus.

pluteus, -ī [?], M., a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence). — Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

Plūtōn (-ō), -ōnis [Gr.], M., Pluto, the god of the lower world, brother of Jupiter and Neptune.

pōculum, -ī [root (or st.) po- (in potus, drink) + culum], N., a drinking-cup.

poena, -ae [perh. ἁπόβι- (PU) + na (cf. punio, punish)], F., a penalty (paid). Hence, a punishment (suffered).

Poenus, -a, -um [borr. fr. Gr.] adj., Carthaginian.—Masc. plur. as noun, the Carthaginians.

poēta, -ae [Gr.], M., a poet.

pollex, -icis [?], M., the thumb (with or without digitus).

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus [†por- (cf. portendo) -liceor, bid'], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offers).

pollicitātiō, -onis [pollicitā- + tio], F., an offer, a promise.

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of polliceor.

Pollūx, -ūcis [Gr.], M., twin brother of Castor, son of Jupiter and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, along with his brother, by the Greeks and Romans.

Polybius, -ī [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek historian.

Polyphēmus, -ī [Gr.], M., the Cyclops whose eye was put out by Ulysses.

Pompēiānus, -a, -um [Pompeio- + anus], adj., of Pompey or Pompeius.

Pompēius, -ī [†pompe- (dialectic form of quinque) + ius], M., a Roman gentile or family name. — Esp.: 1. Cnæus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great, the rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. Son of 1.

Pomptīnus, -a, -um [?], adj., Pomptine. — Esp., Pomptinae paludes, the Pomptine (or Pontine) marshes, near the coast of Latium.

pondus, -eris [PEND (in pendo, weigh) + us], N., weight, quantity.

pōnō, pōnerē, posuī, positus [prob.
pons,

pons, pontis [?], m., a bridge.

Ponticus, -a, -um [Pontō- + cus], adj., of Pontus, Pontic.

ponifikex, -icis [ponti- (as st. of pons) + culus, dim. end.], m., a little bridge.

Pontus, -i [Gr.], m., a country of Asia Minor, south of the Euxine Sea.

Popilius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Caius Po-
piliius, a Roman ambassador to Antiochus the Great.

populāris, -e [populō- + aris], adj., of the people.—Masc. as noun, a fellow-countryman, a comrade.

populor, -āri, -ātus [populō-, unc. connection], i. v. dep., ravage, devastate.

populus, -i [root in pleo, fill, redupl. + us], m., (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

pōpulus, -i [?], s., a poplar tree, a poplar.

por-, port- [akin to pro], obsolete prep., only in comp., forth.

porcus, -i [?], m., a swine, a hog, a pig.

porrectus, -a, -um, p. p. of por-

rigō.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [por- (cf. polliceor) -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth, hold out, stretch out at length: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

porta, -ae [POR (go through) + ta], f., (way of traffic ?), a gate, a door, a passage.

portendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [por-tendo, hold out], 3. v. a., presage, foretell.

portentum, -i [N. p. p. of por-
tendo], n., an omen, a portent.

porticus, -ūs [porta- + cus], s., a colonnade, a portico.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [porta-?], 1. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portōrium, -i [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of orius), perh. orig. por-tor + ius], n., (gate-money? or carrier's money?), a duty (an im-
post), a toll.

portus, -ūs [POR (cf. porta) + tua], m., (a place of access), a har-
bor, a haven, a port.

poscō, poscere, poposći, no p. p. [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3. v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flago), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessiō, -ōnis [por-ōessio (cf.
possidēō, v., possession, occupation. — Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [from sedeo], 2. v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potū [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tautum postes, has so much weight, power, influence; multitudo posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; fieri posse, be possible; quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

post [?, prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antea, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after, afterwards: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

postēa [post ea], adv., afterwards.

postēquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause), since.

posterus, -a, -um [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. — Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl. as adv., lastly, finally, at last.

posthāc [post hac (prob. abl. or instr.)], adv., hereafter.

postibi [post ibi, there], adv., here upon, afterwards.

postpōnē, -pōnerē, -posū, -positus [post-pono], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of postpone.

postquam [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdē [posteri- (loc. of posterus) -die], adv., the next day: postrīdie eius diei, the next day after that.

postulātum, -i [N. p. p. of postulo], N., a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require, demand.

Postumus, -i [postumus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Postumus, to whom one of Horace's odes is addressed.

potēns, -entis [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful, potent: homo (influential); potentiōrēs, compar. plur. as noun, the powerful, men of influence.

potentia, -ae [potent- + ia], v., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -ātis [potent- + taes], v., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them (him), give an opportunity to fight them
potior, potiri, potitus [poti-, cf. potis, able]. 4. v. dep., become master of, possess one’s self of, get possession of, get control of: oppidum (capture).

potior, -us, -ōris (compar. of potis], adj., preferable. — potius, N. acc. as adv., rather, preferably. — potissimum, N. acc. of superl. as adv., rather than any one (anything) else, chiefly, especially, most of all.

potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of potior.

praec [unc. case-form of same st. as pro], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., before, in comparison with. — In comp., before others, very, before, at the head of.

praecātus, -a, -um [praec-actus (p. p. of acuo)], p. p. as adj., sharpened to a point, pointed.

praebēō, -ēre, -uli, -itus [praehabeo], 2. v. a., (hold before one), offer, present, yield, furnish, show (diligently): munimenta, laetitiam (furnish, and so afford, make); aurēs praebete, give attention.

praecaveō, -cāvere, -cāvi, -cautus [praecaveo], 2. v. n., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one’s guard.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [praecedo], 3. v. a., go before, precede.

praecēps, -cipitis [praec-caput], adj., headlong, in haste: locus praeceps, a steep incline.

praeeceptor, -ōris [praec-captor, cf. praecepio] + tor], M., a teacher, an instructor.

praeeptum, -i [p. p. of praecepio], N., an instruction, an order.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [praec-capio], 3. v. a., take beforehand, anticipate. — Also, order, give instructions, direct.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [praecipit-], 1. v. a., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong).

praecipuē [old case-form of praecipuus], adv., especially, chiefly.

praecerārus, -a, -um [praec-clarus], adj., very bright. — Fig., very fine, very beautiful, splendid.

praecūlō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [praec-cludo], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecurrō, -currere, -curreō (-curr-), -cursūrus [praec-curreo], 3. v. n., run on before, run ahead, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before: celeritate (get the start of, etc.).

praeda, -ae [prob. prae-thida (fr. root of -hendo, seize + a)], F., booty, prey, plunder.

praedicātiō, -onis [praedication, cf. praedico], F., an assertion, a boast, praise.

praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†praedicō (or st. akin, from praec with dic)], 1. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one’s self.

praedicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus
praedō, -ōnis [praeda- + o], m., a robber, a freebooter, a pirate.

praedor, -āri, -ātus [praeda], i. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [praeduco], 3. v. a., lead (etc.) before: fossam (make in front).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio. — As noun, see praeficio.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [praefero], irr. v. a., place before, carry before (one), prefer: se alicui (show one’s self better than).

praeferox, -ōcis [praeferox], adj., very violent, insolent.

praeficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [praefaciō], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, p. p. as noun, a captain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer, a governor.

praefigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [praefigo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefigo.

praesambō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [praesambo], 3. v. a., lick (taste) beforehand.

praemittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus [praemitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on, send ahead.

praemium, -i [praetemium (EM in emo, take, the orig. meaning, + ium)] (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize).

praeeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praee- occupo], i. v. a., take in opposition or beforehand: vias (close against one), preoccupy.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praeparo], i. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [praepono], 3. v. a., put before, prefer.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [praerumpo], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous, roughed.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praerumpo.

praesaepe, -is [praesaepe (akin to saepio, inclose), N., a fold, a stall, a stable.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepire, -saepsi, -saepitus [praesaepio], 4. v. a., hedge in, wall off.

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praesaepio.

praescrībō, -scribere, -scripti, -scriptus [praescribo], 3. v. a., (write down beforehand), prescribe, order, direct, give directions.

praeseōns, -entis, p. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae [praesent- + ia], F., the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment.

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sensus [praesentio], 4. v. a., see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand).

praesertim [as if acc. of †praesertis (ser, in sero (join) + tis)], adv., especially, particularly.

praesæs, -idis [praesæs (sed as st.)], M. and F., a protector, a guardian.

praesidium, -i [praes-idium (sed + ium), or præsid- + ium, cf. obsideum], n., (a sitting down before), a guard, a garrison, a force (detached for occupation or guard): intra praesidia, within the lines or intrenchments. — Fig., protection, assistance, support: praesidio litterarum (with the assistance of, etc.); in fuga praesidium ponere, seek safety in flight.

praestō, -stāre, -stātī, -stātus (-stitus) [praes-esto], i. v. a. and n., stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better. — Also, causatively, (bring before), furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform); stabilitatem (afford, possess).

praesum, -esse, -suī [praes-sum], irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head of, be in command, command. — praesēns, -entis, p. as adj., present, immediate: praesentibus principibus, in the presence of the leaders.

praesūmō, -sumere, -sumpi, -sumptus [praes-sumo, take], 3. v. a., foresee, take for granted, anticipate.

praetendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendus [praetendō, hold out], 3. v. a., stretch out, hold before.

praeter [compar. of prae (cf. inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to, besides.

praeterea [praeter ea (abl.?)?], adv., furthermore, besides.

praeterēō, -ire, -ii, -itus [praeter-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., past.

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeterēo.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus [praester-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, let slip, omit, neglect, pass by.

praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., except, besides.

praetor, -ōris [praet-ōr (i, go, + tor)], m., (a leader), a commander. — Esp., a prator, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers, and the others regular commands abroad. Later all had judicial powers during their year of office, but like the consuls (who were originally called prætors) they had a year abroad as propraetors.

praefūrō, -irere, -ussi, -ŭstus [praefuro], 3. v. a., burn at the end (in front); praestae stipites (burnt at the point, to harden them).

praestāstus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefuro.

praevalidus, -a, -um [praev-alidus], adj., very strong.

praevenīō, -venire, -veni, -ventus [praev-venio], 4. v. n., come before, precede, anticipate, outstrip, prevent.

prandium, -i [?], n., breakfast, luncheon.

prāvus, -a, -um [?], adj., crooked.

— Fig., wrong, vicious, bad.

precōr, -āri, -ātus [prec-], i. v. dep., pray to, supplicate, entreat.

premō, premere. pressi, pressus
pressus 140  pró

[?], 3. v. a., press. — Esp., press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress, load (ratem). — Also, burden, overwhelm, weigh down. — Also, cover (nubibus), obscure. — Also, curb, restrain: se ipsi, crowd, impede, embarrass each other.

pressus, -a, -um, p. p. of premo.

pretium, -ī [?], N., a price, cost, value.

†prec, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire) [?], F., a prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation.

prīdem [prae-dem, cf. idem], adv., long ago, long since.

prīdīē [loc. of st. of pro (prae?) -die, cf. postridīē], adv., the day before.

prīmīpīlus [primō-pīlus], M., the first centurion. See centurio and pilus.

prīmō [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).

prīmōrēs, -um [primō- + unc. term., perh. compar. on analogy of prior], M. plur., chiefs, nobles, leaders.

primum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc.), in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, see prior.

prīnceps, -ipis [primō- (reduced) -cēps (CAP as st.)], adj., (taking the lead), first, chief, foremost, leading. — Often as noun, leading man, leader, chief man, chief.

prīncipātus, -us [princip- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), leadership.

prior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of pro], adj., former, before, first: priores, those in front; non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.). — prius, N. as adv., before (see also priusquam). — prīmus, -a, -um [prae + mus], superl., first: pars domus (front); primop civitatis (the best men); in primis, especially. See primo and primum.

prīscus, -a, -um [prius- + cas], adj., ancient, early.

prīstinus, -a, -um [prius-tinus, cf. diutinus], adj., (of former times), old, former: prīstinus dies, the day before.

prius, see prior.

priusquam [prius-quam], conjunctive adv., earlier than, sooner than, before. Often separated.

privātim [as if acc. of †privatīs (privā- + tis)], adv., privately, as private persons (opposed to officially): de suis privatim rebus (their own private affairs).

privātus, -a, -um [p. p. of privo, deprive], adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

prō [for prod, abl. of st. akin to prae, prior, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of, on account of: nihil pro sano, nothing prudent. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for. — In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).
pro [?], interj., O! ah! alas!
probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of probo.
probitās, ātis [probō + tās], F., honesty, integrity.
probō, ā-re, ā-vī, ā-tus [probō-],
i. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).
probus, -a, -um [pro- + bus, cf. morbus], adj., superior, good, honest.
procedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance); contractus (be concluded);
nox (pass).
procerītās, ātis [procerō- (tall) + tās], F., height, tallness.
proclāmō, ā-re, ā-vī, ā-tus [proclamo], i. v. a., call, cry out, exclaim.
procul [†procō-, "off" (pro + cue) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar, at one side, remote from.
proculbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p. [pro-cumbo, lie'], 3. v. n., fall, (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest).—Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.
procurātīō, -onis [procurā- + tō], F., charge, management, control.
procurō, ā-re, ā-vī, ā-tus [procuro], i. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.
procurrō, -currere, -currī (-cu-curri), -currūs [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.
prodigium, -i [poss. pro-tāgium (dic + ium, cf. digitus)], N., an omen, a portent.

prōditiō, -onis [pro-dītio, cf. prodo], F., a giving away, treason, treachery.
prōdītor, -ōris [pro-dator (cf. prodo)], M., a traitor, a betrayer.
prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.
prōdō, -dere, -dī, -ditus [pro-do],
3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down.
prōducō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [pro-duco], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, draw out, bring out (iumenta), draw up (troops).—Fig., protract, prolong.
prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-duco.
proelior, ārī, ātus [proelīō-], i. v. dep., fight (in war).
proelium, -i [?], N., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight).
profectiō, -onis [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], F., a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.
prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficio.
prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor.
prōferō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātus [pro-fero], irr. v. a., bring forth, bring out, produce.
prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus [pro-facio], 3. v. n., (make way for-
ward), advance (cf. profiscor). — Fig., gain advantage ("get on"), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory; plus multitudine telorum proficere (have the advantage in).

profiscor, -ficisci, -fectus [proficiscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (make way forward). — Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, proceed, come out, sail out: quo proficiscumur, whither we are going; unde erant protecti, whence they had come.

profiteor, -sitēri, -sessus [profateor, confess], 2. v. dep., declare publicly; offer one’s self, volunteer, offer: nomen (volunteer).

prōligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of profligo.

prōligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [profligō- (pro-†fligus, FLIG + us)], 1. v. a., (dash to the ground). — Esp., put to rout.


prōfugiō, -fugere, -fugiē, -fugitūrus [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one’s escape.

prōfugus, -a, -um [pro†fugus (FUG + us)], adj., flying. — As noun, a fugitive.

prōfundus, -a, -um [profundus, bottom], adj., deep. — Neut. as noun, the deep.

prōfutūrus, -a, -um, f. p. of prosum.

prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of.

prognē, -ēs [Gr.], f., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a swallow.

prōgredior, -redi, -gressus [progradation, step, go], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out, advance. — Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of progradation.

prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid. — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: aliquem ab omni militum inuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prōiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [proiacio], 3. v. a., throw forward, throw away, throw, cast (down, cf. pro), abandon: projectae, casting themselves; se ex navi (leap, spring).

prōinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore, hence.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minui, no p. p. [pro†mineo (cf. minor, project)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean over.

prōmiscuē [old case-form of promiscuus], adv., in common.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of promitto.

prōmittō, -mittere, -misit, -missus [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward), let grow (of the hair): promisse capillo sunt, they wear long hair; promissa barba, with flowing beard. — Also, promise.

prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus [pro-mo, take], 3. v. a., take out, bring forth. — prōmptus, -a, -um.
p. p. as adj., (taken out of the store ready for distribution), ready, quick, active.

prömōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-moveō.

prömovere, -movere, -mōvī, -mōtus [pro-moveō], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.

prōmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of promo.

prōmunturium (-mon-), -i [akin to promineo], n., a headland.

prōnē [old case-form of pronus, leaning], adv., with a slope.

prōnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prōnuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth), make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [propagō (PAG, in pango, fix)], 1. v. a., propagate (by pegging), extend, enlarge.

prōpātulus, -a, -um [pro-pātulus, open], adj., open in front. Neut. as noun, an open court.

prope [?, akin to pro, cf. procul and proximus], adv. and prep. with acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — Compar., proprius, nearer: proprius Tiberi. — Superl., proximus, nearest, lately, last.

prōpellō, -pelle, -puli, -pulsus [propello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf. pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force back (changing the point of view).

propemodum [prope modum, near the limit], adv., nearly, very nearly.

properē [old case-form of prope-rus, in haste], adv., quickly, hastily.

properē, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [properē, quick], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, be in haste, make haste.

propinquītās, -ātis [propinquō + tas], f., vicinity, a being near, a position near. — Esp., nearness in blood, relationship, a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um [st. akin to prope (or case-form) + cus], adj., near at hand, near, neighboring. — Esp. by blood, related. — As noun in plur., relatives.

propior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of prope], adj., nearer. — proximus, superl. [of st. procul, cf. procul], nearest, next, neighboring: bellum, vox (last); e proximo, close at hand. — With force of prep. (cf. prope): proximi Rhenum, nearest the Rhine. — Plur. as noun, the bystanders.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -pouui, -positus [pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before, lay before, set up: vexillum (hang out). — Less exactly, offer, propose, put in the way, present (difficulty), make known, state, represent.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of propono.

proprius, -a, -um [?, akin to prope ?], adj., of one’s own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propter [prope + ter, cf. aliter, praeter], adv. and prep. with acc., near by. — Also, on account of (cf. “all along of”).

proptereā [propter ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., on this account. — With quod, because, inasmuch as.

prōpugnātor, -ōris [propugno], m., a defender.
prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [pro-
pugno], 1. v. n., (rush forward to
fight, or fight in front), rush out
(fighting), discharge missiles (ex
silvia).
prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-
pulso (cf. propello)], 1. v. a., repel,
keep off, drive off, defend one's self
against.
prōra, ae [Gr.], f., the prow (of
a ship).
prōscribō, -scribere, -scripsī,
-scriptus [pro-scribo], 3. v. a., adver-
tise, publish (in writing).
prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
sequor.
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [pro-
sequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow
(on one's way), escort. — Fig. (from
escorting), address, take leave of one
(with some kind of attention).
prōsiliō, -silire, -silul (-īvi), no p.
p. [pro-salio], 4. v. n., leap forward,
rush out, rush forth.
prōspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
spicio.
prōspectus, -ūs [prospectus (cf.
prospicio)], m., outlook, view: in
prospectu, in sight; prospectu tene-
bris aedium, the view cut off by
the darkness.
prōsperē [old case-form of pro-
sperus], adv., favorably, propitiou.
ly.
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spec-
tus [pro-śpecio], 3. v. a., look for-
ward, look out. — Fig., provide for,
take care, look out: prospectum est
convivio, the feast was provided for.
prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strā-
tus [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., dash to the
ground, overthrow (lit. and fig.). —
prōstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.,
prostrate.
prōstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
sterno.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfu-
tūrus [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., be for
the advantage of, benefit, avail.
prōterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -terri-
tus [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten
away, drive away in fright.
prōtinus (-tenus) [pro-tenus, as
far as], adv., forward, straight on.
Hence, straightforward, forthwith, at
once, instantly (keeping right on).
prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
turbo.
prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-
turbo, disturbō], 1. v. a., drive in
confusion, drive off, dislodge.
prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
veho.
prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus
[pro-veho], 3. v. a., carry forward.
— In pass., be carried forth, sail out,
set sail: leni Africo provectus (sail
with, be driven by).
prōventus, -ūs [pro-ventus, cf.
eventus and provenio], m., a growth,
an issue (a coming forth), success, a
result: in maximo proventu, at the
climax.
proverbium, -i [pro verbo (word)
+i um], n., a common saying, a
proverb.
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus
[pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see be-
forehand, take care, make provision,
provide, arrange beforehand, take
precautions.
prōvīncia, -ae [prōvinсō- (vinc-
as root of vinco (conquer) + us)
prőviniālis, -e [provincia- + lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the province (of Gaul).

prővīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-video.

prővocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-voco, calī], i. v. a., call forth, challenge, invite.

prǒvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [pro-volo], i. v. n., fly forth. — Less exactly, rush forth, rush out, fly out (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see prope.

proximus (-umus), see propior.

prūdēns, -entis [pro-videns], adj., wise, intelligent, sagacious.

prūdentia, -ae [prudent-, + ia], f., foresight, discretion, wisdom, strategy.

Prūsīas (-a), -ae [Gr.], m., a king of Bithynia, to whom Hannibal fled for refuge.

psittacus, -i [Gr.], m., a parrot.

Ptolemaeus, -i [Gr.], m., Ptolemy, the name of several kings of Egypt.

publīcē [old case-form of publicus], adv., publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state, by the state: publice iurare (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pūblicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [publīcō-], i. v. a., (make belong to the people), confiscate. — Also, make public, open to the public.

pūblicus, -a, -um [populus- + cus], adj., of the people (as a state), of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business; relatio in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurrens (abroad into the streets).

Pūblius, -i [prob. populō- + ius, cf. publicus], m., a Roman praenomen.

puella, -ae [puerō- + ia], f., a girl, a maiden.

puellāris, -e [puella- + aris], adj., of a girl, a girl’s.

puer, -i [ʔ], m., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueris, from childhood.

puerilis, -e [puerō- (reduced) + ilis], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood).

pueritia, -ae [puerō- + tia], f., boyhood, childhood.

puerulus, -i [puerō- (reduced) + ulus, dim. end.], m., a little boy.

pugil, -ilis [†pugi- (pug, in pungo, punch) + lis (reduced)], m., a boxer, a pugilist.

pugillāris, -e [pugillō- (a small handful) + aris], adj., (that can be held in the hand). — Masc. plur. as noun (sc. libelli), writing tablets.

pugīō, -onis [†pugi- (pug, in pungo, punch) + o], m., a short dagger, a poniard.
pugna, -ae [PUG (in pugno) + na], F., ("fisticuffs"), a fight, a battle (less formal than proelium): ad pugnam, for fighting; genus pugnae (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna-], i. v. n., fight, engage. — Often impers. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued: pūgnantēs, p. as noun, those engaged.

pūgnus, -i [PUG (in pungo, punch) as st. + nus], M., a fist.

pulcher (-cer), -chra, -chrum [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pule-, cf. pelle, strike], i. v. a. and n., strike, knock at (ianum).

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pelle.

pulsus, -ūs [PEL (in pelle) + tue], M., a stroke, a beat: pulsu remorum praestare (the working, etc.).

pulvis, -eris [?], m., dust.

Pūnicus, -a, -um [Poenī- + cus], adj., Carthaginian, Punic: bellum (of the wars with Carthage).

puppis, -is [?], F., the stern.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†purgo- (purō- + agus, cf. ago)], i. v. a, clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, exculpate.

purpureus, -a, -um [purpura- (reduced) + eus], adj., purple, red, crimson.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [putō- (st. of putus, clean)], i. v. a, clean up, clear up. — Esp.: rationes (clear up accounts). Hence alone, reckon, think, suppose.

putrefactus, -a, -um [p. p. of putrefacio, rot], adj., decayed.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um [?], adj., of the Pyrenees Mountains, between France and Spain. — Masc. plur. as noun (sc. montes), the Pyrenees.

Q.

quā [abl. or instr. (?) of qui], rel. adv., by which (way), where.

quācumque [qua-cumque], rel. adv., wherever.

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a [quadraginta (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., forty each, forty (each often omitted in Eng.).

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um [quadraginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., fortieth.

quadrāgintā [akin to quattuor], indecl. num. adj., forty.

quadrīngenti, -ae, -a [akin to quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus [?], with r for original a), 3. v. a., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask, ask for, seek. — quaesītus, -ōrum, N. p. p. as noun, earnings, gains.

quaesītus, -a, -um, p. p. of quaerō.

quaesō, -ere [orig. form of quaero], 3. v. def., ask, beg, pray.

quaestīō, -ōnis [quaesae (as root of quaero) + tio], F., an investigation: habere de aliquo (examine, as witnesses, usually by torture).
quaestor, -ōris [quaes (as root of quaero) + tor], M., (investigator, or acquirer, perh. both). — Esp., a quaestor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaestus, -ūs [quaes (as root of quaero) + tus], M., acquisition. — Also, business (for profit).

quālis, -e [quō- (st. of quis) + alis], adj.: 1. Interr., of what sort? what? — 2. Rel. (sc. talis), as, such as.

quam [case-form of quis and qui, cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: 1. Interr., how? — 2. Rel., as, than. — Often with superlatives, as much as possible: quam maximus, the greatest possible; quam maxime, very much; quam celerrime, as quickly as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible. — Also, pridiē quam, conjunctive phrase, the day before. — See also postquam, posteaquam, priusquam (often separated), which are best translated by a single word.

quamdiū (often written separately), adv.: 1. Interr., how long? — 2. Rel., as long, as long as (with antecedent omitted). See diū.

quamquam (quán-) [quam quam, cf. quisquis], rel. adv., (however), although, though.

quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you please, however, no matter how, although.

quando [quam + unc. case-form akin to de], adv.: 1. Indef., at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever. — 2. Rel., when, since.

quantus, -a, -um [prob. for quō- (root of qui) + vant + us], adj.: 1. Interr., how great? how much? quantae civitates (how important?). — 2. Rel., as great as, as much as: tantum...quantum, so (as) much...as; so quanta...tanta pecunia.

quāpropert [qua-propert], adv., on which account, wherefore.

quā ré, adv. phrase, by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.), why, how. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable.

quartānus, -a, -um [quartō- + anus], adj., recurring on the fourth day. — Fem. as noun (sc. febris), the quartan ague.

quartus, -a, -um [quattuor- (reduced) + tus], num. adj., fourth.

quasi [quam (or quā) -si], conj., as if, as it were.

quatiō, -ere, quassī (in comp.), quassus [?], 3. v. a., shake.

quattuor [?], reduced plur., indecl. num. adj., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.

-que [unc. case-form of qui] (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.

queō, quiēre, quīvī, quīitus [?], 4. v. n. def., be able, can.

quercus, -ūs [?], F., an oak.

querēla, -ae [as if querē-, sup-
posed st. akin to queror (cf. suadela) + la], F., a complaint, a lament.

queror, queri, questus [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror.

qui, quae, quod, cūius [prob. quō + i (demon.)], rel. pron., who, which, what, that. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever; qua de causa, for this reason; qui vidēant, men to see, scouts; qui, and they; habere esse quae, with subjv. (something to, etc.); qui potuissent (men who); qui postularant, to demand; haec esse quae, this was what; paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod, the same as. — quō, abl. as adv., whence, wherefore. — quō, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.). — See quis, quod, 2 quo, and 3 quo, also quominus.

quī [old abl. or instr. of quis], adv., how.

quia [case-form of qui (prob. N. acc. plur.)], conj., because.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicumque, quae-, quod- [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-) [quīdam (case of DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. adj. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of), a certain man:

artificio quodam, a kind of trick; quidam ex suis (one).

quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (fr. DA, cf. tandem, idem)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular Eng. equivalent, certainly, truly, at least. — Concessive, to be sure. — Adversative, but, however, yet: ne ... quidem, not ... even, not ... either.

quiēs, -ētis [quiē- (st. of tquieo, keep quiet, cf. quiesco) + tis (reduced)], F., rest, sleep, repose.

quiēscō, -ere, quiēvi, quiētus (adj.) [tquiē- (st. of tquieo) + sco], 3. v. n., come to rest, rest, repose. — quiētus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.

quiētus, -a, -um, p. p. of quiesco.

quīn [qui (abl. or instr. of qui) + ne], interr. conj., how not? and rel., by which not: quīn etiam, nay even, in fact. — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, so but that, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing); non dubito quīn, I doubt not that, (also, rarely) I do not hesitate to.

quīnam (quīs-), quae-, quod- (quid-), cūius- [quīnām], interr. pron., who? etc. (emph.): quīnam manibus (with what possible? etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūncis [quīnque-uncia, ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, '·'), a quīncūnx: in quīncuncem dispositis (in quīncuncial or alternate order).

quīndecim [quīnque-decem], indecl. num. adj., fifteen.
quingentēsimus, -a, -um [quin- 
genti- + esimus], num. adj., fifth hundredth.

quinenta, -ae, -a [quinque-cent-
tum], num. adj., five hundred.

quinī, -ae, -a [quinque + nus], 
distrib. num. adj., five at a time, five 
(at a time).

quinquagēsimus, -a, -um [quin-
quaginta (reduced) + esimus], num. 
adj., fiftheth.

quinquagintā [quinque + unc. 
st.], indecl. num. adj., fiftieth.

quinque [?], indecl. num. adj., 
five.

quinquēns (-ės) [quinque- + tens], 
um. adv., five times.

Quintus (Quinc-), -i [?], M., a 
Roman gentile name. See Flamin-
inus.

quintus, -a, -um [quinque + tus], 
um. adj., fifth. — Esp. as a Roman 
prænomen (orig. the fifth born?).

Quintus, -i, see quintus.

quippe [quid-pe, cf. nempe], adv., 
truly, no doubt, of course. — Also ex-
planatory, for, since.

Quiris, -itis [Curi (st. of Cures) + 
tis], M., a Roman citizen. — Plur., 
Romans, fellow-citizens.

quis (qui), quae (qua), quid (quod), 
cūius [st. qui- and quō-]: 1. Interr. 
adj. pron., who? which? what? 
quid est, what's the matter? — Neut. 
acc. as adv., why? — 2. Indef., one, 
any one, any thing: ne quid, that 
nothing, that something (after timeo); 
ne quis, that nobody, let no one, that 
some one (after timeo); ne quid 
noceat, not to injure at all: ubi quis, 
when any one; si quis, if any one.

quisnam, see quinam.

quispiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), 
cūius- [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. quippe, 
nempe)], indef. adj. pron., any, any 
one, anything, some.

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), 
cūius- [quis-quam], indef. pron. used 
substantively (cf. ullus), only with 
negatives and words implying a 
negative, making a universal nega-
tive, any one, anything. — As adj., 
any.

quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), 
cūius- [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. 
(distrib. universal), each, each one, 
every. — Esp. with superlatives, im-
plying that things are taken in the 
order of their quality: clarissimus 
quisque, all the most famous. — With 
uit and ita a proportion is indi-
cated, in proportion as . . . so, the 
more . . . the more.

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid 
(quipcid), cūiuscūius [quis, 
doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, 
whatever, every one who, all who.

quivis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-
[qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., who you 
plesa, any one, any whatever (affir-
mative), any (whatever).

1 quō, see quī.

2 quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 
1. Interr., whither? what for? 
why? — 2. Rel., whither, into which, 
as far as (i.e. to what end): quo 
intrare (which); quo venire, come 
there; habere quo (have any place 
to go to, or the like). — 3. Indef., 
anywhere.

3 quō [abl. of qui], as conj., in order 
that (with comparatives), so that.
that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not.

quoad [qu-o-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.
quōcircum (or separated) [quo (abl. or dat.) -circa], adv., wherefore.
quod [N. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for (with clause expressing the action): quod si, now if, but if; quod nisi, but if not.
quō minus (quominus), see ² quo.
quondam [quom- (cum) -dam, cf. quidam], adv., (at a certain time), once, formerly.
quoniam [quom (cum) -iam], conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.
quoque [ʔ], conj., following the word it affects, (by all means?), also, too, as well. Cf. etiam (usually preceding).
quōque [old dat. of quisque], adv., in every direction.
quōque, quo with enclitic.
quōqueversus, see versus.
quōsum (quōrus) [quo-versus, towards], interr. adv., to what place? whither? what for?
quot [akin to quis], indecl. adj. pron.: 1. Interr., how many? — 2. Rel., as many, as many as (with implied antecedent), the number which.
quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (as many years as there are), every year, yearly.
quotiēscumque [quotiens- (how often) -cumque], adv., however often, just as often as, whenever.
quotquot [quot doubled], indecl. adj., however many, as many as.

R

radius, -i [ʔ], m., a ray.
rādix, -icis [ʔ], f., a root. — Plur., the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a mountain).
rādū, rādere, rāsī, rāsus [ʔ], 3. v. a., shave, scrape. — Fig., graze, pass closely, coast along.
rāmōsus, -a, -um [ramō- + osus], adj., branching.
rāmus, -i [ʔ], m., a branch, a bough, a prong (of antlers).
rapiditās, -ātis [rapidō- + tas], F., swiftness, rapidity.
rapia, -ae [rapi- (as if st. of rapio) + na (F. of nus)], F., plunder. — Plur., plundering, pillage.

rapio, -ere, -ui, -tus [RAP, cf. rapidus], 3. v. a., snatch, seize, carry off.
rārūs, -a, -um [ʔ], adj., thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies (of soldiers), a few at a time, few (as being wide apart), uncommon, rare. — rārō, abl. as adv., rarely, seldom.
rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratiō, -ōnis [rati- (ra, in reor, + ti) + o], F., a reckoning, an account, a roll. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, a scheme, science (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), a reason (as consisting in a calculation), a manner, a
method, a consideration, a way. —
Also, a way of thinking, a view, an
opinion, a conviction: rationem ha-
bere, take an account, take account of;
have regard to, take into consideration,
take measures, take care of, a merca-
tile term, cf. account; rei militaris (art,
also nature) ; omnibus rationibus, in
all ways, in all respects; proeli (char-
acter); rationem habere frumentandi
(take measures for, etc.).

ratis, is [?], F., a raft, a bark, a
vessel.

ratus, -a, -um, p. p. of reor.

raucus, -a, -um [ravë- (or i, cf.
ravus and ravis, hoarseness) + cus],
adj., hoarse, roaring (Hadria).

Rauraci, -orum [Celtic], M. plur.,
a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red- [abl. of unc. st., perh.
akin to -rus], insep. prep., back,
again, away, out, un-. — Esp. imply-
ing a giving or taking something
which is due, or which creates an
obligation by the taking. See reci-
pio, refero.

rebellio, -onis [rebelli- + o], F.,
a renewal of war, an uprising, a
rebellion.

rebellio, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [re-bello],
I. v. n., revolt, rebel, renew the war.

Rebilus, -i [?], M., a Roman
family name. See Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus
[re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back,
retire, withdraw, retreat, draw back.

recēns, -entis [prob. p. of lost
verb treceo, be back (cf. recipero)],
adj., (? , just coming back ?), new,
fresh, late.

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēn-
sus [rec-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a.,
review, inspect (of troops).

receptāculum, -i [receptā- +
culum], N., a retreat, a place of
refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio.

receptus, -ūs [re-captus, cf. re-
cipio], M., a retreat, a way of retreat,
a refuge.

recessūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of re-
cedo.

recidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cāsūrus
[re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall
back, fall upon (one after some one
else).

recipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus
[re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get
back, recover, take in, receive, ad-
mit: misericordiam (admit of); ad
se (attach). — With reflex. , retreat,
fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw,
resort: e laboribus (recover).

reclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-
clino.

reclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-clino],
I. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over,
lean: reclinātus, -a, -um, leaning,
reclining.

rēctē [old case-form of rectus],
adv., straight, right, rightly: recte
factum, well done, a good action.

rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of rego.

recumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubi-
tūrus [re-ícumbo, cf. cubo], 3. v. n.,
lie down, sink down, fall.

recuperō (-cip-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus
[recipero], from recē- (cf. recēns)
+ parus (cf. pario), I. v. a., get
back, recover, regain.

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-ícavo
(cf. excuso)], I. v. a. and n., (give
redactus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.  
redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.  
reddo, -dere, -didi, -ditus [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render, make return: supplicatio (offer).

redeō, -ire, -iī (-iī), -itūrus [re-(red-) -eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitium): eadem unde redierat (come); summa (be referred).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [re-(red-) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (in potestatem), make (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus [re-(red-) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy, ransom.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegrō.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-(red-) integrō], 1. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditus, -ūs [re- (red-) titus], m., a return.

Redones, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, extend back, restore.

referō, -ferre, -ttuli, -lātus [refero], irr. v. a., bring back, carry back, return, bring (where something belongs), report. — Esp.: par referre, return like for like; gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back); se (retreat, retire).

reficio, -ficere, -ficī, -fectus [refacio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest).

refoveō, -fovere, -fōvi, -fōtus [refoveo, warm], 2. v. a., restore, revive.

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas).

refugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitūrus [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape, flee back, flee for refuge.

rēgina, -ae [reg- + ina, cf. gallina], f., a queen.

Rēginus, -i [reg- + inus, cf. regina], m., a Roman family name. See Antistius.

regiō, -onis [REG + io, but cf. ratio], f., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regione, see regio; e regione, over against, just opposite.

rēgius, -a, -um [reg- + ius], adj. of a king, a king's, regal, royal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [regnō-], 1. v. n., rule, be in power, reign.

rēgnum, -i [REG + num (N. of -nus)], n., a kingdom, royal power, supreme power, a throne. — Plur., the royal power (of several cases).

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus [akin to rex], 3. v. a., direct, manage, rule, have control of, control. — rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., (directed), straight, right: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with. — rēctā, abl. as adv. (sc. viā ?), straight, directly.
regredior

re-gradior, -gridi, -gressus (re-gradior, step), 3. v. dep., return, withdraw, retreat.

reiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus (reiaicio), 3. v. a., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguescō, -languescere, -languī, no p. p. [re-languesco], 3. v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.

religīō, -onis [?], re-legio (cf. relego), F., (the orig. meaning unc.), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion. — Plur., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus [re-linquo], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, abandon. — Pass., be left, remain.

reliquiaeae, -ārum [reliquiō- (reduced) + ia], F. plur., remnants.

reliquiās, -a, -um [re-liquiōs (LIQ (leave) + us)], adj., left, remaining, the rest, the rest of, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other. — Also of time, future, remaining: nihil est reliquī, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.

remanō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsurus [re-maneo], 2. v. n., remain behind, remain, stay.

remedium, -ī [as if remedē- (cf. medeōr, heal) + ium], N., a remedy.

reō, reō, -ēri, ratus (re- (of res) or st. akin), 2. v. dep., reckon, think, deem.
repellō, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus [re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back, repel, repulse, refuse, confute: ab hac spe repulsae, disappointed in this hope.

repente [7], adv., suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um [repente + inus], adj., sudden, hasty. — repentinō, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperīō, -perire, -pperī, -pertītus [re-perio], 4. v. a., find out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf. invenio).

repertor, -ōris [as if re-partor, cf. reperio], M., a discoverer, an inventor.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperio.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus [re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back, demand back, ask for, seek again, seek. — repetūndae, -ārum (with or without pecuniae), F., extortion.

repetūndae, see reperio.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [repleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo.

répō, répere, répēsī, réptus [serp], 3. v. n., creep, crawl.

repōnō, -pōnerē, -posui, -positus [re-pono], 3. v. a., lay by, store away, deposit, keep.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-porto], 1. v. a., carry back, bring back: prae- mium, victoriæm (carry off, win).

repositus, -a, -um, p. p. of repono.

repraesentātiō, -onis [repraesentā- + tio], F., (a placing before one), a representation, an instance.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of re- primo.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [re-premo], 3. v. a., check.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [repudiō-], 1. v. a., (spurn with the feet, cf. tri- pudium), spurn, refuse, reject, put away.

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-pugno, fight], 1. v. n., resist, oppose.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello.

reputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-puto], 1. v. a., reckon up, think over, reflect upon.

rēs, rei [akin to reor, reckon], F., property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing (in the most general sense), a fact, an occurrence, a circumstance, an event, a case, an action, an act, an undertaking, a scheme. — Often to be translated from the context: veritate rei (statement); quid rei est, what's the matter? his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account, in this way; ea re, this, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, in which; eius rei, of this; his rebus cognitis (this); qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be; huic rei, for this purpose, for this; omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways; rem deferre, lay the matter be- fore (not for consultation, cf. referre), bring information; rerum omnium casus, all accidents; rem (resa) gerere, operate, conduct operations in war, succeed well or ill; res gestae, operations, events, exploits; rerum natura, nature, also, state of the case; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei rei student (this branch, cavalry); culis rei, of which (ships). — Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: rem esse in angusto (discrimine), (affairs, things); com-
mutatio rerum, change of fortunes. —
Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; rebus in arduis (bonis), in adversity (prosperity); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divina (or plur.), a religious ceremony, divine service, divine worship and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alicui est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one’s affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

resarcio, -sarcire, no perf., -saractus [res-sarcio, patch], v. a., patch up, mend, repair.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scssus [re-scindo], v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus [re-scisco, inquire], v. a., find out, learn, discover.

reservātus, -a, -um, p.p. of reservo.
reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-servo], v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sidere, -sēdī, no p. p. [re-sedeo], v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

resistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [re-sisto], v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, make opposition, resist, remain.

resonō, -āre, -āvī, no p.p. [re-sono], i. v. a., make to resound, fill (with sound).

respiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [re-ťspecio], v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider, look at.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-spondeo, promise], v. n., reply, answer, respond.

respōnum, -i [N. p. p. of respondeo], N., a reply.

rēs publica, see res.

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stinctus [re-stinguo, quench], v. a., extinguish.

restituō, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitūtus [re-statuo], v. a., set up again, replace, restore, renew, make anew, rebuild.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituo.

rēte, -is [?], N., a net.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineo.
retineō, -tinēre, -tinūi, -tentus [re-teneo], v. a., hold back, restrain, detain, retain, keep: memoriam, mores (preserve); passum (check).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [re-traho], v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

retrō [dat. of ō retrō, (re + terus, cf. intro)], adv., back, backward.

reus, -ī [rē- (of res) + us (or -ius)], M., a party (to a suit, res). —
Esp., a defendant, the accused.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -volusus [re-vello, pull], v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of revertō.
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [re-verto], 3. v. n., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as dep. in tenses fr. pres. stem, return, go back, come back.

revincīō, -vincīre, -vinxi, -vincītus [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of revincio.

revocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of revoco.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-voco], 1. v. a., call back, call away, call off, recall. — Also, apply, refer (memoriam ad).

rēx, rēgis [REG, rule, as st.], m., a king.

*Rhemius, -a, -um [??], adj., of Rheims, Rhemian (lex).

Rhēnus, -i [Celtic??], m., the Rhine.

Rhōdanus, -i [Celtic??], m., the Rhone.

Rhōdios, -a, -um [Rhōdo + ius], adj., of Rhodes, Rhodian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Rhodians.

Rhōdos, -i [Gr.], f., Rhodes, an island on the coast of Asia Minor.

rideō, -ēre, risī, risūs [??], 2. v. n., laugh, smile. — Fig., smile, be serene.

ripa, -ae [??], f., a bank.

risus, -ūs [RID (in rideo) + tus], m., a laugh, laughter.

ritē [prob. abl. of st. akin to ritus, rite], adv., in due form, duly.

rivus, -ī [akin to Gr.], m., a brook, a stream (not so large as flumen).

rīxa, -ae [??], f., a quarrel, a dispute.

robur, -oris [??], n., oak. — Fig., strength (of resistance), courage.

robustus, -a, -um [robos- (orig. st. of robur) + tus], adj., strong, vigorous, powerful.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of rogo.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [??], 1. v. a. and n., ask, request, ask for, beg.

Rōma, -ae [??], f., Rome.

Rōmanus, -a, -um [Roma- + nus], m., Roman. — As noun, a Roman.

rosa, -ae [??], f., a rose.

röstrum, -i [ROD- (in rodo, gnav) + trum], n., a beak. — Esp. of a ship, the beak, the ram (used as in modern naval fighting). — Plur., the rostra or rostrum, a platform in the Roman Forum ornamented with beaks of ships.

rota, -ae [??], f., a wheel.

rubeō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [rubeō- (RUB + us, cf. robus, rubigo, ruber)], 2. v. n., be red, reddened.

ruber, -bra, -brum [RUB + us, cf. rubeo], adj., red, roddy.

Rubīcō, -ōnis [†rubicō- (rubē- + cus) + o], m., (red river), the Rubicon, a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province.

rubus, -ī [rubē- (in ruber) + us], m., (red-bush), a bramble.

rudō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [??], 3. v. n., roar, bellow.

Rūfus, -i [prob. dial. form = rubus, red'], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Minuciūs Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal. See also Sulpicius.

rūga, -ae [??], f., a wrinkle.


ruīna, -ae [†ruō- (reduced) + ina,
rūmor, -ōris [?], m., a rumor (confused report), report.
ruō, -ruere, rūi, rūtus [RU, cf. ruina], 3. v. n., fall, rush headlong, rush, hasten.
ru̇pēs, -is [RUP (cf. rumpo) + unc. term.], f., a cliff, a rock (in position).
rūrsus [for reversus], adv., back again, back again, in turn.

S., for salutem in letters.
Sabīnus, -ī [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, sand) + inus], m., (Sabine). — As a Roman family name. See Titurius.
Sabis, -is [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.
Saccus, -ī [Gr.], m., a bag, a sack.
sacer, -cra, -crum [SAC (in sanctio) + rus], adj., sacred. — Neut. plur. as noun, sacred rites.
sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacrō-dos (DA + tis)], c., (arranger of sacred rites?), a priest.
sacrificium, -ī [sacrificō- (sacrō-tfacus, cf. beneficus) + ium], n., a sacrifice.
sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacrificō- (sacrō-tfacus, cf. beneficus)], i. v. a., sacrifice.
* sacrificius, -ī [sacrō-tfacus, cf. beneficus], m., a priest.

saeculum (sēc-), -ī [SA (in sero, sow) + culum], n., a generation, an age, a century.
saepe [n. of tsaepis (perh. same as saepes)], adv., often.

Sæprēs, -is [akin to saepio, hedge in], f., a hedge.

Saeliger (sēt-), -era, -erum [saetā- (weakened) -ger (in gero) + us], adj., (bristle bearing), bristly.

saevīō, -īre, -iī, -īturus [saevō-, raging (as if saevi-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

saevus, -a, -um [?], adj., raging, savage, ferocious, furious, fell, cruel.
saginō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sagīna-, stuffing], i. v. a., fatten, feed.
sagitta, -ae [?], f., an arrow.
sagittārius, -ī [sagitta- + arius], m., an archer, a bowman.

Saguntum, -ī [?], n., a city of Spain in alliance with Rome, besieged and captured by Hannibal.
salītus, -ūs [SAL (in salio, leap) + tus], m., (a gap?), a wooded height, a glade, a forest pasture, a pass (in the mountains).
saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [saltō- (cf. salio, leap)], i. v. n. freq., dance.
salūs, -ūtis [salvō- (?)], safe, + tis (cf. virtus), f., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliver-
ance, life (as saved or lost), greeting; salute desperata, despairing of saving one’s self; salutis suae causa, to protect one’s self.

salūtātor, -ōris [salutā- + tor], M., a saluter, one who makes complimentary visits, a visitor.

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [salut- (in salus)], I. v. a., (wish health to any one), salute, greet.

sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sāntus [sac (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law). — sānc tus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sāntus, -a, -um, p. p. of sancio.

sānē [old case-form of sanus], adv., truly, indeed, assuredly.

sanguis, -inis [?], M., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body; cf. cruo).  
sānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sanō-], I. v. a., make sound, make good, repair.

Santones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

sānus, -a, -um [sa- (akin to sal-vus) + nus], adj., sound (in body or mind), sane, discreet: nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet).

sapiēns, -entis [p. of sapio, be wise], adj., wise. — Esp. as noun, a wise man, a philosopher.

sapientia, -ae [sapient- + ia], F., wisdom.

sarcina, -ae [sarcī- (as if st. of sarcio, or a kindred noun-st.) + na (F. of nus)], F., a pack (sewed up ?), a bundle, a burden. — Plur., baggage (soldiers’ packs, cf. impediments, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarmentum, -i [perh. sarp, prune (but cf. sarcina) + mentum], N., (either prunings or tied fagots), only in plur., fagots, twigs, brushwood.

satiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [st. of satis, cf. satietas], I. v. a., satisfy, appease, satiate.

satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently, fully, well enough. — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: neque . . . satis commode (not very, etc.). — Often a mild expression for very and the like.

satisfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factūrus [satis facio], 3. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends.

satisfactio, -ōnis [satis-factio (cf. satisfacio)], F., amends, excuses, an apology.

Sāturnus, -i [st. from sa (in sero, sow) + turnus, cf. taciturnus], M., Saturn, an ancient Italian divinity who presided over agriculture. His supremacy was supposed to mark the golden age of primitive virtue and simplicity.

sauciō, -a, -um [?], adj., wounded.

saxum, -i [?], N., a rock, a stone (as movable), cf. rupea.

scālae, -ārum (sing. rare) [perh. scad- (in scando, climb) + la], F., a ladder, a scaling ladder.

scapha, -ae [Gr., orig. a “dug-out”], F., a skiff, a boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um [as if (perh. really) p. p. of scelerō (stain with crime ?)], adj., villainous, accursed.

scelus, -eris [?], perh. orig.
"crookedness," cf. pravus and "wrong"], N., crime, wickedness.

scienter [scient- (cf. scio) + ter], adv., knowingly, skillfully.

scientia, -ae [scient- (cf. scio) + ia], F., knowledge, acquainstance with (thing in the genitive), skill.

scilicet [sci- (imv. of sciō) -licet], adv., (one may know), evidently, namely, forsooth, no doubt.

sciō, scire, scivi, scitum [?], 4. v. a., (separate ?), distinguish, know.


scissor, -ōris [scid (in scindo, cut) + tor], M., a carver.

Scopās, -ae [Gr., M., a very rich Thessalian in the time of Simonides.

scorpiō, -onis [?], M., a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts. Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).

scribō, scribere, scriptūr, scriptūs [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing), state.

scrinium, -ī [?], N., a box, a chest, a despatch box, a portfolio.

scrobis, -is [prob. akin to scribo], M. and F., a ditch, a pit.

scūtum, -ī [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, convex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

شد، سَأَد [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., apart, away, aside, off, un-

sē, see sui.

sēbum, i [?], N., tallow.

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [secedo], 3. v. n., go away, withdraw.

secō, secūre, secūi, sectus [?], i. v. a., cut, reap.

sēcrētus, -a, -um [p. p. of se- cerno, separate], adj., separate, secret, concealed.

sectīō, -ōnis [sec (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.

secundus, -a, -um [partic. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second. — Also (as not opposing), favorable, favoring, successful: proelium secundum nostris (in favor of); mensae secundae, dessert. — secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with.

secūris, -is [sec + unc. term.], F., an axe. — Esp., the axe of the lictor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

secūrus, -a, -um [se-cūra- (weakened and decl. as adj.)], adj., free from care, untroubled, quiet, serene.

secus [sequ (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise: non secus, as well as. — Compare, sēcius (sētius), less: nihil secus, none the less, nevertheless.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor.

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. se], conj., apart (cf. sedītio and secūrus), but (stronger than autem or at), but yet.
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus [SED, prob. through adj.-st.], 2. v. n., sit, sit down. — Also, remain, linger.

sēdēs, -is [SED + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode, a dwelling (both in sing. and plur.), a settlement, a place, a spot.

sēditiō, -onis [sed- + itio (1 + tio)], F., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising, a sedition.

Sedulius, -i [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūni, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiaci, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

sēgregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [segreg- (se-grez, apart from the herd)], 1. v. a., separate, exclude.

Segusiavi (-āni), -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [se-iungo], 3. v. a., separate.

sella, -ae [SED (sit) + la], F., a seat, a chair.

sēmēsus, -a, -um [semi-esus], adj., half eaten.

sēmet, see -met.

sēmita, -ae [se- (sed-) + mita (MI, in meo, go, cf. comes)], F., a side path, a by-path, a path (over the mountains).

semper [†semō- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., through all time, all the time, always.

Sempronius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Rutilus, Gracchus, and Longus.

senātor, -ōris [†senā- (as if verb. akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], M., (an elder). Hence, a senator.

senātorius, -a, -um [senator- + ius], adj., of senators, senatorial.

senātus, -ūs [†sena- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to senex)], M., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senecta, -ae [senec- (as st. of senex) + ta], F., age, old age.

senēscō, -ere, senui, no p. p. [st. akin to senex + sco], 3. v. n., grow old, wane.

senex [seni- + cus (reduced)], gen. senis [?], cf. seneschal], adj. (only M.), old. — Esp. as noun, an old man (above forty-five). — Compare senior, M. and F.

sēnī, -ae, -a [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

senium, -i [seni- (cf. senex) + ium], N., old age, senility.

Senones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae [†sentent- (p. of simpler pres. of sentio) + ia], F., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design, a wish, a desire. — Esp. officially, a judgment, an
opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea
sententia permanere (of that mind).

sentīō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus [?],
4. v. a., perceive, feel, find (by the
senses), know, see, think (of an
opinion made up), learn about, learn,
discover: alia sentire, have other
feelings.

sentīs, -is [?], m., a briar.

sēparātīm [as if acc. of *sēparā-
tis (sēparā- + tīs)], adv., separately.

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of separeo.
sēparērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se- (sed-)
parō], i. v. a., (get apart ?), separate.
— Esp., sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. as
adj., separate.

sēpelā, -āre, -āvī (-ii), sepultus [?],
4. v. a., bury.

sēpositus, -a, -um [p. p. of se-
pono, set apart], adj., choice, select.

septem [?], indecl. num. adj.,
seven.

September, -bris, -bre [septem +
bris], adj., of September.

septentriōnēs (septem triones),
-um, m. plur., the seven plough oxen
(the stars of the Great Bear).

Hence, the north.

Septimius, -ī [septimōs- + ius],
m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.,
Septimius, one of the murderers of
Pompey.

septimūs, -a, -um [septem + mus,
cf. primus], num. adj., seventh.

septingentēsimus, -a, -um [se-
ptingenti- (reduced) + esimus], num.
adj., seven hundredth.

septingentiō, -ae, -a [septem (in
some form) -centum (?)], num. adj.,
seventh.

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um [septua-
ginta (reduced) + esimus], num.
adj., seventieth.

septuāgintā [from septem, in
some unc. manner], indecl. num.
adj., seventy.

sepulcrum, -ī [tsepel- (as if root
of sepolio) + crum], n., a grave, a
tomb, a sepulchre.

Sēquānus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj.,
of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the
Rhone, north of Macon). — Masc.
sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequa-
nian. — Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secūtus [SEQU], 3.
v. dep., follow, accompany: eventus
(ensue); fidem (hold to, remain
under, come under, surrender one’s
self to, etc.): aestās commutationem
(take advantage of).

sēriō [abl. of serius], adv., in
earnest, seriously.

sermō, -onis [ser (in sero, twine)
+ mo (prob. -mō- + o)], m., (series ?).
Hence, conversation (continuous
series of speech), speech, discourse,
talk, intercourse: Graecus (lan-
guage).

serō, serere, sēvī, satus [sa, re-
dupl.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

serpēns, -entis [p. of serpo, creep],
m., a serpent, a snake.

sērus, -a, -um [?], adj., late. —
sērō, abl. as adv., late, too late:
sērius oclus, sooner or later.

servātus, -a, -um, p. p. of servo.

servīlis, -e [servī- (as if st. of
servus or akin, cf. servio) + ius],
adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in
servile modum, as with slaves (i.e.
by torture).

Servilius, -ī [servili- + ius], m., a
Roman gentile name. — Esp., Cnaus Servilius Geminus, an ex-consul killed at Cannae.

servio, -ire, -ii (-iī), -itūrus [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow).

servitus, -ūtis [servitu- (servō + tus) + tis, cf. iuventus, sementis], f., slavery, servitude.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [servō-], 1. v. a., watch, guard, keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain).

servulus, -ī [servō + lus, dim. end.], m., a little slave, a mean slave.

servus, -ī [unc. root (SER, bind?) + vus], m., a slave, a servant.

sēsē, see sui.

sēequipedālis, -e [sēsequiped- - a foot and a half + alia], adj., of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams, etc.).

sēstertius, -ī [sēmis- (half) - tertius (third)], m. of adj. (with nummus), two and a half asses, a sesterce, a sum of money worth about 5 cents.

sēn, see sive.

sēvērē [old case-form of severus], adv., gravely, severely.

sēvēritās, -ātis [sēverō- + tās], f., strictness, harshness, severity.

sēvērus, -a, -um [?], adj., stern, strict, severe, harsh.

sēvōcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [se (sed) - vocō], 1. v. a., call aside, call out (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um [sexaginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., sixtieth.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., sixty.

sexcentī (sex-), -ae, -a [sex-centum], num. adj., six hundred.

Sextilius, -i [sextili- + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Sextilius, a Roman praetor, who expelled Marius from Africa.

Sextius, -i [sexti- + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Titus Sextius, a legatus of Caesar.

sextus, -a, -um [sex + tus], num. adj., sixth.

sī [loc. prob. akin to se], conj., (in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic), if, in case. — Esp., to see if, whether.

sibi, see sui.

sic [si-ce, cf. hic], adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus: sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that. — Equal to hoc, this, such: sic reperiebat (this). — sicutī, as conj., just as, just as if.

sīca, -ae [prob. akin to seco, cut], F., a dagger.

siccitās, -ātis [siccō- + tās], f., dryness, drought, dry weather. — Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.

siccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [siccō- - dry], 1. v. a., dry, drain.

Sicilia, -ae [Gr.], F., Sicily.

sicut (sicuti), see sic.

sīdus, -ēris [sed + us], n., (position?), a heavenly body.

signifer, -erĭ [signo-fer (fer (bear) + us)], m., a standard-bearer.

significātiō, -onis [significā- + tio], f., a making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning.

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sig-
signō - (signō-ficus, cf. facio), i. v. n., make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show, mean, signify: hac re significari, this is an indication; de fuga.

signō, āre-, āvī, ātus [signō-], i. v. a., sac, sign.

signum, -i [unc. root + num (N. of nus)], N., (a device ?), a sign, a signal. — Esp., a standard (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). — signa convertere, wheel, change front, face about; signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa inferre, change front and charge; signa ferre, move, move on, march; signa subsequi, keep the line of march; signa relinquere, leave the ranks; a signis discedere, desert, leave the ranks; ad signa consistere, rally around the standard.

silentium, -i [silent- + ium], N., stillness, silence. — silentiō, abl. as adv., in silence, silently.

Silēnus, -i [Gr.], M., a Greek historian.

sileō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., be silent.

Silēlus, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Titus Silius, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

silva, -ae [?], F., a forest, woods, forests. — Plur. in same sense.

silvestre (-tris), -tris, -tre [silva- (as if silver-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., woody, wooded.

simia, -ae [simō- (flat-nosed) + iα (F. of -ius)], F., an ape, a monkey.

similis, -e [simō- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., like, similar.

similiter [simili- + ter], adv., similarly, in a similar way.

similitūdō, -inis [simili- + tudo], F., likeness, resemblance (to, gen.).

Simōnīdes, -is [Gr.], M., a Greek lyric poet.

simul [N. of similis, cf. facul], adv., at the same time, together with (one): simul atque (or without atque), as soon as; simul . . . simul, both . . . and; simul cum dicto, no sooner said than done.

simulācrum, -i [simulā- + crum], N., an image, a likeness, a phantom.

simulātiō, -onis [simulā- + tio], F., a pretence, a show, deceit.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [simili- (as if, perh. orig., ἰσιμιλό-) ], i. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something), feign.

simultās, -ātis [simili- (cf. simul) + tas], F., (likeness ?, equality ?), rivalry, jealousy, grudge.

sincerē [old case-form of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly, frankly.

sine [?], prep. with abl., without.

singillātim (singul-) [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of -tis)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.

singulāris, -e [singulō- + are], adj., solitary, single. Hence, unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.

singulī, -ae, -a [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally). — Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulōs, (with verb), one . . . each; singulīs
sineater, -eri [?], M., a father-in-law.

societas, -atis [sociō- + tas]. F.,
an alliance, a league, fellowship, societ,y company.

socius, -i [sequ (follow) + ius].
m., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

sōl, sōlis [?], M., the sun. — Also
personified, Sol, the Sun. — See also
under orior, occido, occasus.

sōlācium (sōlāt-), -i [solacē- +
ium (cf. sōlor, console)], N., a conso-
lation, a comfort.

sōlea, -ae [sōlē- (sole) + ea (f. of
eus)]. F., a sole.

sōlēō, solēre, solitus [?], Z. v. n.,
be wont, he accustomed: ut solent,
as is usual.

sōlitarius, -a, -um [sōlē- (as if
sōlitō-) + arius], adj., lonely, so-
itary.

sōlītūdō, -inis [sōlō- + tude], F.,
loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.

sōlāritia, -ae [sōlērē- (sōlē- +
ara, with complete skill, cf. sōlicito)
+ iā], F., skill, ingenuity, shrewd-
ness.

sōlicitūs, -a, -um [sōlō-citus],
adj., (violently agitated), troubled,
anxious.

Solōn, -ōnis [Gr.], M., a famous
lawgiver of Athens, one of the seven
wise men of Greece.

sōlor, -āri, -ātus [?], I. v. dep,
console, comfort, cheer.

sōlum, -i [?], N., the soil, the
sōlus

ground, the foundation, the bottom; sōlum agri, the bare ground; ab inft-
mo solo, from the very bottom.

sōlus, -a, -um [?], adj., alone, only.
— sōlum, n. as adv., alone, only.

sōlūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.

solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus [prob. se-luo, loose], 3. v. a., unbind, untie, 
loose: poenam (pay); animum (relax, unbend). — Esp. with navis, weigh 
anchor, set sail. — Also without navis, abs., set sail. — solūtus, -a, 
-um, p. p. as adj., exempt, free.

somniō, —ēre, —āvi, —ātus [somniō-], 
1. v. a. dream.

somniōnum, -i [somnīō- (reduced) + ium], n., a dream.

somnus, -ī [SOP (cf. sopio, put to 
sleep) + nus], m., sleep: somno se 
dare, go to sleep.

sonitus, -ūs [soni- (as st. of sono) 
+ tus], m., a sound, noise.

sonōrus, -ā, -um [perh. sonor- 
us, but cf. decorus], adj., resounding, 
roaring, noisy.

sonus, -i [son + us], m., a sound.

sopor, -ōris [SOP (cf. sopio, put to 
sleep) + or], m., sleep.

sordidē [old case-form of sordidus], adv., meanly, basely.

sordidus, -a, -um [sordi- (filth) + 
dus], adj., unclean, foul, mean.

soror, -ōris [?], f., a sister.

sors, sortis [perh. SER (in sero) + 
tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], f., 
a lot (for divination), chance, fate.

sortior, -īrī, -ītus [sortī-], 4. v. 
dep., cast lots, draw lots. — Hence, 
obtain by lot: animas (with the de-
tiny of, be endowed with).

sortitus, -a, -um, p. p. of sortior.

Sōsīlus, -ī [Gr.], m., a Spartan 
teacher and historian.

Sparta, -ae [Gr.], f., also called 
Lacedaemon, the capital of Laconia.

spatiōsus, -a, -um [spatīō- 
+ osus], adj., large, spacious.

spatium, i [?], n., space, room, 
extent, a space, a distance, a region. 
— Transf., time, space of time, lapse 
of time, a period. — quantum fuit 
diei spatium, as much as there was 
time for; interim esse spatio, after an 
interval; spatia omnis temporis, the 
whole course of time.

speciēs, -ēī [SPEC + ies (akin to 
-ia)], f., (a sight, prob. both act. and 
pass.). — Passively, a sight, a show, 
an appearance, a pretense, likeness, 
form (humana): summa species 
earum stantium, a perfect appearance 
of standing trees (lit. 'of them stand-
ing').

spectāculum, -i [spectā- + cumul], 
N., a sight, a show, a spectacle.

spectātor, -ōris [spectā- + tor], 
m., a spectator, a witness.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spectō-], 
1. v. a. and n., look at, behold, see, 
regard, have regard to, lie towards 
(of a country), face.

speculātor, -ōris [speculā- + tor], 
m., a spy, a scout.

speculātōrius, -a, -um [specu-
lator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scout-
ing, reconnoitring (navigia).

spēlunca, -ae [Gr.], f., a cave, a 
cavern.

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spea-
spēs (prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s, 1. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.

spēs, -ēi [?], F., hope, expectation: summam (magnam) in spern venire, have the greatest (great) hope.

spīna, -ae [perh. akin to spica, ear of grain], F., a thorn.

spiritus, -ūs [spiri- (as st. of spīro, breathe) + tus], M., breath. — Also, spirit. Hence, in plur., pride, spirit, arrogance, temper.

splendidus, -a, -um [splendid- (cf. splendeo, shine) + dus], adj., magnificent, grand, splendid.

spoliātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spoliō. spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spoliō, booty], 1. v. a., despoil, strip. — Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spondeō, -ēre, spondeoni, spōnsus [spondō, pour (libations), through noun-st.], 2. v. a., promise (solemnly).

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.) [prob. akin to spondeo, promise], F., only with possess. or gen. (poetic), of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account.

Spūrinna, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Vестиtius Spūrinna, the soothsayer who warned Cāesar to beware of the Ides of March.

squalōr, -ōris [squalo (cf. squalo, be rough) + or], M., (roughness), filth, squallor.

stabilō, -īre, -īvi (iii), -itus [stabil-], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilis, -e [sta (cf. sto) + bils], adj., firm, enduring, stable.

stabilitās, -ātis [stabilī- + tas], F., steadiness, firmness.

stātim [acc. of statīs (stā- + tis)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, -onis [apparently sta + tie, prob. stati- + o, whence the common -tie used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket: in statione, on guard.

stātus, -ae [stata- (cf. sto) + a or va], F., a statute.

stātuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [stata-], 3. v. a., set up. Hence, establish, resolve upon, settle upon, fix upon, determine, consider (make up one's mind).

stātūra, -ae [stata- + ra (F. of rūs)], F., (a standing), stature, size, height.

stātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sistō.

statis, -ūs [sta + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation.

stercus, -oris [?], N., dung, ordure, filth.

sternō, -ere, strāvi, strātus [ster], 3. v. a., scatter, spread. — Pass. imper., sterni, a bed to be made.

stilus, -i [?], M., a pointed instrument for writing on wax tablets, a style, a pen.

stimulus, -i [stigmō (stig + mus) + lus], M., a goad, a spur. — As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "spur."

stipendiārius, -a, -um [stipendiō + arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute. — Masc. as noun, a tributary.

stipendium, -i [stipt-, gift, and st. akin to pendo (perh. tpendus, cf.
pendumulus + ium], N., a tribute. —
Also, pay (for military service), service, a campaign.

stipes, stipitis [?], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stō, stāre, steti, statūrus [STA], i. v. n., stand, be placed: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāgēs, -is [STER, STRA (in sterno) + unc. term.], F., overthrow, defeat, slaughter.

strepitus, -ūs [strepī- (as st. of strepo, roar) + tus], M., a noise, a confused din, a din, a rattling.

strictus, -a, -um, p. p. of stringō.

stringō, -ere, strinxi, strictus [STRIG, squeeze?], 3. v. a., bind. —
Esp. of weapons, bare, draw, unsheathe.

strūctor, -ōris [STRUG (in struo) + tor], M., (one who spreads the table), a server.

studeō, studēre, studuī, no p. p. [studō- (or āstudu-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat. or with infinit.), strive.

studiōsē [old case-form of studiōsus], adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -i [prob. āstudō- + ium, cf. studeo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stultē [old case-form of stultus], adv., foolishly.

stultitia, -ae [stultō- (foolish) + tia], F., folly.

stultus, -a, -um [STOL (in stolidus) + tus], adj., foolish.

stupēns, -entis [p. of stupeo, be amazed], adj., amazed, dazed, confused.

suādēō, -ēre, suāsi, suāsus [suadē- (suad + us, cf. malesuada)], 2. v. a. and n., advise, counsel.

suāvitās, -ātis [suavi- (sweet) + tas], F., agreeableness, attractiveness.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.: —
a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes. — Also, just by: sub colle (at the foot of); sub sinistra, at the left; sub muro, just under the wall; sera sub nocte, late at night.

b. With acc. (of motion towards a place), under, close to. — Of time, just at, just before: sub vesperum.

c. In comp., under, up (from under), away (from beneath), secretly (underhand), in succession, a little, slightly.

subactus, -a, -um, p. p. of subigo.

subdolus, -a, -um [sub-dolus, artifact], adj., cunning, wily.

subducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up, take away, remove secretly: navis (beach, draw up). — With reflex., withdraw.

subductiō, -ōnis [sub-ductio, cf. subduco], F., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

subeō, -ere, -iī, -itus [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, submit to (luga), encounter, come up, approach.

subfodiō (suff.-), -fodere, -födi, -fossus [sub-f odio], 3. v. a., dig under, stab (underneath).

subfossus, -a-um, p. p. of subfodiō.
subjectus, -icens, -iecti, -iectus [sub-iectio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — subjectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near.

subjectus, -a, -um, p. p. of subiciō.

subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [sub-agō], 3. v. a., bring under, subject, subdue.

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty. — subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

sublātus, -a, -um [sub-(t)latus], p. p. of tollō.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-levō], irr. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance. — With reflex., rise up.

sublica, -ae [?], F., a pile.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices.

submergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [sub-mergo], 3. v. a., submerge, sink, swallow up in the waves.

subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-ministro], irr. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide.

submittō (sum-), -mittere, -missi, -missus [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to one’s assistance, send as reinforcements, send (as help), reinforce.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveō.

submoveō (sum-), -moveāre, -mōvī, -mōtus [sub-moveō], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

subrēpō, -rēpere, -rēpsī, -rēptus [sub-repo], 3. v. a. and n., creep under, steal into.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

subsequor, -sequi, -secūtus [sub-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, follow on, succeed to.

subsidiārium, -i [subsidiārium (sed + ium)], N., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions: subsidio mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision.

subsistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p. [subsisto], 3. v. n., stop behind, hold, remain, stay: ancorae (hold).

subsum, -esse, -suī, -sūtus [sub-sum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away, (underneath), carry away, take away (generally).

subvectīō, -ōnis [sub-vectio, cf. subvehō], F., bringing up, transportation, conveyance.

succēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessūrus [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next. — Also, be successful, prosper.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -censis [sub-cendo (cf. cando, glose)], 3. v. a., set on fire (as if beneath).

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succendo.

successus, -ūs [sub-cessus (cf. succedo)], M., a coming up, an advance, a close approach, success.
succidō -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [sub-caedo]. 3. v. a., cut under, cut down.

succinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of succingō.

succingō, -cingere, -cīnxi, -cinctus [sub-cingo]. 3. v. a., gird about, gird up. — succinctus, p. p. as noun, a waiter.


succisus, -a, -um, p. p. of succido.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [sub-cumbo]. 3. v. n., lie down (under), give way, succumb.

succurrō, -currere, -currit, -cursūrus [sub-curro]. 3. v. n., rush to support, rush to one’s rescue, succor.

sudis, -is [?], F., a stake.

sūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sud, prob. through adj-st., t'sudō-], 1. v. n., sweat, perspire.

Suessiōnes, -um [Celtic]. M. plur., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.

Suēvus (Suēb-), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., Swabian.—As noun, a Swabian (man or woman).—M. plur., Swabians, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany.

suffectus, -a, -um, p. p. of sufficio.

sufficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [sub-facio]. 3. v. a., make (appoint) in place of, substitute, elect as successor, supply the place of. Hence, suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.

suffigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [sub-fīgo]. 3. v. a., fasten to, nail to: crucе suffigere, crucify.

suffocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tsuffocō- (sub-faux, throat)]. 1. v. a., choke, throttle, strangle.

suffragātor, -ōris [suffragā- (vote for) + tor], M., a favorer, a supporter, a partisan.

suffragium, -i [akin to suffringo, break up], N., (a pastern bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot), a ballot, vote.

Sugambri (Sig-), -ōrum [Teutonic], M., a German tribe.

sugestus, -ūs [sub-gestus, cf. sugerō]. M., (earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

sui (prop. gen. n. of suus), sibi, sé [sva], reflex. pron., himself, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, he, etc., also each other. — Esp.: inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter se dant, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself, etc. (without outside influence or excitement). See ipse.

Sulla, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp.: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility, and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

eclipse of the moon.—5. Sulpicius Rufus, a legatus of Caesar.—6. Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Caesar.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus [Es, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist).—Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula); eorum est, they have; mul-tum sunt in venationibus (much engaged).—futūrum, -i, f. p. N. as noun, the future.

summa, -ae [F. of summus, as noun], F., the top, the sum, the total, the main part: summa omnium rerum, the whole amount; beli (the general management, the chief control); imperi (the chief command, the supremacy); imperi bellique administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summas victoriae, the whole victory; summa pecuniae (a sum).

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmpτus [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume: poenas (inflict, cf. capere); laborem (spend).

sūmptuarius, -a, -um [sūmptus (expense) + arius], adj., of expense, sumptuary.

sūmptuosus, -a, -um [sūmptus- + osus], adj., expensive, costly.

super [mutilated case-form of superus], prep. with acc., above, upon, on.—Also, during, at.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of supero.

superbia, -ae [superbō- (reduced) + ia], F., pride, arrogance.

superbus, -a, -um [super (as st.) + bus, cf. morbus], adj., proud, haughty, disdainful.—Also, splendid, stately.

Superbus, see Tarquinius.

superior, see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [superō-], 1. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita), surpass.

supercedeō, -sedere, -sēdē, -sēssūrus [super-sedeō], 2. v. n., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, be left, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um [super (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], adj., higher, being above (of space only).—Compr. (in wider meanings), superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious. —As noun, a superior.—Superl., supermūs [supra- (?) + imus (?)], highest.—Also, summus [sup- + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of. —vestis (outermost, outer).—Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summo, from the top, at the end; summas copias, with all the forces, in force, with all one's might.


suppetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petītūrus [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n. (?), but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.
supplémentum, -î [supplé- (as st. of suppleo, fill up) + mentum], n., a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement.

supplex, -icis [sup-plex (PLIC (fold) as st., cf. duplex)], c., a suppliant.

supplicatio, -onis [supplica- + tio], f., a supplication.—Esp., a thanksgiving (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

supplicium, -î [supplic- (st. of supplex) + ium], n., a supplication, a sacrifice.—Also, esp., a punishment (usually of death).

supporto, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [subporto, I. v. a., bring up, convey, supply, furnish.

supra [instr. (?) of superus], adv. and prep. with acc., above, before, beyond.

sus, suis [prob. su (produce), strengthened as st., cf. Eng. “sow,” “swine”], M. and F., a swine, a pig.

suscepto, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

suscipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., take up, assume, undertake, engage in, undergo.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

suscipitūs, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

suspicio (-spitiō), -onis [subs- specio, cf. suspicion], f., suspicion.—Objectively, an indication.

suspicio, -āri, -ātus [suspici- (cf. suspicion)], I. v. dep., suspect.—P. p. as adj., under suspicion.

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sustento.

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [subs(b)sten- to (cf. sustineo)], I. v. a. and n., sustain, hold out: bella (hold out against); pecore famem (keep from starvation by means of, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tensus [sub(a)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold up under, withstand, endure, sustain, hold out, bear, stop, rein in (horses), wear (ingum): sustinere se, stand up, keep up.

sustuli, see tollo.

sūtor, -ōris [su- (sew) + tor], M., a shoemaker.

suus, -a, -um [sua + ius, cf. se], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), his, hers, its, theirs, etc.—Sometimes emphatic, his own, etc.: sua clementia (fortuna), his characteristic clemency (good fortune); sua morte defungi, die a natural death.—Often without noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their (his) friends; sua, their (his) possessions, their property: se susque omnia, themselves and all they had.

S. V. B. E. E. V., for si vales, bene est, ego valeo.

Sybaris, -is [Gr.], f., a town of southern Italy, noted for the effeminacy of its inhabitants.

Sybarita, -ae [Gr.], m., an inhabitant of Sybaris, a Sybarite.
syngrapha, -ae [Gr.], F., a written promise to pay, a note, a receipt.

Syria, -ae [Gr.], F., the country lying at the eastern end of the Mediterranean.

T

tabella, -ae [tabula- + la], F., a little board, a tablet. — In plur., a document, a letter.

tabellarius, -i [tabella- + arius], M., a letter carrier, a messenger.

tabula, -ae [†tabō- (TA (stretch) + bus?) + la], F., a board. Hence, a tablet, a picture.

tabulatus, -a, -um [tabulā- (as if st. of †tabulo) + tus], adj., made with boards. — tabulātum, N. as noun, a flooring, a story.

taceō, -ère, -uī, -itus [†tacēō- (TAC + us?)], 2. v. n., be silent. — tacitus, p. p. as adj., silent, in silence.

tacitē [old case-form of tacitus], adv., silently.

taedium, -i [†taedē- (whence taedet) + ium], N., weariness; taedium me cepit, I grew weary.

tālea, -ae [perh. akin to tālus, ankle-bone], F., a rod, a bar.

talentum, -i [Gr.], N., a talent, a sum of money equal to about $108O.

tālis, -e [TA (akin to that) + alis], adj. pron., such, so great, this the following. — Also, the preceding.

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., so, so much: tam . . . quam, as . . . as.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locative?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or im-
plied), yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least.

Tanesia, -is [Celtic], M., the Thames.

Tamphilus, -i, M., see Baebius.

tamquam (tan-) [tam quam], adv., as if, just as if, as.

tandum [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so?), at last, at length.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus [TAG], 3. v. a., touch, taste, border on.

Tantalus, -i [Gr.], M., a king of Phrygia, father of Niobe.

tantillus, -a, -um [tantulō- + lus, dim. end.], adj., so little.

tantisper [unc. form of tantis + per, cf. nuper], adv., for so long, meanwhile.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um [tantō- + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantundem [tantum-dem, cf. idem], adv., just so far.

tantus, -a, -um [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude): tantum, N. as adv., only, alone, merely.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tarde.
tardē [old case-form of tardus], adv., slowly, tardily, with delay.
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tardō-], i. v. a., retard, check, hinder: Romanos ad sequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.).
tardus, -a, -um [?], adj., slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity.

Tarentinus, -a, -um [Tarentō- + inus], adj., of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy.

Tarquinius, -i [Etruscan], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.

taurus, -i [perh. stav + rus, akin to steer], m., a bull, a bullock.

Taximagus, -i [Celtic], m., a prince of Britain.

Tectosages, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a branch of the Volcae.
tēctum, -i [N. p. p. of tego], n., a roof, a house, a dwelling, a palace.
tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.
tegimentum (tegu-), -i [tegi- (st. of tego) + mentum], n., a covering.
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus [TEG], 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide, conceal. — Also, protect.

tēla, -ae [prob. tex (in texo, weave) + la], f., a web (in the loom), a loom.
tellūs, -ūris [?], f., the earth.
tēlium, -i [?], n., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin, a spear.
temerārius, -a, -um [ttemerō- + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.
temerē [old case-form of ttemerus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hastily, rashly.
temerītas, -ātis [ttemerō- (hasty) + tas], f., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.
tēmō, -ōnis [?], m., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).
temperantia, -ae [temperant- + ia], f., self-control, prudence.
temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.
temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [temper- (st. of tempus)], i. v. a., (divide), mix properly. Hence, control, control one’s self, refrain, restrain one’s self from (abl.). — Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild.
tempestās, -ātis [temper- (st. of tempus) + tas], f., a point of time, time. — Less exactly, the weather, a season. — Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.
templum, -i [prob. ttemō- (TEM (cut) + us) + lum], n., (a place set apart), a consecrated spot, a temple.
temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tentō, p. p. of teneo, hold], i. v. a., handle. Hence, try, attempt, make an attempt upon, test, tempt.
tempsus, -oris [TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], n., (a cutting). — Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis. — Plur., times, circumstances, condition: omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; uno tempore, at once.

Tencteri (-theri), -orum [Teutonic], m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes.
tendō, tendere, tetendi, tēnsus
tenebrae, -ārum [ʔ, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness, the shades.

tenebricōsus, -a, -um [tenebricō- (cf. tenebrae) + oús], adj., dark, gloomy.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (?)[t'enē- (ten + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy, grasp (aram): circuitus millia (occupy, extend). — Also, restrain, keep back, detain: tenete furem, stop thief! memorā tendere, remember.

tener, -era, -erum [ten + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.

tentō, see temptō.

tenuis, -e [ten + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor, common.

tenuitās, -ātis [tenuī- + tas], F., thinness, weakness, slenderness, poverty.

tenuiter [tenuī- + ter], adv., thinly, slightly.

ter [petrified form of tres], num. adv., three times, thrice, threefold.

Terentia, -ae [ʔ], F., the name of Cicero's wife.

Terentius, -i [ʔ], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Tere nti us Varro, a Roman consul defeated by Hannibal at Cannae.

teres, -etis [tere- (as st. of tero) + tias], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.

tergum, -i [ʔ], N., the back, the body: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear, behind.

terminus, -i [ter (in trans) + minus], M., a boundary, a limit.

ternī, -ae, -a [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three at once.

terra, -ae [ters (?) + a, cf. tor reo, dry up], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land, the shore. — Also, a land, a region. — Also, the ground, the soil. — Plur., the world.

Terasidius, -i [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., Titus Terasidius, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, [t'errō- (ʔ)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm, terrify, frighten off, deter.

terrestria, -e [terra- (as if terret-, cf. equestris) + tris], adj., of the earth, earthly, terrestrial.

terribilia, -e [as if (or really) t'errō- (whence terreō) + bilis], adj., frightful, dreadful, terrible.

territō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [territō-], 1. v. a., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed).

territus, -a, -um, p. p. of terreō.

terror, -ōris [terr + or], M., fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.

Tertia, -ae [f. of tertius], F., a child's name (i.e. the third daughter).

tertius, -a, -um [prob. tri- + tius], num. adj., third (in order); pars (one-third). — tertium, N. acc. as adv., a third time. — tertīō, abl. as adv., a third time.

testimonium, -i [testi- + monium], N., proof, evidence.

testis, -is [ʔ], M. and F., a witness.
testor, -āri, -ātus [testi-], i. v. dep., call to witness, bear witness, declare, attest.

testūdō, -inis [t’estu- (akin to testa, tile) + do], F., a tortoise. — Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another).

Teutobochus, -i [?], M., a chief of the Teutones.

Teutones, -um (i, -ōrum) [Teutonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who along with the Cimbri overran Gaul in B.C. 113. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

Thēbae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., Thebes, a famous city of Greece.

Thēbānus, -a, -um [Theba- + nus], adj., of Thebes, Theban. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Thebans.

Themistoclēs, -is [Gr.], M., a famous Athenian statesman and general in the time of the Persian War.

Thermopylæ, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., a famous pass in northern Greece, where Leonidas fell.

thēsaurus, -i [Gr.], M., a hoard, a treasure. — Also, a treasure-house.

Thespiēnsis, -e [Gr.], adj., of Thespia, a city of Greece, Thespian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Thespians.

Thessalia, -ae [Gr.], F., Thessaly, a division of northern Greece.

Tiberis, -is [?], M., the Tiber.

Tiberius, -i [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

tibi, see tu.

tībīa, -ae [?], F., the leg-bone, the shin. — Also, a pipe, a flute.

tībīcen, -inis [tibia-cen (in caño, play)], M., a piper, a flute-player.

tignum, -i [?], N., a log, a timber, a pile.

tigris, -idis (-is) [Gr.], M. and F., a tiger.

timē, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [tīmē- (cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear); timēntēs, p. as noun, the timid, the fearful.

timor, -ōris [tim- (cf. timeo) + or], M., alarm, fear, dread.

tīncatus, -a, -um, p. p. of tingo.

tingō (-guō), -ere, tīnxi, tīntus [TING], 3. v. a., wet, moisten. — Also, dye, color, tinge.

tīrōcinium, -i [tīrō- (cf. tirō, a raw recruit) + cinium], N., a soldier’s first service, a beginning.

titulus, -i [?], M., an inscription, a placard, a notice.

Titīrius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Titīrius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -i [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Tityos, -i [Gr.], M., a giant killed by Apollo and Diana for insulting Latona. His punishment in the underworld was to have a vulture ever feeding on his liver.

toga, -ae [TEG (cover) + a], F., a toga, the outer garment of the Romans in civil life.

togātus, -a, -um [toga- + tus], adj., clad in the toga. Hence, unarmed, in the garb of peace.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tōler- (TOL + us)], i. v. a. and n.,
tollō (raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support.

tollō, -tollere, sustulī, sublātus [TOL], 3. v. a., raise, lift, carry, carry off. Hence, take up, remove, take away, destroy, kill: anchoris sublātis, (weigh).

Tolōsātēs, -ium [Tolosa- + ti], M. plur., the people of Toulouse.

Tomyris, -is [ʔ], F., queen of the Massagetae.

torrentum, -i [TORQU + mentum], N., (means of twisting), torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torvē [old case-form of torvus], adv., sternly.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

tōtus, -a, -um [TA + tus], adj., whole, the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout, wholly, all.

trābs (trabēs), trabis [ʔ], F., a beam, a timber.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tractō- (cf. trahe)], 1. v. a. freq., touch, handle, feel of.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [trans-ndo], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend. — Also, pass along, hand down, report, teach, communicate.

trāducō (trans-), -ducere, -düxi, -ductus [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead over (with two accs.), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trahō, trahere, trāxi, trācitus [TRAH (for TRAGH)], 3. v. a., drag, draw. — Fig., refer, ascribe, set down to.

trācicō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [trans-iacio], 3. v. a. and n., throw across, throw over, pass over, cross. — Also, strike through, transfix, pierce.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traicio.

trāiectus, -ūs [trans-ictus, cf. traicio], M., a throwing across), a passage, a route.

tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillō- + tas], F., stillness, calm.

trāns [ʔ, akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpīne (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsūrus [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

trānaducō, see traduco.

trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

trānferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, draw upon, from somewhere else).

trānfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through, stab.
transfodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through. — Also, pierce, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).

transgredior, -gredī, -gressus [trans-gradiō], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.

transgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgredior.

transitus, -ūs [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., a crossing, a passage.

translātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.

transmarīnus, -a, -um [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., foreign.

transmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

transmissus, -ūs [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus, with a passage of the same length.

transmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., send over, cross over.

transportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

transportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [transporto], i. v. a., bring over (with two accs.), transport, carry over.

Trānrhenānus, -a, -um [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine. — Plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine.

trānstrum, -i [trans (trant-?) + trum], M., a thwart, a cross-beam.

transversus, -a, -um [p. p. of transvertō], as adj., across, athwart, oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross-ditch).

Trasumĕnus, -i [?] M., a lake in Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in B.C. 217.

Trebia, -ae [?], M., a river of northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in B.C. 218.

Trebius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Est., Marcus Trebius Gallus, an officer of Caesar's army.

Trebonius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Est., Caius Trebonius, a legatus in Caesar's army.

trecēnī, -ae, -a [tri-centum (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., three hundred each, three hundred.

trecentī, -ae, -a [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

tremō, -ere, -ui, no p. p. [trem], 3. v. n., tremble, quake with fear.

trepidātiō, -onis [trepidā- + tio], F., alarm, confusion.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [trepidō-], i. v. n., tremble. — Also, bustle about, hurry.

trēs, tria, gen. trium [st. tri-], num. adj., three.

Trēveri (-virī), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle.

Triboces, -um (-i, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -i [tribu- + nus], M., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With militum or militāris, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.

tribūdō, -uere, -ui, -ütus [tribu-],
tribūtum [N. p. p. of tribuo], a tribute.

tricēsimus, -a, -um [triginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., thirtieth.

triclinium, -i [Gr.], N., a couch for three persons reclining at meals. Also, an eating-room, a dining-room.

tridēns, -entis [tri-dēns (decl. as adj.)], adj., three-toothed, three-pronged. As noun, a three-pronged spear, a trident.

triduum, -i [tri- + st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., three days' time, three days.

triennium, -i [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., three years.

trigintā [tri-unc. st., cf. viginti], indecl. num. adj., thirty.

Trinobantes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartītus (tripert-), -a, -um [tri-partitus, p. p. of partio], adj., divided in three. Esp., tripartītō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

triplēx, -icis [tri-plex (pl. as st.)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions or lines), triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um [tri-quatrus (quattuor), cf. "three-square"], adj., three-cornered, triangular.

tristīcūlus, -a, -um [tristi- + culus, dim. end.], adj., somewhat sad, downcast.

tristis, -e [unc. root + tis], adj., sad, gloomy, dejected, dismal.

tristitia, -ae [tristi- + tia], F., sadness, sorrow, a gloomy state (of mind).

triumphālis, -e [triumphō- + alis], adj., belonging to a triumph, triumphal.

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [triumphō-], 1. v. n., have or enjoy a triumph, triumph.

triumphūs, -i [prob. Gr.], M., a triumphal procession, a triumph. Less exactly, a triumph (generally), a victory.

Trōia, -ae [Gr.], F., Troy, a city in Asia Minor, the scene of the Trojan War.

tropaeum, -i [Gr.], N., a trophy.

truncus, -i [?], M., a trunk.

trux, trucis [?], adj., savage, harsh, fierce, stern.

tū, tuī [TV A], plur. vōs [VA], pers. pron., thou, you (sing.), you (plur.).

tuba, -ae [?], F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tubicen, -inis [tuba-cen (in cano, play)], M., a trumpeter.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus) [?], 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect, defend. See also tutus.

tullī, perf. of fero.

Tullius, -i [Tullo- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. See Cicero.

Tullus, -i [?], M., a Roman family name. See Volcacius.

tum [prob. acc. of TA (cf. is-te)], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time, at that time, at the same time, in that case: cum ... tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative).
tumultus, -ūs [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + tus], m., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion. — Esp., an uprising, a rebellion, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared).

tumulus, -ī [tumō- (whence tumeō, swell) + ius], m., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then, at that time.

turbō, -inis [turbā- + o, cf. homo], m., (a whirling), a whirlwind, a hurricane.

turbulentus, -a, -um [turbā- (as if turbō-) + lentus], adj., disturbed; of fluids, thick, muddy, roily.

turgidulus, -a, -um [turgidō- + ius, dim. end.], adj., swollen.

turgidus, -a, -um [turgē- (swell) + idus], adj., swollen, distended.

turma, -ae [tūr (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], f., (a throng?), a squadron, a troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e [?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv., dishonorably: turpiter factum, an inglorious deed.

turpitūdō, -inis [turpi- + tuō], f., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turris, -is [?], f., a tower, a dovecote.

tūs, tūris [Gr.], n., incense.

Tusculānus, -a, -um [Tusculō- + ānus], adj., of Tusculum, a town of Latium. — Esp., n. as noun, a villa at Tusculum.

tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of tueror], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum, no safety for the conquered. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely.

tuus, -a, -um [tva + ius], adj. pron., your, yours.

tyrannus, -ī [Gr.], m., a tyrant.

U


ubi [supposed to be quō- + bi, cf. tibi], adv., where, in which. — Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as.

Ubiī, -ōrum [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubiique [ubi-que, cf. quisque], adv., everywhere, anywhere.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus [?], 3. v. dep., punish (an injury, or the doer), avenge (an injury).

Ulixēs, -is [Gr.], m., Ulysses, a hero of the Trojan War, afterwards famed for his wanderings and adventures.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -ius [unō- + ius], adj., a single (with negatives), any. — As noun (less common), anybody, any one.

ulterior, -us, -ōris [compar. of
ultorī, cf. ultra], adj., farther, more remote: ulterioriores, those farther off. — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um [ul- + timus], farthest, last. — As noun, the last, the end.

ultiō, -ōnis [ULC (in ulciscor) + tio], F., vengeance, revenge.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of īlter], adv. and prep. with acc., beyond.

ultrō [dat. of īlter], adv., to the farther side, beyond. — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, voluntarily, of one's own accord, without provocation, freely, besides: sibi parcere cogi (in spite of himself); ad se venire (without his asking it).

ululātus, -ūs [ululā- + tus], M., a yell, a loud cry, a wailing.

ulō, āre, āvī, ātus [ulula-, a wail], I. v. n. and a., wail, howl.

umbra, -ae [?], F., a shade, a shadow.

umerus, -i [?], M., the shoulder.

umquam (unquam) [supposed to be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)], adv. (with neg.), ever.

ūnā [instr. (or abl.?) of unus], adv., together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place, also.

unda, -ae [UND (water) + a], F., a wave. — Fig., a stream, water, the waters.

unde [supposed to be for tunde (cum, cf. umquam, + de, cf. inde)], adv., whence, from which, from whom.

ūndecim [unos-decem], indecl. num. adj., eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um [unos-decimus], num. adj., eleventh.

undēquadragēsimus, -a, -um [undequadraginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., thirty-ninth.

undique [unde-que, cf. quiique], adv., from every side, from all quarters. — Also (cf. ab), on every side.

ungō (-guō), -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus [UNG], 3. v. a., smear, besmear, anoint.

unguentum, -i [akin to ungo], M., an ointment, a perfume.

ūniversus, -a, -um [unō-versus], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -ius [?], old onus], adj., one, a single, the same, alone (as adv.): una celeritate (alone); ad unum, to a man; unus quisque, each one.

ūnusquisque, see unus.

urbānus, -a, -um [urbi- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a city, city (adj.). — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city. — Masc. as noun, a citizen, a wit, a wag.

urbe, urbīs [?], F., a city. — Esp., the city (Rome).


urna, -ae [?], F., a jar, an urn, esp. used for drawing lots.

ūrō, ūreere, usūsī, usus [US], 3. v. a., burn.

ursus, -i [?], M., a bear.

ūrus, -i [Teutonic], M., a wild ox.

Usipetes, -um [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe who migrated.
from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of usītōr.

ūsītōr, -ārī, -ātus [tusitō- (as if p. p. of tusō, freq. of utor)], i. v. dep., practise. — ūsītātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, used, practised, customary, much practised.

ūsque [supposed unc. case of quō (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv. (everywhere), all the way, even to, even to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till.

ūsurpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tusurpō (usu-trapus, RAP + us, cf. bustirapu)], i. v. a., (appropriate), seize upon, make use of, employ.

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of ūtor.

ūsus, -us [UT (in utor) + tus], M., use, practice, experience. Hence, advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary (with personal subject); also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass (on trial, in practice); usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships; quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.

ut (utī) [supposed to be for quoti (quō- + ti?)], adv. and conj.: a. Interr., how? — b. Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was, just as if. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: id facere ut, do this, namely. — Esp.: timere ut, fear that not; ut quisque est . . . ita (in proportion as . . . so).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius [quō (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj. a. Interr., which (of two)? — b. Rel., whichever (of two), the one who (of two). — utrum, neut. as adv., (which of the two), whether; sometimes not translated. üter, ütris [?], M., a hide, a skin, a bag (of skin), a leathern bottle.

uterque, utra, utrum, gen. utrius- [uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both, each. — Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties.

uti, see ut.

ūtilis, -e [tuti- (st. akin to utor) + lis], adj., useful, of use, helpful.

ūtilitās, -ātis [utilī- + tās], F., advantage, benefit, service.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus [?], old oetor, akin to aveo?], 3. v. dep., avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess, show (qualities which one exercises), occupy (a town), navigate (a sea): pace (remain at peace). — Esp. with two nouns, employ as, have as, and the like. — ūsus, -a, -um, p. p., often merely with.

utpote [ut-potis, able], adv., (as is possible), as being, inasmuch as, since, as.

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., on both sides.

utrobiique [utrō-ubique], adv., on
both sides, in both ways (i.e. by land and sea).

āva, -ae [F. of ṭuvō- (cf. uvidus, moist) + a], F., a grape. — Plur., grapes, bunches of grapes.

uxor, -ōris [?], F., a wife.

V

V, for quinque, five.

Vaucalis, -i [?], m., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātōri, -ōnis [vacā- + tio], F., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [prob. 𐍗vacō- (cf. vacua)], i. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste. — Fig., be at leisure, have time.

vacuus, -a, -um [prob. vac (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, empty, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -i [vad (in vado, go) + um], n., a ford. — Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows.

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vagor.

vāgina, -ae [?], F., a sheath.

vagor, -āri, -ātus [vagō-, roving], i. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

vagus, -a, -um [vag (?) + us], adj., wandering, roving.

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus [?], prob. from adj-st., cf. validus, strong], 2. v. n., be strong, be well, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — Often with n. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valere, be very strong, have great weight, have great influence; minus valet, is not very strong; nihil valere, have no power; quicquid possunt pedestribus copia valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry. — Esp. in inv.,

farewell, adieu, good-by. — Also, valeas, good-by. — valēns, -entis, p. as adj., strong.

Valerius, -i [akin to valeo], m., a Roman gentile name. See Catulus.

valētūdō, -inis [prob. valent- + tudo], F., health. — Also, ill health, illness, sickness.

validus, -a, -um [valō- (whence valeo ?) + dus], adj., strong, stout, sturdy, vigorous.

vallēs, -is [?], F., a valley.

vāllum, -i [N. of vallus], n., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vālulus, -i [?], m., a stake.

valva, -ae [?], F., a fold of a door. — Usually plur., folding doors, doors.

vānus, -a, -um [prob. vac (in vacuus) + nus], adj., empty. — Fig., groundless, empty, vain, idle.

variētās, -ātis [variō- + tas], F., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors).

varius, -a, -um [prob. akin to vārus, bent], adj., various, diverse, varied.

varix, -icus [akin to varus, bent], m., a dilated vein, a varix.

vās, vāsis (plur. -a, -ōrum) [?], n., a vessel, a jar.

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vasto.
vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vastō-], 1. v. a., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vāstus, -a, -um [ʔ], adj., waste. — Also, immense, vast.

vātēs, -is [ʔ], m., a soothsayer, a seer.

-ve [ʔ], enclit. conj., or.

vectīgal, -ālis [N. of vectigalis], n., an impost, tribute. — Plur., revenues (of a state).

vectigalis, -e [†vectigō- (vect-, akin to veho, + unc. term., cf. castigo) + alis], adj., tributary: vectigalis habent, make tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector- (cf. veho, carry) + ius], adj., carrying: navigia (transports).

vectus, -a, -um, p. p. of veho.

vegetus, -a, -um [†vege- (veg, wake) + ius], adj., bright, animated.

vehementer [vehement- (violent) + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly, very well.


vel [prob. inv. of volo, wish], conj., or: vel ... vel, either ... or.

Velānius, -i [ʔ], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Velānius, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar’s army.

Veliocassēs, -ium (i, -ōrum) [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -i [Celtic], n., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvīi, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes Mountains.

vēlōcitās, -ātis [veloci- (swift) + tas], f., swiftness, fleetness, speed.

vēlum, -i [ʔ, cf. vexillum], n., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut (velūt) [vel-ut], adv., even as, just as, just as if: velut si, just as if, as if, no less than if.

vēnātiō, -ōnis [venā- (hunt) + tio], f., hunting, the chase. — Plur., hunting, hunting excursions, hunting spectacles.

vēnātor, -ōris [venā- (hunt) + tor], m., a hunter.

vēnditor, -ōris [vendi- (as st. of vendo) + tor], m., a seller, a vendor.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [venum-do], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

venēnātus, -a, -um [venēnō- + atus], adj., (filled with poison), poisonous, venomous.

venēnum, -i [ʔ], n., poison. — Less exactly, a drug, a magic potion, a magic herb.

venerātiō, -ōnis [venerā- (reverence) + tio], f., reverence, respect, veneration.

Venetī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae [venetō- + ia (f. of -ius)], f., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um [Venetō- + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venia, -ae [ʔ], f., indulgence, favor, pardon: petentibus veniam dare, grant their request.

venīō, venire, vēni, ventūrus [gām (for gvenīō)], 4. v. n., come, go: in spem (have hopes). See also usus.
vēnor, -āri, -ātus [?], i. v. dep.,
hunt: venantum voces (of hunters).

venter, -tris [?], m., the belly.

ventitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [as if
ventitō- (from †vento, old freq. of
venio)], i. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -i [?], m., the wind: vento
(ventis) se dare, run before the wind.

Venus, -eris [ven + us, cf. gen-

us], F., grace, beauty. — Esp.,
Venus, the goddess of love and
beauty.

Venusia, -ae [?], F., a town in
southern Italy, the birthplace of
Horace.

Venusinus, -a, -um [Venusia-+
inus], adj., belonging to Venusia,
Venusan.

venustus, -a, -um [venes- (cf.
Venus) + tus], adj., charming,
lovely.

verbum, -i [?, cf. morbus], n., a
word, a remark: facit verba, speak
for, etc.; magna contumelia verbo-
rum, with most insulting words;
verba dare, deceive, cheat.

Vercassivellaunus, -i [Celtic],
m., one of the Arverni, the uncle of
Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -īgis [Celtic], m.,
a noble of the Arverni. Being
chosen king, he made a stout resis-
tance to Cæsar, but was finally over-
powered by the Romans and surren-
dered by his followers.

vērē [old case-form of verus],
adv., truly, with truth, with justice.

verēcundia, -ae [verecundō + la],
F., modesty, sense of shame.

vereor, -ēri, -itus [prob. †verē-
(akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be
afraid, dread.— veritus, p. p. in
pres. sense, fearing.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?].
3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards
(of an exposure), lie towards.

vērisimilis, -e [veri similia], adj.,
(luke the truth), probable, likely.

vēritās, -ātis [verō + tōs], F.,
truth.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor.

verniliter [vernili- (of a slave) +
ter], adv., slavishly, like a slave.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth,
in fact, certainly. — With weakened
force, but, on the other hand, how-
ever. — Often untranslatable, ex-
pressing an intensive (emphatic)
opposition, or pointing to the main
time, circumstance, fact, or agent in
the narrative.

versiculus, -i [versu- + culus,
dim. end.], m., a short line, a verse.

versō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [versō-].
i. v. a., turn (this way and that):
sōre (shake). — Esp. in pass. as dep.,
turn one’s self, engage in, be involved,
be, fight (as indicated by the con-
text).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of vertō.

versus (versum) [orig. p. p. of
vertō], adv. and prep. with acc.,
towards, in the direction of: quoque
versus (or as one word), in every
direction, all about.

versus, -ūs [VERT + tus], m., a
turning. — Esp., a verse (of poetry,
where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus
[VERT], 3. v. a., turn : terga (puppis)
vertere, turn and flee.
vērus, -a, -um [?, ver (in vereor) + us], adj., (?) seen, visible, true, real.—Neut. as noun, the truth: reperit esse vera, found the truth to be.—Also, just, right: re vera, in truth. See also vero.


vesper, -eri [?], m., the evening.

vester, -tra, -trum [ves- + ter (us)], possess. adj. pron., your, yours.

vestigium, -i [vestigō- (cf. vestīgo) + ium], n., the footstep, the footprint, a track, a spot, a mark.—Esp.: vestigio, forthwith (from one's tracks?); eodem vestigio, in the same spot; in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time; vestigia ponere, set foot.

vestigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vestigō- (cf. vestigium)], 1. v. a., track, trace.—Less exactly, hunt, search for.

vestiō, -ire, -īvi (-ii), -ītus [vestī-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover.—Pass., clothe one's self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestis, -is [ves (cover) + tis], f., clothing, garments, a robe, a vestment.—Also, drapery, tapestry.

vestītus, -ūs [vestī- + tus], m., clothing, garments.

Vesuvius, -i [?], m., a volcano near Naples.

veterānus, -a, -um [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitus [st. akin to vetus], 1. v. a., forbid.

vetus, -eris [?], adj., old, former, of long standing.

vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vexo.

vēxillum, -i [?, apparently a dim. of velum], n., a banner, a flag.

vexo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vexō- (as if p. p. of veho)], 1. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

via, -ae [for veha? (veh- + a)], f., a road, a way, a route, a march, a journey: tridui viam, three days' journey.

viātor, -ōris [viā- (as st. of tviō) + tor], m., a traveller.

vicārius, -a, -um [vici- + arius], adj., substituted.— Masc. as noun, a substitute, a proxy.

vicēnī, -ae, -a [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty (apiece).

vicēsimus, -a, -um [akin to viginti], num. adj., twentieth.

viciēs (-ēs) [akin to viginti], num. adv., twenty times: vicēs centena milia passuum, two thousand miles.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: in vicem, in turn.

victima, -ae [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], f., a victim, a sacrifice.

victor, -ōris [vic (in vinco) + tor], m., a victor, a conqueror.—Often as adj., victorious, triumphant.

victoria, -ae [victor- + ia], f., victory, success (in war), a victory.

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of vinco.

victus, -ūs [vīc (?) (cf. vīxi) + tus], m., living, life.—Also, means of living, food: domus victuaque, intercourse, life in common.

vicus, -ī [vic (enter) + us], m.,
(a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

vidēlicet [vidē- (imv. of video) -licet], adv. (one may see), of course, no doubt, to be sure.

videō, vidēre, vidi, visus [VID, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienne, -ae [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae [vigil- (awake) + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

vigilō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vigil-(wakeful)], 1. v. n. and a., be awake, watch, watch for: noctes (spend in watching). — Esp., vigilāns, -antis, p. as adj., watchful, vigilant.

vgintī [dvī- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vigor, -ōris [VIG (in vigeo, be strong) + or], M., activity, force, vigor.

VII, for septem, seven, and septimius, seventh.

VIII, for octō, eight.

vilitās, -ātis [vili-(low) + tas], F., cheapness, low price.

villa, -ae (?) F., a country-house, a villa.

vimen, -inis [root (or st.) VI (twine) + men], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier, a wiithe.

vincīō, vincire, vinci, vincitus [perh. akin to vincio], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vinculum, see vinculum.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus [VIC], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, overcome, prevail.

vincitus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

vinculum (vinculum), -i [†vincō- (st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (n. of lus)], N., a chain, a rope. — Plur., fetters, bonds: in vincula, into prison, into confinement; in vincla concludere, put in chains (confinement).

vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vindic-(defender)], 1. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend, avenge, punish: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vinea, -ae [vinō + ea (f. of eus)], a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vinum, -i [?], N., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), outrage, lay waste: hospitem (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, vīri (?) M., a man, a husband.

vireō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [†vireō- (cf. viridis, green)], 2. v. n., be green, put forth leaves.

vīrēs, see vis.

virga, -ae [akin to vireo], F., a twig, a rod, a stick.

virginālis, -e [virgin- + alia], adj., of a maiden, maidenly.

virgō, -inis [akin to vireo], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

virgula, -ae [virga- + ula, dim. end.], F., a small rod, a twig, a little stick.
virgultum, -i [†virgula- (?)] + tum, cf. tumultus], n., only in plur., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -i [Celtic], m., a noble of the Hādūi.

virītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Viromandui, -ōrum [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtūs, -ūtis [virī- (reduced) + tus], f., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtūs: virtute (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., virtūs, merits, good qualities, brave acts.

vis, see volo.

vis, vis (?) [?], f., force, might, strength, power, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence; vim hostium (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

visō, -ere, visi, visus [old disiderative of video], 3. v. a. (desire to see), go to see, visit.

visus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

visus, -ūs [vid (of video) + tus], m., a sight, a vision.

vita, ae [root of vivo + ta], f., life, the course of life.

vitium, -i [?], n., a defect, a fault, a vice.

vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (?), vita- (?), i. v. a., (escape with life, live through ?), escape, avoid, dodge, shun.

vitrum, -i [?], n., woad, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vituperātiō, -ōnis [vituperā- + tio], f., blame, censure.

vituperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†vituperō- (vitio- + itparus, cf. opiparus)], i. v. a., censure, find fault with, blame.

vivō, vivere, vivi, victus [vīg, cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on). — Esp. in inv., may you live, fare-well, I wish you well.

vivus, -a, -um [vīg (?) + us], adj., alive, living.

vīx [poss. vīc (in vincō)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [voc- (st. of vox)], 1. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite: digito (beckon).

Volcae, -ārum [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -i [?], m., Vulcān, the god of fire and metals.

Volcātius, -i [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Volcacius Tullus, a young man in Cæsar’s suite.

volgāris (vul-), -e [volgō- + aris], adj., common, ordinary.

volgus (vul-), -i [volg (press) + us], n., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferi, be spread abroad. — volgō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volitō, -āre, -āvi, no p. p. [as if volitō- (supposed p. p. of volo, fly), cf. agito], i. v. n. freq., fit about. — Less exactly, rush to and fro, hasten.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of volnerō.

volnerō (vul-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [volner-], i. v. a., wound, hurt.
volnus (vul-), -eris [prob. akin to vello, pluck], N., a wound.

1 volō, velle, volui [vol.], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want.

2 volō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [?], i. v. n., fly (lit. and fig.).

volpēs (vul-), -is [?], F., a fox.
Volānō, -ōnis, see Manlius.
volτus (vul-), -ūs [vol + tua], M., (wish, expression of countenance), look, countenance, face.

voluntās, -ātis [volent- (p. of volo) + τας], F., willingness, goodwill, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination.

voluptās, -ātis [volup- (akin to volo) + τας], F., pleasure, delight.

Volusēnus, -i [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Volusēnus Quadratus, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army.

vōs, see tu.

Vosegus, -i [Celtic], M., the Vosges Mountains, running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

vōtum, -i [N. p. p. of voveo], N., a vow, a prayer.

voveō, vovere, vōvi, vōtus [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

vōx, vōcis [voc as st.], F., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout, a speech, a sentence. — Collectively, cries, words, talk. — Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox audita (not a word).

X

X, for decem, ten, and decimus, tenth.

Xerxēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Persian king who invaded Greece in B.C. 480.

XII, for duodecim, twelve.

XL, for quadrāgnintā, forty.

XV, for quindecim, fifteen.

XVI, for sēdecim, sixteen.

XVIII, for duodēvīgintī, eighteen.

XX, for vigintī, twenty.

XXV, for vigintī quinque, twenty-five.

XXVIII, for duodētrigintā, twenty-eight.

XXX, for trigintā, thirty.

Z

Zama, -ae [?], F., a town in Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio, B.C. 202.

Zephyrus, -i [Gr.], M., Zephyr, the west wind.

Zeuxis, -is [Gr.] M., a famous Grecian painter, about B.C. 420.

zōna, -ae [Gr.], F., a belt.